CBD

Convention on Biological Diversity

Distr.
GENERAL

CBD/EBSA/WS/2019/1/4
8 November 2019

ENGLISH ONLY

REPORT OF THE REGIONAL WORKSHOP TO FACILITATE THE DESCRIPTION OF ECOLOGICALLY OR BIOLOGICALLY SIGNIFICANT MARINE AREAS IN THE NORTH-EAST ATLANTIC OCEAN[1]

Stockholm, 22-27 September 2019

INTRODUCTION

1. At its tenth meeting, the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity requested the Executive Secretary to work with Parties and other Governments as well as competent organizations and regional initiatives, such as the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO), regional seas conventions and action plans, and, where appropriate, regional fisheries management organizations (RFMOs) to organize, including the setting of terms of reference, a series of regional workshops, with a primary objective to facilitate the description of ecologically or biologically significant marine areas (EBSAs) through the application of the scientific criteria given in decision IX/20, annex I, as well as other relevant compatible and complementary nationally and intergovernmentally agreed scientific criteria, as well as the scientific guidance on the identification of marine areas beyond national jurisdiction, which meet the scientific criteria in annex I to decision IX/20 (see decision X/29, para. 36).

2. Subsequently, at its eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth and fourteenth meetings, the Conference of the Parties reviewed the outcomes of the regional workshops conducted and requested the Executive Secretary to include the summary reports prepared by the Subsidiary Body on Scientific, Technical and Technological Advice, as contained in the annexes to decisions XI/17, XII/22, XIII/12 and 14/9, in the repository of ecologically or biologically significant marine areas, and to transmit the summary reports to the United Nations General Assembly and its relevant processes, as well as to Parties, other Governments and relevant international organizations, in line with the purpose and procedures set out in decisions X/29, XI/17 and XII/22.

3. The Conference of the Parties to the Convention, at its thirteenth meeting, also requested the Executive Secretary, in line with paragraph 36 of decision X/29, paragraph 12 of decision XI/17 and paragraph 6 of decision XII/22, to continue to facilitate the description of areas meeting the criteria for ecologically or biologically significant marine areas through the organization of additional regional or subregional workshops where Parties wish workshops to be held. Furthermore, the Conference of the Parties to the Convention, at its fourteenth meeting, invited Parties to submit descriptions of areas that meet the criteria for EBSAs in the North-East Atlantic.

4. On 30 November 2018, Ms. Susana Salvador, Executive Secretary of the Convention for the Protection of the Marine Environment of the North-East Atlantic (OSPAR Commission), and Mr. Darius Campbell, Secretary of the North-East Atlantic Fisheries Commission (NEAFC), transmitted a letter to Ms. Cristiana Pașca Palmer, Executive Secretary of the CBD, to request collaboration between the CBD Secretariat, the OSPAR Commission and NEAFC to organize a CBD regional workshop to facilitate the

[1] The designations employed and the presentation of material in this note do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the Secretariat concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries.

description of EBSAs in the North-East Atlantic. The letter further invited the workshop to consider the information collated for the regional EBSA process organized by the OSPAR Commission and NEAFC, in collaboration with the CBD Secretariat, in 2011 and 2013 and peer reviewed by the International Council for Exploration of the Sea (ICES) in 2013[2] and any additional new information that has been collected in the intervening period.

5. Pursuant to the above requests, and with financial support from the Governments of Sweden, France, Denmark and Germany, the Secretariat of the Convention on Biological Diversity convened the Regional Workshop to Facilitate the Description of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas in the North-East Atlantic Ocean, in Stockholm, from 23 to 27 September 2019, preceded by a training session on 22 September 2019. The workshop was hosted by the Government of Sweden and organized in collaboration with the OSPAR Commission and NEAFC.

6. Scientific and technical support for this workshop was provided by a team from Duke University. The results of technical preparation for the workshop were made available in the meeting document entitled "Data to Inform the Regional Workshop to Facilitate the Description of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas (EBSAs) in the North-East Atlantic Ocean" (CBD/EBSA/WS/2019/1/3).

7. The meeting was attended by experts from Belgium, Denmark (Kingdom of), European Union, Germany, Iceland, Ireland, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Russian Federation, Spain, Sweden, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, International Seabed Authority, North-East Atlantic Fisheries Commission (NEAFC), OSPAR Commission, International Council for Exploration of the Sea (ICES), Saami Council, BirdLife International, Global Ocean Biodiversity Initiative, Fisheries Expert Group of the IUCN Commission of Ecosystem Management, IUCN Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force, and the World Wide Fund for Nature (WWF).[3] The full list of participants is provided in annex I.

ITEM 1. OPENING OF THE WORKSHOP

8. On behalf of the Government of Sweden, Ms. Charlotta Sörqvist, Senior Adviser, Division for Natural Environment, Ministry of the Environment of Sweden, delivered opening remarks. She welcomed participants to Sweden and to Stockholm. She noted that the 2011 OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD EBSA workshop for the North-East Atlantic, which was also the first-ever EBSA workshop, was held eight years ago, due to the eagerness of scientists in the North-East Atlantic region to apply the EBSA concept to their region. She noted that this process was now closer than ever to reaching a conclusion in this region, an important step towards a COP decision next year. She affirmed Sweden's faith in the process, which the Government saw as very important in building knowledge about the marine environment on which human beings depended. She noted that, looking ahead to the post-2020 global biodiversity framework, one thing was certain: marine and coastal biodiversity would continue to face serious challenges. She stressed that Sweden saw EBSAs as having a potentially important role as conservation efforts awerere stepped up, not only for the knowledge that the process had generated, but also in the light of environmental challenges, such as climate change. Ms. Sörqvist thanked participants for their dedication to the EBSA process and wished them a productive week.

9. Ms. Lena Avellan delivered an opening statement on behalf of Ms. Susana Salvador, Executive Secretary of the OSPAR Commission. She expressed her gratitude to the Convention on Biological

---

[2] ICES. 2013. OSPAR/NEAFC special request on review of the results of the Joint OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD Workshop on Ecologically and Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs). June 2013. Available at: http://www.ices.dk/sites/pub/Publication%20Reports/Advice/2013/Special%20requests/OSPAR-NEAFC%20EBSA%20review.pdf

[3] An expert nominated by the government of France was scheduled to attend the workshop. However, due to unforeseen circumstances, the participant was unable to attend, and it was not possible in the limited timeframe to arrange for an alternate expert from France to attend.

Diversity for arranging this important regional workshop and to the technical team from the Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab of Duke University for its technical support. She also thanked the Government of Sweden for generously hosting this workshop and the Governments of France, Denmark and Germany for their valuable financial contributions, as well as the other Governments that had contributed to making this workshop possible. She also thanked NEAFC for the productive and continued cooperation in this area of work. She noted that in the past ten years, their two organizations had developed a strong collaboration, shared information of common interest, and, above all, significantly enhanced the collective arrangement as a forum for regional and cross-sectoral dialogue. She emphasized that the organizations had furthermore explored ways to promote the identification of areas meeting the EBSA criteria and were proud of working together with the Convention. She noted that, while the North-East Atlantic was a well-studied area, the OSPAR Commission still had insufficient knowledge of the ecosystems to fully apply an ecosystem approach to managing human activities. OSPAR applied the precautionary principle to management of human activities and aimed to increase availability of information to inform and sustain policy decisions. She noted that the outputs of this workshop would be helpful to the future work of OSPAR as it contributed to efforts to increase the availability of scientific information to policymakers. She noted that the Contracting Parties to OSPAR were currently developing a new strategy based on an ambitious programme for the next decade, to be launched in July 2020. An important part of this work was to evaluate achievements against current objectives and targets, which were set in 2010. But when looking towards the future, ambitions needed to take emerging pressures, such as climate change, into account. Through the new Strategy for 2020-2030, the OSPAR Commission aimed to set out the main commitments to protect the marine environment of the North East Atlantic in the wider context of ocean governance and to contribute to the UN 2030 Agenda, mostly the delivery of many of the Sustainable Development Goals. Reinforced international cooperation was therefore a fundamental component of our plan of action for the decade ahead. OSPAR believed the post-2020 global biodiversity framework was of crucial importance in the context of global biodiversity conservation, and OSPAR sought to support the CBD process by contributing results and findings from regional efforts and aligning common objectives and targets. OSPAR sought to take further steps in supporting global efforts on conserving marine biodiversity, and collaboration on EBSA was one important step towards this end. In conclusion, she reiterated the appreciation of OSPAR to the Convention for its collaboration in identifying EBSAs in the North East Atlantic, and reaffirmed OSPAR's willingness to support this process and work ahead. She wished participants a successful workshop.

10. Mr. Darius Campbell, Secretary of NEAFC, delivered opening remarks. After thanking the Swedish Government for hosting, the CBD Secretariat for organizing, and the Governments of France, Denmark and Germany for financially supporting the workshop, Mr. Campbell provided some historical context. He recalled the previous year, NEAFC and OSPAR requested the Convention on Biological Diversity to hold this workshop, following a process to describe EBSAs in the North-East Atlantic that began in 2011, following decision X/29, whereby the Conference of the Parties requested the Executive Secretary to organize a series of regional workshops to facilitate the description of EBSAs. OSPAR, NEAFC and the CBD Secretariat kicked off this process in the North-East Atlantic via a workshop held in 2011. Following a scientific review process, some refined draft proposals were developed in 2013. Further progress was, however, prevented until last year's joint request to the CBD. He noted that NEAFC, OSPAR and the CBD should be proud of their history of cooperation on the EBSA process, as such collaboration was unusual in 2011. Mr. Campbell noted his pleasure at the renewal of efforts on the EBSA process for the North-East Atlantic, and his hope that these efforts would lead to a successful conclusion in the very near future. He noted that since 2011, NEAFC had continued to make progress in moving from science to action in terms of conservation in Areas beyond National Jurisdiction in the North-East Atlantic. Since 2004 NEAFC had closed several areas to bottom fisheries, where Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems occurred. Moreover, in all but a very small part of the NEAFC Regulatory Area, where already established bottom fishing was allowed, no new bottom-fishing activity could progress without a strict impact assessment process. In closing, he emphasized that NEAFC concentrated on policy, while scientific advice was provided only by the International Council for Exploration of the Sea

(ICES), and that NEAFC was therefore very pleased to note that ICES would lend its expertise to this workshop. At the same time, he indicated that ICES would likely consider the information established in this process as it provides scientific advice to NEAFC. He wished all participants a fruitful workshop.

11. Mr. Joseph Appiott delivered an opening statement on behalf of Ms. Cristiana Paşca Palmer, Executive Secretary of the Convention on Biological Diversity. He thanked participants for joining the workshop and lending their valuable scientific expertise to this important process. He also expressed his gratitude to the Government of Sweden for hosting the workshop and to the Governments of France, Denmark and Germany for their valuable financial support. He also thanked the OSPAR Commission and NEAFC for their collaboration and valuable technical input and expressed his gratitude to the technical support team from the Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab of Duke University, whose important work in geospatial mapping had been crucial to the success of the EBSA process. He noted that the North-East Atlantic was a diverse place, with an ecology that included an enormous range of species and habitats. The intense human activities in the region placed considerable pressure on the marine environment and on the ability of the ocean to continue to provide the services that had supported the region's economic development and social well-being. These challenges had been further exacerbated by global drivers such as climate change and ocean acidification. In view of these challenges, biodiversity must not be seen as a hindrance, but rather a solution for sustainable economic growth and human well-being, by supporting the functioning of the Earth's life support system. He noted that significant strides had been made in the region towards sustainable development. The OSPAR Commission, NEAFC and other multilateral processes had brought together countries in the region to take steps to improve the conservation and sustainable use of the region's marine and coastal resources. This region had shown leadership in cross-sectoral approaches to understanding and managing its marine resources, including through the robust collaboration between the OSPAR Commission and NEAFC, which was widely viewed as a model of regional collaboration for the whole world to follow. At such a crucial time in the global ocean policy landscape, particularly in view of the ongoing deliberations for the post-2020 global biodiversity framework, he urged participants to demonstrate once again the leadership role that the North-East Atlantic had long played in regional collaboration to better understand, conserve and sustainably use marine biodiversity. In conclusion, he wished participants a successful workshop.

ITEM 2. ELECTION OF THE WORKSHOP CO-CHAIRS, ADOPTION OF THE AGENDA AND ORGANIZATION OF WORK

12. After a brief explanation by the CBD Secretariat on procedures for electing the workshop co-chairs, Mr. Staffan Danielsson (Sweden), as offered by the host Government, and Mr. Juan-Pablo Pertierra (EU), proposed by an expert from Sweden and seconded by the floor unanimously, were elected as the workshop co-chairs.

13. Participants were then invited to consider the provisional agenda (CBD/EBSA/WS/2019/1/1) and the proposed organization of work, as contained in annex II to the annotations to the provisional agenda (CBD/EBSA/WS/2019/1/1/Add.1) and adopted them without any amendments.

14. The workshop was organized in plenary and break-out group sessions. The co-chairs nominated Mr. David Johnson (GOBI) as rapporteur to assist the CBD Secretariat in preparing the draft workshop report on the workshop discussions with respect to agenda item 6.

ITEM 3. WORKSHOP BACKGROUND, SCOPE AND OUTPUT

15. Under this agenda item, participants were provided with a series of presentations during the training day, including presentations on the scientific aspects of the EBSA criteria and the application of the EBSA criteria:

(a) Mr. Joseph Appiott (CBD Secretariat) delivered a presentation on the work of the CBD on EBSAs and the global context for the workshop;

(b) Ms. Hedvig Hogfors (Sweden) delivered a presentation on Mosaic, a new framework in Sweden to facilitate the ecosystem approach to spatial management;

(c) Ms. Lena Avellan (OSPAR Commission) delivered a presentation on the role and mandate of the OSPAR Commission, and its work in assessing the state of the marine environment, and the forthcoming 2023 OSPAR Quality Status Report, which will evaluate the North-East Atlantic Environment Strategy 2010-2020;

(d) Mr. Darius Campbell (NEAFC) delivered a presentation on the role and mandate of the NEAFC, the background of inter-sectoral cooperation with OSPAR and on previous efforts towards identifying EBSAs in the region, which strengthened regional cooperation;

(e) Mr. Eugene Nixon (ICES) delivered a presentation on work under ICES relevant to the workshop discussions and explained the role of ICES as an intergovernmental scientific organization that provides independent evidence-based advice on marine-related issues to OSPAR and NEAFC;

(f) Ms. Jihyun Lee (ISA Secretariat) delivered a presentation on work under the ISA relevant to the workshop discussions, including scientific data collected through exploration activities, which supports the effective implementation of ISA's environmental management system, together with scientific analysis, modeling and observations being undertaken by other scientific groups;

(g) Mr. Patrick Halpin (technical support team) gave a presentation on the scientific criteria for EBSAs and approaches and experiences in the description of areas meeting the EBSA criteria;

(h) Mr. Patrick Halpin (technical support team) gave a presentation on the scientific information compiled for the workshop;

16. Summaries of the above presentations are provided in annex II.

17. Mr. Joseph Appiott (CBD Secretariat) briefed the participants on the workshop objectives, expected outputs and geographic scope, building on his presentation on the Convention's EBSA process that was delivered on the training day.

18. The participants discussed the scope of the workshop. It was agreed to align the scope of the workshop with the maritime areas of the OSPAR Commission and NEAFC (which are identical), except for the southern boundary, which the workshop agreed to extend. The southern boundary of the workshop scope was extended south, partially overlapping with the scope of the CBD regional EBSA workshop for the South-Eastern Atlantic (Swakopmund, Namibia, 8-12 April 2013), in order to encompass waters and features surrounding the islands of Madeira and the Azores (Portugal) and the Canary Islands (Spain), as (a) experts from Portugal and Spain had not been present at the South-Eastern Atlantic workshop, (b) features surrounding the islands of Madeira and the Azores (Portugal) and the Canary Islands (Spain) had generally not been considered in the South-Eastern Atlantic workshop, and (c) additional information from those areas was made available at the regional EBSA workshop for the North-East Atlantic. As the scope of the workshop also partially overlapped with the scope of the CBD regional EBSA workshop for the Arctic (Helsinki, 3-7 March 2014) and the CBD regional EBSA workshop for the Baltic Sea (Helsinki, 19-24 February 2018), the workshop also took note of the results of these previous workshops.

19. Germany, Greenland (Kingdom of Denmark), Iceland, Ireland, Netherlands, Norway, and the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland did not include their Exclusive Economic Zones (EEZs) in the workshop scope due to the fact that those Parties had conducted, or were in the process of conducting, relevant national processes applying the EBSA criteria or other similar criteria for identifying marine areas of particular importance. Workshop participants from those Parties were invited to provide brief summaries of these national processes. Sweden and the Russian Federation had already described EBSAs in their EEZs in previous CBD regional EBSA workshops that overlapped with the scope of the present workshop, and did not describe additional features or information in their EEZs. Annex III provides information on the above.

20. An expert nominated by the Government of France was scheduled to attend the workshop. However, due to unforeseen circumstances, the participant was unable to attend, and it was not possible in the limited timeframe to arrange for an alternate expert from France to attend. Thus, features in the EEZ of France were not considered in the scope of this workshop.

21. The map of the workshop scope is provided in annex IV.

22. The workshop participants noted the following points regarding the guidance of the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity on the regional workshop process as well as the potential contribution of the scientific information produced by the workshops:

(a) The Conference of the Parties, at its tenth meeting, noted that the application of the scientific criteria in annex I of decision IX/20 for the identification of ecologically or biologically significant marine areas presents a tool which Parties and competent intergovernmental organizations may choose to use to progress towards the implementation of ecosystem approaches in relation to areas both within and beyond national jurisdiction, through the identification of areas and features of the marine environment that are important for conservation and sustainable use of marine and coastal biodiversity (paragraph 25, decision X/29);

(b) The application of the EBSA criteria is a scientific and technical exercise, and the identification of EBSAs and the selection of conservation and management measures is a matter for States and competent intergovernmental organizations, in accordance with international law, including the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (decision X/29, para. 26,);

(c) The EBSA description process is open-ended, and additional regional or subregional workshops may be organized when there is sufficient advancement in the availability of scientific information (decision XI/17, paras. 9 and 12);

(d) Each workshop is tasked to describe areas meeting the scientific criteria for EBSAs based on best available scientific information. As such, experts at the workshops are not expected to discuss any management issues, including threats to the areas;

(e) The EBSA description process facilitates scientific collaboration and information-sharing at national, subregional and regional levels, as demonstrated by the collective work by workshop participants with different expertise, contributing to each other's description of areas meeting the EBSA criteria;

23. Participating experts were invited through a selection process, based on nominations by CBD National Focal Points, using the selection criteria provided in the CBD notification dated 25 March 2019 (reference number 2019-036). Prior to the workshop, selected experts were asked to provide relevant scientific and technical information, in collaboration with relevant scientists within their respective countries, to support the workshop discussions, including by filling in the EBSA information template (appended to the notification above).

ITEM 4. REVIEW OF RELEVANT SCIENTIFIC DATA/INFORMATION/MAPS COMPILED FOR THE WORKSHOP

24. For the consideration of this item, the workshop had before it two information notes by the Executive Secretary that were prepared in support of the workshop deliberations: *Compilation of Relevant Scientific Information Submitted by Parties, Other Governments and Relevant Organizations in Support of the Workshop Objectives* (document CBD/EBSA/WS/2019/1/2), which was compiled based on submissions in response to the Secretariat's notification (2019-050, dated 28 May 2019), and *Data to Inform the CBD Regional Workshop to Facilitate the Description of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas in the North-East Atlantic Ocean* (document CBD/EBSA/WS/2019/1/3). The documents/references submitted prior to the workshop were made available for the information of workshop participants on the meeting website (https://www.cbd.int/meetings/EBSA-WS-2019-01).

25. Mr. Patrick Halpin (technical support team) provided a presentation that reviewed the relevant scientific data/information/maps compiled to support the workshop deliberations, based on document CBD/EBSA/WS/2019/1/3. The information provided in this presentation was considered in the description of areas meeting the EBSA criteria by the break-out groups. A summary of this presentation is provided in annex II.

26. Workshop participants who had submitted relevant scientific information using the EBSA templates prior to the workshop, as contained in the document CBD/EBSA/WS/2019/1/2, were invited to present their draft descriptions of areas potentially meeting the EBSA criteria.

27. Spatial data compiled for this workshop was available to workshop participants both in hard-copy maps as well as in a Geographic Information System (GIS) database, for their use, analysis and interpretation in the application of the EBSA criteria.

28. The workshop participants also noted the previous information collated for the regional EBSA process organized by the OSPAR Commission and NEAFC, in collaboration with the CBD Secretariat, in 2011 and 2013, and peer-reviewed by ICES in 2013,[4] the outputs of which were made available for the workshop discussions.

29. Workshop participants noted with appreciation the considerable amount of data/information gathered, including GIS data, for the workshop deliberation and highlighted the importance of making it available through the development of relevant information platforms (e.g., EBSA regional repository) at national and regional scales.

ITEM 5. DESCRIPTION OF ECOLOGICALLY OR BIOLOGICALLY SIGNIFICANT MARINE AREAS THROUGH THE APPLICATION OF THE SCIENTIFIC CRITERIA (DECISION IX/20, ANNEX I)

30. Building on the theme presentations provided in the previous agenda items, the workshop participants exchanged their views on possible ways of organizing their work under this agenda item. In this regard, participants noted the following points with regard to the description of areas meeting the EBSA criteria:

(a) The description of EBSAs is based on the scientific information and expert knowledge available at the time of the workshop, and, as the EBSA process is iterative and ongoing, there may be additional areas described as meeting the EBSA criteria in future regional or sub-regional workshops;

(b) In describing multiple ecological and/or biological components of a given area, participants should consider how these components may be interconnected as part of a system, and that, if separate components cannot be described as part of a coherent system approach, these components should be described separately;

(c) The EBSA criteria can be applied on all scales from global to local. Once a scale has been selected, however, the criteria are intended to be used to evaluate areas and ecosystem features in a context relative to other areas and features at the given scale;

(d) There are no thresholds that must be met, judgements are comparative to adjacent areas, and the current ranking system (e.g., high, medium, low, no information) for assessing the areas meeting each EBSA criterion is devised to facilitate better understanding of available scientific information in describing the areas with regard to the extent to which they meet different criteria. The current ranking system, however, does not intend to compare the importance of each criterion;

(e) Relative assessments are necessarily scale dependent. Relative significance of areas has generally been viewed from regional or large sub-regional scales;

[4] ICES OSPAR-NEAFC EBSA review.pdf

(f) Areas may meet multiple criteria, and that is important, but ranking at least one as high is also necessary for a proposed area to be described as an EBSA;

(g) Areas described to meet the EBSA criteria have ranged from relatively small sites to very extensive oceanographic features;

(h) Areas described to meet the EBSA criteria can be overlapped or nested;

(i) Difficulties are often encountered in applying EBSA criterion 4 (vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, and/or slow recovery). Criterion 4 applies to an area that contains a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery, not directly describing the anthropogenic threats or pressures affecting the areas.

31. This workshop was mandated to evaluate areas at a regional scale within the North-East Atlantic. However, the workshop considered that the entire region has significant ecological or biological features that should be viewed on a global scale. This perspective is presented in annex V of this report.

32. Participants recognized that indigenous peoples and local communities in the North-East Atlantic have a significant amount of endemic, traditional knowledge relevant to the description of EBSAs, and that traditional knowledge should be appropriately considered and engaged in the description of areas meeting the EBSA criteria through the full and effective participation of indigenous peoples and local communities. Participants noted that indigenous peoples and local communities have long been part of the North-East Atlantic ecosystem, and its biodiversity has been the basis for ways of life for indigenous peoples for millennia and is still a vital part of their material and spiritual existence. They further noted the importance of recognizing the linkage between culture and biodiversity, given that healthy and productive marine and ecosystems are the foundation of indigenous cultures, traditions and identities. Although the workshop did not consider many areas where indigenous peoples and local communities live, indigenous peoples and local communities have always known that remote areas outside their immediate environment are important areas for refuge and homes to other beings and respected as such. If those areas had been considered in the context of this workshop, traditional knowledge on features such fishing grounds, spawning areas, streams, fauna, bird habitats, seabed conditions and also knowledge of customary use of areas, areas of social and economic importance, cultural heritage sites, subsistence use areas and sacred sites would have been highly relevant.

33. For effective review of available scientific information and assessment of potential areas meeting the EBSA criteria, the workshop participants were split into two break-out groups. These sub-groupings were not based on any geographic, ecological, biological, political or any other criteria or considerations, nor based on any existing sub-groupings used in any other processes. The participants were split into these sub-groupings only to facilitate a more efficient mode of working, especially in light of limitations posed by the relatively small number of technical support staff present at the workshop to support the description of areas meeting the EBSA criteria. These sub-groupings are as follows:

(a) Northern part of the North-East Atlantic;

(b) Southern part of the North-East Atlantic.

34. Each break-out group was advised to focus on the following in their discussion:

(a) Review the layers of information available, including GIS maps of ocean features, other types of data sets, primary and other scientific and technical reports and publications, and expert knowledge, relative to each of the CBD EBSA criteria;

(b) Based on the review of available scientific information, describe areas that may be considered to be relatively ecologically or biologically significant, based on their relative importance on one or more of the criteria;

(c) Document the description of each area considered to be ecologically or biologically significant, using the EBSA template and augmenting the template with narrative text and maps considered necessary to reflect the rationales of the group. Where appropriate, the narrative text may report on strengths and weaknesses in the information used in the description of the area, and key uncertainties;

(d) Review existing compilation of templates and refine them as necessary, considering comments provided by the Secretariat and the workshop plenary, in terms of scientific data/information, and polygon boundaries of areas to be mapped;

(e) Where appropriate, consider merging areas described in draft descriptions with other areas or refining them into smaller areas so that the description can accurately cover the ecosystem features under consideration;

(f) Identify the needs for future scientific research, scientific collaboration, data/information sharing, and capacity building to further enable application of the EBSA criteria in the region, particularly for areas or types of information for which there is a lack of scientific information or expert knowledge at this workshop, as inputs to agenda item 6;

(g) Work with technical support team to define the polygon boundary of areas of your EBSA description on the GIS map; and

(h) Invite relevant international/regional experts available at the meeting for their expert opinions.

35. Participants were assisted by the technical support team, including GIS operators, who made hard/electronic copies of the maps available for the deliberation of the break-out group discussion, and provided data in a GIS database, and supported data analysis and interpretation as well as mapping of potential areas meeting the EBSA criteria.

36. During the break-out group discussions, participants working on the description of areas meeting EBSA criteria drew approximate polygons of areas meeting the EBSA criteria on a map provided by the technical support team.

37. The results of the break-out groups were reported at the plenary for consideration. At the plenary sessions, workshop participants reviewed the description of areas meeting the EBSA criteria proposed by the break-out group sessions, including the draft descriptions, using templates provided by the CBD Secretariat, and considered them for inclusion in the final list of areas meeting EBSA criteria.

38. The workshop participants agreed on descriptions of 17 areas meeting the EBSA criteria. The map of described areas is contained in annex VI. They are listed in annex VII and described in its appendix.

ITEM 6. IDENTIFICATION OF GAPS AND NEEDS FOR FURTHER ELABORATION IN DESCRIBING AREAS MEETING EBSA CRITERIA, INCLUDING THE NEED TO DEVELOP SCIENTIFIC CAPACITY AND FUTURE SCIENTIFIC COLLABORATION

39. Building on the workshop deliberations, the workshop participants were invited to identify, through break-out group sessions and plenary discussion, gaps and needs for further elaboration in describing areas meeting the EBSA criteria, including the need for scientific information, scientific capacity development and scientific collaboration. The results of the plenary and subgroup discussions are compiled in annex VIII.

40. Workshop participants discussed Arctic sea ice habitats in the context of the application of the EBSA criteria in this region, noting specific challenges in describing such features during this workshop, following previous work in describing these features as meeting the EBSA criteria at the 2011 Joint OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD Scientific Workshop on the identification of EBSAs in the North-East Atlantic and

the 2014 CBD Arctic Regional Workshop to Facilitate the Description of EBSAs. The results of the plenary and subgroup discussions on this issue are provided in the appendix to annex VIII.

ITEM 7. OTHER MATTERS

41. No other matters were discussed.

ITEM 8. ADOPTION OF THE REPORT

42. The participants considered and adopted the workshop report on the basis of a draft report prepared and presented by the co-chairs, with some changes.

43. The participants agreed that any additional scientific references would be provided to the CBD Secretariat by workshop participants within one week of the closing of the workshop in order to further refine the description of areas meeting EBSA criteria contained in annex VII and its appendix.

ITEM 9. CLOSURE OF THE WORKSHOP

44. In closing the workshop, the participants expressed their appreciation to the Government of Sweden for their hospitality and thanked the workshop co-chairs for their leadership in steering the workshop deliberation. They also thanked the rapporteurs, facilitators, and technical team for their valuable contributions. They acknowledged with thanks the hard work and efficient servicing by the Secretariat staff for successfully organizing and concluding the workshop.

45. The workshop was closed at 6pm on Friday, 27 September 2019.

Annex I

LIST OF PARTICIPANTS

PARTIES

Belgium
1. Mr. Steven Degraer
Senior scientist,
Royal Belgian Institute of Natural Sciences
Brussels - BELGIUM
sdegraer@naturalsciences.be

Denmark (Kingdom of)
2. Mr. Karsten Dahl
Section leader/Senior Advisor in Marine Biology
Department of Bioscience
Aarhus University
Roskilde, Denmark
E-mail: kda@dmu.dk

3. Mr. Ib Krag Petersen
Senior Advisor
Wildlife Ecology
Institute of Bioscience
Aarhus University
Rønde, Denmark
E-mail: ikp@bios.au.dk

4. Mr. Tom Christensen
Section Leader, Section of Arctic Environment, Aarhus University
Arctic Research Centre/ Danish Centre of Energy and Environment,
Institute of Bioscience, Aarhus University
Roskilde, Denmark
toch@bios.au.dk

European Union
5. Juan-Pablo Pertierra Vera
Principal Administrator
European Commission
Brussels, Belgium
E-mail: Juan-Pablo.Pertierra@ec.europa.eu

Germany
6. Mr. Henning von Nordheim
Head
Directorate "Marine Nature Conservation"
German Federal Agency for Nature Conservation
Isle of Vilm - Branch Office
Putbus/Rügen Germany
E-mail: henning.von.nordheim@bfn.de

7. Mr. Boris Dorschel
Head
Bathymetry Group,
Alfred Wegener Institute
Helmholtz Centre for Polar and Marine Research
Bremerhaven, Germany
E-mail: Boris.Dorschel@awi.de

Iceland
8. Mr. Gudmundur Gudmundsson
Deputy Director
Icelandic Institute of Natural History
Gardsbær, Iceland
E-mail: gg@ni.is

Ireland
9. Mr. Oliver Ó Cadhla
Marine Environment Section, Water Division,
Department of Housing, Planning and Local Government, Ireland
E-mail: oliver.ocadhla@housing.gov.ie

10. Mr. David Lyons
National Parks & Wildlife Service
Department of Culture, Heritage and the Gaeltacht
Galway, Ireland
E-mail: David.Lyons@CHG.GOV.IE

Netherlands
11. Mr. Jeroen Vis
Coordinator
North Sea and Nature Team Leader—Marine
Ministry of Agriculture, Nature and Food Quality
The Hague, Netherlands
E-mail: g.a.j.vis@minlnv.nl

Norway
12. Ms. Cecilie Von Quillfeldt
Norwegian Polar Institute
Tromsø, Norway
E-mail: cecilie.quillfeldt@npolar.no

13. Mr. Åge Høines
Scientist
Institute of Marine Research
Bergen, Norway
E-mail: aageh@hi.no

Portugal

14. Ms. Maria Ana Manso Dionísio
Head Scientist
Portugal EBSA process,
Institute for Nature Conservation and Forests
Lisbon, Portugal
E-mail: anamdionisio@gmail.com

15. Ms. Maria Ana Almeida Colaço
Marine Environmental Research Center-MARE/Instituto do Mar-IMAR
Departamento de Oceanografia e Pescas
Universidade dos Açores
Horta, Portugal
E-mail: maria.aa.colaco@uac.pt

Russian Federation

16. Ms. Tina N. Molodtsova
Senior Scientist
P.P. Shirshov Institute of Oceanology RAS
Moscow Russia
E-mail: tina@ocean.ru

Spain

17. Ms. Ana de la Torriente
Researcher
Spanish Institute of Oceanography
Cantabria, Spain
E-mail: ana.torriente@ieo.es

Sweden

18. Ms. Pia Norling
Senior analyst/adviser
Swedish Agency for Marine and Water Management
Gothenburg, Sweden
E-mail: pia.norling@havochvatten.se

19. Mr. Staffan Danielsson
Head of Section
Natural Environment division
Ministry of the Environment
Stockholm, Sweden
E-mail: staffan.danielsson@regeringskansliet.se

20. Mr. Mattias Sköld
Senior Scientist
Institute of Marine Research
Department of Aquatic Resources
Swedish University of Agriculture
Fiskebäckskil, Sweden
E-mail: Mattias.skold@slu.se

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

21. Ms. Kerry Howell
Associate Professor (Reader) in Deep-Sea Ecology
University of Plymouth
Plymouth, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
E-mail: kerry.howell@plymouth.ac.uk

22. Mr. J. Murray Roberts
Professor of Marine Biology
University of Edinburgh
Edinburgh, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
E-mail: Murray.Roberts@ed.ac.uk

INDIGENOUS PEOPLES AND LOCAL COMMUNITIES

23. Mr. Beaska Niillas
Saami fisher/Traditional handicrafter
Saami Council
Kirkenes, Norway
E-mail: beaskaniillas@gmail.com

INTERGOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATIONS

International Seabed Authority Secretariat

24. Ms. Jihyun Lee
Director
Office of Environmental Management of Mineral Resources
International Seabed Authority Secretariat
Kingston, Jamaica
E-mail: jlee@isa.org.jm

North-East Atlantic Fisheries Commission

25. Mr. Darius Campbell
Secretary
North East Atlantic Fisheries Commission
London, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

E-mail: Darius@neafc.org

OSPAR Commission
26. Ms. Lena Avellan
Deputy Secretary
OSPAR Commission
London, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
E-mail: lena.avellan@ospar.org

ORGANIZATIONS

BirdLife International
27. Ms. Maria Ana Figueiredo Peixe Dia
Marine Science Coordinator
BirdLife International
Cambridge, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
E-mail: maria.dias@birdlife.org

Global Ocean Biodiversity Initiative
28. Mr. David Johnson
Director, Seascape Consultants Ltd.
Romsey, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
E-mail: david.johnson@seascapeconsultants.co.uk

International Council for Exploration of the Sea (ICES) Secretariat
29. Mr. Eugene Nixon
Vice Chair
Advisory Committee
International Council for Exploration of the Sea (ICES)
Copenhagen, Denmark
E-mail: eugene.nixon@ices.dk

IUCN Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force
30. Mr. Michael Tetley
Coordinator
IMMA Global Programme
IUCN Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force
Dervaig, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
E-mail:immacoordinator@gmail.com; m.j.tetley@gmail.com

IUCN – Fisheries Expert Group
31. Mr. Eskild Kirkegaard
Independent Consultant
Holte, Denmark
E-mail: kirkegaardeskild@gmail.com

World Wide Fund for Nature (WWF)
32. Mr. Tim Packeiser
Senior Policy Advisor Ocean Governance
International WWF-Centre for Marine Conservation
World Wide Fund for Nature
Hamburg, Germany
E-mail: tim.packeiser@wwf.de

OBSERVERS

33. Ms. Anna Karlsson
Swedish Agency for Marine and Water Management
Gothenberg, Sweden
E-mail: Anna.karlsson@havochvatten.se

34. Ms. Jenny Hedman
Head of section
Swedish Ministry of the Environment
Natural Environment Division
Stockholm, Sweden
E-mail: jenny.hedman@regeringskansliet.se

35. Ms. Hedvig Hogfors
Analyst
Aquatic Biodiversity and Protected Areas
Department for Marine and Water Management
Swedish Agency for Marine and Water Management
Gothenberg, Sweden
E-mail: hedvig.hogfors@havochvatten.se

TECHNICAL SUPPORT TEAM

36. Mr. Patrick N. Halpin
Associate Professor of Marine Geospatial Ecology
Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab
Nicholas School of the Environment
Duke University
Beaufort, United States of America
E-mail: phalpin@duke.edu

37. Mr. Jesse Cleary
Research Analyst
Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab, Nicholas School of the Environment
Duke University
Beaufort, United States of America
E-mail: jesse.cleary@duke.edu

38. Ms. Sarah DeLand
Research Associate
Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab
Nicholas School of the Environment
Duke University
Beaufort, United States of America
E-mail: sarah.deland@duke.edu

SECRETARIAT OF THE CONVENTION ON BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY

39. Mr. Joseph Appiott
Associate Programme Management Officer
Marine, Coastal and Island Biodiversity
Secretariat of the Convention on Biological Diversity
United Nations Environment Programme
Montreal, Canada
E-mail: joseph.appiott@cbd.int

40. Jacqueline Grekin
Programme Assistant
Marine, Coastal and Island Biodiversity
Secretariat of the Convention on Biological Diversity
United Nations Environment Programme
Montreal, Canada
E-mail: jacqueline.grekin@un.org

41. Mr. Christopher Barrio Froján[5]
Seascape Consultants Ltd
Romsey, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
E-mail: christopher.barrio@seascapeconsultants.co.uk

5 Providing support to CBD Secretariat

Annex II

SUMMARY OF THEME PRESENTATIONS

Mr. Joseph Appiott (Secretariat of the Convention on Biological Diversity)

Mr. Appiott delivered a presentation outlining the background of the workshop in the context of the Strategic Plan for Biodiversity 2011-2020 and its Aichi Biodiversity Targets. He highlighted the close interlinkages between the Aichi Targets and the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs), particularly SDG 14. He described the relevant work of the Convention on marine and coastal biodiversity, including its work on facilitating the description of EBSAs, addressing the impacts of threats on marine biodiversity, management tools and guidelines, and the capacity-development activities of the Sustainable Ocean Initiative. He introduced the process for describing EBSAs, beginning with the adoption of the EBSA criteria at the ninth meeting of the Conference of the Parties (COP 9) to the CBD and the call by the tenth meeting of the Conference of the Parties (COP 10) to organize a series of regional EBSA workshops. Since 2011, the CBD Secretariat has convened 15 regional workshops (including the present workshop) to facilitate the description of areas meeting the EBSA criteria, pursuant to COP decisions X/29, XI/17, XII/22 and XIII/12. So far, a total of 321 areas have been described as meeting the EBSA criteria. These areas have been considered by the CBD COP at its eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth and fourteenth meetings, which have requested that the summary reports on the outputs of these regional EBSA workshops be submitted to the United Nations General Assembly and its relevant working groups. Mr. Appiott went on to emphasize that the application of the EBSA criteria is a scientific and technical exercise and that areas found to meet the EBSA criteria may require enhanced conservation and management measures, which can be achieved through a variety of means, including MPAs and impact assessments, for example. He emphasized that EBSAs are not MPAs, nor fishing closures, and that the identification of EBSAs and the selection of conservation and management measures is a matter for States and competent intergovernmental organizations. He then pointed out that the EBSA process may support the strengthening of the region’s efforts to meet its goals for conservation and sustainable use of marine biodiversity, by facilitating scientific collaboration and increasing awareness.

Mosaic: a new framework to facilitate ecosystem approach to spatial management (by Ms. Hedvig Hogfors, (Swedish Agency for Marine and Water Management)

Ms. Hogfors introduced the MOSAIC framework, which will become a Swedish national guideline. The objective is to facilitate an ecosystem approach to marine spatial management (e.g., protected areas, coastal zone management and marine spatial planning) at different, but integrative, scales of governance. Based on the EBSA criteria, it serves as a practical step-by-step tool to identify ecologically or biologically important areas in coherent networks, which can be used to support informed trade-off decisions. The framework has been tested and used by three county administrative boards, four coastal municipalities and a scientific cross-disciplinary study involving experts in both ecology and law. To enable incorporation of new scientific knowledge, to follow changes over time, to minimize subjectivity of assessments and to be transparent, a key feature in MOSAIC is the use of predefined biotic ecosystem components. Lists of components and their associated values have been assessed through several processes, including several workshops with local and scientific experts in marine ecology. Moreover, the framework is designed to include complex spatial analyses and detailed site-specific information.

The work of the OSPAR Commission in a regional context (by Ms. Lena Avellan, OSPAR Commission)

Ms. Avellan explained that the OSPAR Convention is the mechanism by which 15 Governments and the European Union cooperate to protect the marine environment of the North-East Atlantic. The OSPAR Convention was created in 1992 based on previous conventions to prevent pollution. Annex V on the protection and conservation of the ecosystems and biological diversity of the maritime area was signed in 1998 and forms the basis for OSPAR work on biodiversity. Key achievements by the OSPAR Commission on biodiversity include the OSPAR network of marine protected areas, which, by 1 October 2018, included 495 areas covering 6.4 per cent of the OSPAR maritime area. OSPAR has listed species and habitats that are threatened and/or declining, for which regional priority action is needed. For these listed species, OSPAR has adopted 54 Recommendations describing protective actions that are to be taken by Contracting Parties nationally as well as collectively by OSPAR. Ms. Avellan explained that regularly developed status assessments of the North-East Atlantic are a core area of work, with the Intermediate Assessment published in 2017 being the latest development. OSPAR is currently preparing to deliver the next Quality Status Assessment to be published in 2023 (QSR 2023). The aim of the QSR 2023 is to evaluate the North-East Atlantic Environment Strategy 2010-2020. This strategy will be followed by a new strategy for the period 2020-2030, which is currently being developed by OSPAR and due for publication at the Ministerial Meeting in July 2020. She explained that the present EBSA workshop would contribute to OSPAR work by bringing forward a global perspective and insight to marine biodiversity. The EBSA process will contribute to the efforts of making available scientific information on a regional scale to policy makers when implementing the ecosystem-based approach to managing human activities.

EBSA Context: North-East Atlantic Fisheries in Areas beyond National Jurisdiction (by Mr. Darius Campbell, NEAFC)

Mr. Campbell set out the fisheries perspectives from the North-East Atlantic to provide context for the workshop deliberations. He described the binding fisheries management and conservation provisions made under the Commission, in particular on area-based management with respect to Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems. In addition, he explained the background for inter-sectoral cooperation with OSPAR, which was enhanced through cooperation on the identification of EBSAs. In terms of EBSAs, Mr. Campbell described the process undertaken jointly by OSPAR and NEAFC since their workshop in 2011 with CBD, which had developed 10 EBSA proposals. These 10 proposals were subjected to a review process under the International Council for Exploration of the Seas (ICES), leading to a refined suite of four final proposals in 2013. Due to other circumstances the process stalled until 2018, when OSPAR and NEAFC requested the CBD to organize the current workshop, inviting it also to include consideration of the 2013 proposals in its process. Mr. Campbell wished the workshop every success and noted that the outcomes would no doubt help inform ICES in its future scientific advice to NEAFC.

ICES approach as evidence provider to EBM (by Mr. Eugene Nixon, ICES)

Mr. Nixon presented information on the status of ICES as an intergovernmental scientific organization and the processes used to provide independent evidence-based advice on marine-related issues. Specific examples of ICES advice on EBSAs, including advice to OSPAR and NEAFC on four EBSA template descriptions, and to NEAFC on Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems in the North-East Atlantic, were outlined. Sources of ICES data, information and advice, that could potentially be useful to the EBSA Workshop, were identified.

Regional Environmental Management Planning Process of International Seabed Authority (by Ms. Jihyun Lee, International Seabed Authority Secretariat)

Ms. Lee introduced the work undertaken by the ISA in the past 25 years, under the mandate of the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea for the protection of the marine environment (Article 145 of the Convention), in terms of its application of the precautionary approach to regulating activities in the Area. Building on this mandate, the ISA Strategic Plan (2019-2023) elaborates the specific approaches and measures in the Strategic Direction 3 (Protect the marine environment), focusing on an adaptive, practical and technically feasible regulatory framework, regional environmental management plan, environmental impact/risk assessment, environmental monitoring, modeling, data management and information access. Scientific data/information being provided by contractors through their exploration activities critically underpins the effective implementation of ISA’s environmental management system, together with scientific analysis, modeling and observations being undertaken by other scientific groups. The data submitted by contractors are now compiled and collated through the ISA database (“DeepData), through which environmental data has been publicly available since July 2019, when it was publicly launched. Scientific collaboration among contractors and relevant scientific groups will be the key to successful development of regional environmental management plans (REMPs), including through the forthcoming workshops to be held in Portugal (November 2019) and the Russian Federation (June 2020) for the Area of the northern mid-Atlantic ridge. Likewise, ISA will apply coherent and coordinated approaches at various steps of the REMP development to ensure effective and meaningful engagement of stakeholders in a transparent manner within the auspices of the ISA.

Approaches and experiences in the description of EBSAs (by Mr. Patrick Halpin, Technical Support Team)

Mr. Halpin reviewed the seven criteria adopted by the Conference of the Parties at its ninth meeting (decision IX/20) for the description of EBSAs. Mr. Halpin introduced the definition of each criterion, provided some context for its application at regional workshops, as well as some guidance on its use, as contained in annex I to that decision. He also described four types of areas meeting the EBSA criteria, comprising both fixed and dynamic features. He then summarized some of the lessons that have been learned about the application of the criteria, based on experience with their use in other CBD workshops, addressing the questions of scale, aggregation/clustering, and overlapping and nested EBSAs, among others. He stressed that the criteria were designed to be applied individually with regard to their relative significance within the region under consideration. Mr. Halpin also noted that only the inherent properties of EBSAs are considered, rather than existing threats or management considerations. The presentation also covered the EBSA description process and the completion of the EBSA template, as well as the types of information, maps and references that can supplement templates.

Review of relevant scientific data/information/maps compiled for the workshop (by Mr. Patrick Halpin, Technical Support Team)

Mr. Halpin reviewed the compilation of scientific data and information prepared for the workshop and presented in the document entitled *Data to Inform the Regional Workshop to Facilitate the Description of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas (EBSAs) in the North-East Atlantic Ocean* (CBD/EBSA/WS/2019/1/3). He explained that the baseline data layers developed for this workshop closely follow the data types prepared for previous EBSA workshops, to provide consistency between regional efforts, along with many data specific to the North-East Atlantic region. More than 75 data layers were prepared for this workshop. The presentation covered three general types of data: (1) biogeographic data, (2) biological data and (3) physical data. The biogeographic data focused on major biogeographic classification systems. The biological data portion of the presentation covered a variety of data sources to include data and statistical indices compiled by the Ocean Biogeographic Information System. The physical data layers included bathymetric and physical substrate data, oceanographic features and remotely sensed data. The data report also identified several published scientific papers that listed additional data resources. Mr. Halpin noted that there were likely a significant number of scientific data sets and papers for the North-East Atlantic region that were not located in internationally accessible sites and recommended that the workshop participants rely on local experts to help identify critical regional data sets and analyses that could be identified to supplement their efforts. Specific information on the data layers is provided in detail in the data report referred to above.

Annex III

SHARING EXPERIENCES FROM RELEVANT NATIONAL PROCESSES APPLYING THE EBSA CRITERIA OR OTHER SIMILAR CRITERIA FOR IDENTIFYING MARINE AREAS OF PARTICULAR IMPORTANCE[6]

As noted in paragraph 19, above, Germany, Greenland (Kingdom of Denmark), Iceland, Ireland, Netherlands, Norway, and the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland did not include their EEZs in the workshop scope due to the fact that those Parties had conducted, or were in the process of conducting, relevant national processes applying the EBSA criteria or other similar criteria for identifying marine areas of particular importance. Workshop participants from those Parties were invited to provide brief summaries of these national processes. Sweden and the Russian Federation had already described EBSAs in their EEzs in previous CBD regional EBSA workshops that overlapped with the scope of the present workshop, and did not describe additional features or information in their EEZs.

The workshop also noted, with respect to the national processes of EU Member States, that the EU environmental policy in the marine domain include the Marine Strategy Framework Directive (MSFD),[7] the Common Fisheries Policy (CFP), the 7th Environment Action Programme, the 2020 Biodiversity Strategy, and legislation such as the Birds Directive,[8] Habitats Directive[9] and the Water Framework Directive. The MSFD, as the environmental maritime pillar, is the key component of the EU's policy response to achieve healthy, clean and productive seas. The objective of the MSFD is for European marine waters to achieve "good environmental status" (GES) by 2020. It aims to promote the sustainable use of the seas and conserve marine ecosystems through the implementation of an ecosystem-based approach to the management of human activities in the marine environment.

The MSFD requires Member States to adopt Programmes of Measures to achieve good environmental status in their marine waters. These Programmes of Measures include spatial protection measures contributing to coherent and representative networks of marine protected areas (MPAs). MPAs are a measure used across Europe's seas for protecting vulnerable species and habitats that have been referenced in both the Birds and Habitat Directives.

GERMANY

Since the 1980s, a substantial number of MPAs have been established and are protected by national law as marine nature reserves or national parks in the German waters of the North Sea. Today, this MPA network covers as much as 43 per cent of the German North Sea (see Figure 1). All MPAs are Natura 2000 sites, i.e., protected according to European law. The criteria that were applied to select these MPAs are almost identical to the selection criteria for CBD EBSAs. Each German MPA is also listed as an OSPAR MPA according to OSPAR's selection criteria.

In the territorial sea, the national parks in the Wadden Sea in Schleswig-Holstein, Lower Saxony and Hamburg completely protect the coastal areas of the North Sea coast and all have management plans in

---

[6] Other Parties participating in this workshop, but not included in this annex, (i.e., Denmark (mainland), Portugal, Spain) have their own respective national processes that have contributed to the description of EBSAs during this workshop. Information on areas in the respective waters of these Parties described by this workshop as meeting the EBSA criteria is provided in annex VII and its appendix.

[7] Marine Strategy Framework Directive: Directive 2008/56/EC aims to achieve Good Environmental Status (GES) of the EU's marine waters by 2020 and to protect the resource base upon which marine-related economic and social activities depend.

[8] Birds Directive: Directive 2009/147/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 30 November 2009 on the conservation of wild birds (codified version of Directive 79/409/EEC as amended).

[9] Habitats Directive: Council Directive 92/43/EEC of 21 May 1992 on the conservation of natural habitats and of wild fauna and flora (Also available the consolidated version of 1 January 2007 with the latest updates of the annexes.

place. The area sizes are 137 km² for the smallest national park in the coastal waters off Hamburg, 3,458 km² in Lower Saxony and 4,451 km² in Schleswig-Holstein. They all have the status of World Heritage sites, and some are designated as Ramsar sites.

In these national parks, sand and mud flats, seagrass meadows, sandbanks, salt marshes, beaches, dunes and riverine estuaries are protected, with special focus on conservation of natural processes and fauna and flora typical to the Wadden Sea. The mudflats are of global outstanding importance as resting places for migratory birds and are key moulting areas for birds from Nordic countries. About 10-12 million wading birds, geese, ducks and seagulls use the entire Wadden Sea area. In addition, increasing populations of grey seals and habour seals have their resting and nursery places here.

In the German waters of the North Sea, there are three large MPAs: the Doggerbank, Borkum Riffgrund and Sylt Outer Reef. The Sylt Outer Reef, with 5,603 km², is also the largest marine nature conservation reserve in German waters. In these areas, some of which are far offshore, conservation efforts focus on geogenic reefs and sandbanks and their characteristic species together with species-rich benthic communities of coarse sands and muddy areas. In addition, the reproduction areas of harbour porpoises are important conservation features. Furthermore, these MPAs are very important for large numbers of resting and moulting sea divers, sea ducks and seagulls, particularly in winter and spring.

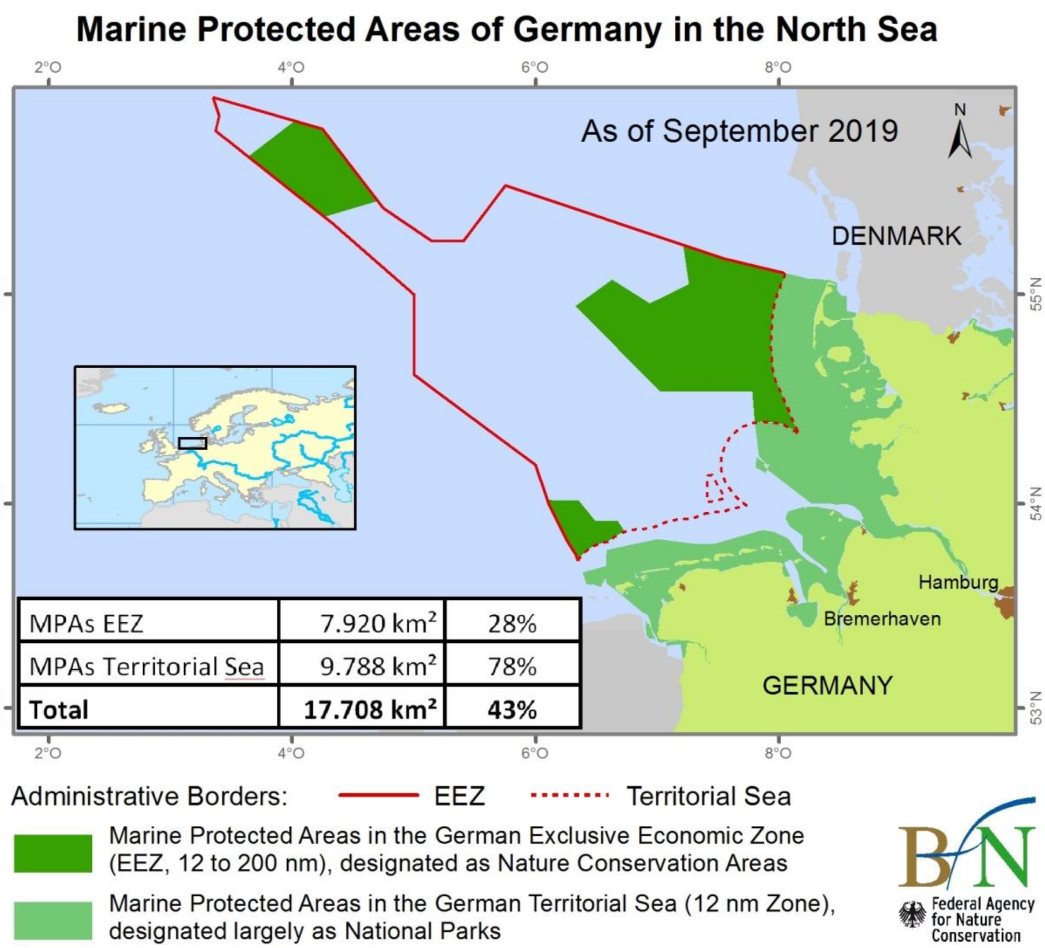


Figure 1. Marine protected Areas in the German North Sea, September 2019.

GREENLAND (KINGDOM OF DENMARK)

Over the past decade, the marine environment around Greenland has been evaluated to identify marine areas and coastlines vulnerable to oil spills. This includes key habitats, migration routes and the population size and ecology of sensitive species and resources in Greenland. These investigations have resulted in a number of strategic environmental impact assessments (SEIAs) for hydrocarbon exploration and exploitation activities (Boertmann, D. & Mosbech 2017; Boertmann et al. 2013; Boertmann, D. & Mosbech, A. 2011; Frederiksen et al. 2012; Merkel et al. 2012). The SEIAs are conducted for the Greenland Bureau of Minerals and Petroleum by scientific environmental institutions (Danish Center for Environment and Energy of Aarhus University and the Greenland Institute of Natural Resources). The SEIAs build on peer-reviewed scientific literature and supplementary scientific studies.

In recent years, several other initiatives to identify valuable ecosystems and biodiversity hot spots in Greenland have been carried out. These are mainly based on the data assembled in the above-mentioned SEIA reports and on the monitoring of living resources carried out by the Greenland Institute for Natural Resources.

In 2012, a study was conducted to identify ecologically valuable and sensitive marine areas around Greenland, based on the International Maritime Organization´s criteria for Particularly Sensitive Sea Areas (PSSA) (Christensen et al. 2012; Mosbech, Christensen & Falk in AMAP/ CAFF/ SDWG, 2013 – the AMSA II C report). A comparison between the 11 criteria for designating PSSAs with the EBSA criteria demonstrates that they are broadly similar (Skjoldal and Taropova, 2010 & AMAP/ CAFF/ SDWG, 2013). This process showed that most of the coastal and offshore waters around Greenland host sensitive marine resources at least part of the year. Twelve marine areas have been identified to meet the PSSA criteria.

Parallel to these studies, Greenland has initiated a national project analyzing existing biodiversity hotspots. A report identifies biodiversity hotspots based on occurring species and ecosystem data in West Greenland and the southeastern part of Greenland (Christensen et al. 2016). Included in this study is a thorough analysis of the distribution of species (including red-listed species), nature types and areas with high biological diversity. The study covers where and when these species are concentrated in specific areas and/ or can be sensitive to human activities. Each of the identified areas is mapped in GIS where all occurring resources/species are represented by a separate layer. These layers are ranked, based on internationally accepted criteria (such as the EBSA criteria, KBA criteria, Ramsar Criteria, areas with red listed species, etc.) and nationally formulated criteria (e.g., importance of ecosystem services). Based on this, an overlay analysis has been performed to reveal where in Greenland's biological hotspots are found. Twenty-three areas were identified as ecologically and biologically valuable areas. In the second phase (which is in progress), a report is planned to assess important areas in the north-eastern part of Greenland.

References

AMAP/CAFF/SDWG, 2013. Identification of Arctic marine areas of heightened ecological and cultural significance: Arctic Marine Shipping Assessment (AMSA) IIc. Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo. 114 pp. ISBN-978-82-7971-081-3 http://www.amap.no/documents/download/1548

Boertmann D, Mosbech A (eds) 2017. Baffin Bay. An updated strategic environmental impact assessment of petroleum activities in the Greenland part of the Baffin Bay. – Scientific Report from DCE – Danish Centre for Environment and Energy No. 215, 319 pp.

Boertmann, D., Mosbech, A., Schiedek, D. & Dünweber, M. (eds.) 2013. Disko West. A strategic environmental impact assessment of hydrocarbon activities. Aarhus University, DCE – Danish Centre for Environment and Energy, 306 pp. Scientifi c Report from DCE – Danish Centre for Environment and Energy No. 71. http://dce2.au.dk/pub/SR71.pdf

Boertmann, D. & Mosbech, A. (eds.) 2011. The western Greenland Sea, a strategic environmental impact assessment of hydrocarbon activities. Aarhus University, DCE – Danish Centre for Environment and Energy, 268 pp. - Scientific Report from DCE – Danish Centre for Environment and Energy no. 22. http://www2.dmu.dk/Pub/SR22.pdf

Boertmann, DM, Kyhn, LA & Petersen, IK 2019, *Seabirds and marine mammals in the eastern Greenland Sea, August-September 2017. Results from an aerial survey*. Scienific Report from DCE, nr. 335.

Christensen, T, Aastrup, P, Boye, T, Boertmann, D, Hedeholm, R, Johansen, KL, Merkel, FR, Rosing-Asvid, A, Bay, C, Blicher, M, Clausen, DS, Ugarte, F, Arendt, KE, Burmeister, A, Topp-Jørgensen, E, Retzel, A, Hammeken, N, Falk, K, Frederiksen, M, Bjerrum, M & Mosbech, A 2016, *Biologiske interesseområder i Vest- og Sydøstgrønland: Kortlægning af vigtige biologiske områder* . Teknisk rapport fra DCE - Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi, bind 89.

Christensen, T., Falk, K., Boye, T., Ugarte, F., Boertmann, D. & Mosbech, A. (2012). Identifi kation af sårbare marine områder i den grønlandske/danske del af Arktis. Aarhus Universitet, DCE – Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi. 72 pp. http://www2.dmu.dk/pub/sr43.pdf

Frederiksen, M., Boertmann, D., Ugarte, F. & Mosbech, A. (eds) 2012. South Greenland. A Strategic Environmental Impact Assessment of hydrocarbon activities in the Greenland sector of the Labrador Sea and the southeast Davis Strait. Aarhus University, DCE – Danish Centre for Environment and Energy, 220 pp. Scientific Report from DCE – Danish Centre for Environment and Energy No. 23 http://www.dmu.dk/Pub/SR23.pdf

Merkel, F., Boertmann, D., Mosbech, A. & Ugarte, F (eds). 2012. The Davis Strait. A preliminary strategic environmental impact assessment of hydrocarbon activities in the eastern Davis Strait. Aarhus University, DCE – Danish Centre for Environment and Energy, 280 pp. Scientific Report from DCE – Danish Centre for Environment and Energy No. 15. http://www.dmu.dk/Pub/SR15.pdf

ICELAND

Iceland uses an ecosystem-based management programme for sustainable use and protection of natural marine resources. The objective is to maintain the structure, functioning and productivity of the ecosystem as a whole, which are under continuous scrutiny. As a part of the strictly regulated catch management system in Icelandic waters, various areas are protected to a different degree. Closures are concordant with international agreements ratified by Icelandic authorities, including CBD, OSPAR, IUCN and ICES. The protected areas are of two main types: a) temporal and flexible closures, mainly to protect livelihood and productivity of fish stocks, and b) permanent closures for the protection of important and vulnerable habitats and species, like cold-water coral areas and hydrothermal vents that have been fully protected against bottom fisheries.

Mapping of vulnerable marine ecosystems has been conducted intermittently since 2004 and further mapping is planned in the coming years. Furthermore, as of 2017 the Marine and Freshwater Research Institute initiated a 12-year programme, with the objective to map with high resolution the seabed within the 200-mile exclusive economic zone. Such bathymetric maps are increasingly important to science. The topography and the characteristics of the seabed are fundamental parameters for the habitats and ecosystems of the sea floor. This information will be, and is being, used in further development of the management plan for sustainable use and protection of the marine ecosystem.

IRELAND

Ireland is engaged in analogous processes for the protection of ecologically and environmentally important areas. Ireland, as a member of the European Union, is committed to Directives derived to protect significant ecological features and to uphold and achieve environmental standards.

With the transposition of the Birds Directive (2009/147/EC), Ireland undertook to designate Special Protection Areas (SPAs) for these species' conservation. Currently, many SPAs have been created at the coastal margin, and further sites in the marine area are anticipated in the future.

Article 3 of the Habitats Directive (1992/43/EC) requires the creation of sites for the conservation of selected habitats and species. Eighty-eight marine sites are currently designated, and we will shortly be analyzing an extensive benthic data set along the continental shelf margin with the view to assessing whether more sites may be warranted for reef habitat in particular. Ireland considers it has achieved its objective to designate enough sites for the other qualifying habitats and species.

The final important piece of European legislation of relevance to marine EBSAs is the Marine Strategy Framework Directive (2008/56/EC). This Directive, coupled with 1992 OSPAR Convention, seeks to designate MPAs for various natural features, with a particular emphasis on threatened, declining or vulnerable habitats and species. Currently there are 19 MPAs nominated, all of which coincide with the Natura network established under the Habitats and Birds Directives. As part of its ongoing programme of measures, Ireland will shortly begin a process to identify and develop the strategic and legal instruments, as well as candidate areas and features that will drive the future designation of additional MPAs. This is expected to consider, *inter alia*, the standardized qualifying criteria used in the EBSA process, and associated guidance, as potential tools for use in this national undertaking.

NETHERLANDS

The Dutch North Sea Policy aims to ensure that the North Sea will continue to be a clean, healthy and productive sea in the future. The ecosystem is functioning optimally and is resilient, the water is clean and the use of the North Sea is sustainable. In that way, the North Sea offers perspectives for nature and the environment but also for economic activities. Using an area-based approach, the Netherlands aims to safeguard the protection of vulnerable ecological species and areas, such as the Natura 2000 areas and the additional protection in the Frisian Front and the Central Oyster Grounds. These measures stem from the obligation arising from the Birds and Habitats Directiveand MSFD to make progress towards achieving a good environmental status of the marine ecosystem and to contribute to a coherent and representative network of protected marine areas by protecting certain ecological/habitat areas in the Dutch part of the North Sea. The fundamental principle is area-based regulation or suppression of certain forms of use that disrupt the natural and biodiversity values to be protected or restored by the MSFD.

The following criteria were used to identify biological hotspots: Distribution, Density, Biomass, Resilience, Dependence on the marine environment, Breeding in the Netherlands, Importance of the Dutch Continental Shelf for the species, Trends, Rarity, Large specimens within populations, (Potentially) large species, Species Richness, Species Evenness.

The sites involved are:

- The Voordelta: occupies an area of the North Sea of more than 900 km². This site lies off the islands of South Holland and those of Zeeland. The area extends from the Maasvlakte to the tip of Walcheren Island
- The North Sea Coastal Zone: consists of 'sandbanks which are slightly covered by sea water all the time, subtype North Sea Coastal Zone'.

- The Vlakte van de Raan: is a Habitat Directive site or SAC of approx. 190 km2 that consists of 'sandbanks which are slightly covered by sea water all the time, subtype North Sea Coastal Zone'.
- The Dogger Bank: a shallow area that extends across the UK, Dutch, German and Danish sectors of the North Sea.
- The Cleaver Bank: a Habitat Directive site or SAC in the category of 'Open-sea reefs'. It is a marine site of approx. 1,235 km^2 that lies some 160 km to the north-west of Den Helder.
- The Frisian Front: lies roughly 75 km to the north of Den Helder and occupies a marine site of approx. 2,880 km^2. It is a Birds Directive site or SPA.

Parts of the Central Oyster Grounds and Frisian Front have been designated as special areas for introducing measures for protection of the sea floor ecosystems in the framework of the MSFD.

Additionally, the Conservation plan for the harbour porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) of the Netherlands is an additional protection plan due to the highly migratory character of the species. This species protection plan contributes to meeting the obligations under the Habitat Directive for the harbour porpoise.

NORWAY

The Johannesburg declaration of 2002 calls for Ecosystem Approach (EA) to management of all marine ecosystems by 2010. As a result, the management plan for the Barents Sea-Lofoten area was first announced in the white paper Protecting the Riches of the Sea (St.meld. nr. 12 (2001-2002)). The white paper states that an ecosystem approach to management of marine sea areas should provide a framework for sustainable use of natural resources and goods derived from the area that at the same time maintains the structure, functioning and productivity of the ecosystems of the area. Since then, Norway has established management plans as the basis for integrated ecosystem approach to management of all Norwegian Sea areas (Barents Sea 2006, Norwegian Sea 2009, North Sea/Skagerrak 2013). Furthermore, Norway has signed several international conventions and agreements and participates in international processes that also provide guidance on the design of the Norwegian marine management plans. These plans represent a strictly knowledge-based management regime. The plans are updated every four years and revised (more extensive process) every 12 years to take into account new knowledge and changes in the ecosystem or human activities.

In the management plans several areas are identified as particularly valuable areas. The EBSA criteria and some additional criteria were used for selecting these areas. Some of the most important ones were:

- Oceanographically/topographically special areas (e.g., fronts, strong currents, fjords);
- Important areas for life history (e.g., spawning/birthing/breeding grounds, drifting paths/migrating routes, feeding grounds, wintering grounds, moulting areas);
- Other criteria (key areas for endangered or vulnerable species or species for which Norway has a special responsibility or habitats for internationally or nationally endangered or vulnerable populations of certain species all year round or at specific times of the year).

Vulnerability was then assessed with respect to specific environmental pressures such as oil pollution, fluctuation in food supply and physical impact within the plan area. When assessing vulnerability, the type of impact, duration and possible effects need to be considered. Differentiating between natural and human-induced pressures on the environment can be difficult. Furthermore, an area is usually not equally vulnerable all year round, and all species in an area will not be equally vulnerable to a specific environmental pressure. Negative pressures in these areas will in some cases affect a large proportion of a population or a large proportion of the ecosystem and might persist for many years.

Furthermore, the marine part of seven national parks and four nature reserves in Svalbard and Jan Mayen are OSPAR Marine Protected Areas. The aim of designating these areas as OSPAR MPAs reflects that of the national regulation and aims to protect and conserve several species and habitats on the OSPAR list in a part of the OSPAR maritime area not presently covered by existing OSPAR MPAs. Five smaller areas along the Norwegian coast are also OSPAR MPAs.

In addition, a network of smaller MPAs will be established along the coast of Norway, in order to maintain biodiversity and keep certain areas relatively undisturbed to facilitate research and monitoring. A plan for MPAs has been drawn up. The selection of all areas has not yet been finalized, but some are already established MPAs.

RUSSIAN FEDERATION

With the participation of experts from the Russian Federation, features in its EEZ were previously considered and described as meeting the EBSA criteria in the CBD regional EBSA workshops for the (i) North Pacific, (ii) Arctic, and (iii) Black Sea and Caspian Sea, including in areas in parts of the Russian EEZ in the Arctic that overlap with the geographic scope of this workshop.[10] The regional EBSA workshop for the Arctic described the following EBSAs in the EEZ of Russia that overlap with the scope of the present workshop[11]:

- Coast of Western and Northern Novaya Zemlya
- Murman Coast and Varanger Fjord
- North-eastern Barents–Kara Sea
- South-eastern Barents Sea (the Pechora Sea)
- White Sea

SWEDEN

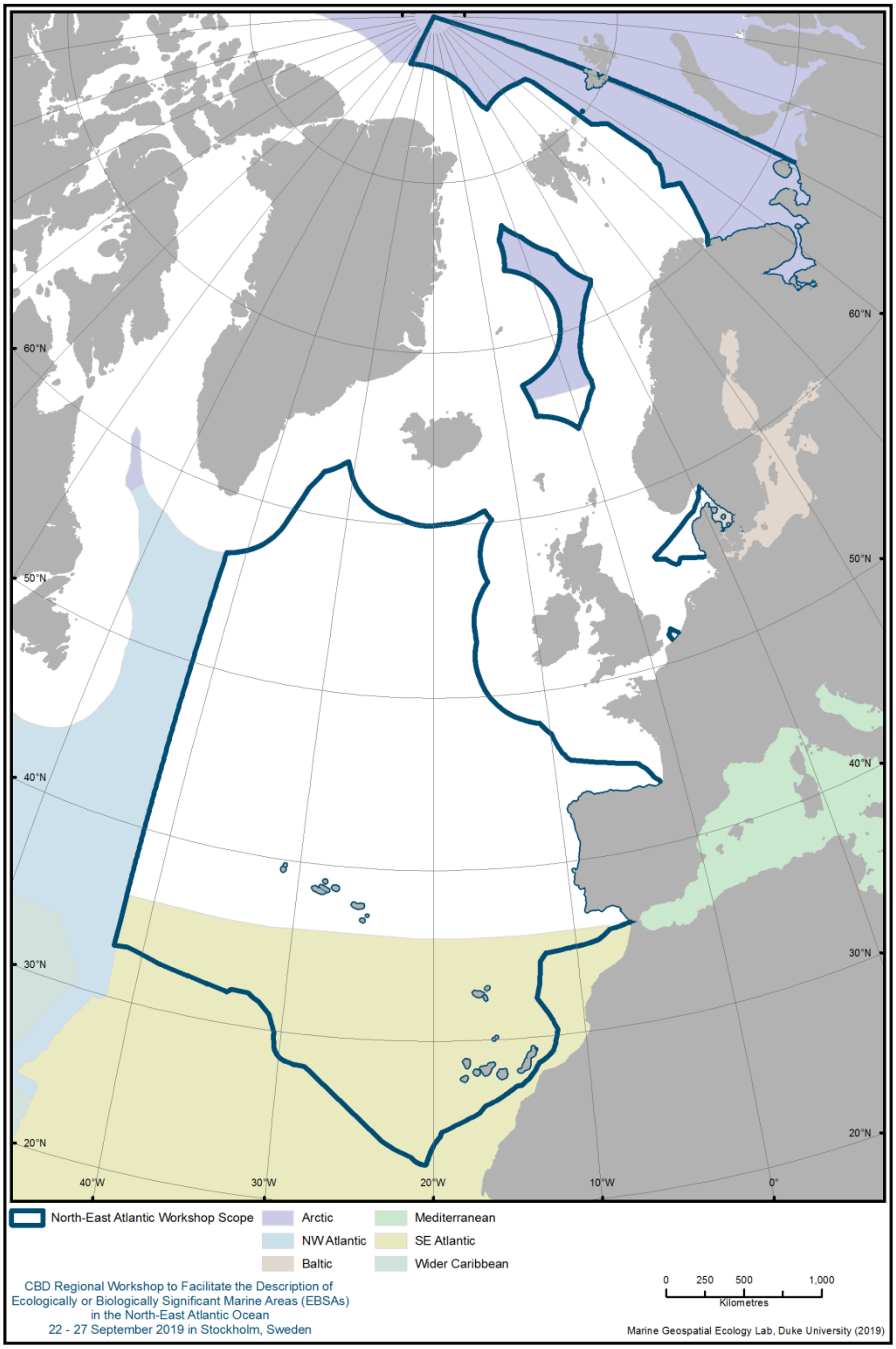
With the participation of experts from Sweden, features in the EEZ of Sweden were considered in the CBD regional EBSA workshop for the Baltic Sea, including in areas that overlap with the geographic scope of the present workshop.[12] The regional EBSA workshop for the Baltic Sea described the following EBSA in Sweden’s EEZ, which overlaps with the scope of the present workshop[13]:

- Fladen, Stora Middelgrund and Lilla Middelgrund

[10] UNEP/CBD/EBSA/WS/2014/1/5. Report of the Arctic Regional Workshop to Facilitate the Description of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas (Helsinki, Finland, 3 to 7 March 2014).
[11] https://www.cbd.int/ebsa/
[12] CBD/EBSA/WS/2018/1/4. Report of the Regional Workshop to Facilitate the Description of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas in the Baltic Sea (Helsinki, Finland, 19-24 February 2018).
[13] https://www.cbd.int/ebsa/

Annex IV

MAP OF THE WORKSHOP SCOPE*



* The scopes of previous CBD regional EBSA workshops that are adjacent and partially overlapping with the scope of the present workshop are also indicated.

Annex V

ECOLOGICAL OR BIOLOGICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF THE NORTH-EAST ATLANTIC IN A GLOBAL CONTEXT

This annex describes large features of the North-East Atlantic of special significance on a global scale, which extend beyond of the scope of the workshop.

1. REGIONAL OVERVIEW OF THE NORTH-EAST ATLANTIC

Marine and coastal areas of the North-East Atlantic demonstrate a wide array of diverse ecosystems and varying environmental conditions. The coastal and shelf areas of the marine environment have been used by humans for centuries. In the last decades, human use has begun to move into the deep oceanic areas.

The mountainous coasts along the north-western margins are deeply indented with fjords, estuaries and rias. The coasts around the North Sea and Celtic Sea include cliffs of varying heights and rock types, bays and estuaries, sandy and shingle beaches, dunes and island archipelagos. Further south, the coast of the Bay of Biscay is low lying and lagoons occur. The Iberian coast comprises alternating cliffs and beaches (OSPAR Commission 2000). Much of the coastal area in the North-East Atlantic is densely populated, highly industrialised or used intensively for agriculture (OSPAR Commission 2010). There are several oceanic islands in the North-East Atlantic with coasts dominated by cliffs, such as the Azores, Madeira and the Canary Islands in the south, and Iceland and the Faroe Islands in the north. The islands rise from the ocean floor and are surrounded by deep oceanic waters.

In the deep ocean basin, an abyssal plain extends on either side of the mountains of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (see below) to the continental margins. The abyssal plan consists of a 4-to-6 km thick basaltic basement overlain by 0.1-to-2 km thick accumulations of sediment (OSPAR Commission, 2000).

Most of the water masses of the North-East Atlantic are well-mixed to depths of up to 600 m, with a permanent thermocline in deep oceanic waters, and strong tidal currents in shallow shelf areas (OSPAR Commission 2010). Where warm water masses meet cold water masses (e.g., at the Arctic front) hotspots of productivity can form. The density gradients result in areas of sufficiently shallow mixing depth and consequently enhance a phytoplankton bloom earlier in the season than in open water (Rey, 2004). Following the seasonal latitudinal progression of the sunlight, the phytoplankton bloom proceeds from south to north, initiating the pelagic production of secondary producers (grazers) such as zooplankton (Melle et al., 2005). The growth season can also be prolonged by the physical forcing from turbulence associated with ocean currents supplying nutrients to the upper layers.

The deep Atlantic supports a diverse array of structurally complex seabed habitats that meet the EBSA criteria. For example, there are more records of reef framework forming cold-water corals in the North-East Atlantic than any other ocean region, making the North-East Atlantic globally significant for these deep-water biodiversity hotspots (Roberts et al. 2006). This reflects both the long history of deep-sea research in the region, and the great depths of the aragonite saturation horizon in the North-East Atlantic water masses that has allowed aragonitic scleractinian coral skeletons to persist for millennia. By contrast, the aragonite saturation horizon in the North-East Pacific is far shallower, and equivalent habitats are dominated by calcitic gorgonians, hydrocorals or sponges, and not by aragonitic scleractinian corals (Stone 2014).

However, as atmospheric CO_2 levels rise, the oceans absorb more CO_2 and become more acidic (Zeebe and Wolf-Gladrow 2005). As a result, ocean pH has already fallen by 0.1 pH units and will likely fall another ~0.3 units by the end of the century (Caldeira and Wickett 2003). Such a pH decline shifts the distribution of dissolved carbon species away from carbonate ions (CO_3^{2-}) and hence directly impacts $CaCO_3$ saturation states (Feely et al. 2004; Orr et al. 2005). By 2100, the aragonite saturation horizon will become sufficiently shallow to expose approximately 70 per cent of known aragonitic cold-water corals to corrosive waters, i.e., waters undersaturated with respect to aragonite (Guinotte et al. 2006). In the North Atlantic, recent modelling studies point to an even more dramatic 44 per cent decline in carbonate ion supply mediated via the AMOC (see below) today compared to the pre-industrial times (Perez et al. 2018). Eventually, the calcite saturation horizon will also shallow, exposing calcitic corals to corrosive conditions, however aragonitic corals, which form extensive reefs in the North-East Atlantic, face the more immediate threat (Gruber et al., 2019). Given the importance of seawater carbonate chemistry for cold-water coral reef frameworks, and the direct relationship between aragonite saturation and atmospheric CO_2, they appear to be one of the most vulnerable marine ecosystems to present-day anthropogenic climate change (Roberts et al. 2016).

2. LARGE FEATURES OF SPECIAL SIGNIFICANCE

2.1 Mid-Atlantic Ridge

The Mid-Atlantic Ridge (MAR) is the longest mountain range in the world. This is a major topographic feature of the entire Atlantic Ocean, extending well beyond the scope of the North-East Atlantic EBSA workshop. The MAR is a volcanic mountain range that rises from the Atlantic abyssal plain, extending from the Arctic at the Gakkel Ridge to the Antarctic at the Bouvet Triple Junction, ranging more than 16,000 km (UNESCO, 2017).

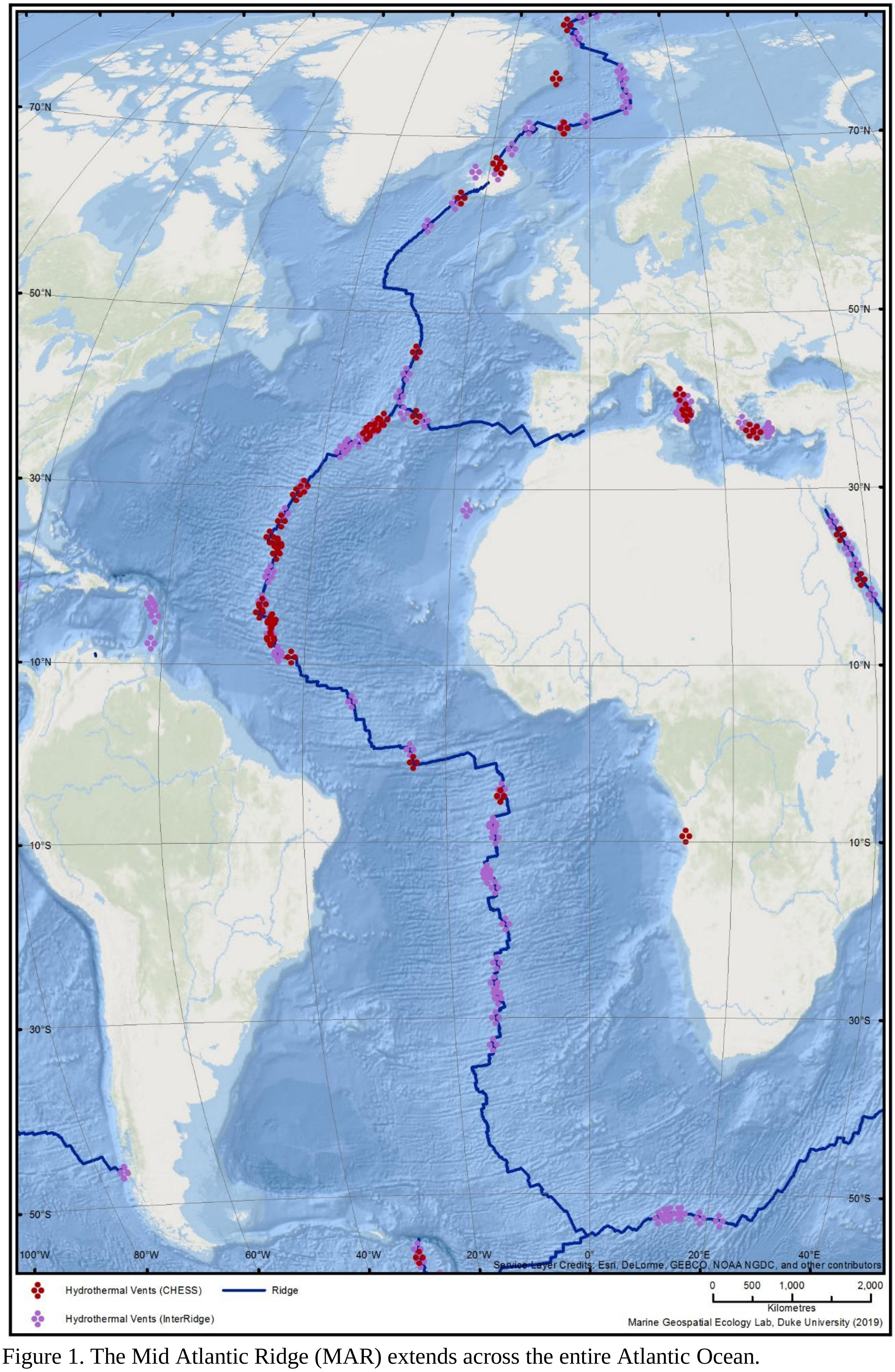


Figure 1. The Mid Atlantic Ridge (MAR) extends across the entire Atlantic Ocean.

The MAR remains poorly studied overall, however several international research projects (e.g., MAR-ECO, ECOMAR, ATLAS, SPONGES) have shed some light on the geology, oceanography and ecology of some parts of the MAR. The ridge supports rich communities of vulnerable and fragile cold-water corals, sponge aggregations and deep-water vulnerable fish. Additionally, hydrothermal vent fields and transform faults support unique fauna, many of which are endemic to the MAR.

As the Atlantic Ocean slowly expands, new oceanic floor is formed in the central valley of the MAR on the boundaries of the Nubia, American and Eurasian tectonic plates, at a speed of 28-33mm·year^{-1} (Dinter, 2001; Heger et al., 2008; Hosia et al., 2008). In the process of tectonic movement, massive volcanic events give rise to large ridge- and seamount-like structures, and in some cases even to islands such as those of the Azores (Portugal) or St. Peter and St. Paul's Archipelago (Brazil). The MAR began to form 200 million years ago but was only discovered in the mid-19th century, when the first submarine cables linking North America and Europe were deployed.

The MAR is a hotspot of seamounts but also of hydrothermal vents, which are formed when seawater circulates into the crust through cracks and porous rocks, heated by underlying magma, and rises back through openings in the seafloor. There are about 85 known and inferred distinct and unique deep-sea hydrothermal vent fields at the MAR, with only 28 having been confirmed as active vents (InterRidge Vents Database v3.4).

The MAR has a profound role in the circulation of the water masses in the North Atlantic Ocean (Rossby, 1999; Bower et al., 2002; Heger et al., 2008; Søiland et al., 2008). The complex hydrographic setting around the MAR in general and the presence of the ridge itself leads to enhanced vertical mixing and turbulence that results in areas of increased productivity over it (Falkowski et al., 1998; Heger et al., 2008).

Due to the size and prominence of the MAR spanning the whole Atlantic basin, this feature has a major impact on the area's ecology and hydrology. The MAR provides hard substrate for benthic species and structures the migratory corridors. If an EBSA process were undertaken on a global scale, the workshop noted that this prominent feature would be relevant, even at that scale.

2.2. Ocean currents

Atlantic circulation occurs at a global scale and is driven by mechanical forcing due to winds and by buoyancy exchanges. These forcings lead to regional and global gradients (horizontal and vertical) in temperature and salinity. The North Atlantic plays an important role in the global thermohaline circulation, which is part of the Atlantic Meridional Overturning Circulation (Sandström 1908). The North-East Atlantic holds key components of the global ocean circulation system, including the northern part of the Atlantic Meridional Overturning Circulation (AMOC) (Lozier et al., 2015).

The AMOC can be separated into warm northward-flowing surface currents and cold southward-flowing surface and deep-water masses (Daniaulta, 2016; Buckley and Marshall, 2016). Areas of deep-water formation occur both to the south and north of Iceland. The intensity of deep-water formation in the Norwegian seas north of Iceland varies over time and is detected as a higher surface temperature as a reflection of the intensified flow of Atlantic water into the area (Malmberg and Valdimarsson, 2003). Deep-water formation also occurs in the waters south of Iceland, where the marine climate has been regarded as stable (Malmberg and Valdimarsson, 2003) although recent work challenges this view (Josey et al. 2018). It has a global significance, as the effects of downwelling ventilating the deep-water masses and ocean basins influence the chemical conditions (e.g., calcite compensation depth, CCD). Abyssal seafloor habitats under areas of deep-water formation may experience reductions in water column oxygen concentrations by as much as 0.03 mL L^{-1} by 2100 (Sweetman et al., 2017). In the presence of a coherent forcing, such as warming and freshening at high latitudes driven by anthropogenic CO_2 emissions, the AMOC is expected to get weaker (Thornalley, 2018). The AMOC is projected to weaken in the 21st

century based on climate modelling scenarios (90-100% probability) although a collapse is very unlikely (0-10% probability) and any substantial weakening of the AMOC is projected to cause a decrease in marine productivity in the North Atlantic, more storms in Northern Europe, less Sahelian summer rainfall and South Asian summer rainfall, a reduced number of tropical cyclones in the Atlantic and an increase in regional sea level along the northeast coast of North America (IPCC, 2019).

The Gulf Stream is the northern part of the subtropical north Atlantic Gyre connecting the Caribbean with the Canary current and the north Equatorial current. About a quarter of the Gulf Stream waters leaves the subtropical gyre and travels northwards along the northwest coast of the European Continent as North Atlantic Drift, where they can be traced as far north as Spitsbergen (Fratatoni, 2001). A fraction of these surface currents feed into the East Greenland Current flowing southward along the east Greenland coast. The deep-water masses follow density defined pathways southwards. These flow-paths are not always clearly defined and exhibit high spatial variability in the ocean basins (Bower, 2002). On the eastern side of the North Atlantic, Mediterranean Outflow Waters form an additional deep-water mass flowing northward along the western European continental slope as a contour current, where it can be traced as far north as offshore Scotland (Figure 2).

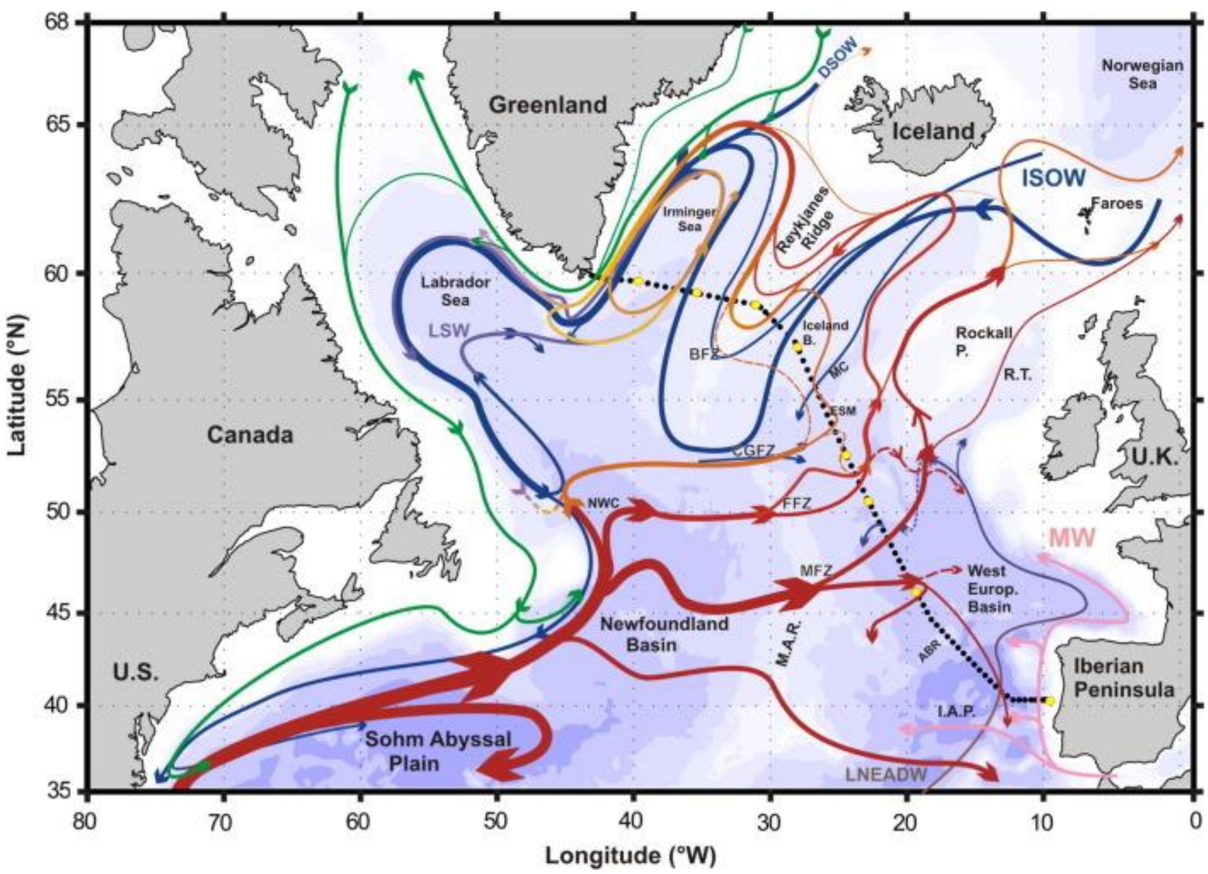


Figure 2. (Daniaulta, 2016) Schematic diagram of the large-scale circulation adapted from García-Ibáñez et al. (2015) by adding a refined scheme for the NAC branches based on the results of this study (see text). Bathymetry is plotted in colour with colour change at 100 m, at 1000 m and every 1000 m below 1000 m. The locations of the OVIDE hydrographic stations are indicated by black dots. Yellow dots mark the limits of the regions used for the transport computations. The main topographical features of the Subpolar North Atlantic are labeled: Azores-Biscay Rise (ABR), Bight Fracture Zone (BFZ), Charlie–Gibbs Fracture Zone (CGFZ), Faraday Fracture Zone (FFZ), Maxwell Fracture Zone (MFZ), Mid-Atlantic Ridge (MAR), Iberian Abyssal Plain (IAP), Northwest Corner (NWC), Rockall Trough (RT), Rockall Plateau (Rockall P.) and Maury Channel (MC). The main water masses are indicated: Denmark

Strait Overflow Water (DSOW), Iceland–Scotland Overflow Water (ISOW), Labrador Sea Water (LSW), Mediterranean Water (MW), and Lower North East Atlantic Deep Water (LNEADW). (For interpretation of the references to colour in this figure legend, the reader is referred to the web version of the publication Daniaulta *et al*., 2016.)

2.3 Species migrating on the conveyor belts across the Atlantic

Ocean currents affect biodiversity and ecology in the North-East Atlantic, by playing a key role in the dispersal of larvae, as well as providing an energy-efficient mode of transport for mature individuals. The need to balance energy reserves during migration is a critical factor for most long-distance migrants and an important determinant of migratory strategies. Examples of some species groups are presented below.

The North-East Atlantic EBSA workshop considered the possibility of identifying and presenting a single regional feature in this regard; the "North Atlantic Gyre" and its known or potential importance for migrating species (as illustrated in Figure 3). Based on the regional scale of this EBSA assessment process and the much larger extent of the gyre currents, it was concluded that such a description would not be appropriate at this stage.

Cetaceans

Large baleen whales migrate annually between foraging and breeding sites, crossing vast ocean areas where food is seldom abundant. A number of tracking and telemetry studies on marine mammals, particularly for baleen whale species, have indicated the presence of known migratory pathways transiting through the region.

For example, satellite tracking studies of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) tagged in their foraging areas in Norway, Svalbard and Iceland have shown direct migration to their southern breeding areas within the Caribbean (UiT 2019). These migrations benefit from the oceanic currents. The endangered sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis)* migrates from the Azores, likely longitudinally from waters on the Eastern Atlantic, to highly productive foraging areas in the Labrador Sea as well as Greenlandic and Icelandic waters (Olsen et al. 2009, Prieto et al. 2014).

Seabirds

Seabird migration in the North Atlantic is relatively well studied. Several species of seabirds, mostly shearwaters (genus *Calonectris*, *Puffinus* and *Ardenna*), skuas (*Catharacta* and *Stercorarius*) and some terns (e.g., Arctic tern *Sterna paradisea*) perform seasonal movements between the breeding areas and the wintering sites, many of them trans-equatorial between the North and South Atlantic (González-Solís et al. 2007, Guilford et al. 2009, Egevang et al. 2010, Dias et al. 2011, 2012, Gilg et al. 2013). Seabirds sometimes stop to spend some time in specific regions of the North-East Atlantic during the migratory journey (stopovers), to replenish and/or to rest (Guilford et al. 2009, Egevang et al. 2010, Dias et al. 2012). In their migratory journeys, seabirds often follow major oceanic currents and wind corridors (e.g. Dias et al. 2012, González-Solís et al. 2009). Several species breeding in colonies in South Atlantic also perform the inverse journey to spend the non-breeding period in the North Atlantic, in most cases in areas along or near the MAR (e.g., Kopp et al. 2011, Hedd et al. 2012).

Sea turtles

Sea turtles, as long-lived ancient reptiles, have a complex life cycle which involves a terrestrial natal and breeding/nesting phase confined to warm tropical regions due of thermal constraints on egg incubation. Hatchling, juvenile and mature sea turtles undergo major shifts in ecology, behaviour and distribution that are distinctive according to the species and developmental stage (Huang, 2015; Scott et al., 2014). There are six species of sea turtle occurring in the Atlantic Ocean, all of which are listed on the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species[14]. Leatherback turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea)* and loggerhead turtles (*Caretta*

[14] http://www.iucnredlist.org

caretta) are the most prominent species in the North-East Atlantic. These species are included on the OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and the European Union's Habitats Directive[15]. Leatherback and loggerhead turtles make use of the vast North Atlantic Gyre circulatory system (Figure 3) in order to be directed to suitable foraging areas and to eventually return to warm waters in order to breed.

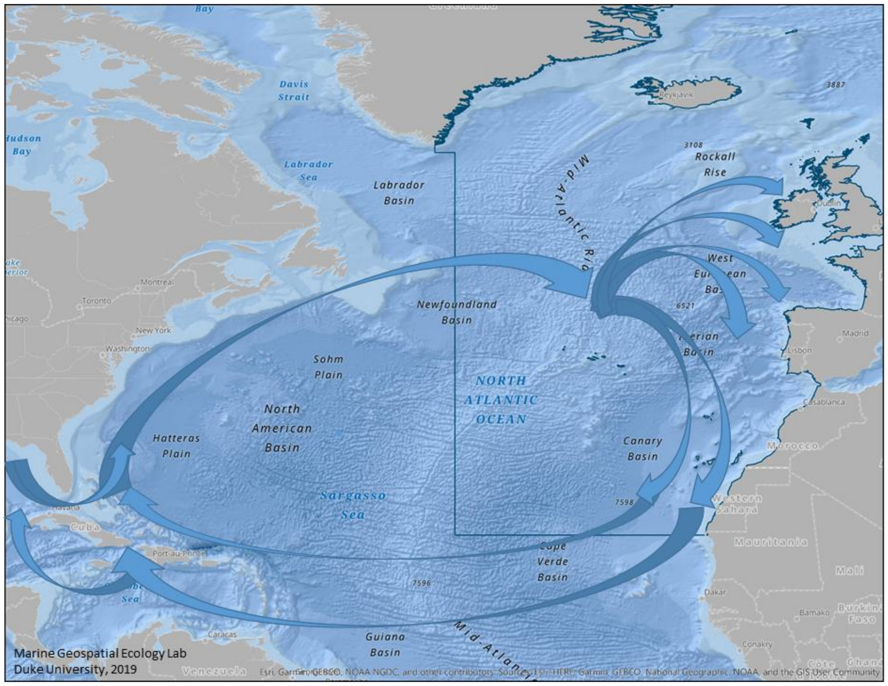


Figure 3. Illustration of the turtle migration across the Atlantic using currents.

For migrating Loggerhead turtles, the warm temperate areas of the North-East Atlantic around the Azores, Madeira and the Canary Islands (Carr, 1986; Santos et al., 2007) as well as along the Atlantic coast of southern Spain and Portugal, are shown to be particularly significant in late summer. Leatherback turtles are known to also inhabit cold temperate waters of the North-East Atlantic, particularly in the warmer summer and autumn months, when they are recorded opportunistically off Ireland, the UK and in the Bay of Biscay (Doyle, 2007; Eckert, 2006).

REFERENCES

Bower, A.S., Le Cann, B., Rossby, T., Zenk, W., Gould, J., Speer, K., Richardson, P.L., Prater, M.D., Zhang, H.M., 2002. Directly measured mid-depth circulation in the northeastern North Atlantic Ocean. Nature 419, 603–607. http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/nature01078

Buckley, M. and J. Marshall (2016). "Observations, inferences, and mechanisms of the Atlantic Meridional Overturning Circulation: A review." Reviews of Geophysics: 1-59.

Caldeira K, Wickett ME (2003) Anthropogenic carbon and ocean pH. Nature 425: 365

Carr A.F. (1986). Rips, FADS, and little loggerheads. *Bioscience* **36**:92–100

Daniaulta, N; Mercier, H, Lherminier, P; Sarafanov, A; Falina, A; Zunino, P; Pérez, F; Ríos; Ferron, B; Hucke, T; Thierry, V; Gladyshevd, S; (2016) The northern North Atlantic Ocean mean circulation in the early 21st century. *Progress in Oceanography*, 146, p142-158. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2016.06.007

[15] Council Directive 92/43/EEC of 21 May 1992 on the conservation of natural habitats and of wild fauna and flora.

Dias M.P., Granadeiro J.P., Phillips R.A., Alonso H., Catry P. (2011) Breaking the routine: individual Cory's shearwaters shift winter destinations between hemispheres and across ocean basins. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B: Biological Sciences 278, 1786-1793.

Dias M., Granadeiro J., Catry P. (2012) Do Seabirds Differ from Other Migrants in Their Travel Arrangements? On Route Strategies of Cory's Shearwater during Its Trans-Equatorial Journey. PLOS ONE 7, e49376.

Dinter, W. P. (2001). Biogeography of the OSPAR maritime area. Bonn, Germany: Federal Agency for Nature Conservation

Doyle T. K. (2007). Leatherback Sea Turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*) in Irish waters. *Irish Wildlife Manuals* 32. National Parks and Wildlife Service, Department of the Environment, Heritage and Local Government, Dublin, Ireland.

Drange, H., Dokken, T., Furevik, T., Gerdes, R., Berger, W. (Eds.) Geophysical Monograph Series 158 pp. 137-202.

Eckert S.A. (2006). High-use oceanic areas for Atlantic leatherback sea turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*) as identified using satellite telemetered location and dive information. *Marine Biology* 149: 1257-1267.

Egevang C., Stenhouse I.J., Phillips R.A., Petersen A., Fox J.W., Silk J.R. (2010) Tracking of Arctic terns Sterna paradisaea reveals longest animal migration. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 107, 2078-2081.

Falkowski, P. G., Barber, R. T., & Smetacek, V. (1998). Biogeochemical controls and feedbacks on ocean primary production. Science, 281(5374), 200-206.

Feely RA, Sabine CL, Lee K, Berelson W, Kleypas J, Fabry VJ, Millero FJ (2004) Impact of anthropogenic CO_2 on the $CaCO_3$ system in the oceans. Science 305: 362–366

Fratantoni, D. M. (2001), North Atlantic surface circulation during the 1990's observed with satellite-tracked drifters, J. Geophys. Res., 106(C10), 22067– 22093, doi:10.1029/2000JC000730.

Hedd A., Montevecchi W.A., Otley H., Phillips R.A., Fifield D.A. (2012) Trans-equatorial migration and habitat use by sooty shearwaters Puffinus griseus from the South Atlantic during the nonbreeding season. Marine Ecology Progress Series 449, 277-290.

Gilg O., Moe B., Hanssen S.A. et al. (2013) Trans-equatorial migration routes, staging sites and wintering areas of a high-arctic avian predator: the long-tailed skua (Stercorarius longicaudus). PloS one 8, e64614.

González-Solís, J., Croxall, J.P., Oro, D., Ruiz, X.P., (2007). Trans-equatorial migration and mixing in the wintering areas of a pelagic seabird. https://doi.org/10.1890/1540-9295(2007)5[297:TMAMIT]2.0.CO;2

González-Solís, J., Felicísimo, A., Fox, J.W., Afanasyev, V., Kolbeinsson, Y., Muñoz, J., 2009. Influence of sea surface winds on shearwater migration detours. Marine Ecology Progress Series 391, 221–230. https://doi.org/10.3354/meps08128

Gruber, N., D. Clement, B. R. Carter, R. A. Feely, S. van Heuven, M. Hoppema, M. Ishii, R. M. Key, A. Kozyr, S. K. Lauvset, C. Lo Monaco, J. T. Mathis, A. Murata, A. Olsen, F. F. Perez, C. L. Sabine, T. Tanhua and R. Wanninkhof (2019). "The oceanic sink for anthropogenic CO2; from 1994 to 2007." Science 363(6432): 1193.

Guilford T., Meade J., Willis J. et al. (2009) Migration and stopover in a small pelagic seabird, the Manx shearwater Puffinus puffinus: insights from machine learning. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B: Biological Sciences, rspb. 2008.1577.IPCC, 2019: Summary for Policymakers. In: IPCC Special Report on the Ocean and Cryosphere in a Changing Climate [H.- O. Pörtner, D.C. Roberts, V. Masson-Delmotte, P. Zhai, M. Tignor, E. Poloczanska, K. Mintenbeck, M. Nicolai, A. Okem, J. Petzold, B. Rama, N. Weyer (eds.)]. In press.

Guinotte, J. M., Orr, J., Cairns, S., Freiwald, A., Morgan, L. and George, R. (2006). Will human-induced changes in seawater chemistry alter the distribution of deep-sea scleractinian corals? Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment **4**: 141-146.

Heger, A., Ieno, E. N., King, N. J., Morris, K. J., Bagley, P. M., & Priede, I. G. (2008). Deep-sea pelagic bioluminescence over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 55(1-2), 126-136.

Hosia, A., Stemmann, L., & Youngbluth, M. (2008). Distribution of net-collected planktonic cnidarians along the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge and their associations with the main water masses. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 55(1-2), 106-118.

Huang, H-W. (2015). Conservation hotspots for the turtles on the high seas of the Atlantic Ocean. *PLoS ONE* 10(8): e0133614. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0133614.Josey, S.A., Hirschi, J. J.-M., Sinha, B., Duchez, A., Grist, J.P. and Marsh, R. (2018) The Recent Atlantic Cold Anomaly: Causes, Consequences, and Related Phenomena Annual Review of Marine Science, 10 (1), 475-501. (doi:10.1146/annurev-marine-121916-063102).

Kopp M., Peter H.-U., Mustafa O. et al. (2011) South polar skuas from a single breeding population overwinter in different oceans though show similar migration patterns. Marine Ecology Progress Series 435, 263-267.

Lozier, M.S., Overturning assumptions: Past, present, and future concerns about the ocean’s circulation. Oceanography. 28, 240–251 (2015).

Malmberg, S-A., and Valdimarsson, H. 2003. Hydrographic conditions in Icelandic waters, 1990-1999. ICES Marine Science Symposia 219: 50-60.

Melle, W., Ellertsen, B., Skjoldal, H.R., 2005. Zooplankton: The link to higher trophic levels. In: The Nordic Seas: An integrated perspective oceanography, climatology, biogeochemistry, and modelling.

Orr JC, Fabry VJ, Aumont O, Bopp L, Doney SC, Feely RA, Gnanadesikan A, Gruber N, Ishida A, Joos F, Key RM, Lindsay K, Maier-Reimer E, Matear R, Monfray P, Mouchet A, Najjar RG, Plattner GK, Rodgers KB, Sabine CL, Sarmiento JL, Schlitzer R, Slater RD, Totterdell IJ, Weirig MF, Yamanaka Y, Yool A (2005) Anthropogenic ocean acidification over the twenty-first century and its impact on calcifying organisms. Nature 437:681–686

OSPAR Commission, 2000. Quality Status Report 2000. OSPAR Commission, London. 108 + vii pp

OSPAR, 2010. Quality Status Report 2010. OSPAR Commission. London. 176 pp.

Perez, F.F., Marcos Fontela, Maribel I. García-Ibáñez, Herlé Mercier, Anton Velo, Pascale Lherminier, Patricia Zunino, Mercedes de la Paz, Fernando Alonso-Pérez, Elisa F. Guallart & Xose A. Padin (2018) Meridional overturning circulation conveys fast acidification to the deep Atlantic Ocean. Nature 554: 515–518

Rey, F., 2004. Phytoplankton: the grass of the sea. In: The Norwegian Sea Ecosystem. Skjoldal, H.R. (Ed.)Tapir Academic Press, Trondheim, Norway pp. 97-136.

Roberts JM, Wheeler AJ, Freiwald A (2006) Reefs of the deep: the biology and geology of cold-water coral ecosystems. Science 312: 543-547

Roberts JM, Murray F, Anagnostou E, Hennige S, Gori A, Henry L-A, Fox A, Kamenos N, Foster GL (2016) Cold-water corals in an era of rapid global change: are these the deep ocean’s most vulnerable ecosystems? The Cnidaria, Past, Present and Future. Springer. Goffredo S, Dubinsky Z (Eds.) pp. 593-606

Rossby, T. (1999). On gyre interactions. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 46(1-2), 139-164.

Sandström, J.W., *Dynamische Versuche mit Meerwasser.* Annalen der Hydrographie und Maritimen Meteorologie, 1908. **36**: p. 6-23.

Santos M.A., Bolten A.B., Martins H.R., Riewald B. & Bjorndal K.A. (2007). *Air-breathing visitors to seamounts: sea turtles*. In Pitcher T.J., Morato T., Hart P.J.B., Clark M.R., Haggan A. and Santos R. (Eds): *Seamounts: Ecology Fisheries and Conservation* (Fish & Aquatic Resources). University of Azores: Blackwell publishing: 239-243.

Scott, R., Marsh, R. & Hays, G.C. (2014). Ontogeny of long-distance migration. *Ecology* 95(10): 2840–2850.

Stone RP (2014) The ecology of deep-sea coral and sponge habitats of the central Aleutian Islands of Alaska. NOAA Prof Pap NMFS 16: 1–52

Søiland, H., Budgell, W.P. & Knutsen, Ø. (2008) The physical oceanographic conditions long the MidAtlantic Ridge north of the Azores in June-July 2004. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 29 – 44.

Sweetman AK, Thurber AR, Smith CR, Levin LA, Mora C, Wei C-L, Gooday AJ, Jones DOB, Rex M, Yasuhara M, Ingels J, Ruhl HA, Frieder CA, Danovaro R, Würzberg L, Baco A, Grupe B, Pasulkax A, Meyer KS, Dunlop KM, Henry L-A, Roberts JM (2017) Global climate change effects on deep seafloor ecosystems. Elementa Science of the Anthropocene 5(4) DOI: https://doi.org/10.1525/elementa.203

Thornalley, D.J.R, Oppo, D.W, Robson J.I, Brierley C.M., Davis, R., Hall, I.R., Moffa-Sanchez, P., Rose, N.L., Spooner, P.T., Yashayaev, I., Keigwin, L.D., (2018) Anomalously weak Labrador Sea convection and Atlantic overturning during the past 150 years. Nature, 556: p. 227-230.

UiT (2019) UiT- The Arctic University of Norway – Whaletrack https://en.uit.no/prosjekter/prosjekt?p_document_id=505966

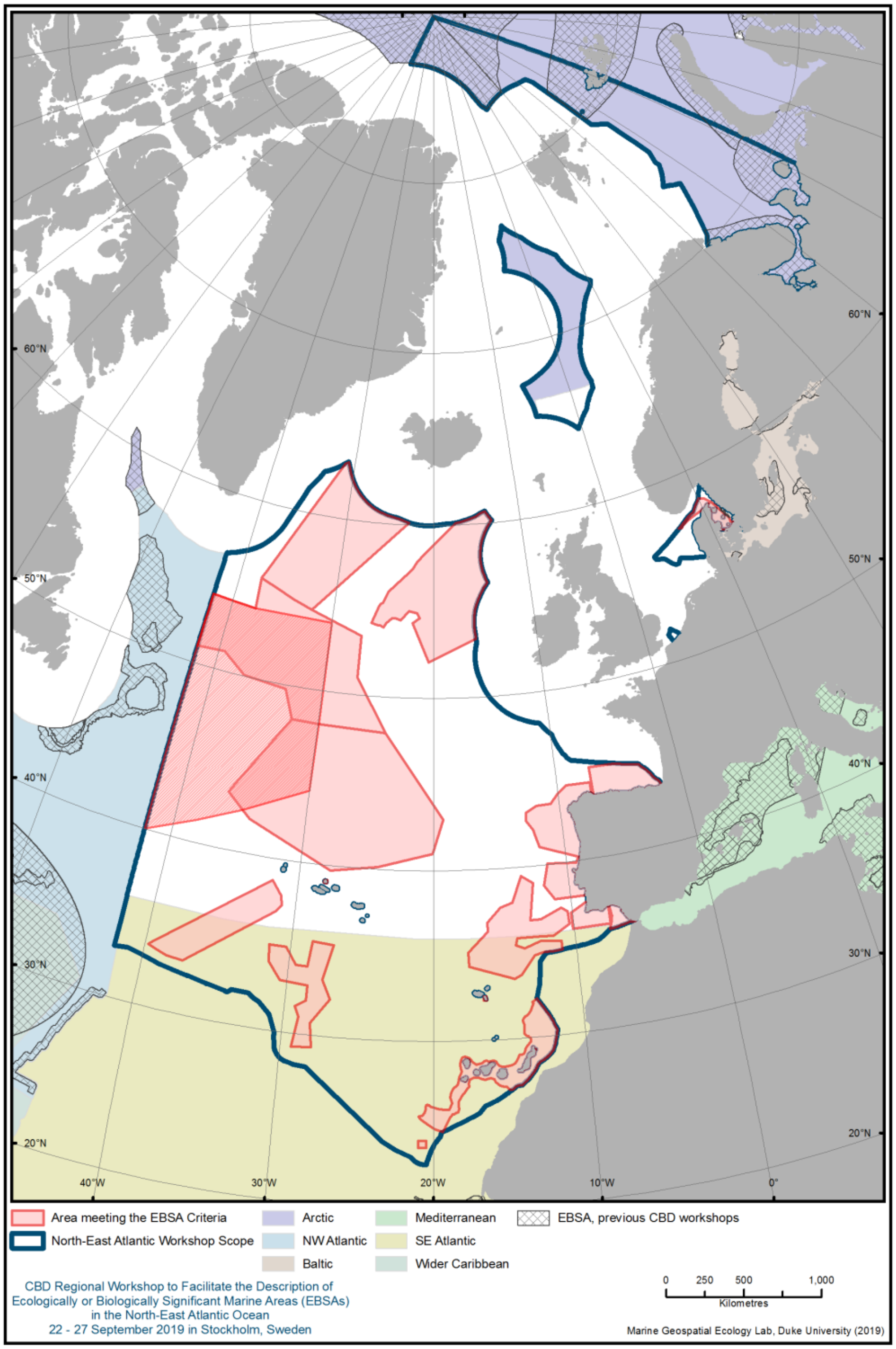
UNESCO (2017). Mid-Atlantic Ridge, Ref 6231. Submitted on the 06/06/2017. Available at: https://whc.unesco.org/en/tentativelists/6231/.

Wunsch, C., *Moon, tides and climate.* Nature, 2000. 405: p. 743-744.

Zeebe RE, Wolf-Gladrow D (2005) CO_2 in seawater: equilibrium, kinetics, isotopes. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Annex VI

MAP OF THE AREAS MEETING EBSA CRITERIA IN THE NORTH-EAST ATLANTIC, AS AGREED BY THE WORKSHOP*



[*] The scopes of previous CBD regional EBSA workshops that are adjacent and partially overlapping with the scope of the present workshop, as well as EBSAs described in those previous workshops, are also indicated.

Annex VII

AREAS MEETING THE EBSA CRITERIA IN THE NORTH-EAST ATLANTIC, AS AGREED BY THE WORKSHOP PLENARY

Area Number	Area Name
1	Danish Skagarrek
2	Danish Kattegat
3	Cantabrian Sea (Southern Bay of Biscay)
4	Western Iberian Canyons and Banks
5	Gulf of Cádiz
6	Madeira - Tore
7	Desertas
8	Oceanic Islands and Seamounts of the Canary Region
9	Tropic Seamount
10	Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex
11	Ridge South of the Azores
12	Graciosa
13	North Azores Plateau
14	Mid-North-Atlantic Frontal System
15	Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone
16	Southern Reykjanes Ridge
17	Hatton and Rockall Banks and Basin

Appendix to Annex VII

DESCRIPTION OF AREAS MEETING THE EBSA CRITERIA IN THE NORTH-EAST ATLANTIC, AS AGREED BY THE WORKSHOP PLENARY

Area no. 1: Danish Skagerrak

Abstract
This area focuses on a highly productive upwelling zone along the southern edge of the Norwegian Trench. This area has high fish biomass and diversity, and the upwelling zone also provides valuable feeding grounds for several cetacean and bird species.

Introduction
The Danish part of the Skagerrak north of Jutland is a very productive frontal area. The water depth is between 0 and 465m. The seabed sediment within the area changes from muddy in the deep water to sandy with decreasing depth. Reef areas exist within two Natura 2000 sites. The Natura 2000 site “Store Rev” hosts a relatively deep reef site, and the Natura 2000 site “Knudegrund” hosts a shallower reef area. The shallow part of Knudegrund hosts a seaweed forest. Hard bottom communities below 11.5 and 13.5m water depth in the Skagerrak are dominated by the soft coral “Dead man’s finger” (*Alcyonium digitatum*) and the bryozoan *Flustra foliacea* (Edelvang *et al*., 2017a). This description focuses mainly on the presence of pelagic-feeding birds and cetaceans, related to the highly productive upwelling zone along the southern parts of the Norwegian Trench. The area hosts several species of seabirds. It is also important for harbour porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) and, to a less extent, white-beaked dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus albirostris*) and minke whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*). The high biomass of several fish species is reflected in the intensive fishery in the area.

Location
This area is situated in the Danish part of the Skagerrak. The area reaches westwards to 6°45’E, to Skagen, the northern tip of Jutland, and stretches northeast from Skagen. It comprises an area of 7,876 km^2 and reaches depths from the coastline to 465m. The northern and western parts cover the southern reach of the Norwegian Trench (Figure 2).

Feature description of the area
Front zones
In the Skagerrak, the tidal mixing front is narrower and forms part of the Skagerrak frontal system, which is also driven by eddies related to the Skagerrak gyre and the shelf break along the Norwegian Trench (Figure 3A). This frontal zone continues further west of the tip of Jutland as the “Kattegat-Skagerrak front”, where the less saline surface water from Kattegat, influenced by the surplus of Baltic Sea water, mixes with the Skagerrak water mass (Figure 3B).

Plankton production
The frontal zone is characterized by enhanced concentrations of phyto- and zooplankton (Nielsen *et al*. 1993; Josefson and Conley, 1997).

Fish
Schooling fish and predator species occurring in tight aggregations and predators feeding on schooling fish are observed along the front (Krause et al. 1986, Munk 1993, Stone et al. 1995). In the Skagerrak region, the front has a profound influence on the distribution of nursery areas for several gadoid fishes (Munk *et al*. 1999). Both catches in scientific fish surveys and the commercial fishery demonstrate a very high abundance and biomass of both demersal and pelagic fish species (Edelvang *et al*. 2017a).

Harbour porpoise
The frontal zone is also extremely important for harbour porpoise (Teilmann *et al*. 2008; Sveegaard 2018). Part of the North Sea population uses the area intensively over the year (Figure 4). Harbour

porpoise is listed in OSPAR Recommendation 2013/11 on furthering the protection and restoration of the harbour porpoise in Regions II and III of the OSPAR maritime area (OSPAR 2013)

Other cetaceans

Minke whales and white-beaked dolphins are found mainly in the northern North Sea (ICES 2015), but distribution models based on aerial surveys have suggested that the north-western part of the Danish North Sea may be a preferred habitat for both species and that the waters along the Norwegian Trench, as well as the central Danish North Sea, may be preferred habitats for minke whales (Figure 5), (Edelvang *et al*. 2017a).

Birds

The Skagerrak area is particularly important for the occurrence of pelagic-feeding bird species, many of which are associated with the upwelling zone along the southern edge of the Norwegian Trench (Tasker *et al*. 1987; Stone *et al*. 1995; Petersen unpublished data). The most abundant bird species recorded in the area was fulmar (*Fulmarus glacialis*), common guillemot (*Uria aalge*) and razorbill (*Alca torda*). While fulmars and common guillemots primarily occur in the deep parts of the area, razorbills are found in more coastal areas as well. Great skuas (*Catharacta skua*) are found in numbers of international importance and are primarily associated with the deep-sea areas.

Fulmar

Observations indicate that fulmars are very numerous in the summer and early autumn. The highest concentration of birds is observed on the southern shelf of the Norwegian Trench, where the birds feed on zooplankton in the upwelling zone. The fulmars are distributed across the above-mentioned zone and only occasionally associated with fishing vessels. It is unclear whether these birds are actively breeding or non-breeders (Petersen unpublished data). . In August 2006, more than 86,000 individuals were observed (Figure 6). Of those, 85 per cent were found within the area meeting EBSA criteria.

In October 2007, approximately 18,500 fulmars were recorded in the northern part of the Danish North Sea and Kattegat (Figure 7). Ninety-four per cent of those birds were found within the area described as meeting the EBSA criteria.

Razorbill/Common Guillemot

Razorbills and common guillemots are found in high numbers in the area. Common guillemots rear flightless young in the area (Skov *et al*. 1992).

In August 2006, more than 28,000 razorbills/common guillemots were estimated in the northern part of the Danish North Sea and Skagerrak (Figure 8). Of these, 74 per cent were found within the area described as meeting the EBSA criteria.

In September 2007 approximately 9,600 razorbills/common guillemots were recorded in the northern part of the Danish North Sea and Skagerrak (Figure 9). Of these, 61 per cent were found within the area meeting the EBSA criteria.

In October 2007, an estimated 21,000 razorbills/common guillemots were recorded in the northern part of the Danish North Sea and Skagerrak (Figure 10). Of these, 61 per cent were found within the area meeting the EBSA criteria.

Great Skua

Great skuas were found in high numbers in the northern part of Danish North Sea and Skagerrak in late summer and early autumn (Figure 11, Petersen unpublished data). Up to 1,250 individuals were estimated, which amounts to more than 2 to 4 per cent of the world population of the species. The majority of these birds were recorded within the area meeting EBSA criteria.

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

Skagerrak is the marine connection between the northeastern Atlantic and the Baltic seas. The shipping traffic density is very high (Edelvang 2017a). This is also a highly productive area in an upwelling zone along the southern edge of the Norwegian Trench, which in turn creates the functional background for a rich and diverse fish community (Edelvang 2017a). The fishery in this part of Skagerrak is intensive.

This productive area serves as a foraging site to high numbers of birds, and the area is particularly important for concentrations of pelagic piscivorous and surface-feeding birds, such as fulmar, common guillemot and razorbill. Likewise, cetaceans utilize this rich area. Harbour porpoise density in this area ishigh.

Within the area described, three areas have been designated under the EU Habitats Directive. There are no EU Birds Directive designations for this area, but an Important Bird Area (IBA) has been designated by BirdLife International (BirdLife International 2019).

National legislation is being prepared to prohibit bottom-trawling gear within boulder reefs in NATURA2000 sites with reefs on the designation list.

Assessment of area no. 1, Danish Skagerrak, against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA Criteria (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Description** (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		No information	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique (“the only one of its kind”), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.				X
Explanation for ranking Very productive frontal area (Nielsen *et al*.1993, Josefson and Conley, 1997). Very high concentrations of northern fulmar (*Fulmarus glacialis*) and great skua (*Catheracta skua*), both of which are present in numbers of international significance (Petersen unpublished). The high productivity of the upwelling zone at the southern edge of the Norwegian Trench promotes high fish concentrations and in turn also provides favorable conditions for both birds and cetaceans, including harbour porpoise.					
Special importance for life-history stages of species	Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.				X
Explanation for ranking In late summer and early autumn, this area serves as a rearing area for common guillemot that perform a swimming migration from their breeding grounds in Scotland to the Danish North Sea and Kattegat via					

<table>
<tr><td colspan="6">Skagerrak (Skov et al. 1992).

The area harbours a high abundance and diversity of fish species (Edelvang et al. 2017a).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats</td><td>Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.
Three Habitats Directive area within this proposed area has been designated, all with reference to the presence of Harbour Porpoise.</td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
The harbour porpoise (Phocoena phocoena) is listed as threatened and/or declining in regions II and III of the OSPAR maritime area (OSPAR 2013).

White-beaked dolphin and minke whale are both listed species in the Habitats Directive Annex 1. Great skua is globally Red Listed, classified as “Least Concern” with a world population of 30,000 to 35,000 individuals. The population is described as “stable”.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery</td><td>Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.</td><td></td><td>X</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
Fulmars are a “tubenose” species (Procelariiformes), characterized by longevity, low reproduction rate and fecundity as well as late maturity.

Harbour porpoises are vulnerable to human impacts, such as by-catch in fishing gear and noise (Vinther and Larsen 2004; Bjorge et al. 2013).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Biological productivity</td><td>Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
Productivity is very high as a result of the upwelling zone along the edge of the Norwegian Trench (Nielsen et al. 1993, Josefson and Conley, 1997).

Schooling fish and predator species occurring in tight aggregations and specializing on schooling fish are observed along the front (Krause et al. 1986; Munk 1993; Stone et al. 1995,). In the Skagerrak region, the productivity front has a profound influence on the distribution of nursery areas for several gadoid fishes (Munk et al. 1999). Catch rates of several demersal and pelagic species in the area, both in research vessel surveys and commercial fisheries, are very high (Edelvang et al. 2017a).

The recovery of the blue-fin tuna stock now results in frequent sightings of the species, primarily in the North Sea but also in Skagerrak and Kattegat (Boge 2019).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Biological diversity</td><td>Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.</td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Explanation for ranking Although infauna, hardbottom, phyto and zoo plankton communities are poorly investigated, the area is rated as medium due to the presence of birds, cetaceans and a high fish biodiversity (Edelvang 2017a; Daan 2006).					
Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.		X		
Explanation for ranking This is among the most intensively fished areas in European waters. Catch data for important species are given in Edelvang *et al*. 2017b. Furthermore, approximately 70,000 vessels pass through Kattegat yearly and continue out to Skagerrak, according to the Danish Maritime Authority (https://www.soefartsstyrelsen.dk/Presse/Nyheder/Sider/Sejladssikkerheden_i_Kattegat_og_Skagerrak_forbedres_frem_mod_2020.aspx).					

References

BirdLife International (2019). Important Bird Areas factsheet: Skagerrak-Southwest Norwegian trench. Downloaded from http://datazone.birdlife.org/site/factsheet/skagerrak-southwest-norwegian-trench-iba-denmark on 27/09/2019.Boge, E. 2019. The return of the Atlantic bluefin tuna to Norwegian waters. - Master thesis in Fisheries Biology and Management, Department of Biological Sciences University of Bergen. 84 pp

Bjørge, A. Skern-Mauritzen, M. and Rossman, M. C. 2013. Estimated bycatch of harbour porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) in two coastal gillnet fisheries in Norway, 2006–2008. Mitigation and implications for conservation, Biological Conservation, Volume 161.

Daan, N. 2006. Spatial and temporal trends in species richness and abundance for the southerly and northerly components of the North Sea fish community separately, based on IBTS data 1977-2005. ICES CM 2006/ D:02

Sveggard, S., Nabe-Nielsen, J. & Teilmann, J. 2018. Marsvins udbredelse og status for de marine habitatområder i danske farvande. Aarhus Universitet, DCE – Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi, 36 s. - Videnskabelig rapport nr. 284 http://dce2.au.dk/pub/SR284.pdf

Edelvang, K., Gislason, H., Bastardie, F., Christensen, A., Egekvist, J., Dahl, K., ... Leth, J. (2017a). Analysis of marine protected areas – in the Danish part of the North Sea and the Central Baltic around Bornholm: Part 1: The coherence of the present network of MPAs. National Institute of Aquatic Resources, Technical University of Denmark. DTU Aqua Report, No. 325-2017.

Edelvang, K., Gislason, H., Bastardie, F., Christensen, A., Egekvist, J., Dahl, K., ... Leth, J. (2017b). *Analysis of marine protected areas – in the Danish part of the North Sea and the Central Baltic around Bornholm: Part 2: Ecological and economic value, human pressures, and MPA selection*. National Institute of Aquatic Resources, Technical University of Denmark. DTU Aqua Report, No. 325-2017

International Council for the Exploration of the Sea. 2010. Fish trawl survey: ICES North Sea International Bottom Trawl Survey for commercial fish species. ICES Database of trawl surveys (DATRAS). Copenhagen.Online source: http://ecosystemdata.ices.dk.

Krause, G., Budeus, G, Gerdes, D., Schaumann, K. & K. Hesse 1986. Frontal systems in the German Bight and their physical and biological effects. Pp 119-141 in: Nihoul, J.C.J. (Ed.). Marine Interfaces
Ecohydrodynamics. Elsevier Oceanography Series 42, Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Heesen, H. J. L., Daan, N and Ellis, J.R. 2015. Fish Atlas of the Celtic Sea, North Sea and Baltic Sea. KNNV Publishing, Wageningen Academic Publishers.

Munk P. 1993. Differential growth of larval sprat (Sprattus sprattus) across a tidal front in the eastern North Sea. Marine Ecology Progress Series 99: 17-29.

Munk, P., Larsson, P.O., Danielsen, D.S. & Moksness, E. 1999. Variability in frontal zone formation and distribution of gadoid fish larvae at the shelf break in the northeastern North Sea. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 177: 221-233.

OSPAR (2008) OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats. Agreement 2008-06. OSPAR Commission 2008.

OSPAR (2013) OSPAR Recommendation 2013/11 on furthering the protection and restoration of the harbour porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) in Regions II and III of the OSPAR maritime area.

Petersen, I.K. unpublished. Antal og fordeling af vandfugle i den nordlige danske del af Nordsøen. Unpublished report requested by the By- og Landskabsstyrelsen.

Skov, H., Durinck, J. & Danielsen, F. (1992): Udbredelse og antal af Lomvie *Uria aalge* i Skagerrak i sensommerperioden. – Dansk Orn. Foren. Tidsskr. 86: 169-176.

Skov, H., Heinänen, S., Žydelis, R., Bellebaum, J., Bzoma, S., Dagys, M., Durinck, J., Garthe, G., Grishanov, G., Hario, M., Kieckbusch, J.J., Kube, J., Kuresoo, A., Larsson, K., Luigujoe, L., Meissner, W., Nehls, H.W., Nilsson, L., Petersen, I.K., Roos, M.M., Pihl, S., Sonntag, N., Stock, A., Stipniece A. and Wahl, J. 2011. Waterbird Populations and Pressures in the Baltic Sea. – Nordic Council of Ministers, TemaNord 2011:550. 201 pp.

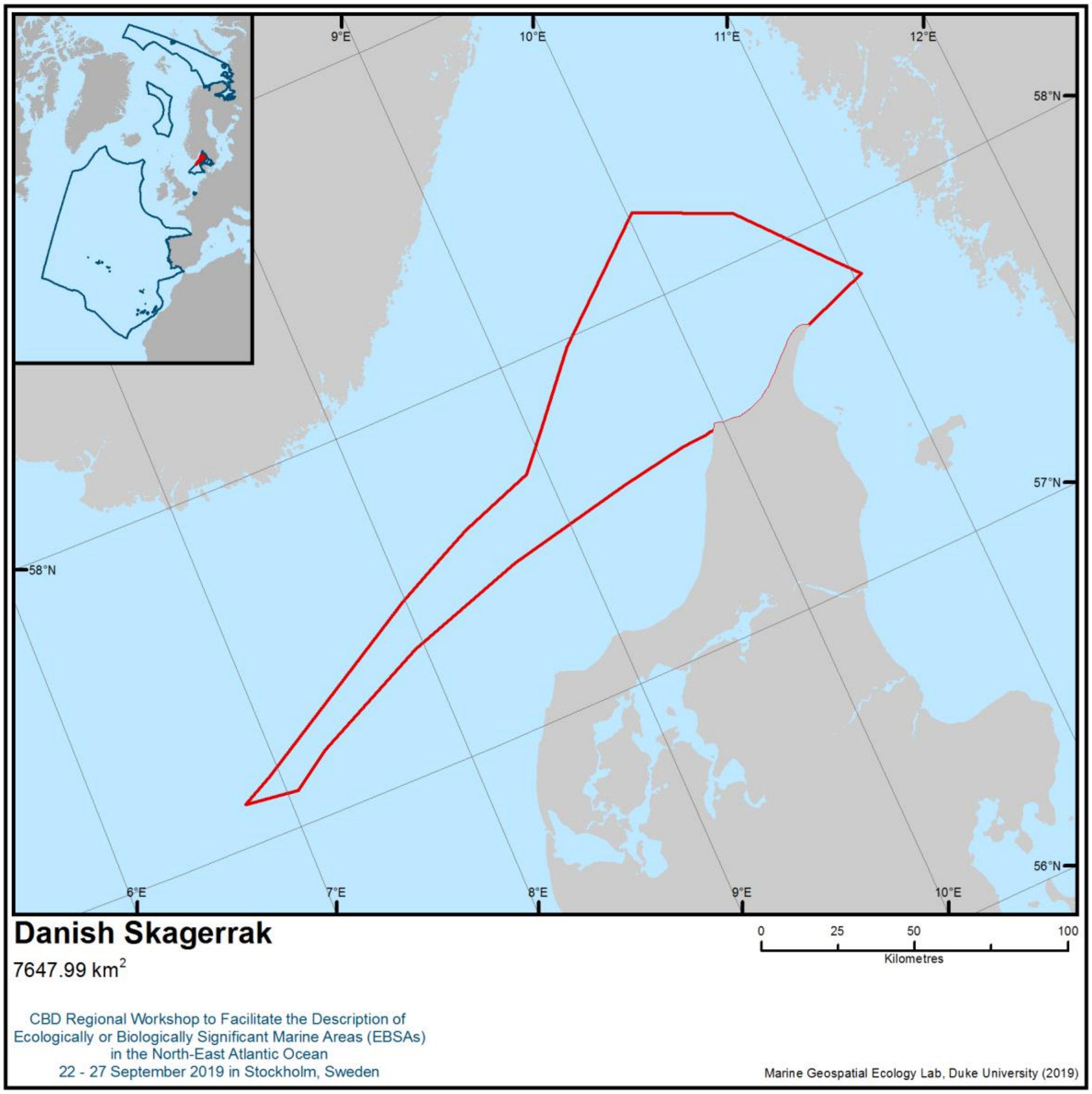
Stone, C.J., Webb, A., Bsrton, C., Ratcliffe, N., Reed, T.C., Tasker, M.L., Camphuysen, C.J. & Pienkowski, M.W. (1995): An Atlas of Seabird Distribution in north-west European waters. – Joint Nature Conservation Committee and Nederlands Instituut voor Onderzoek der Zee. 326 pp.

Sveggard, S., Nabe-Nielsen, J. & Teilmann, J. 2018. Marsvins udbredelse og status for de marine habitatområder i danske farvande. Aarhus Universitet, DCE – Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi, 36 s. - Videnskabelig rapport nr. 284. http://dce2.au.dk/pub/SR284.pdf

Tasker, M.L., Webb, A., Hall, A.J., Pienkowski, M.W. & Langslow, D.R. 1987: Seabirds in the North Sea. – Nature Conservancy Council, UK. Report, 336 pp.

Vinther M. and Larsen F. (2004) Updated estimates of harbor porpoise bycatch in the Danish bottom set gillnet fishery. J Cetacean Res Manag 6: 19–24.

Maps and Figures



Location of area no. 1: Danish Skagerrak

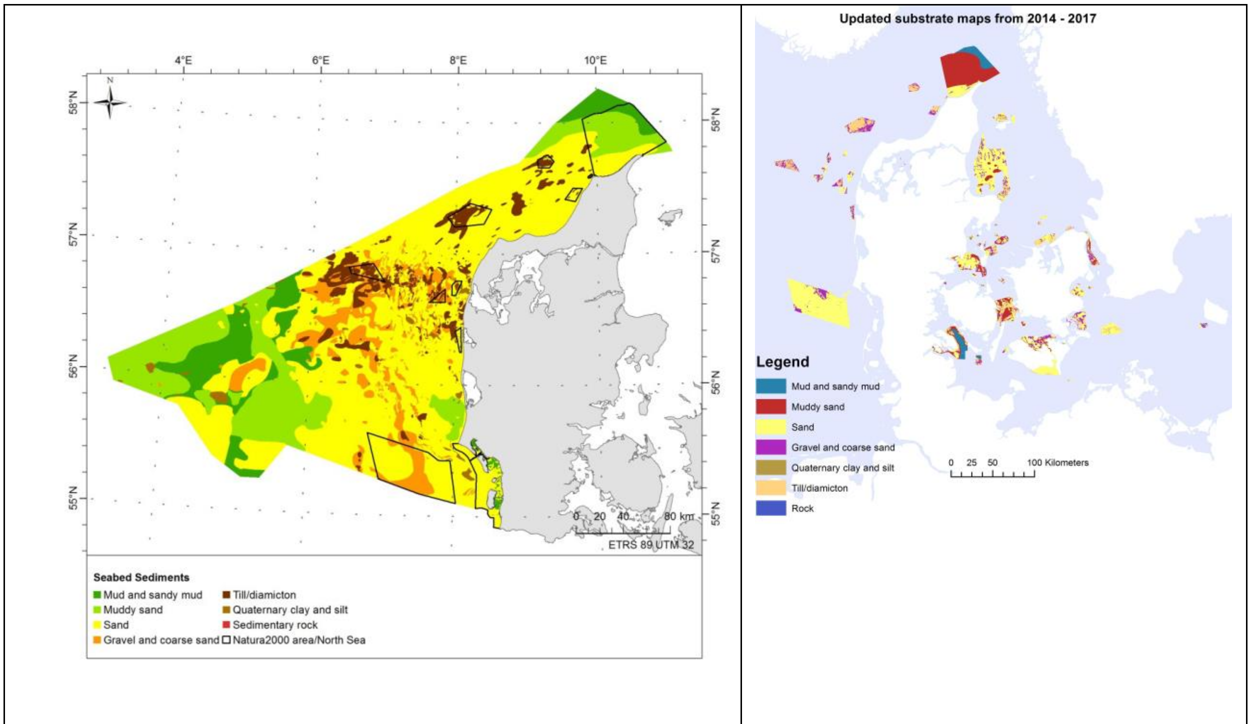


Figure 1. Seabed sediments in the Danish North Sea and Skagerrak as presented in the figure on the left (Edelvang *et al*., 2017). Updated seabed sediments in newly mapped Natura 2000 areas are presented in the figure on the right (Unpublished data provided from the Danish Environmental Agency).

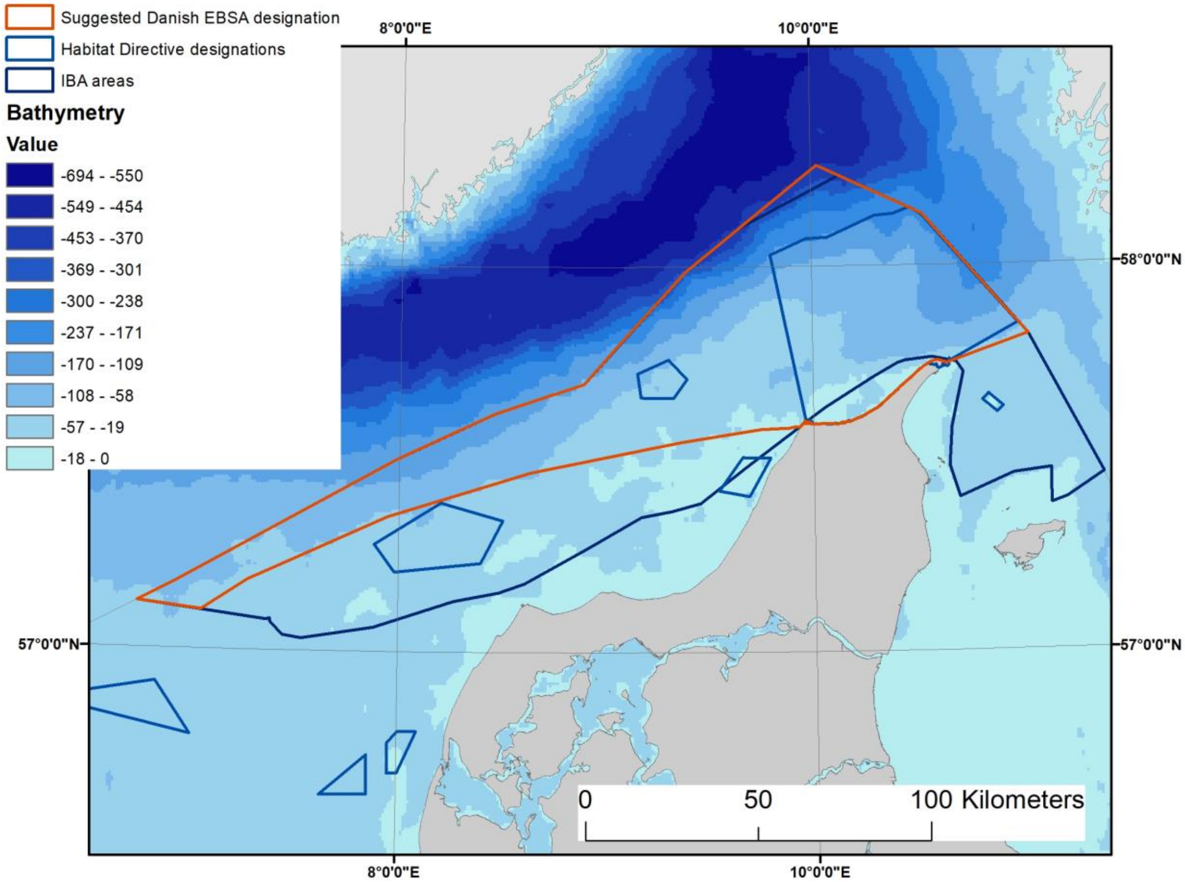


Figure 2. The geographical extent of the Skagerrak area. The Important Bird Area (IBA) is also shown. The bathymetry of the area, in metres, is indicated.

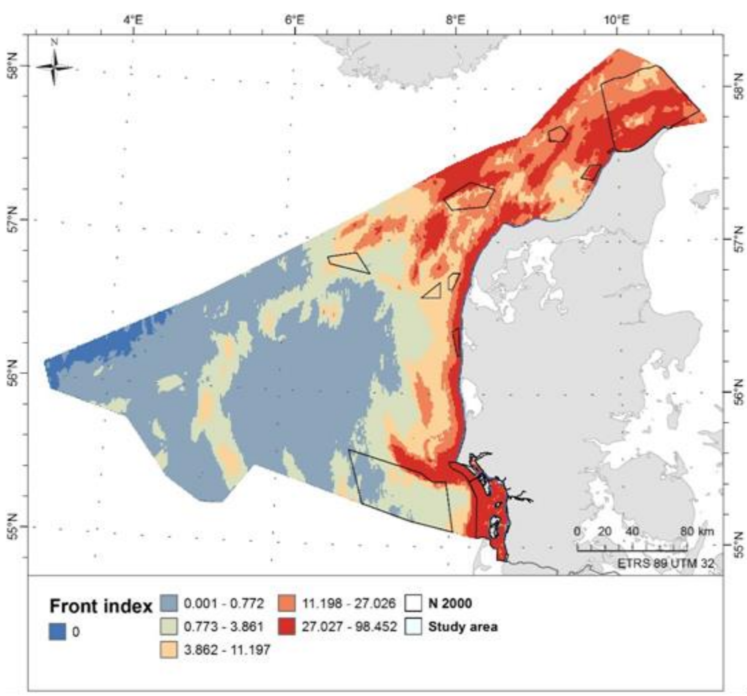


Figure 3. A: Frontal zone areas, reflected as a frontal index from Edelvang *et al*., (2018). The index is based on current gradient and vorticity. The front is defined as the frequency of current gradient and vorticity exceeding the thresholds 0.000015 and 0.00001 respectively combined for each time step at about 20 depths. The figure shows the mean of the years 2011-2016.

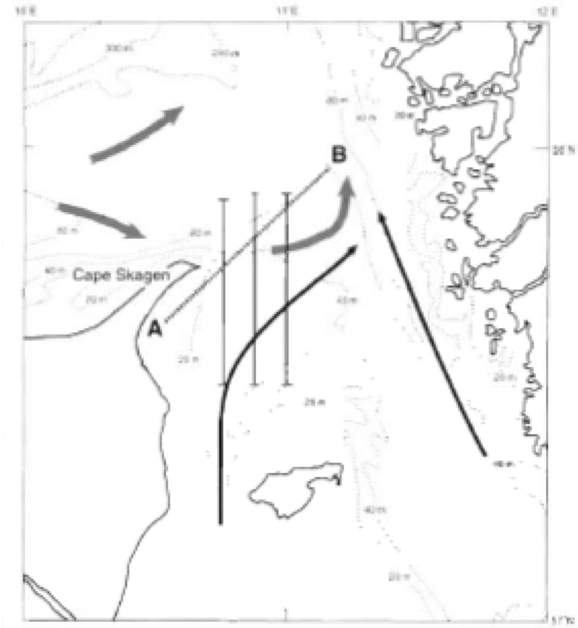


Figure 3B: The Kattegat-Skagerrak front, as described by Josefson and Conley (1997).

Figure 4. North Sea stock of harbour porpoise in Skagerrak as they appear in two time periods and in summer (top) and winter (bottom)
Source: Svegaard *et al*. 2018.

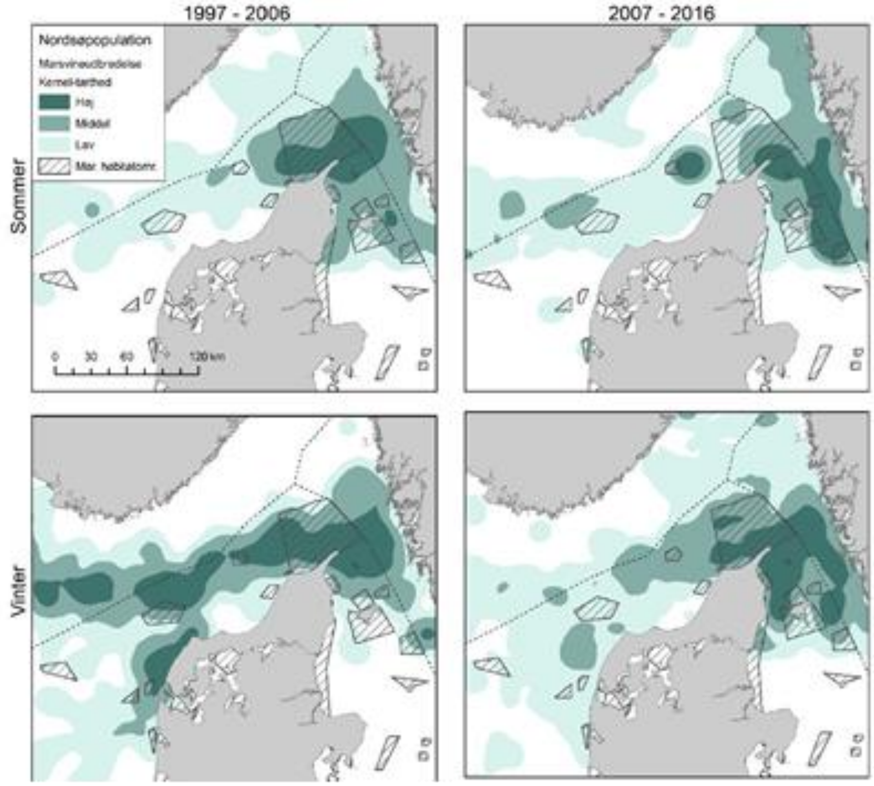
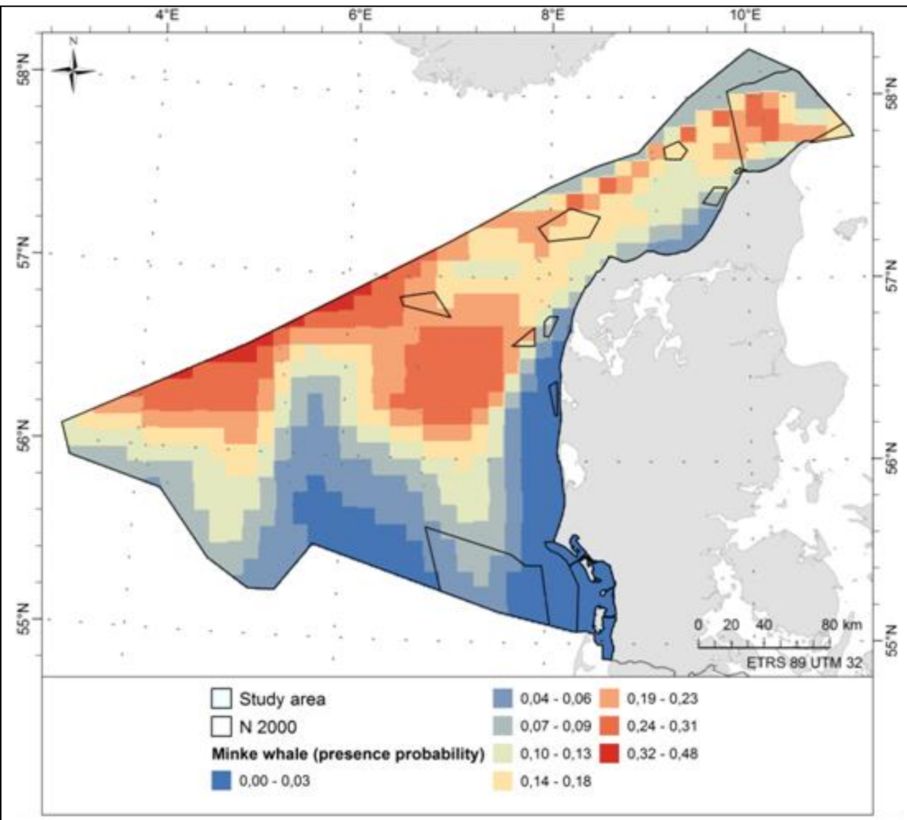


Figure 5.
Probability of presence of minke whales modelled using Multivariate Additive Regression Splines (MARS) based on species observations (SCANS aerial surveys in 1994 and 2005, combined) and environmental predictors. The data was modelled and provided by the project HARMONY.
Source: Edelvang *et al*. 2017a and b.



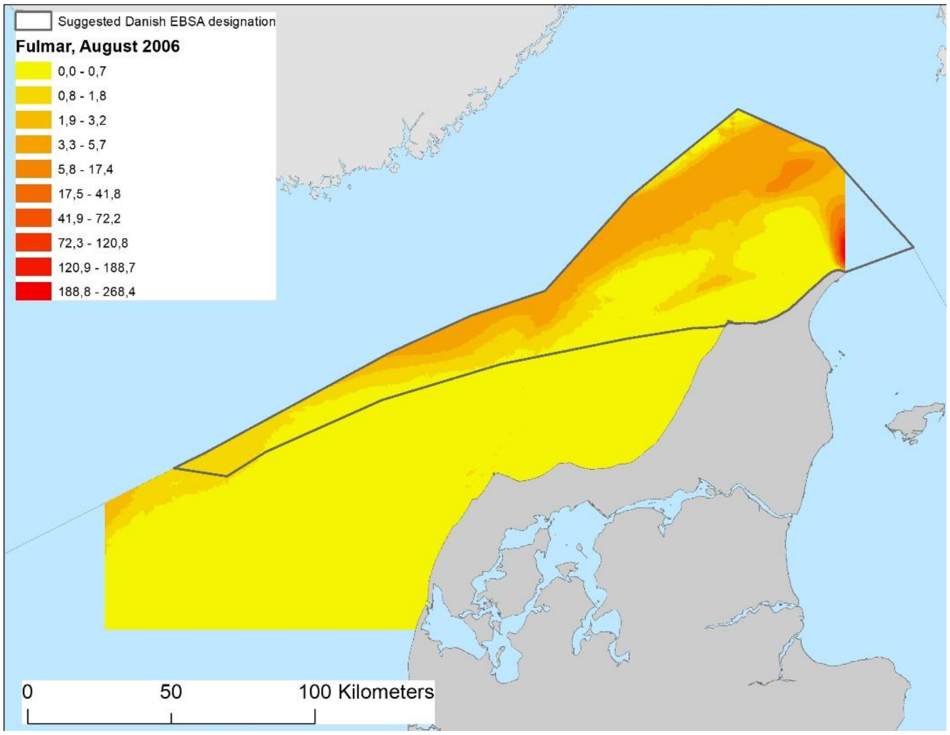


Figure 6. The abundance and spatial distribution of fulmars in the northern part of the Danish North Sea and Skagerrak on 6 August 2006. The estimated abundance was 86,000 birds, 85 per cent of which were found within the area described as meeting the EBSA criteria.

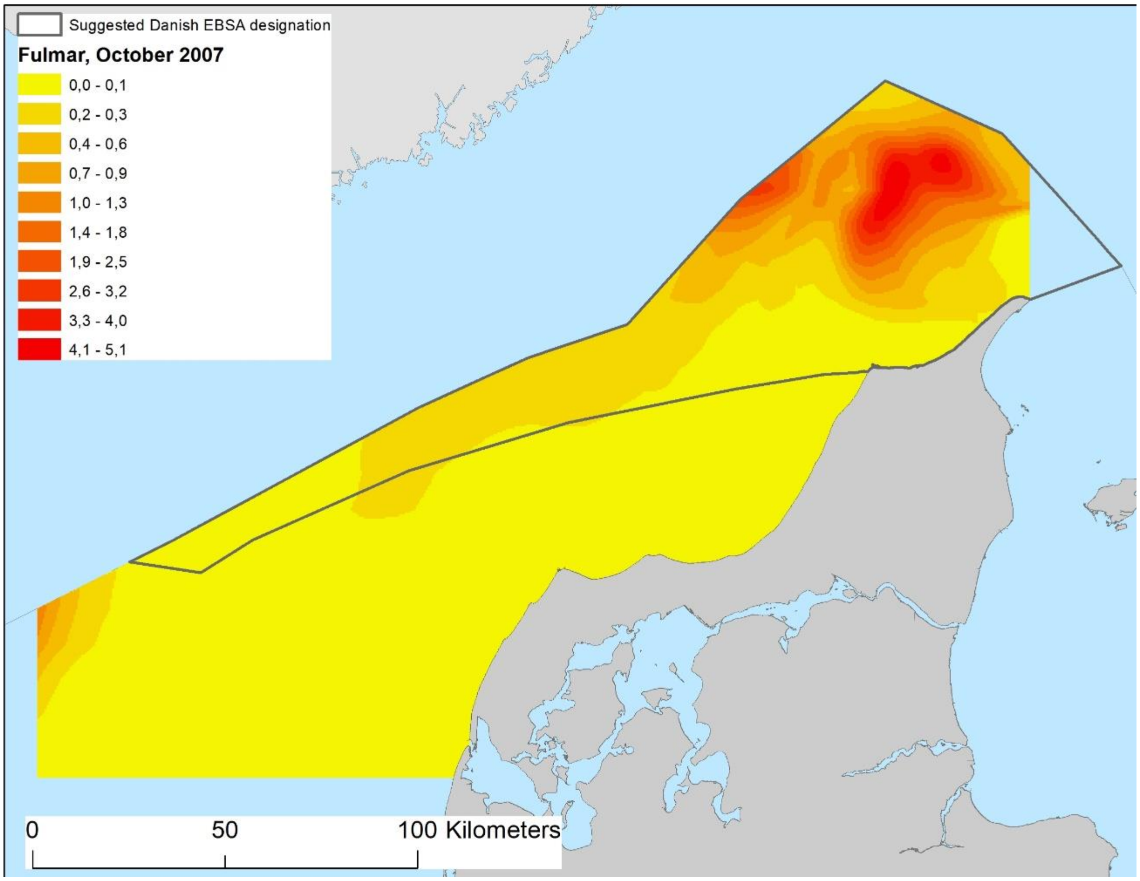


Figure 7. The abundance and spatial distribution of fulmars in the northern part of the Danish North Sea and Skagerrak on 23 October 2007. The estimated abundance was ca. 18,500 birds, 94 per cent of which were found within the area meeting the EBSA criteria.

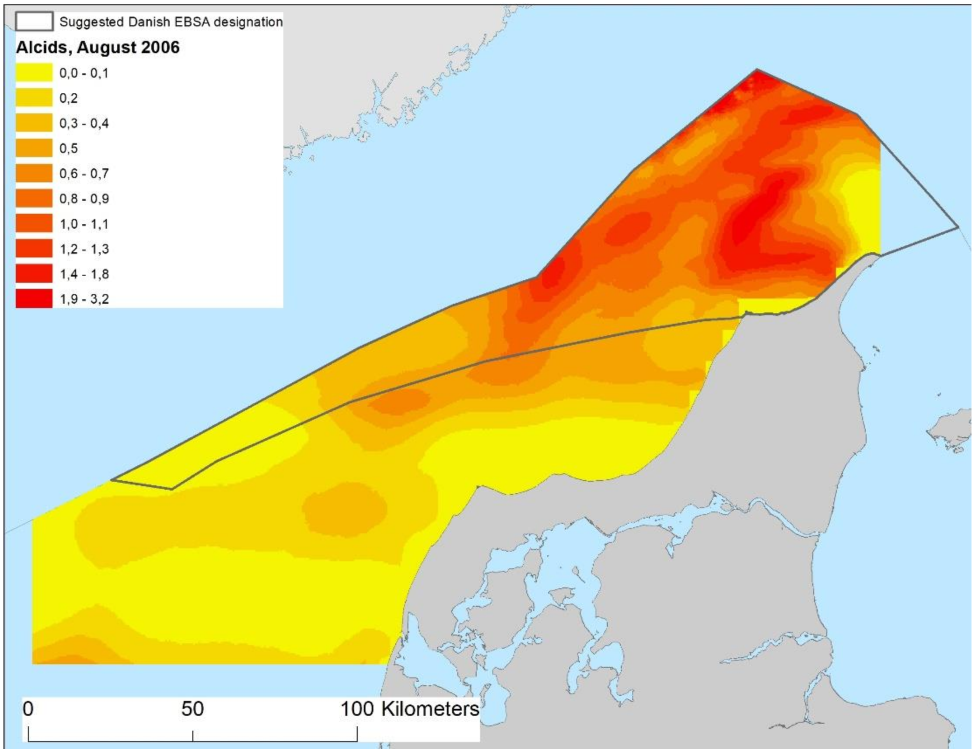


Figure 8. The abundance and spatial distribution of razorbills/common guillemots in the northern part of the Danish North Sea and Skagerrak on 6 August 2006. The estimated abundance was ca. 28,000 birds, of which 74 per cent were found within the area meeting EBSA criteria.

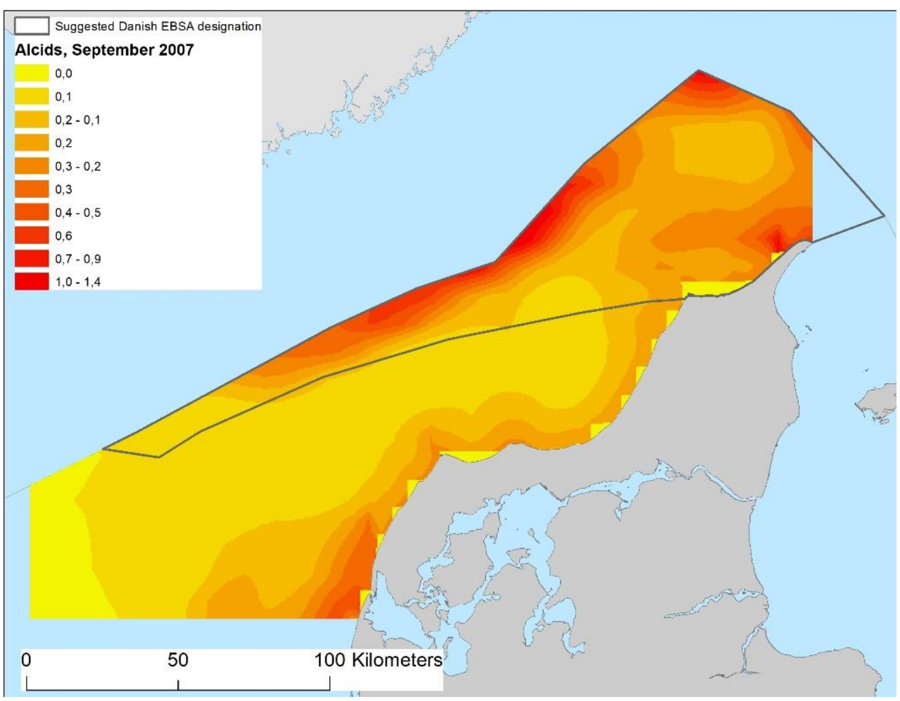


Figure 9. The abundance and spatial distribution of razorbills/common guillemots in the northern part of the Danish North Sea and Skagerrak on 26 September 2007. The estimated abundance was ca. 9,600 birds, of which 61 per cent were found within the area meeting the EBSA criteria.

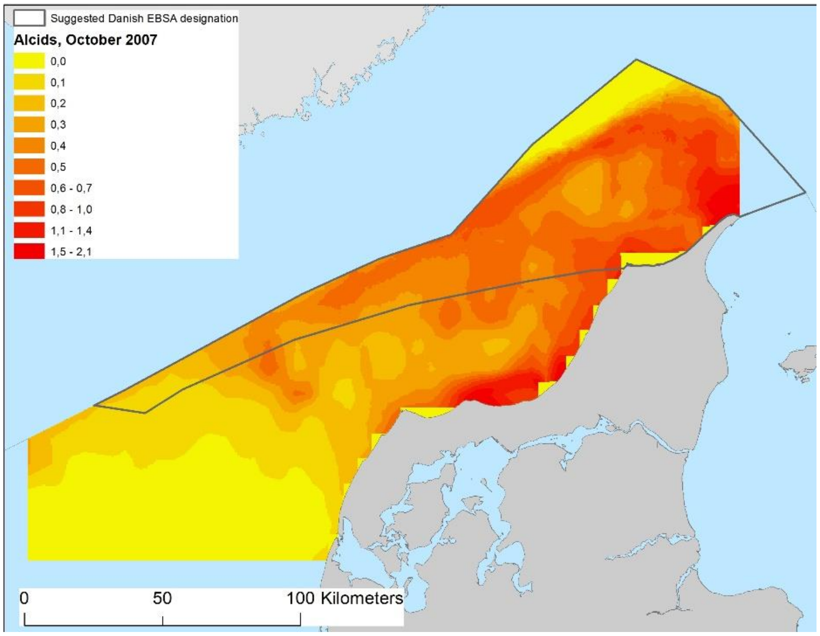


Figure 10. The abundance and spatial distribution of razorbills/common guillemots in the northern part of the Danish North Sea and Skagerrak on 23 October 2007. The estimated abundance was ca. 21,000 birds, of which 61 per cent were found within the area meeting EBSA criteria.

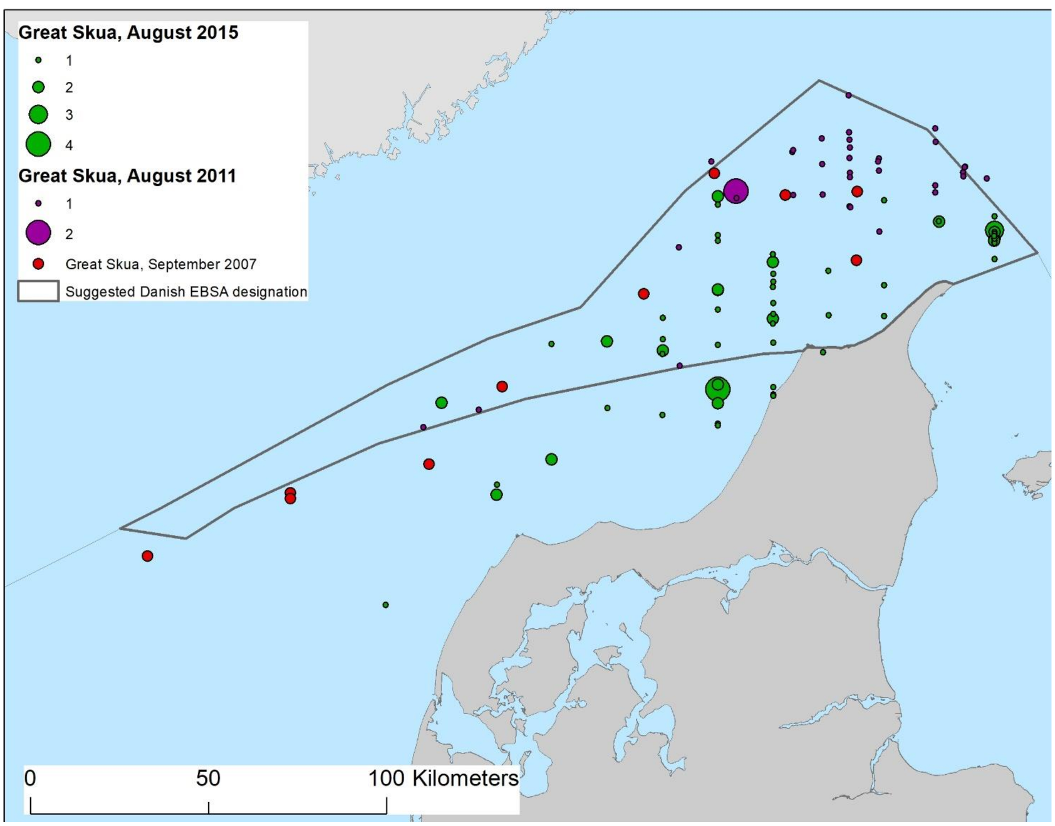


Figure 11. The numbers of observed great skuas in the northern part of the Danish North Sea and Skagerrak, and their spatial distribution during three surveys performed in August of 2011 and 2015 and in September 2007.

Area no. 2: Danish Kattegat

Abstract

The Danish Kattegat hosts a landscape comprising shallow sandy flats, deeper muddy channels and areas with boulder reefs and bubbling reefs. The area has a diverse avifauna, with elements from pelagic environments in the North Sea, as well as wintering birds from breeding grounds in the Russian Federation and Scandinavia. Parts of the area are difficult to access for human activities serve as valuable moulting sites for seaducks, such as common scoter and velvet scoter. The area is a meeting site for two subpopulations of harbour porpoise. Eelgrass meadows exist here, although they are smaller than they were in the year 1900. Seaweed forests and rich fauna are found on boulder reefs and bubbling reefs in this area, and infauna communities have high biomasses. Horse-mussel beds are found primarily in the southern part of Kattegat, where they form biogenic reef structures. *Haploops tubicola*, a small crustacean, is present in the area, but no longer forms a specific habitat with high densities.

Introduction

Kattegat is a transitional water zone between the highly saline Skagerrak and the brackish Baltic Sea. Its eastern part hosts a deep ancient river valley (>100 m depth), surrounded by shallow sandbanks and boulder reef areas bordering Swedish waters. To the west, sandy flats dominate, with water depth less than 20m. The rare feature made by “bubbling reefs” is present in the northern area. The water masses are stratified, with the less saline Baltic water flowing northward over masses with higher salinity, which flow southward. The area is very productive, with high biomass of fauna in both sandy and muddy sediments. Biogenic reefs of horse-mussel beds (*Modiolus modiolus)* are found in patches primarily in the southern part. Submerged vegetation covers boulders on reef locations as well as on the top of bubbling reefs, even with high coverage on 20m water depth. Eelgrass meadows occur along the coast. Populations of harbour seals rest and breed on the islands. Kattegat also hosts a high density of harbour porpoise. The area is internationally important for seabirds.

Location

The area comprises the northern part of inner Danish waters. It is bordered to the south by the north coast of Sealand, to the west by the northeast Jutland coast, to the east by the Danish-Swedish border and to the north by a line from the northernmost point of Denmark to the northeast. It covers a total area of 14,995 km^2. The existing EBSA (Area No. 9: Fladen and Stora and Lilla Middelgrund), described in the Baltic EBSA workshop, borders this area (see workshop report here: https://www.cbd.int/doc/c/aa9a/bde9/eaf24f73bd471d64e8094722/ebsa-ws-2018-01-04-en.pdf).

Feature description of the area

General description

Kattegat is a transitional water zone between the highly saline Skagerrak and the brackish Baltic Sea. Its eastern part hosts a deep ancient river valley (>100 m depth), surrounded by shallow sandbanks and boulder reef areas bordering Swedish waters. To the west, sandy flats dominate, with water depth less than 20m. The water masses are stratified, with the less saline Baltic water flowing northward, while beneath it, water with higher salinity flows southward.

Bubbling Reefs

A very rare/unique feature made by leaking gas (Habitats Directive type 1180), known as “bubbling reefs” (Figure 2) are present in the area, and are particularly numerous in the northern part of the area. This feature is so far recorded only in Kattegat, a minor part of the Danish part of Skagerrak, and in the Codling Fault Zone in Irish waters. Figure 3 shows the distribution of identified bubbling reefs in the area described as meeting the EBSA criteria. Bubbling reefs are formed by prolonged leaking of methane gasses from deep deposits (Jensen *et al*, 1992). The reef structures are formed in the near-surface sediment layer in a chemical process binding chalk to the sediment in an oxygenated sediment environment along the gas-seeping channels. Large bubbling reefs have caves and overhangs hosting communities dominated by hard bottom fauna on shady parts that are not found at the same water depth on nearby boulder reefs. Bubbling reefs in Kattegat are often located on sandy bottoms and thus significantly increase the complexity of these habitats.

The appearance of the reef structures above the seabed is due to erosional processes likely over very long time-scales. The structures are fragile and very sensitive to physical disturbance.

Boulder reefs
There are offshore reef areas, as well as coastal reef areas, in the entire area. There are several offshore areas next to the offshore reef areas of the existing EBSA (Area No. 9: Fladen and Stora and Lilla Middelgrund), described in the Baltic EBSA workshop, in Kattegat (Figure 4). The reefs host productive seaweed forests as well as a high diversity of algae (Nielsen *et al*, 1992). The vegetation is multilayered to a depth of 15 m (Carstensen and Dahl, 2018). The species diversity of invertebrates is high on offshore reef areas. In Fladen, part of the nearby EBSA noted above, 439 species were found, but the diversity is also high at Lilla Middelgrund (374 species), and Stora Middelgrund (more than 300 species) (Naturvårdsverket 2006).

Several reefs host a special kelp community consisting of *Sacharina latisima*, *Laminaria digitate* and *Laminaria hyperboria*. Kelp are highly productive and can be found down to approximately 20m water depth in Kattegat but suffer in adjacent fjord systems (Dahl *et al*, 2013). Concern has been raised about kelp species being potentially sensitive to climate change in this region.

Infauna communities in general
The area is very productive, with a high biomass of infauna on both sandy and muddy substrates. Gogina *et al*. (2016) modelled community distribution and biomass distribution in Kattegat as well as the rest of the Baltic Sea based on collected data from the whole HELCOM area. Findings indicate that Kattegat is an area with high biomass and several different communities (Figure 5).

The deeper muddy seabed hosts a high number of Norway lobster (*Nephrops norvegicus*) Figure 6)

Haplops habitat
The tube-building crustacean *Haploops tubicola* used to cover extensive areas in the southern Kattegat, where dense numbers formed a specific habitat. Haploops communities have decreased significantly since the 1960s, when the habitat is believed to have occurred abundantly at depths greater than 15 metdrs in the south-eastern Kattegat (Göransson *et al*. 2010). Today, Haploops is still present in the Kattegat area, but only in low densities, and with no habitat-forming function (Figure 7). The species is considered endangered, according to the HELCOM Red List (HELCOM (2013b).

Modiolus modiolus beds
The horse mussel (*Modiolus modiolus*) is unevenly distributed, primarily in the southern part of Kattegat (figure 8). Following the definition of Dahl and Petersen (2018), they can form biogenic reefs or combined geogenic and biogenic reefs in several places. Such reefs are shaped by a mixture of live mussels and dead shells. Modiolus is also recorded from some sites in Øresund, Lillebelt and Great Belt, all part of the HELCOM region. A known horse-mussel bed in the northern Kattegat became extinct in the 1990s. The mussels in Danish waters are typically found on mixed sediments containing rough sand, gravel and larger boulders, where the larger living mussels are two-thirds buried in the sediment.

Modiolus reefs host a high diversity of associated fauna and a few algal species. The beds are located below 15 to 19m, but a deeper depth range is likely as well. The distribution is most likely constrained to areas having an average salinity above 26 PSU). The geographical distribution has not been described. Only point observations exist in different areas.

Modiolus is a long-lived and slow-growing species, and the larval phase in the water column is approximately four weeks. Larval settling seems to be stimulated by existing mussel populations on the site (Dinesen and Morton, 2014). For this reason, the loss of mussel beds is likely to have adverse and long-lasting effects.

Eelgrass beds

Eelgrass (*Zostea marina*) can form dense meadows. It occurs along the east coast of Jutland, north of Sealand and south of the island of Læsø. This very productive habitat used to be more common in Danish waters until a disease in the 1930s diminished most populations. Despite large methodological differences, Boström *et al*. (2014) made a rough estimate that eelgrass coverage in Kattegat and adjacent fjords diminished to 10 per cent of the coverage in the year 1900.

Eelgrass is an important habitat for many invertebrates and serves as a feeding and nursery area for a number of fish, including young cod. Despite an improving environment in Danish waters, the eelgrass meadows are not recovering as expected. Figure 9 shows a modelled potential distribution of eelgrass in Danish waters based on seabed sediment, light and exposure.

Seal species

Harbour seal (*Phoca vitulina*) rest and breed on the islands of Anholt and Læsø. Gray seal (*Halichoerus grypus*) is less common in Kattegat.

Harbor porpoise

Kattegat hosts both the North Sea population in the northern part of the area as well at the Belt Sea population in the southern part of Kattegat. Both occur in relatively high numbers (Figure 10). The harbour porpoise is listed in the OSPAR Recommendation 2013/11 on furthering the protection and restoration of the harbour porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) in Regions II and III of the OSPAR maritime area (OSPAR 2013). Harbour porpoise is also assessed as vulnerable by Denmark according to the HELCOM red list assessment (HELCOM 2013a)

Birds - Pelagic feeders and surface feeders

A number of pelagic-feeding bird species are present in the deeper parts of the area, from the north, through the eastern to the southeastern parts. These include, most notably, common guillemot (*Uria aalge)* and razorbill (*Alca torda)*, but also kittiwake (*Rissa tridactyla)* and northern gannet (*Morus bassanus)*.

Razorbill/Common Guillemot

Razorbills and common guillemots are treated in common in the analysis below, as the species are difficult to separate when recorded by aerial surveys. The two species are found in the area throughout the year, but do not breed in the area or its vicinity. Over the summer the majority of the alcids present are common guillemots. Breeding birds from Scotland perform a swimming migration with their flightless young from breeding grounds in Scotland and raise their offspring to fledglings in the area. In winter the majority of the alcids in the area are razorbills. The ratio between the two species is poorly known and is thought to fluctuate considerably over time in winter. The eastern and southeastern parts of the area are the most important areas for the species in inner Danish waters, where there are frequently tens of thousands of birds. A spatial model of alcids in the area in the winter of 2008 estimated close to 73,000 individuals in the area, most of which were found in the southeastern parts of the area (Figure 11).

In the winter of 2016, a national waterbird monitoring study was conducted in inner Danish waters. During this survey more than 4,200 razorbills/common guillemots were recorded (Figure 12). No spatial model of abundance from these sampled data has been performed. Based on the number of observed birds and their distribution, the total abundance and distribution show very similar patterns as the 2008 results (Holm *et al*. 2018).

Black-legged Kittiwake
Kittiwakes are offshore surface feeders, in the non-breeding season mainly at sea. Kattegat, with its influx of saline water, comprises a suitable habitat for this species. The spatial distribution of the species coincides with the distribution of razorbills/common guillemots. Kittiwakes are, on the other hand, more mobile than the alcids, and thus the occurrence in the Kattegat area is more unstable. The deep area in Kattegat is the most important area of the inner Danish waters for the species (Figure 13).

Birds – Benthic-feeding birds
The central part of the area has extensive areas of shallow water, less than 20 m in depth. In such areas, benthic feeders are present in high numbers, notably during spring, winter and autumn, but also in significant numbers during summer (Petersen *et al*. 2003). The most abundant species is common scoter (*Melanitta nigra)* with up to 900,000 individuals recorded at a single time (Laursen *et al*. 1997). Also, common eider (*Sommateria mollissima)*, velvet scoter (*Melanitta fusca)*, long-tailed duck (*Clangula hyemalis)* and greater scaup (*Aythya marila)* are found in the area. Moreover, the shallower parts of the area have significant concentrations of divers. *Gaviidae* stage during migration or overwinter in this area. Red-throated diver (*Gavia stellate)* is the most abundant diver species in the area. Many waterbirds that breed in the Russian Federation and northern Scandinavia overwinter in this area due to the low probability of ice cover in winter and large areas of shallow water.

During the summer, common scoters, common eiders and velvet scoters moult in the shallowest parts of this area. These species moult remigial feathers simultaneously, leaving them flightless for a period of approximately three weeks (Fox *et al*. 2008). During this time the birds are particularly vulnerable to human disturbances (Petersen *et al*. 2017). An area between the islands of Læsø and Anholt has very shallow waters, making human access difficult, and is thus an important area for moulting common scoters.

Common Scoter
Common scoter is the most abundant seaduck species in the area. The shallow parts of the area comprise the single most important area for this species in inner Danish waters. The modelled abundance from a national waterbird census in the winter of 2008 estimated more than 400,000 individuals in inner Danish waters, of which more than 350,000 were estimated to occur within the area (Figure 14; Petersen & Nielsen 2011).

Common scoters are found in the Kattegat area all year, though in highest numbers over the autumn, winter and spring (Figure 15). Regardless of the lower numbers from July to September, the area remains important for the species as it moults and is therefore flightless for a period of about three weeks.

Common scoters primarily feed on benthic invertebrates, notably mussels. In the Kattegat area, common scoters have been found in shallow water, the majority at a depth of between 4 and 10 metres (Figure 16).

Velvet Scoter
Velvet scoters are benthic feeders, mainly feeding on soft bottom infauna (Petersen *et al*. 2019). The winter abundance in inner Danish waters has been estimated at between 26,000 and 65,000 individuals (Figure 7, Nielsen *et al*. 2019), of which approximately 30 per cent were observed within the area meeting EBSA criteria.

Divers (Gaviidae)
The shallow parts of Kattegat are important areas for wintering divers. Most of these birds are red-throated divers (Petersen & Nielsen 2011). In inner Danish waters, Kattegat is the most important area for these species (Figure 18). The highest numbers are found in the western parts of the Kattegat area as well as along the north coast of Sjælland.

Divers are found in the Kattegat area in winter and spring primarily. Few divers were recorded during the summer and autumn (Figure 19).

Divers are mainly piscivorous, and largely feed on demersal fish. The birds are found on deeper waters than the benthic feeding seaducks, with more than 50 per cent of the divers recorded on water depth between 8 and 16 meters (Figure 10).

Feature condition and future outlook of the area
Kattegat hosts a rich birdlife of international importance and the larger of two sub-populations of harbour porpoise. It also holds productive boulder and bubbling reef areas and areas with relatively high benthic biomass. Measures were enforced in the late 1980s to reduce eutrophication levels in Kattegat and adjacent waters. Since then the environment in Kattegat has been undergoing an oligotrophication process, improving the water quality (Riemann *et al*. 2015). Major shipping routes, connecting the Baltic Sea and the northeast Atlantic, pass through Kattegat, and an intensive fishery takes place in the deeper eastern part, mainly for Norway lobster.

National legislation prohibits the use of dredging fishing gears on reefs and all bottom-contacting gears on "Structures made by leaking gasses" (bubbling reefs) in NATURA 2000 sites where those features are part of the designation lists.

Assessment of area no. 2, Danish Kattegat, against CBD EBSA Criteria

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">CBD EBSA Criteria
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</td><td rowspan="2">Description
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</td><td colspan="4">Ranking of criterion relevance
(please mark one column with an X)</td></tr>
<tr><td>No information</td><td>Low</td><td>Medium</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td>Uniqueness or rarity</td><td>Area contains either (i) unique ("the only one of its kind"), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
Presence of "bubbling reefs" habitat (Habitats Directive type 1180) exists with one or more structures in several places. Most structures are found north of Læsø and north east of Frederikshavn. The habitat is on the HELCOM biotope red list (HELCOM 2013a).

Presence of biogenic reef structures and combined biogenic-geogenic reef structures of Modiolus modiolus in the southern part of Kattegat (reference: Danish NOVANA database)

The area is unique, combining high numbers of both benthic-feeding and pelagic-feeding seabirds. The range of ecological niches creates optimal habitats for the unusual variety of seabirds. In the shallow western part, benthic-feeding common scoter (Melanitta nigra) and common eider (Somatteria mollissima) are found in numbers of international significance (Petersen et al., 2003, 2010).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Special importance for life-history stages</td><td>Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td>of species</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
Existing Modiolus modiolus beds seem to attract larval settling of new generations (Dinesen and Morton 2014). Loss of existing mussel beds may result in lacking or very slow restocking of the beds.

Kattegat acts as a donor area for several benthic invertebrates to the adjacent fjords. The organisms are transported in planktonic stages (Josefson and Hansen 2004). This function is important as many fjords, bays and inlets with poor water exchange regularly suffer from oxygen deficiencies. In general, problems with oxygen deficiency have not diminished in the last 25 years, despite severe reduction in nutrient load to Kattegat (Riemann et al. 2017)

During the summer, common scoters, common eiders and velvet scoters use the shallow areas of the Kattegat as a moulting site. These species moult remedial feathers simultaneously, leaving them flightless for a period of approximately three weeks (Fox et al. 2008). The area is among the most important moulting places for this species in Europe (Petersen and Fox 2009 and Petersen og Nielsen 2011). During this time the birds are particularly vulnerable to human disturbances (Petersen et al. 2017). An area between the islands of Læsø and Anholt has very shallow waters, making it difficult to access for human activities and is thus a more natural habitat and an important area for moulting common scoters.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats</td><td>Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
The tube-building crustacean Haploops tubicola used to cover extensive areas in the southern Kattegat, where dense numbers formed a specific habitat. Today Haploops are still present in the Kattegat area but only in low densities with no habitat-forming function. Haploops is considered endangered on the HELCOM Red List (HELCOM 2013b).

Modiolus modiolus beds are on the OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats (OSPAR 2008) Modiolus beds are recognized as biogenic habitats hosting a specific community (Dinesen and Morton 2014)

Velvet scoter (Melanitta fusca) and long-tailed duck (Clangula hyemalis) found within on shallow waters the area are described as declining (Skov et al. 2011) and globally Red Listed (IUCN Red List of Threatened Species).

Diver species (Gaviidae), mainly red-throated diver (Gavia stellate), are found in numbers of national importance (Petersen et al. 2003; 2006; 2010; Holm et al 2018). Red-throated divers are described as declining in the Baltic (Skov et al. 2011).

The harbour porpoise is listed in OSPAR Recommendation 2013/11 on furthering the protection and restoration of the harbour porpoise (Phocoena phocoena) in regions II and III of the OSPAR maritime area (OSPAR 2013). Harbour porpoise is also assessed as vulnerable by Denmark according to the HELCOM Red List (HELCOM 2013a)
.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Vulnerability, fragility,</td><td>Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
</table>

sensitivity, or slow recovery	are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				
Explanation for ranking The Danish part of Kattegat hosts a large number of identified bubbling reef structures. The reef structures are fragile and sensitive to physical disturbance, e.g., by mobile fishing gears like bottom trawls or bottom set gears like pots and gillnets, anchors and lines. Damage to bubbling reef structures is irreversible. Eelgrass meadows occur all along the coast of Kattegat. In the 1930s, eelgrass was more widely distributed than it is today. Despite significant improvement in the marine environment over the last 25 years, eelgrass distribution is still reduced, with hardly any improvement (Rieman *et al*. 2015). During summer moult the diving ducks are particularly vulnerable to human disturbances (Petersen *et al*. 2017). An area between the islands of Læsø and Anholt has very shallow waters, making human access difficult, and is thus an important area for moulting common scoters					
Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.			X	
Explanation for ranking The large offshore reef sites have a considerably higher coverage of erect macroalgae compared to coastal sites or sites in adjacent fjord areas (Carstensen and Dahl 2018; Würgler 2018). Eelgrass meadows occur all along the coast of Kattegat. In the 1930s, eelgrass was more widely distributed than it is today. Despite significant improvement in the marine environment over the last 25 years, eelgrass distribution is still reduced, with hardly any improvement (Rieman *et al*. 2015). The general assessment of benthic infaunal biomass indicates that it is high in the Danish part of Kattegat (Gogina *et al*. 2016).					
Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.			X	
Explanation for ranking High number of harbour porpoise, harbour seals and several bird species. Off-shore reefs and bubbling reefs both host many macroalgal species and hard-substrate species.					
Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.			X	
Explanation for ranking Coastal areas in Denmark, including Kattegat, are in an oligotrophic state as a result of the Danish action plans from 1988 to reduce nutrient load to marine waters. Several parameters, like marine algal vegetation, level of chlorophyll, reduced benthic biomass and a reduction of filter feeders, are counteracted by increasing deposit feeders. No improvements have been seen in oxygen content and eelgrass distribution (Riemann *et al*. 2017).					

Some features can be considered to have a high naturalness rating, such as bubbling reef sites, offshore reef areas and seal haul outs on the eastern spit of the island Anholt and the southern part of Læsø.

The shallow water in the western Kattegat, especially the area south of the island Læsø, is important for benthic-feeding bird species, particularly in the moulting season, and can be considered to have a high degree of naturalness, as human access is limited due to the shallow waters, and thus birds experience reduced human disturbance.

References

Anon 2018. Report of the working group on Nephrops Surveys (WGNEPS) ICES WGNEPS Report 2018. ICES CM 2018/EOSG:18

Boge, E. 2019. The return of the Atlantic bluefin tuna to Norwegian waters. - Master thesis in Fisheries Biology and Management, Department of Biological Sciences University of Bergen. 84 pp

Boström, C. , Baden, S. , Bockelmann, A. , Dromph, K. , Fredriksen, S. , Gustafsson, C. , Krause‐Jensen, D. , Möller, T. , Nielsen, S. L., Olesen, B. , Olsen, J. , Pihl, L. and Rinde, E. (2014), Distribution, structure and function of Nordic eelgrass *(Zostera marina)* ecosystems: implications for coastal management and conservation. Aquatic Conserv: Mar. Freshw. Ecosyst., 24: 410-434. doi:10.1002/aqc.2424

Dahl, K., Josefson, A.B., Göke, C., Aagaard Christensen, J.P., Hansen, J.L.S., Markager, S., Rasmussen, M.B., Dromph, K., Tian, T., Wan, Z., Krämer, I., Viitasalo, M., Kostamo, K., Borenäs, K., Bendtsen, J., Springe, G., Bonsdorff, E.. *Climate Change Impacts on Marine Biodiversity and Habitats in the Baltic Sea - and Possible Human Adaptations.* In: O. Krarup Leth, K. Dahl, H. Peltonen, I. Krämer & L. Kūle (eds.). *Sectoral Impact Assessments for the Baltic Sea Region - Climate Change Impacts on Biodiversity, Fisheries, Coastal Infrastructure and Tourism.* Coastline Reports (21), pp. 1-34. EUCC - Die Küsten Union Deutschland e.V., Rostock, 2013.

Dahl, K. and Petersen, J.K. (2018). Definition af biogene rev. Miljøprojekt nr. 1992. Miljøstyrelsen https://www2.mst.dk/Udgiv/publikationer/2018/03/978-87-93614-88-8.pdf

Carstensen J & Dahl K. (2019). Macroalgal indicators for Danish Natura 2000 habitats. Aarhus University, DCE – Danish Centre for Environment and Energy, 45 pp. Technical Report No. 142. http://dce2.au.dk/pub/TR142.pdf

Dierschke, V. (2002): Durchzug von Sterntauchern *Gavia stellata* und Prachttauchern *G. arctica* in der Deutschen Bucht bei Helgoland. - Vogelwelt 123: 203 – 211.

Fox, A.D., Hartmann, P. & Petersen, I.K. 2008. Changes in body mass and organ size during remigial moult in common scoter Melanitta nigra. - J. Avian Biol. 39: 35_40

Dinesen G.E. and Morton B. (2014) Review of the functional morphology, biology and perturbation impacts on the boreal, habitat-forming horse mussel *Modiolus modiolus* (Bivalvia: Mytilidae: Modiolinae), Marine Biology Research, 10:9, 845-870, DOI: 10.1080/17451000.2013.866250

Göransson P., Bertilsson Vuksan S., Karlfelt J. & Börjesson L. 2010. Haploops- och Modiolus-samhället utanför Helsingborg 2000-2009. Miljönämnden i Helsingborg.

Gogina, M., H. Nygård, M. Blomqvist, D. Daunys, A. B. Josefson, J. Kotta, A. Maximov, J. Warzocha, V. Yermakov, U. Gr+ñwe, and M. L. Zettler 2016. The Baltic Sea scale inventory of benthic faunal communities. Ices Journal of Marine Science **73**: 1196-1213.

Hansen, J.L.S. & Blomqvist, M. 2018. Effekt af bundtrawling på bundfauna-samfund i Kattegat - undersøgt med forskellige bundfaunaindeks baseret på NOVANAovervågningsdata.

Aarhus Universitet, DCE – Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi, 46 s. - Videnskabelig rapport fra DCE - Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi nr. 256. http://dce2.au.dk/pub/SR256.pdf

HELCOM (2013a). Red List of Baltic Sea underwater biotopes, habitats and biotope complexes. Baltic Sea Environmental Proceedings No. 138

HELCOM (2013b). HELCOM Red List of Baltic Sea species in danger of becoming extinct. Baltic Sea Environmental Proceedings No. 140.

Jensen P., Aagard, I., Burke Jr., Dando P.R., Jørgensen N.O., Kuijpers A., Laier T., O'hare S.C.M. and Schmaljohann R (1992) "bubbling reefs" in the Kattegat: submerged landscapes of carbonate-cemented rocks support a diverse ecosystem at methane seeps. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. Vol. 83:103-112 https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/154816882.pdf

Josefson, A. and Hansen, J.L.S. (2004) Species Richness of benthic macrofauna in Danish estuaries and coastal areas. Global Ecology and Biogeography 13: 273- 288.

Laursen, K., Pihl, S., Durinck, J., Hansen, M., Skov, H., Frikke, J. & Danielsen, F. (1997). Numbers and distribution of waterbirds in Denmark 1987-1989. - Danish Review of Game Biology 14 (1): 1-184.

Naturvårdsverket (2010). Undersökning av Utsjöbankar - Inventering, modellering och naturvärdesbedömning. Rapport 6385. ISBN 978-91-620-6385-6, ISSN 0282-7298

Nielsen, R.D., Holm, T.E., Clausen, P., Bregnballe. T., Clausen, K.K., Petersen, I.K., Sterup, J., Balsby, T.J.S., Pedersen, C.L., Mikkelsen, P. & Bladt, J. (2019). Fugle 2012-2017. NOVANA. Aarhus Universitet, DCE – Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi. - Videnskabelig rapport nr. 314. http://dce2.au.dk/pub/SR314.pdf and http://novana.au.dk/fugle/

Nielsen, R., and K. Dahl. (1992). Macroalgae at briseis Flak, Schultzs Grund and Store Middelgrund, stone reefs in southern and eastern part of Kattegat, Denmark. Bjørnestad, E, Hagerman, L, and Jensen, K. Proceedings of the 12th Baltic Marine Biologists Symposium .

OSPAR 2008. OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats. Agreement 2008/6

OSPAR 2013. OSPAR Recommendation 2013/11 on furthering the protection and restoration of the harbour porpoise (Phocoena phocoena) in Regions II and III of the OSPAR maritime area.

Petersen, C.G.J., 1913. Havets Bonitering. II. Om Havbundens Dyresamfund og om disses betydning for den marine Zoogeograti. *Beretn. Minist. Landbr. Fisk. Dan. Biol. Stn.*, Vol. 21, pp. l-42.

Petersen, I.K., Fox, A.D.& Clausager, I. (2003): Distribution and numbers of birds in Kattegat in relation to the proposed offshore wind farm south of Læsø – Ornithological Impact Assessment. – Report Request. Commissioned by ELSAM Engineering A/S. 116 pp.

Petersen, I.K. & Fox, A.D. (2009): Faktorer der påvirker fordelingen af sortænder I fældningsperioden i Ålborg Bugt. Report request. Commissioned by Vattenfall Vindkraft. 20 pp.

Petersen, I.K., Pihl, S., Hounisen, J.P., Holm, T.E., Therkildsen, O. & Christensen, T.K. (2006): Landsdækkende optællinger af vandfugle, januar og februar 2004. Danmarks Miljøundersøgelser. 76 pp. – Faglig rapport fra DMU nr. 606. http://www.dmu.dk/Pub/FR606.pdf

Petersen, I.K., Nielsen, R.D., Pihl, S., Clausen, P., Therkildsen, O., Christensen, T.K., Kahlert, J. & Hounisen, J.P. 2010. Landsdækkende optælling af vandfugle i Danmark, vinteren 2007/2008. Danmarks Miljøundersøgelser, Aarhus Universitet. 78 s. – Arbejdsrapport fra DMU nr. 261. http://www.dmu.dk/Pub/AR261.pdf

Petersen, I.K., Nielsen, R.D., Therkildsen, O.R. & Balsby, T.J.S. 2017. Fældende havdykænders antal og fordeling i Sejerøbugten i relation til menneskelige forstyrrelser. Aarhus Universitet, DCE – Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi, 38 s. - Videnskabelig rapport fra DCE - Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi nr. 239
http://dce2.au.dk/pub/SR239.pdf

Petersen, I.K. & Nielsen, R.D. 2011. Abundance and distribution of selected waterbird species in Danish marine areas. Report commissioned by Vattenfall A/S. National Environmental Research Institute, Aarhus University, Denmark. 62 pp.

Skov, H., Durinck, J. & Danielsen, F. (1992): Udbredelse og antal af Lomvie *Uria aalge* I Skagerak I sensommerperioden. – Dansk Orn. Foren. Tidsskr. 86: 169-176.

Petersen, I.K., Sørensen, I.H., Nielsen, R.D., Fox, T. & Christensen, T.K. 2019. Status for overvintrende fløjlsænder og havlitter i danske farvande. En analyse af bestandsudviklingen og årsager til forandringer. Aarhus Universitet, DCE – Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi, 52 s. - Videnskabelig rapport nr. 336
http://dce2.au.dk/pub/SR336.pdf

Riemann, B., J. Carstensen, K. Dahl, H. Fossing, J. W. Hansen, H. H. Jakobsen, A. B. Josefson, D. Krause-Jensen, S. Markager, P. A. Stæhr, K. Timmermann, J. Windolf, and J. H. Andersen 2015.

Recovery of Danish Coastal Ecosystems After Reductions in Nutrient Loading: A Holistic Ecosystem Approach. Estuaries and Coasts **39**: 82-97.

Skov, H., Heinänen, S., Žydelis, R., Bellebaum, J., Bzoma, S., Dagys, M., Durinck, J., Garthe, G., Grishanov, G., Hario, M., Kieckbusch, J.J., Kube, J., Kuresoo, A., Larsson, K., Luigujoe, L., Meissner, W., Nehls, H.W., Nilsson, L., Petersen, I.K., Roos, M.M., Pihl, S., Sonntag, N., Stock, A., Stipniece A. and Wahl, J. 2011. Waterbird Populations and Pressures in the Baltic Sea. – Nordic Council of Ministers, TemaNord 2011:550. 201 pp.

Sveggard, S., Nabe-Nielsen, J. & Teilmann, J. 2018. Marsvins udbredelse og status for de marine habitatområder i danske farvande. Aarhus Universitet, DCE – Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi, 36 s. - Videnskabelig rapport nr. 284 http://dce2.au.dk/pub/SR284.pdf

Eske Holm, T., Clausen, P., Nielsen, R.D., Bregnballe, T., Petersen, I.K., Mikkelsen, P. and Bladt, J. (2018): Fugle 2016. NOVANA. Aarhus Universitet, DCE – Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi. Videnskabelig rapport fra DCE - Nationalt Center for Miljø og Energi nr. 261.

Maps and Figures

Location of area no. 2: Danish Kattegat

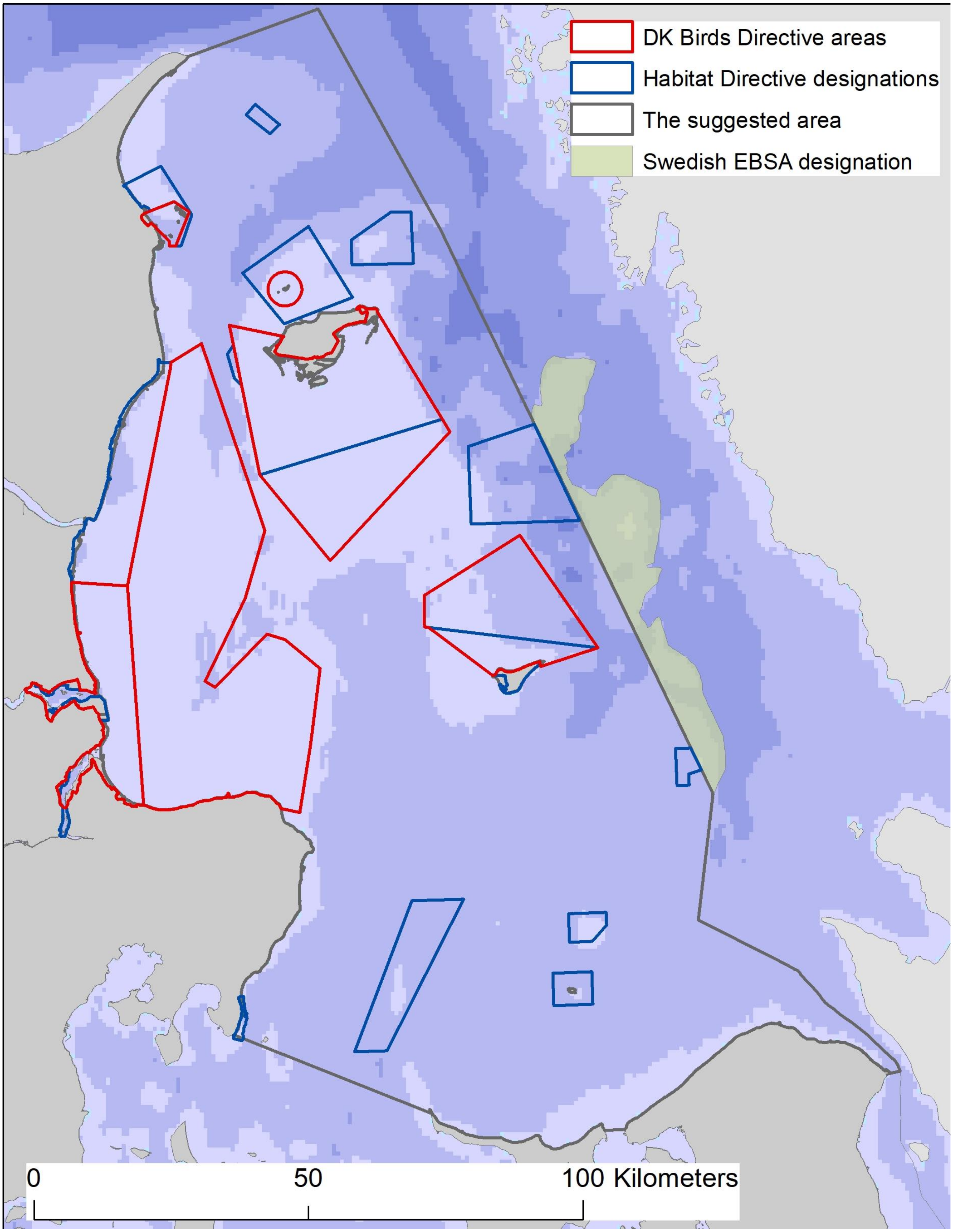

DK Birds Directive areas
Habitat Directive designations
The suggested area
Swedish EBSA designation
0
50
100 Kilometers

Figure 1. Danish Kattegat with suggested boundaries. The figure also shows the existing EBSA (Area No. 9: Fladen and Stora and Lilla Middelgrund), described in the Baltic EBSA workshop, next to the Danish-Swedish border, as well as Danish birds and habitats directives area jointly known as Natura 2000 sites."Swedish EBSA designation" refers to: Area No. 9: (Fladen and Stora and Lilla Middelgrund), described in the Baltic EBSA workshop.

Figure 2. Bubbling reefs from Kattegat.
Photos: Karsten Dahl

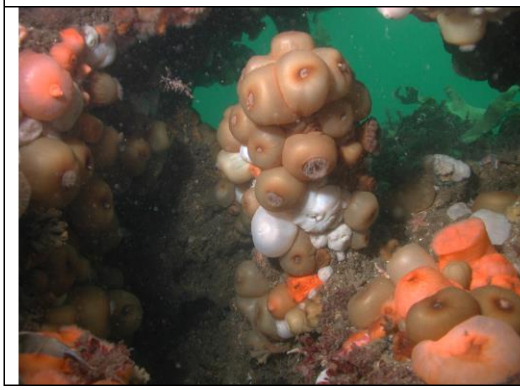


Figure 3. Distribution of identified bubbling reef areas in the area meeting EBSA criteria.

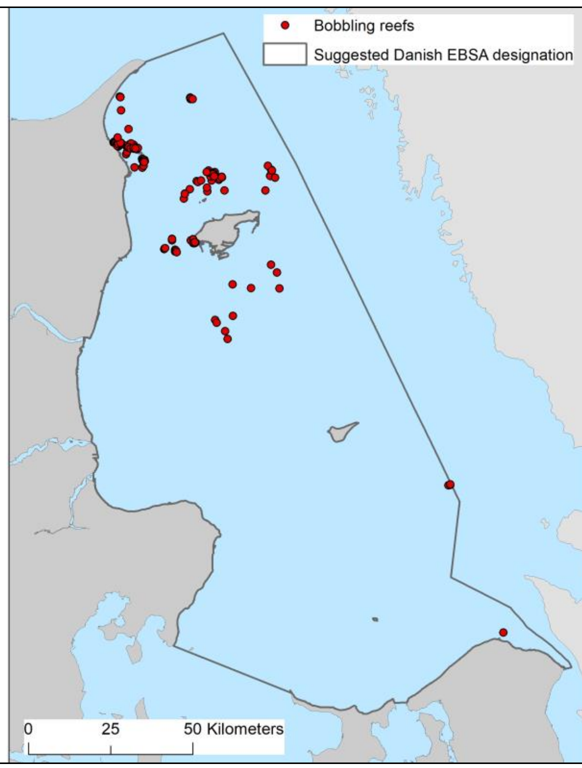
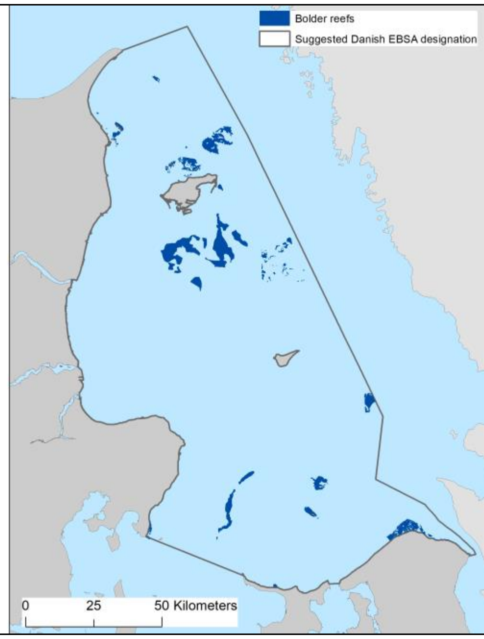


Figure 4. Mapped reef sites within Nature 2000 sites in Danish part of Kattegat.



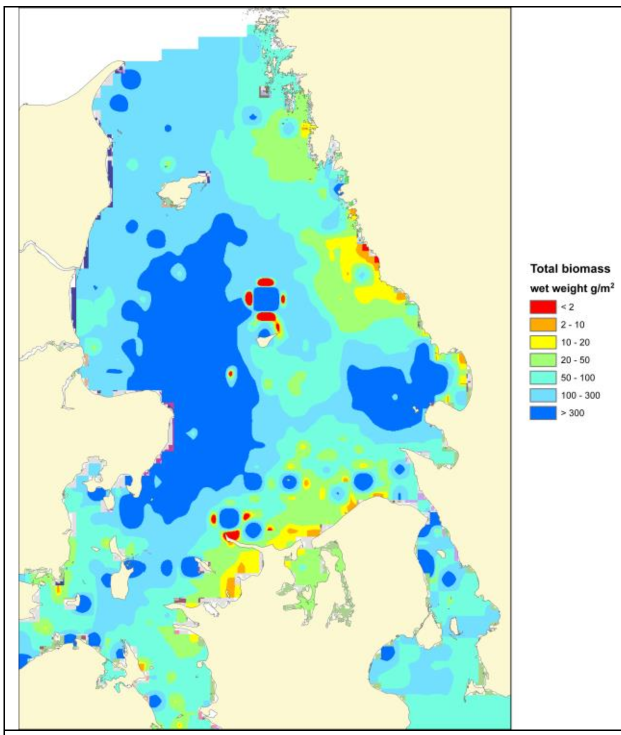


Figure 5. Left: Biomass distribution of benthic infauna in Kattegat. Right: communities identified based on biomasses in Kattegat (Gogina *et al*. 2016)

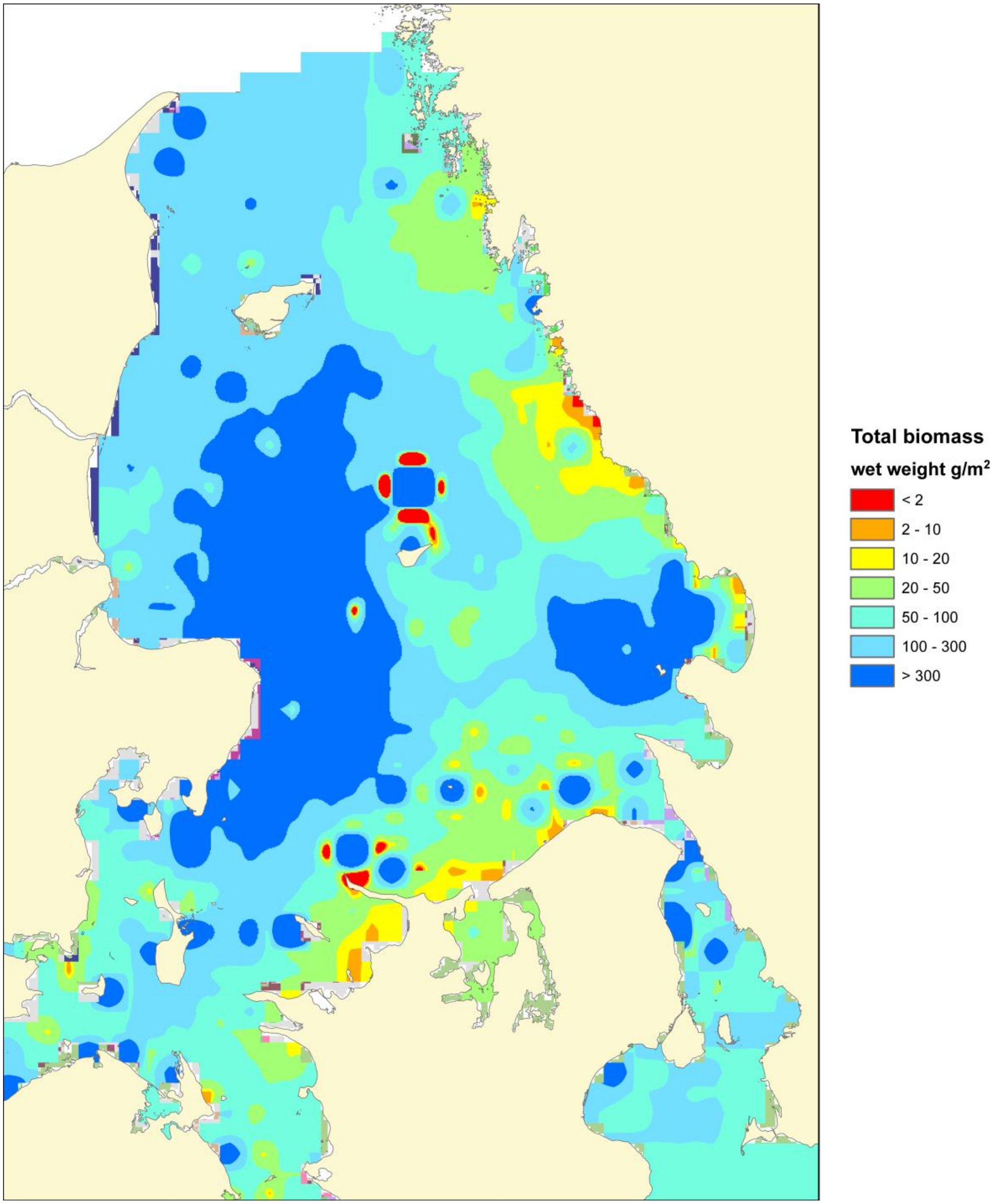


Figure 5A. Biomass distribution of benthic infauna in Kattegat (Gogina *et al*. 2016)

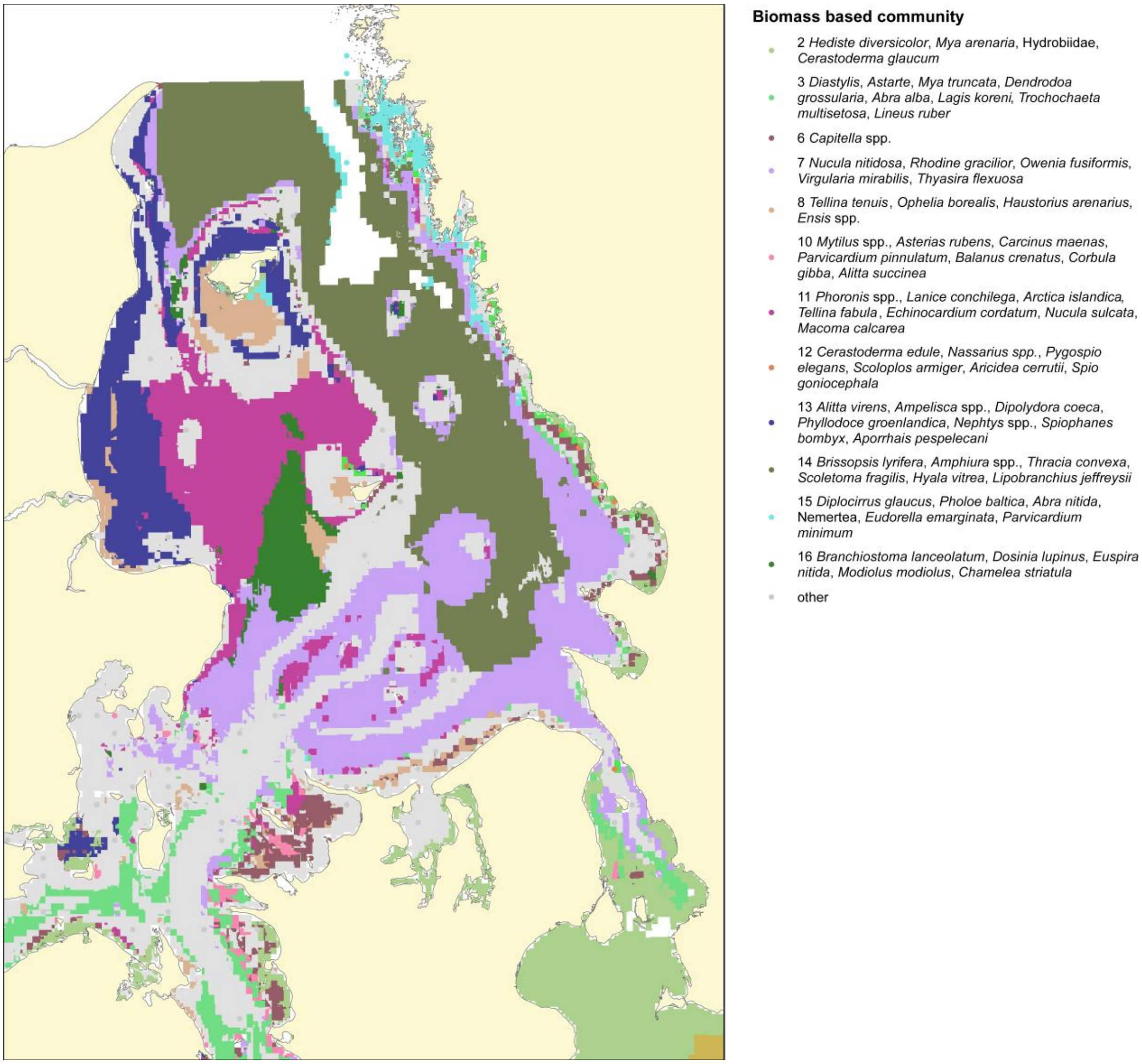


Figure 5B. communities identified based on biomasses in Kattegat (Gogina *et al*. 2016)

Figure 6

Video survey conducted by Denmark and Sweden in Kattegat describing the density of burrows of Norway lobster (Anon 2018).

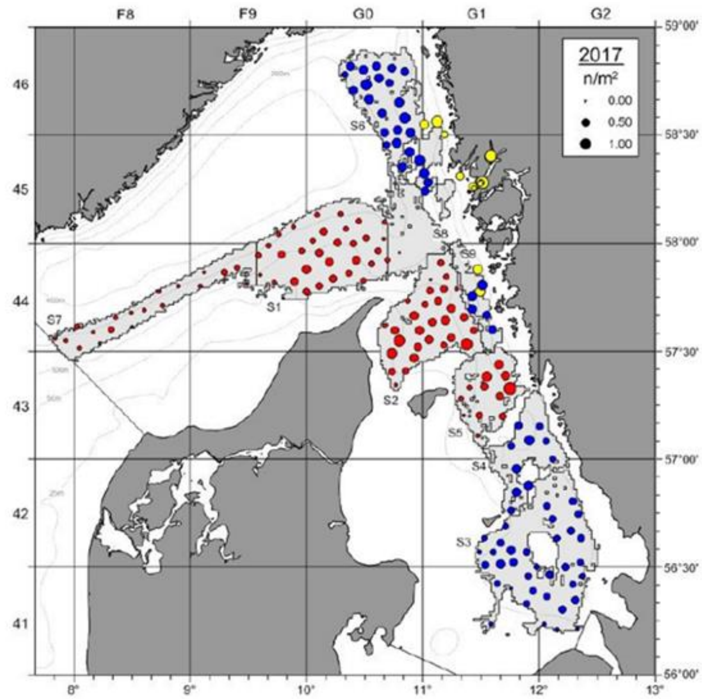
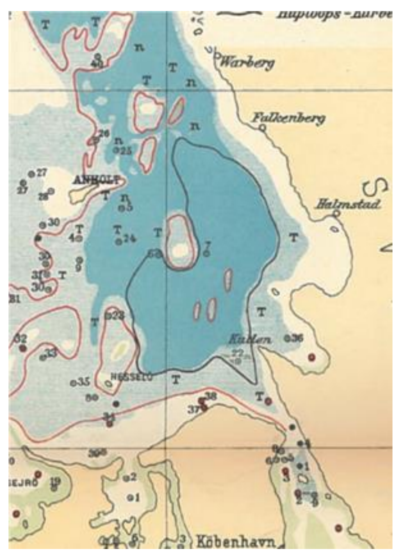


Figure 5.1.5.1. *Nephrops* bias corrected densities in FU3-4 in 2017 (S: stratum; red circles: Denmark, blue and yellow circles: Sweden).

Figure 7
From mapping of the Haploops community in southern Kattegat by Petersen (1913). Community distribution encircled in black.



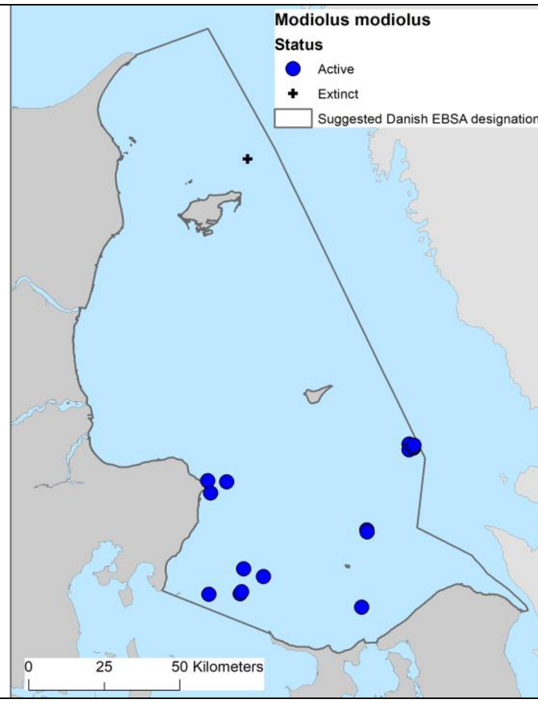


Figure 8
Modiolus modiolus finding in the Danish part of Kattegat. One finding north of the island Læsø became extinct in the 1990s after severe oxygen deficiency. Source: Danish National monitoring program.

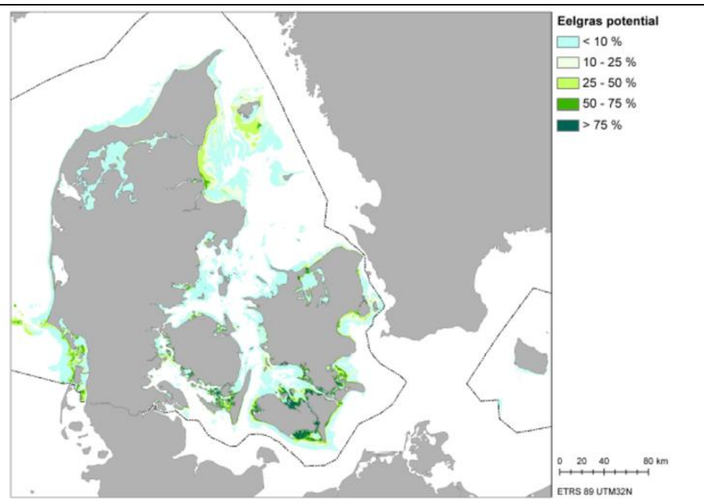
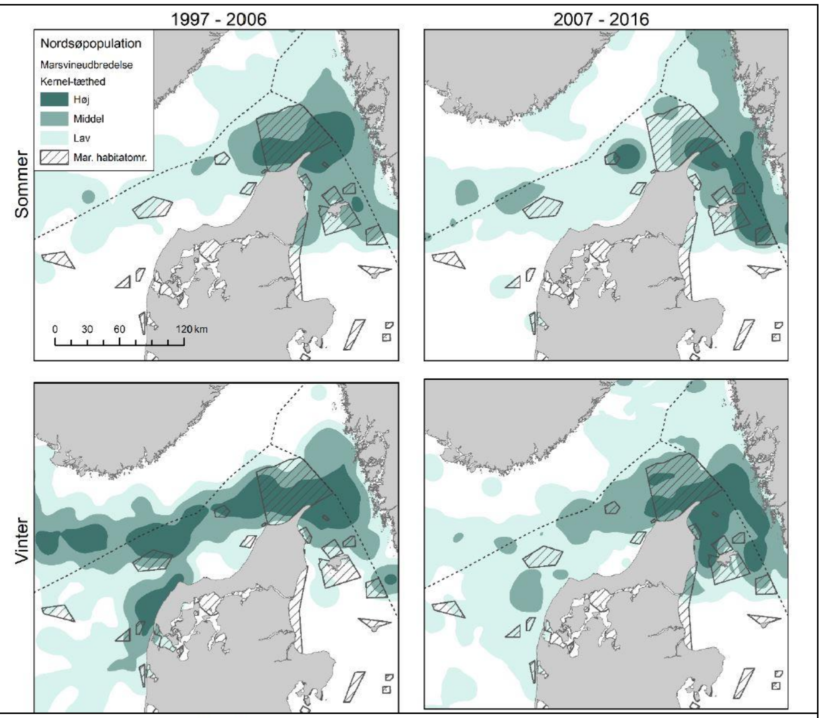
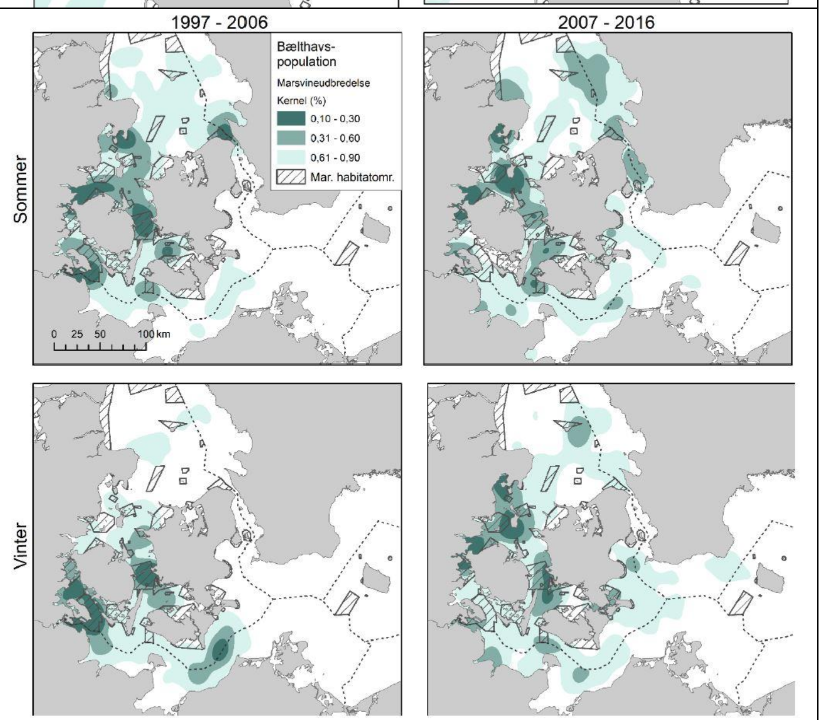


Figure 9
Potential eelgrass distribution in Danish waters modelled by Stæhr *et al*. 2019.

Figure 10. North Sea population (upper figures in two time periods and in summer and winter) and Belt Sea population (lower figures in two periods and in summer and winter) of harbour porpoise of Kattegat.





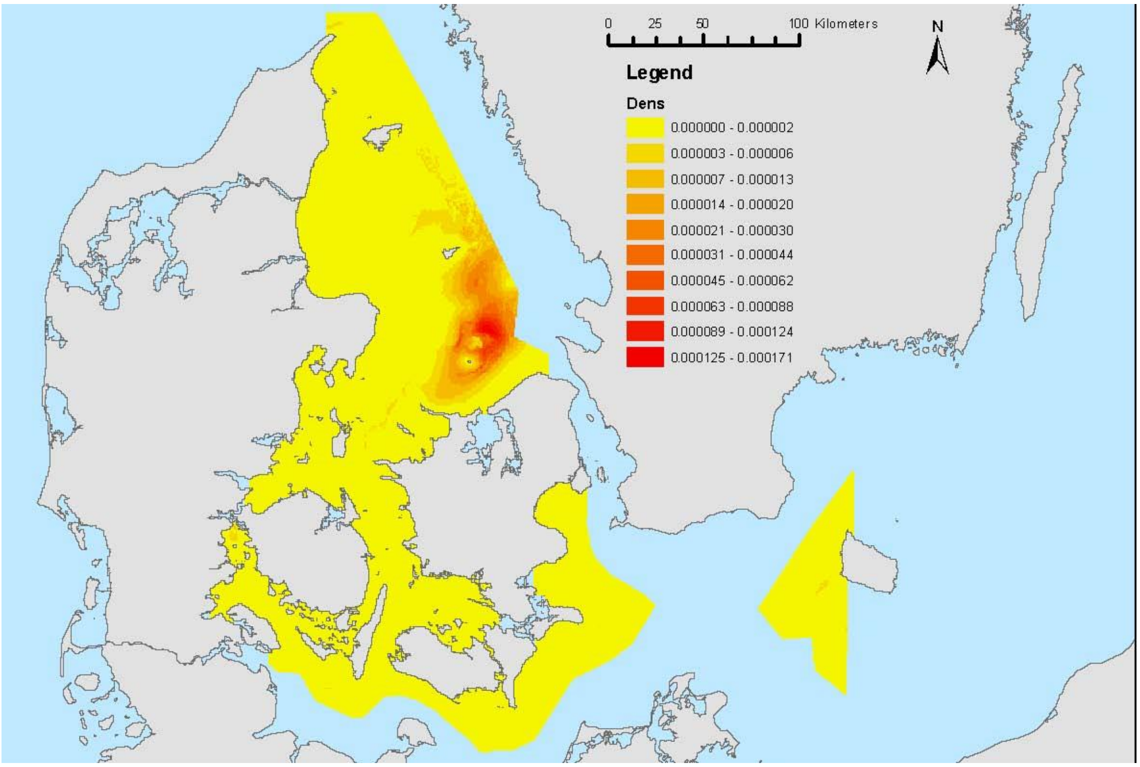


Figure 41. The spatial distribution of 76.553 razorbills/guillemots in inner Danish waters in the winter of 2008. Density is N/0.25 km^2. Of these, almost 73,000 individuals were estimated to be within the Danish part of Kattegat between Sjælland and Anholt (Petersen and Nielsen, 2011).

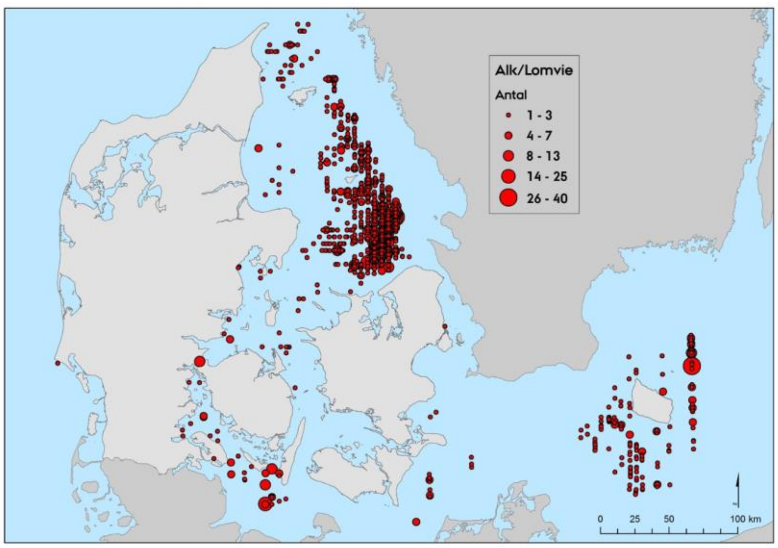


Figure 12. The spatial distribution of 4,228 observed razorbills/common guillemots in inner Danish waters in the winter of 2016 (Holm et al. 2018).

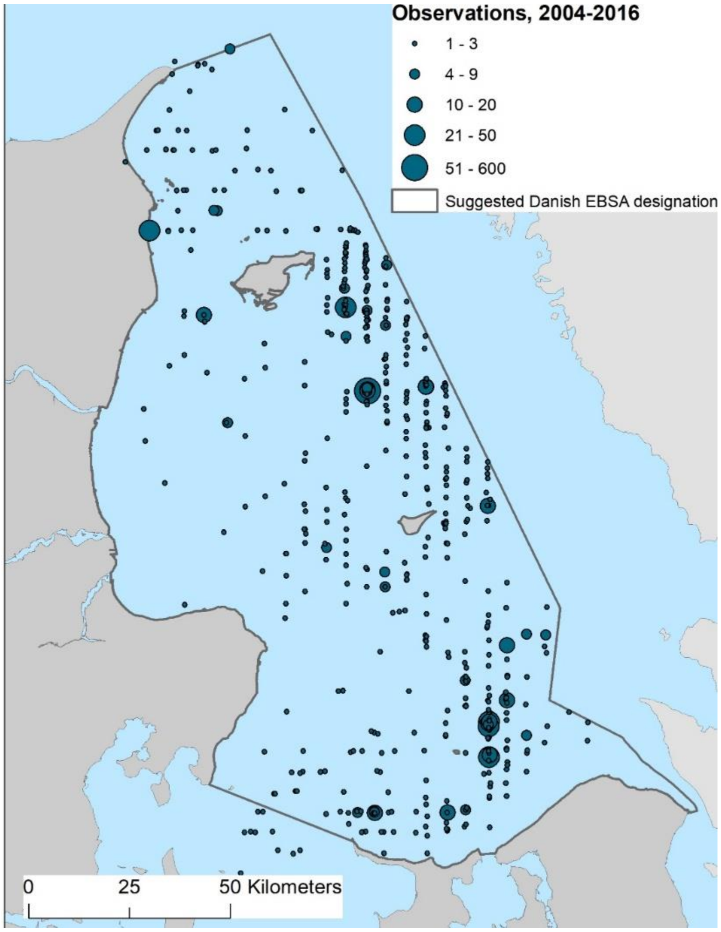


Figure 13. The spatial distribution of a total of 1,568 observed black-legged kittiwakes, observed within the area meeting EBSA criteria in the Danish parts of Kattegat during national waterbird censuses in 2004, 2006, 2008, 2012, 2013 and 2016.

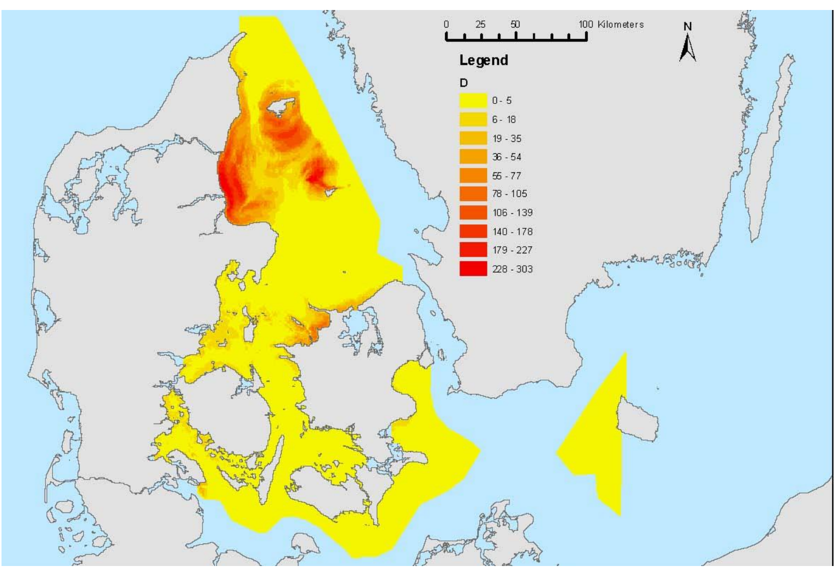


Figure 14. The modelled distribution of 401,339 common scoters in inner Danish waters in the winter of 2008. Of those, more than 350,000 common scoters wintered in the area meeting EBSA criteria.

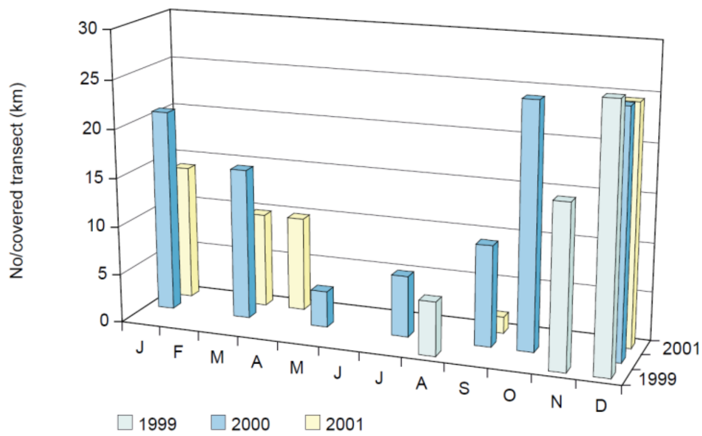


Figure 15. Phenology chart of occurrence for common scoter in the area meeting EBSA criteria. Plotted monthly values indicate the mean number of individuals recorded per kilometre of flown transect coverage for each survey (after Petersen et al. 2003).

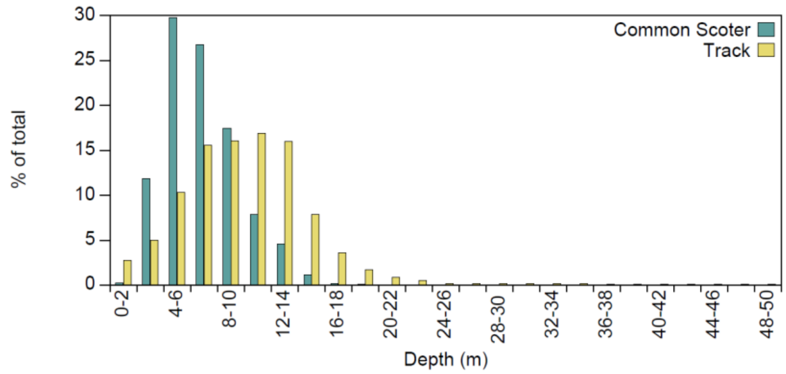


Figure 16. Frequency distribution of water depths for points at which common scoter were recorded in the area meeting EBSA criteria, compared to the frequency distribution generated from 105,372 points sampled at regular intervals along the track lines (after Petersen et al. 2003).

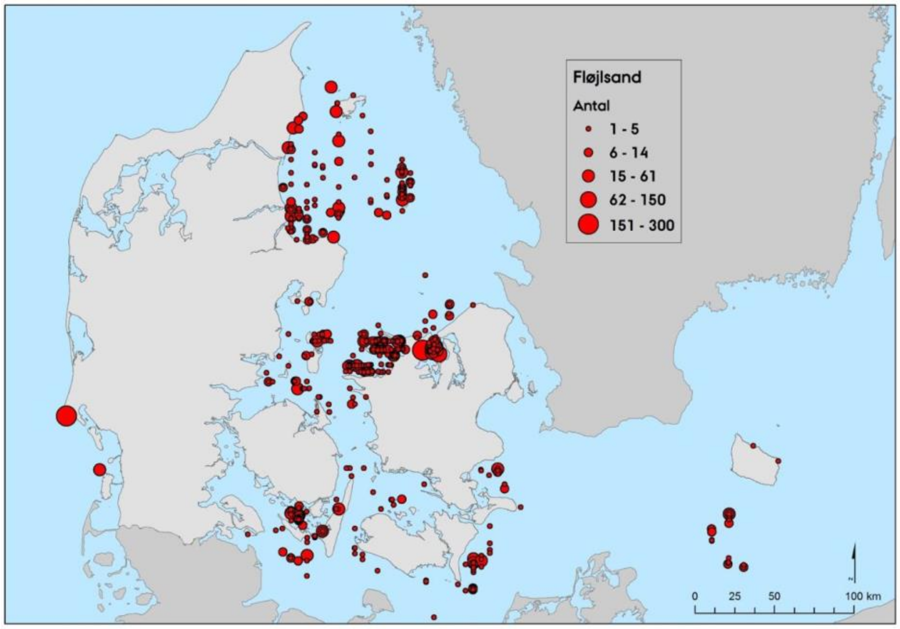


Figure 17. The spatial distribution of 2,310 observed velvet scoters in inner Danish waters in the winter of 2016 (Holm et al. 2018).

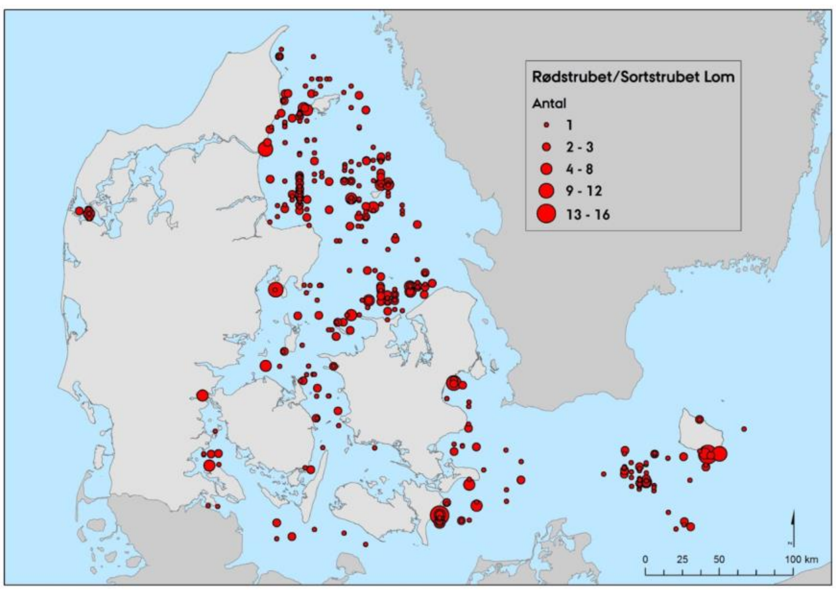


Figure 18. The spatial distribution of 740 observed diver species in inner Danish waters in the winter of 2016. Source: Holm et al. 2018.

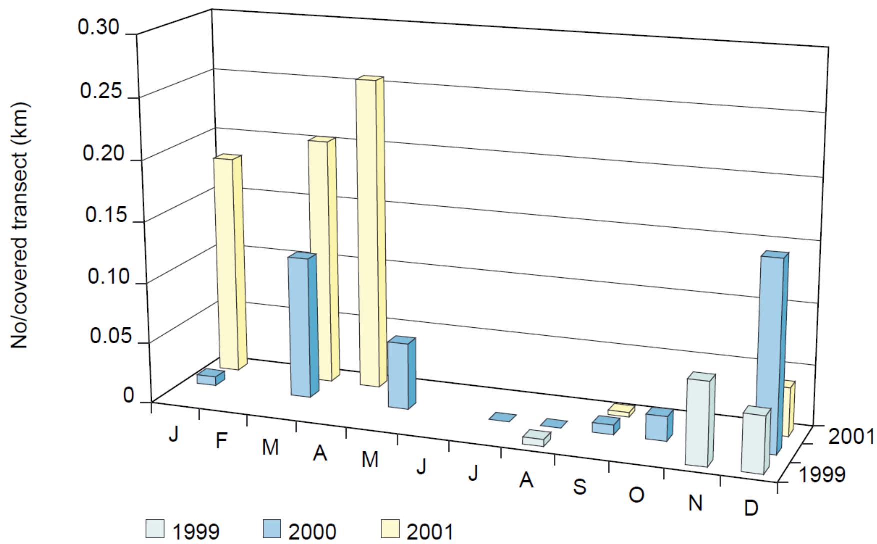


Figure 19. Phenology chart of occurrence for diver species in the study area. Plotted monthly values indicate the mean number of individuals recorded per kilometer of flown transect coverage for each survey. Source: Petersen et al. 2003.

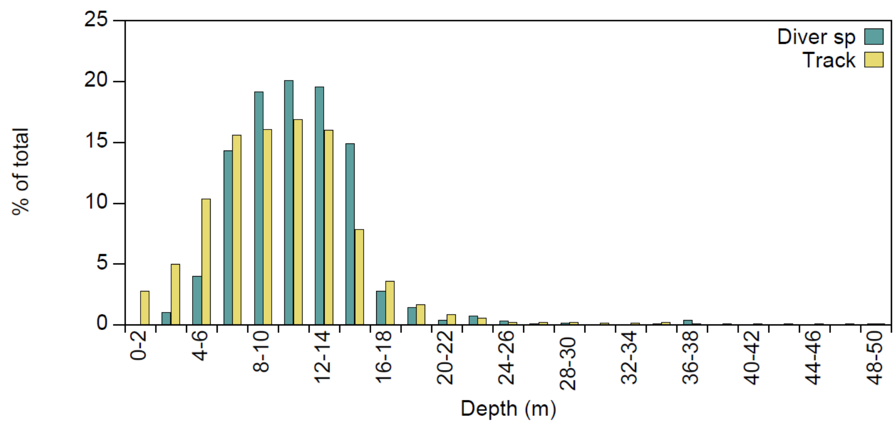


Figure 20. Frequency distribution of water depths for points at which diver species were recorded in the area meeting EBSA criteria, compared to the frequency distribution generated from 105,372 points sampled at regular intervals along the track lines. Source: Petersen et al. 2003.

Area no. 3: Cantabrian Sea (Southern Bay of Biscay)

Abstract
The Cantabrian Sea ecosystem includes the continental shelf and slope and the deep abyssal basin (5000 m water depth) located along the northern border of the Iberian Peninsula (Southern Bay of Biscay), from the Capbreton Canyon head to Estaca de Bares Cape, on the Galician coast. It is a highly complex area, where the narrow continental shelf is deeply affected by the action of tectonic compression. The area contains important geomorphological elements, such as large submarine canyons and seamounts. The hydrology is also complex due to the interaction between waters formed in the Atlantic and waters of Mediterranean origin. This area includes a variety of benthic habitats, including habitats that are considered hotspots of biodiversity. These habitats serve as spawning grounds for several commercial species. The area also contains habitats for endangered, threatened and declining species and for migratory pelagic species, including cetaceans.

Introduction
The Bay of Biscay, where the Cantabrian Sea is located, is an arm of the Atlantic Ocean, indenting the coast of Western Europe from north-western France (offshore Brittany) to north-western Spain (Galicia). The southern Bay of Biscay is a well-differentiated geomorphological unit in the northeast Atlantic. The abyssal basin has a mean depth of 4,800 m. The shelf of the Bay of Biscay is quite narrow in the Cantabrian Sea, whereas it is much wider and increasing with latitude on the French coast. In the Cantabrian Sea, there are various deep-sea canyons that have generally narrow, steep-sided, linear and sinuous channels. The deep-sea valleys allow continental sediments to be transported to oceanic basins (Lavín *et al*., 2005).

Most of the water masses occupying the bay have a North Atlantic origin or are the result of interaction between waters formed in the Atlantic with water of Mediterranean origin. The hydrodynamics of the bay are dominated by: a) a weak anticyclonic circulation in the oceanic part, b) a poleward-flowing slope current, c) coastal upwelling, d) the northward flow of Mediterranean water at depth, around the Iberian Peninsula, e) the shelf circulation and f) the cross-shelf transport along the axes of submarine canyons (OSPAR, 2000). Most of these features show a marked seasonality (Koutsikopoulos and Le Cann, 1996). The Bay of Biscay is a region of large tidal amplitudes and strong thermohaline forcing (Piraud *et al*., 2003). It is well known for its energetic internal tides, caused by the combination of summer stratification, steep shelf-edge topography and strong (cross-slope) tidal currents, especially at spring tides (Lam *et al*., 003).

Coastal upwelling events occur mainly on the Spanish continental margin of the Bay of Biscay (Cantabrian Sea). These are produced by north-eastern winds prevailing from late May to September. Upwelling events are highly variable in intensity and frequency from year to year, but in general they are more common and intense to the west of Cape Peñas and act as a mechanism generating an environmental contrast between the western and eastern parts of the Cantabrian Sea and between the coastal mixed waters and the neighbouring oceanic stratified areas (Lavín *et al*., 2005). Moreover, the Cantabrian Sea is only weakly influenced by the land, due to the absence of large rivers in the area, which can affect the physical and chemical characteristics of the water column and sediments. As a result, it shows environmental characteristics significantly different from the large continental shelf of the French Bay of Biscay area.

There are many descriptive studies on different aspects of the Bay of Biscay. The main reviews/studies are the Quality Status Report from OSPAR (2000) and the work of Valdés and Lavín (2002), which considers the Bay of Biscay a “large marine ecosystem”. Díez *et al*. (2000) reviewed the information on the southern part of the Bay of Biscay (the Cantabrian Sea).

Location

The area is located in the south of the Bay of Biscay and is bounded by the parallels 43º 25'N and 45º 00'N and meridians 2º 10'W and 7º 00'W. The feature for which this area is described also extends eastwards and northwards, beyond the boundaries currently described.

Feature description of the area

- *The area includes a variety of benthic habitats that are considered hotspots of biodiversity.*

The Bay of Biscay area forms the subtropical/boreal transition zone of the eastern Atlantic, where typical temperate-water species from the south occur, together with those of northern origin and, consequently, high biodiversity indices exist in comparison with adjacent areas (Quéro *et al*., 1989; Sánchez *et al*., 2002). Additionally, the highly complex area includes a great diversity of geomorphological features (e.g., submarine canyons, seamounts, banks and mounds, pockmarks, slope affected by smaller rock outcrops) and hence, a diversity of benthic niches is available. Although, in some areas, benthic information is scarce (particularly in the deepest zones), available scientific data highlight the existence of important hotspots of biodiversity. The submarine canyons of the Avilés system (Sánchez *et al*., 2014), the Le Danois Bank (Sánchez *et al*., 2008) as well as numerous areas of the continental slope (Aguilar *et al*., 2009) are example of hotspots of benthic biodiversity, where numerous vulnerable taxa and habitats have been recorded.

Habitats on both soft and rocky bottoms host a high diversity of species, resulting in shelf and slope ecosystems that are rich in species and in ecological interactions, including circalittoral rocky bottoms with sponges (*Phakellia ventilabrum)* and corals (*Dendrophyllia cornigera)*, coral reefs with *Madrepora oculata* and *Lophelia pertusa*, bathyal rocky bottoms with gorgonians (*Callogorgia verticillata*, *Acanthogorgia* spp.), big sponge grounds (*Asconema setubalense*, Geodiidae, Pachastrellidae) and black corals (*Leiopathes* sp., *Antipathes* sp., *Bathypathes* sp.). Other species that are frequently found over hard substrates are crinoids (*Leptometra celtica*) and sea stars (*Brisinga endecacnemos* and *Novodina pandina*). However, over soft bottoms, different communities have been found, such as pennatulids (*Pennatula rubra*, *Pennatula phosphorea*, *Funiculina quadrangularis*), tube-dwelling anemones (*Cerianthus* sp.) and detritic sand bottoms with sea anemones (*Phelliactis hertwigi*). Some carnivorous sponges (*Lypocodina*, *Chondrocladia* and *Cladrihiza*) have also been recorded (see Sánchez *et al*., 2008; 2014; Aguilar *et al*., 2009).

Together with deep zones, some coastal areas are ecologically or biologically significant due to the presence of gorgonian forests and sponge grounds (e.g., Somos Llungo- Peñas Cape) where levels of biodiversity indices are high (Aguilar *et al*., 2009) or due to their geomorphology and the presence of species typical of the Mediterranean in the Cantabrian Sea (e.g., Jaizkibel).

- *The area is important for cetaceans.*

The Bay of Biscay, including the areas of the canyons, seamounts, shelf, and adjacent pelagic areas, support a persistent presence of cetacean species, including the bottlenose dolphin *(Tursiops truncatus* Montagu, 1821), common dolphin *(Delphinus delphis*. Linnaeus, 1758), the long-finned pilot whale *(Globicephala melas,* Traill, 1809), striped dolphin *(Stenella coeruleoalba,* Meyen, 1833) Cuvier's beaked whale (*Ziphius cavirostris,* Cuvier, 1823), fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*, Linnaeus, 1758), and sperm whale *Physeter macrocephalus* (Linnaeus, 1758; Laborde, 2008; CODA 2009) (Marcos-Ipiña *et al*., 2014; Laran *et al*., 2016).

- *The area includes habitats for endangered, threatened and declining species.*

Many species recorded in the area are considered endangered, threatened and/or declining, according to, for example, the IUCN, OSPAR, ICES or the EU Habitat Directive.

Listed below are some examples of species and habitats in the area that need special attention:

The IUCN Red List of threatened species (CR: Critically endangered, EN: Endangered and VU: Vulnerable):

Balaenoptera musculus
Balaenoptera borealis
Physeter macrocephalus
Balaenoptera musculus
Balaenoptera borealis
Balaenoptera physalus
Caretta caretta
Dermochelys coriacea
Dipturus batis
Squatina squatina
Anguilla anguilla
Sphyrna mokarran
Sphyrna zygaena
Isurus paucus
Isurus oxyrinchus
Cetorhinus maximus
Oxynotus centrina
Galeorhinus galeus
Squalus acanthias
Mustelus mustelus
Centrophorus lusitanicus
Dalatias licha
Carcharhinus plumbeus
Carcharhinus longimanus
Odontaspis ferox
Raja undulata
Rostroraja alba
Leucoraja circularis
Leucoraja fullonica
Amblyraja radiata
Dipturus batis
Mobula mobular
Thunnus thynnus
Coryphaenoides rupestris
Hippoglossus hippoglossus
Palinurus elephas
Epinephelus marginatus
Mola mola
Labrus viridis
Balistes capriscus
Pomatomus saltatrix
Thunnus thynnus
Trachurus trachurus
Sardinella maderensis
Makaira nigricans
Dentex dentex
Opisthoteuthis calyso
Opisthoteuthis massyae

OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species
Arctica islandica
Ostrea edulis
Patella aspera
Puffinus mauretanicus
Rissa tridactyla
Uria aalge
Sterna dougallii
Centroscymnus coelolepis
Centrophorus granulosus
Centrophorus squamosus
Cetorhinus maximus

Dipturus batis
Raja montagui
Raja clavata
Rostroraja alba
Lamna nasus
Squalus acanthias
Squatina squatina
Acipenser sturio
Alosa alosa
Anguilla anguilla
Hippocampus guttulatus

Hippocampus hippocampus
Hoplostethus atlanticus
Petromyzon marinus
Salmo salar
Thunnus thynnus
Caretta caretta
Dermochelys coriacea
Balaenoptera musculus
Eubalaena glacialis
Phocoena phocoena

OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Habitats
Coral gardens
Deep-sea sponge aggregations
Seamounts
Sea-pen and burrowing megafauna communities

EU Habitat Directive Habitats
1170 Reefs
1180 Submarine structures made by leaking gases

- *The area comprises spawning grounds for several fish species of commercial interest*

Small-sized pelagic species, such as anchovy (*Engraulis encrasicolus*) and demersal species, such as hake (*Merluccius merluccius*), are examples of species that spawn in the area.

Anchovy in the Bay of Biscay may grow to >20 cm and rarely live beyond three years of age. The species forms large schools located between 5 and 15 metres above the bottom during the day (Massé, 1996). It is a serial spawner (several spawns per year) and reproduces in spring. The spawning area stretches to the south of 47ºN latitude and to the east of 5ºW longitude. Most spawning takes place over the continental shelf in areas under the influence of the river plumes of the Gironde, Adour and Cantabrian rivers (Motos *et al*., 1996). As spring and summer progress, the anchovy migrates from the interior of the Bay of Biscay northward along the French coast and towards the east through the Cantabrian Sea. It spends the autumn in these areas, and in winter migrates in the opposite direction towards the southeast of the Bay of Biscay (Prouzet *et al*., 1994).

European hake (*Merluccius merluccius*) is one of the most important species, both commercially and ecologically, in the Bay of Biscay. Hake spawns in winter, with the adults concentrating in canyons and rocky grounds of the shelf break area. Areas of high concentration of hake recruits have been located between 80 to 200 m depth and over predominantly muddy bottoms. The area includes one permanent nursery area of hake in Peñas Cape and another area that only appears in some years close to Capbreton Canyon. Important hake recruitment processes lead to well-defined patches of juveniles, found in localized areas of the continental shelf. The location of these concentrations remains generally stable and is determined by hydrographic mesoscale structures and the Poleward Current (Sánchez and Gil, 2000).

- *The area is a seasonal migratory pathway for large migratory pelagic species*

Large migratory pelagic species are strong swimmers, which enables them to perform long migrations. Some families of the sub-order Scombroidae (tuna-like fishes) and sharks from the Carchariniforms and Lamniforms typically belong to this group. Tuna-like fishes are serial spawners whose spawning area is usually located in tropical and subtropical waters. In tropical areas food is relatively scarce, so tuna must actively search for food patches. This means that their life is nomadic, based on continuous long displacements (Helfman *et al*., 1997). In the Bay of Biscay the most characteristic species are albacore (*Thunnus alalunga*) and bluefin tuna (*Thunnus thynnus*). Other tuna and tuna-like fishes, such as bigeye (*Thunnus obesus*), Atlantic bonito (*Sarda sarda*), skipjack tuna (*Euthynnus pelamis*) and swordfish (*Xiphias gladius*), may also be present (Lavín *et al*., 2004).

The presence of bluefin tuna and albacore in the Bay of Biscay is seasonal. They normally appear at the beginning of summer and disappear at the beginning of autumn, following a trophic migration in search of food. Large predatory sharks have internal fertilization, and females either lay eggs or nourish embryos internally for several months before giving birth (Helfman *et al*., 1997). Their populations are very vulnerable to fishing pressure. In the Bay of Biscay the common epipelagic sharks are blue shark (*Priona glauca*), shortfin mako (*Isurus oxyrrinchus*) and porbeagle (*Lamna nasus*). They prey on a wide range of pelagic and demersal fishes. The largest shark in the Bay of Biscay is the basking shark (*Cetorhinus maximuis*), which can measure more than 9 m in length (Lavín *et al*., 2004).

- *The area includes soft bottoms essential for the biology of commercial benthic species.*

This is the case, for example, of the Norway lobster (*Nephrops norvegicus*). This species is distributed from Iceland to Portugal and the Mediterranean and is limited to areas of muddy habitat at depths of 15 to 800 m. The spatial extent of suitable sediment defines the species distribution and the stock boundaries. *Nephrops* are sedentary and rather common on muddy grounds, in which they dig the burrows where they spend most of their time. In the Bay of Biscay, three populations are distinguished: one on the French shelf and two in the Cantabrian Sea. Females spawn from April to August and carry eggs under their tails ("berried" females) until they hatch about seven months later. The larvae develop in the plankton for one month before settling to the seabed. When berried, females rarely come out of the burrow and are therefore naturally protected from trawlers. Nephrops are mainly nocturnal and feed on detritus, crustaceans and worms (Lavín *et al*., 2004).

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

There are various activities impacting the ecological/biological features of the Bay of Biscay:

- *Fishing activities*: the main fishing gears used in the area are bottom trawling, fishing lines and gill nets. Trawlers operate on the muddy bottoms of the shelf and produce serious negative impacts over certain habitat types. Long-liners also operate mainly at the bottom but at the shelf-break, whereas gill nets are used on rocky grounds near the coast and shelf-break. In addition to resource overexploitation, fishing activities have an impact on other species, such as sea turtles, cetaceans and seabirds (longline bycatch).

Bay of Biscay fisheries have had a strong impact on the bottom communities and have induced changes in their structure (Sánchez and Olaso, 2004; Serrano *et al*., 2006). This impact has been mainly direct (fishing mortality on target species and bycatch) and indirect by means of modifications to the habitat through erosion of the sediment and damage to the benthos by different elements of the gears.

- *Water pollution*: the main sources of pollution are ships and cities located on the coast (mostly in summer when the intensity of tourism increases in some coastal areas).

- *Global warming*: this phenomenon seems to have led to an increase in the presence of temperate-water fish species in the Bay of Biscay (e.g., among pelagic fishes *Megalops atlanticus*, *Seriola rivoliana*) over the last 20 years (Quéro *et al*., 1998; Stebbing *et al*., 2002). These changes related to global warming tend to operate slowly but have severe long-term consequences for the ecology of the ecosystem. They can affect: i) the behaviour of species (e.g., changes in migratory routes), ii) their recruitment (due to changes in the environmental conditions in the spawning and/or recruitment areas) and iii) the spatial distribution of species (since more meridional species can expand their area of distribution). In fact, this increase in temperature is likely to be responsible for the appearance of tropical fish species in the southeast shelf of the Bay of Biscay.

- *Shipping and oil transport*: The Bay of Biscay is located on the main route of supertankers transporting oil from the Middle East and Africa to EU harbours. More than 70 per cent of the total oil consumed in the EU is moved by shipping through the Finisterre pass directly towards the English Channel and then to the final destination in different European harbours. In recent years, several oil spills have occurred in the Bay of Biscay; for example five supertankers carrying more than 50 000 t have been wrecked since 1976, the last three of which occurred in an interval of just a decade (1992, Aegean Sea; 1999, Erika; 2002, Prestige), which has made this region the most severely affected in the world by this kind of accident (Lavín *et al*., 2004).

Conversely, some actions to protect the area and to ensure the conservation of its biodiversity are being carried out, and two specific areas within the area described have been protected in accordance with international and Spanish regulations and conventions:

(1) The El Cachucho-Le Danois Bank: this off-shore marine protected area (MPA) covers an extensive offshore bank and seamount with surrounding slopes and a complex system of channels and canyons that covers 234 000 ha. Depths within the area vary from 500 to 4000 m, which makes for an amazingly diverse biological hotspot. The high biodiversity found in the area (Sánchez *et al*., 2008; Cristobo *et al*., 2009; Altuna, 2013), but moreover, the presence in the area of "1170 Reef" habitats that are included in Annex I of the Habitats Directive of the European Union (Council Directive 92/43/EEC), were the main reason for the declaration of the area as a MPA and inclusion in the OSPAR Network of Marine Protected Areas (Sánchez *et al*., 2017; Rodríguez-Basalo *et al*., 2019).

El Cachucho MPA has been the subject of numerous studies and surveys in recent years to evaluate the condition of the habitats (García-Alegre *et al*., 2014; Sánchez *et al*., 2017). Many species have been recently discovered there to be new to science, and more are being described (Guerra-García *et al*., 2008; Frutos and Sorbe, 2010; Frutos *et al*., 2011).

Bottom trawling and fishing with static gear, including bottom set gillnets and bottom set longlines, are prohibited.

(2) The Avilés submarine system of canyons: this Site of Community Importance (Natura 2000 network) comprises three great submarine canyons (Avilés, El Corbiro and La Gaviera), a marginal platform (Canto Nuevo) and a tall, structural, rocky mass (Agudo de Fuera). The Avilés Canyon begins at a depth of 128 m and is approximately 75 km in length, with a V-shaped profile and a primarily sedimentary bottom. The Corbiro Canyon is 23 km in length and also has a V-shaped profile and a sedimentary bottom, while the La Gaviera Canyon has U-shaped profile with one sedimentary and one rocky flank, with features of a hanging canyon. Along its axis there are several rocky escarpments (Gomez-Ballesteros *et al*., 2014).

The submarine canyons of the Avilés system act as a collector of terrigenous material deposited by the rivers and play an important role as a transport mechanism for the sediment and organic matter from the continental shelf to the deep areas of the Bay of Biscay abyssal basin. Therefore, this area is considered a highly productive biological system. Biodiversity in the area is very high, and more than 1300 species have been catalogued to date on the seabed (excluding the pelagic organisms that occupy the water column). Some of these species, such as corals, sponges and sharks, are particularly vulnerable and are included in various protection regulations. The management plan of the area is being developed in the framework of the INTEMARES project.

A third area currently under consideration under the coverage of the INTEMARES project is the Capbretón Canyon. This submarine valley located on the continental shelf and slope of the Bay of Biscay is divided in two zones: the northern Aquitanian continental shelf and the southern Cantabrian shelf. A proposal for protection will be developed.

Apart from conservation projects, every autumn the Instituto Español de Oceanografía (IEO) carries out a bottom-trawling survey named DEMERSALES. This survey aims to provide data for the assessment of commercial fish species and benthic ecosystems on the Galician and Cantabrian shelf (ICES, 2010). This survey is part of an international effort to monitor marine ecosystems and is coordinated by the International Bottom Trawling Surveys (IBTS) working group of the International Council for the Exploration of the Sea (ICES).

Assessment of area no. 3, Cantabrian Sea (Southern Bay of Biscay), against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA	**Description**	**Ranking of criterion relevance**

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Criteria
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</td><td rowspan="2">(Annex I to decision IX/20)</td><td colspan="4">(please mark one column with an X)</td></tr>
<tr><td>No information</td><td>Low</td><td>Medium</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td>Uniqueness or rarity</td><td>Area contains either (i) unique (“the only one of its kind”), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
The Bay of Biscay is a border area between different biogeographic regions, where water masses of different origin (Atlantic and Mediterranean) meet. A diversity of canyons and submarine seamounts are present along the area, making available many different ecological niches (Sánchez et al., 2007, 2008, 2014; Aguilar et al., 2009; García-Alegre et al., 2014The El Danois Bank is a unique, diverse biological hotspot with many species new to science. (Sánchez et al., 2008; 2017).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Special importance for life-history stages of species</td><td>Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
The area is important for cetaceans (Marcos-Ipiña et al., 2014; Laran et al., 2016) and a seasonal migratory pathway for large migratory pelagic species (e.g., tuna species) (Lavín et al., 2004). It also includes spawning grounds for several species of commercial interest (e.g., anchovy, hake, Norway lobster) (Motos et al., 1996; Sánchez and Gil, 2000; Lavín et al., 2004).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats</td><td>Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
Many species considered “threatened, endangered or declining”, based on different international regulations and agreements, are present in the area, including benthic species as well as marine mammals, fish and reptiles. Sixty of these species (see the list in the text above) have been observed in the Site of Community Importance “Aviles Canyon” (Sánchez et al., 2014)..

Additionally, a high diversity of Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems characterized by habitat-forming species such as sponges (Phakellia ventilabrum) corals (Madrepora oculata, Lophelia pertusa, Dendrophyllia cornigera), gorgonians (Callogorgia verticillata, Acanthogorgia spp.), and black corals (Leiopathes sp., Antipathes sp., Bathypathes sp.) that are threatened or endangered due to the intense fishing activity that takes place in the area, are frequently found over the continental shelf as well as in canyons and over seamounts (see Sánchez et al., 2008; 2014; Aguilar et al., 2009).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Vulnerability, fragility,</td><td>Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
</table>

sensitivity, or slow recovery	are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				X

Explanation for ranking
Many vulnerable habitats and taxa, characterized by sessile habitat-forming species that are slow-growing and have long life cycles are present in the area and are vulnerable and sensitive to fishing activities: cold-water coral reefs (*Madrepora oculata*, *Lophelia pertusa*), coral gardens (*Callogorgia verticillata*, *Acanthogorgia* spp.), big sponge grounds (*Asconema setubalense*, Geodiidae, Pachastrellidae) and black corals (*Leiopathes* sp., *Antipathes* sp., *Bathypathes* sp.). Other species that are frequently found over hard substrates are crinoids (*Leptometra celtica*) and sea stars (*Brisinga endecacnemos* and *Novodina pandina*). However, over soft bottoms, different communities have been found, such as pennatulids (*Pennatula rubra*, *Pennatula phosphorea*, *Funiculina quadrangularis*), tube-dwelling anemones (*Cerianthus* sp.) and detritic sand bottoms with sea anemones (*Phelliactis hertwigi*). Some carnivorous sponges (*Lypocodina*, *Chondrocladia* and *Cladrihiza*) have also been recorded (Sánchez *et al*., 2008; 2014; Aguilar *et al*., 2009).

Moreover, other populations comprising species with low fecundity, such as sharks or cetaceans, are very vulnerable to anthropogenic impacts (Helfman *et al*., 1997; Lavín *et al*., 2004).

Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.				X

Explanation for ranking
This area is highly productive biologically due to its complex hydrology, which is the result of the interaction between waters from the Atlantic with water from the Mediterranean and the geomorphological role of canyons and seamounts in transporting organic matter and sediment from the continental shelf to the deep areas of the Bay of Biscay abyssal basin.

Coastal upwelling events occur mainly on the Spanish continental margin. These are produced by north-eastern winds prevailing from late May to September. Upwelling events are responsible for the high productivity of the area and act as a mechanism generating spatial variability between the western and eastern parts of the Cantabrian Sea and between the coastal mixed waters and the neighbouring oceanic stratified areas (Lavín *et al*., 2004).

Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X

Explanation for ranking
Overall, compared with adjacent areas, the Bay of Biscay has a high level of biological diversity (Quéro *et al*., 1989; Sánchez *et al*., 2002), caused by the complex hydrodynamic regime that characterizes the area; typical temperate-water species from the Mediterranean co-occur with species more typical of the north.

Additionally, the highly complex area includes a great diversity of geomorphological features (e.g., submarine canyons, seamounts, banks and mounds, pockmarks, slope affected by smaller rock outcrops) and hence, a great diversity of benthic niches are available (Sánchez *et al*., 2008; 2014; Aguilar *et al*., 2009).

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.		X		

Explanation for ranking
Fisheries, climate change and several oil spills that have occurred in the Bay of Biscay have had a strong impact on the bottom communities and have induced changes in their structure (Lavín *et al*., 2004). Therefore, the area displays characteristics of a heavily exploited area, although some rocky substrates

show less stressed ecosystems.

References

Aguilar, R., De la Torriente, A., García, A., 2009. Propuesta de Áreas Marinas de Importancia Ecológica; Zona galaico- cantábrica. OCEANA

Aguilar R., García S., De la Torriente A., Peñalver, J., 2009. Cetáceos del área galaico-cantábrica. Zonas de importancia para su conservación. Oceana - Obra Social Caja Madrid, 82 pág.

Altuna, A., 2013. Scleractinia (Cnidaria: Anthozoa) from ECOMARG 2003, 2008 and 2009 expeditions to bathyal waters off north and northwest Spain (northeast Atlantic). Zootaxa 3641 (2), 101–128.

Anadón N., Doménech J. L., Pérez C., Villegas, M.L., 2004. Estudio para la conservación de la biodiversidad del entorno marino del Cabo Peñas. Autoridad Portuaria de Gijón. 435 pp.

Barberá C., Bordehore C., Borg J.A., Glémarec M., Grall J., Hall-Spencer J.M., De la Huz C.H., Lanfranco E., Lastra M., Moore P.G., Mora J., Pita M.E., Ramos-Esplá A.A., Rizzo M., Sánchez-Mata A., Seva A., Schembri P.J. & C. Valle (2003). Conservation and management of northeast Atlantic and Mediterranean maërl beds. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 13: 65-76.

Botas J.A., Fernández E., Bode A., Anadón, R., 1990. A persistent upwelling off the central Cantabrian coast (Bay of Biscay). Est. Coast. Shelf Sci., 30: 185–199.

Borja A., Collins, M., 2004. Oceanography and marine environment of the Basque country. Elsevier Oceanograp. Ser. 70, 616 pp.

Brocheray, S, Cremer, M., Zaragosi, S., Schmidt, Sp., Eynaud, F., Rossignol, L., Gillet, H., 2014. 2000 years of frequent turbidite activity in the Capbreton Canyon (Bay of Biscay). Marine Geology, 347: 136-152.

Cardador, F., Sanchéz, F., Pereiro, F.J., Borges, M.F., Caramelo, A.M., Azevedo, M., Silva, A., Pérez, N., Martins, M.M., Olaso, I., Pestana, G., Trujillo, V., Fernandez, A., 1997. Groundfish surveys in the Atlantic Iberian waters (Ices Divisions VIIIc and IXa): history and perspectives. ICES, Council Meeting 1997/Y:08, 30 pp.;

CODA 2009. Cetacean Offshore Distribution and Abundance in the European Atlantic. Final Report. 43 pp. <http://biology.st-andrews.ac.uk/coda/>.

Corcabri, L., Sorbe, J.C., 2001. Structure of the suprabenthic assemblages in the Capbreton area (SE of the bay of Biscay). Le milieur marin: benthologie.

Cristobo, J., P. Ríos, F. Sánchez and N. Anadón, 2009. Redescription of the rare species Podospongia loveni (Porifera) from the Cantabrian Sea. Continental Shelf Research 29 (2009), 1157-1164.

Díez, I., A. Secilla, A. Santolaria and J.M. Gorostiaga, 2000. The north coast of Spain. In Seas at the Millennium. An environmental evaluation. C. Sheppard (Ed.). Pergamon, Amsterdam, Volume I, 135–150.

Frutos, I. and Sorbe, J.C., 2010. Politolana sanchezi sp. nov. (Crustacea: Isopoda: Cirolanidae), a new benthic bioturbating scavenger from bathyal soft-bottoms of the southern Bay of Biscay (northeastern Atlantic Ocean). Zootaxa 2640: 20-34.

Frutos, I., Sorbe J.C. & Junoy J. 2011. The first blind Paranthura species (Crustacea, Isopoda, Paranthuridae) from the "El Cachucho" Marine Protected Area (Le Danois Bank, southern Bay of Biscay). Zootaxa, 2971: 17-32.

García-Alegre, A. Sánchez, F., Gómez-Ballesteros, M., Hinz, H., Serrano, A., Parra, S., 2014. Modelling and mapping the local distribution of representative species on the Le Danois Bank, El Cachucho Marine Protected Area (Cantabrian Sea). Deep-Sea Research II, 106: 151-164.

Gaudin, M., Mulder, T., Cirac, P., Berné, S., Imbert, P., 2006. Past and present sedimentary activity in the Capbreton Canyon, southern Bay of Biscay. Geo-Mar Lett (2006) 26:331–345. DOI 10.1007/s00367-006-0043-1.

Gómez-Ballesteros, M., M. Druet, A. Muñóz, B. Arrese, J. Rivera, F. Sánchez, F. J. Cristobo, S. Parra; A. García-Alegre, C. González-Pola, J. Gallastegui, J. Acosta, 2014.

Geomorphology and sedimentary features of the Avilés Canyon System. Cantabrian Sea (Bay of Biscay). Deep-Sea Research II, 106, pp. 99-117.

González-Irusta, J.M., De la Torriente, A., Punzón, A., Blanco, M., Serrano, A., 2018. Determining and mapping species sensitivity to trawling impacts: the BEnthos Sensitivity Index to Trawling Operations (BESITO). ICES Journal of Marine Science, 75(5), 1710–1721. doi:10.1093/icesjms/fsy030.

Guerra-García J.M., J.C. Sorbe & I. Frutos, 2008. A new species of /Liropus/ (Crustacea, Amphipoda, Caprellidae) from the Le Danois bank (southern Bay of Biscay). Organisms Diversity & Evolution, Volume 7, Issue 4, 253-264.

ICES, 2016. Bay of Biscay and the Iberian Coast Ecoregion – Ecosystem overview. ICES Ecosystem Overviews. Published 04 March 2016 Version 2; 13 May 2016

ICES, 2019. Nephrops in Division 8c. WGBIE

IUCN, 2019. IUCN Red List of Threatened Species

Koutsikopoulos C. 6 B. Le Cann (1996). Physical processes and hydrological structures related to the Bay of Biscay anchovy. Sci. Mar., 60: 9–19.

Lam, F.P.A., T. Gerkema and L.R.M. Maas, 2003. Preliminary results from observations of internal tides and solitary waves in the Bay of Biscay. http://www.whoi.edu/ science/AOPE/people/tduda/isww/text/lam/

Laran, S., Authier, M., Aurélie B., Ghislain D., Falchetto, H., & Monestiez, P., Pettex, E., Eric, S., Canneyt, O., & Ridoux, V. (2016). Seasonal distribution and abundance of cetaceans within French waters- Part II: The Bay of Biscay and the English Channel. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography. 10.1016/j.dsr2.2016.12.012.

Lavín, L. Valdés, F. Sánchez, P. Abaunza, A. Forest, J. Boucher, P. Lazure, A. M. Jegou, 2005. The Bay of Biscay: The encountering of the ocean and the shelf. Capítulo en libro ”The Sea, Ideas and Observation on Progress in the Study of the Seas”, Vol: 14, Part B, pp. 935 - 1002. Ed: A. Robinson and K. Brink, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, 2006. ISBN-13:978-0-674-02117-4.

Laborde, M (2008) Spatial distribution of cetaceans in the Bay of Biscay and implications of the Marine Strategy Directive for their conservation. 10.13140/RG.2.2.22520.96000.

Marcos-Ipiña, E., Salazar, J.M., De Stephanis, R. 2014. Cetacean population research and detection of Special Areas of Conservation for cetaceans in the marine environment of Jaizkibel and adjacent waters. Munibe Monographs. Nature Series, 2: 91-99. Donostia-San Sebastián • ISSN 2340-0463

Mazières, A., Gillet, H., Castelle, B., Mulder, T., Guyot, C., Garlan, T., Mallet, C., 2014. High-resolution morphobathymetric analysis and evolution of Capbreton submarine canyon head (Southeast Bay of Biscay—French Atlantic Coast) over the last decade using descriptive and numerical modeling. Marine Geology 351: 1–12

Motos, L., A. Uriarte and V. Valencia, 1996. The spawning environment of the Bay of Biscay anchovy (Engraulis encrasicolus L.). Sci. Mar., 60 (2), 140–177.

Núñez, J., Aguirrezabalaga, F., Ceberio, A., 2000. Species of nereididae from the Capbreton Canyon (Bay of Biscay, Northeast Atlantic). Bulletin of Marine Science, 67(1): 25–37.

OSPAR Commission, 2000. Quality Status Report 2000: Region IV - Bay of Biscay and Iberian Coast. OSPAR Commission. London. 134 + xiii pp.

OSPAR (2008). OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats. OSPAR Convention for the Protection of the Marine environment of the North-East Atlantic. (Reference Number: 2008-6).

Piraud, I., Marseleix, P. and F. Auclair, 2003. Tidal and thermohaline circulation in the Bay of Biscay. Geophys. Res. Abstracts, 5, 07058.

Prado, E., Sánchez, F., Rodríguez-Basalo, A., Altuna, A., Cobo , A., 2019. Semi- automatic method of fan surface assessment to achieve gorgonian populations structure in Le Danois Bank, Cantabrian Sea. The International Archives of the Photogrammetry, Remote Sensing and Spatial Information Sciences, Volume XLII-2/W10, 2019 Underwater 3D Recording and Modelling “A Tool for Modern Applications and CH Recording”, 2–3 May 2019, Limassol, Cyprus

Prouzet, P., K. Metuzals and C. Caboche, 1994. L'anchois du golfe de Gascogne. Caractéristiques biologiques et campagne de pêche française en 1992. Rapport CNPM-IMA-IFREMER.

Quéro J.C., J. Dardignac and J.J. Vayne, 1989. Les poissons du golfe de Gascogne. IFREMER. Brest: 229 pp.

Quéro, J.C., M.H. Du Buit and J.J. Vayne, 1998. Les observations de poissons tropicaux et le réchauffement des eaux dans l'Atlantique européen. Oceanol. Acta, 21 (2), 345–351.

Rodríguez, A., Sánchez, F., García-Alegre, A., 2015. Epibenthic communities on bathyal hard bottoms of Le Danois Bank (El Cachucho MPA, Cantabrian sea) Resúmenes sobre el VIII Simposio MIA15, Málaga del 21 al 23 de septiembre de 2015.

Rodríguez-Basalo, A., F. Sánchez, A. Punzón, M. Gómez-Ballesteros, 2019. Updating the Master Management Plan for El Cachucho MPA (Cantabrian Sea) using a Spatial planning approach. Continental Shelf Research (in press).

Sánchez, F., de la Gándara, F., Gancedo, R., 1995. Atlas de los peces demersales de Galicia y el Cantábrico, Otoño 1991–1993. Publ. Esp. Inst. Esp. Oceanogr. 20, 99.

Sánchez, F., Serrano, A., Parra, S., Ballesteros, M:, Cartes, J.E., 2008. Habitat characteristics as determinant of the structure and spatial distribution of epibenthic and demersal communities of Le Danois Bank (Cantabrian Sea, N. Spain). Journal of Marine Systems, 72: 64–86

Sánchez, F., Gil, J., 2000. Hydrographic mesoscale structures and Poleward Current as a determinant of hake (Merluccius merluccius) recruitment in southern Bay of Biscay ICES Journal of Marine Science, 57: 152–170. 2000 doi:10.1006/jmsc.1999.0566, available online at http://www.idealibrary.com

Sánchez F., Blanc M., Gancedo, R., 2002. Atlas de los peces demersales y de los invertebrados de interés comercial de Galicia y el Cantábrico. Otoño 1997–1999. Ed. CYAN (Inst. Esp.Oceanogr.) 158 p.

Sánchez, F., A. Serrano, 2003. Variability of groundfish communities of the Cantabrian Sea during the 1990s. Hydrobiological Variability in the ICES Area, 1990 – 1999. ICES Marine Science Symposia.219, pp. 249 – 260.

Sánchez F., Olaso, I., 2004. Effects of fisheries on the Cantabrian Sea shelf ecosystem. Ecol. Model. 172, 151–-174.

Sánchez, F., A. Serrano, S. Parra, M. Ballesteros & J. Cartes, 2007. Habitat characteristics as determinant of the structure and spatial distribution of epibenthic and demersal communities of Le Danois bank (Cantabrian Sea, N Spain). Journal of Marine Science (in press).

Sánchez, F., A. Serrano, S. Parra, M. Gómez-Ballesteros, J. E. Cartes, 2008. Habitat characteristics as determinant of the structure and spatial distribution of epibenthic and demersal communities of Le Danois Bank (Cantabrian Sea, N. Spain). Journal of Marine Systems. 72, pp. 64 - 86.

Sanchez, F., Morandeau, G., Bru, N., Lissardy, M., 2013. A restricted fishing area as a tool for fisheries management: Example of the Capbreton canyon, southern Bay of Biscay. Marine Policy 42: 180–189.

Sánchez, F., C. González-Pola, M. Druet, A. García-Alegre, J. Acosta, F.J. Cristobo, S. Parra; P. Ríos, A. Altuna, M. Gómez-Ballesteros, A. Muñoz-Recio, J. Rivera, G. Díaz del Río, 2014. Habitat characterization of deep-water coral reefs in La Gaviera canyon (Avilés Canyon System, Cantabrian Sea). Deep Sea Research II, 106, pp. 118-140.

Sánchez, Francisco; Gómez-Ballesteros, María; González-Pola, Cesar; Punzón, Antonio. 2014. Sistema de cañones submarinos de Avilés. Proyecto LIFE +INDEMARES. Ed. Fundación Biodiversidad del Ministerio de Agricultura, Alimentación y Medio Ambiente.

Sánchez, F., Rodríguez Basalo, A., García-Alegre, A., Gómez-Ballesteros, M., 2017. Hard-bottom bathyal habitats and keystone epibenthic species on Le Danois Bank (Cantabrian Sea). Journal of Sea Research 130; 134-153.

Serrano A., Sanchez F., Garcia-Castrillo, G., 2006. Epibenthic communities of trawlable grounds of the Cantabrian Sea. Sci. Mar., 70, 149–159.

Serrano, A., F. Sánchez, A. Punzón, F. Velasco, I. Olaso, 2011. Deep sea megafaunal assemblages off the northern Iberian slope related to environmental factors. Scientia Marina. 75 - 3.

SIMNORAT, 2019. Marine Potected Areas in the Bay of Biscay and Iberian Coasts Database Completion and Analysis. European Commission; Directorate-General for Maritime Affairs and Fisheries

Sorbe, J.C., Frutos, I., Aguirrezabalaga, F., 2010. The benthic fauna of slope pockmarks from

the Kostarrenkala area (Capbreton canyon, SE Bay of Biscay). Munibe (Ciencias Naturales-Natur Zientziak) • Nº 58: 85-98 • ISSN 0214-7688

Stebbing, A. R. D., S. M. T. Turk, A. Wheeler and K. R. Clarke, 2002. Immigration of southern fish species to south-west England linked to warming of the North Atlantic (1960–2000). J. Mar. Biol. Ass. U.K., 82, 177–180.

Valdés, L. and A. Lavín, 2002. Dynamics and human impact in the Bay of Biscay: An ecological perspective. In Large Marine Ecosystems of the North Atlantic: Changing States and Sustainability. K. Shermann and H.R. Skjoldal (ed.). Elsevier Science B.V., Amsterdam, 293–320.

Maps and Figures

Location of area no. 3: Cantabrian Sea (Southern Bay of Biscay)

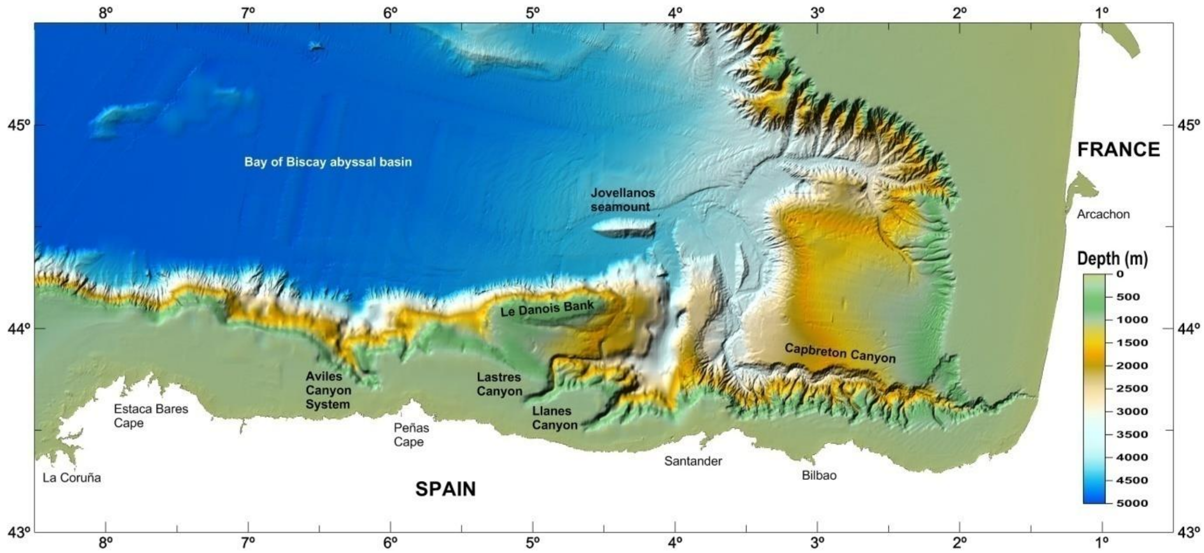


Figure 1. The area encompasses the continental shelf along the Spanish northern coast and includes pronounced submarine canyon systems such as Capbreton, Llanes, Lastres and Avilés, seamounts such as Jovellanos and Le Danois Bank, as well as numerous mounds, pockmarks and continental rocky outcrops.

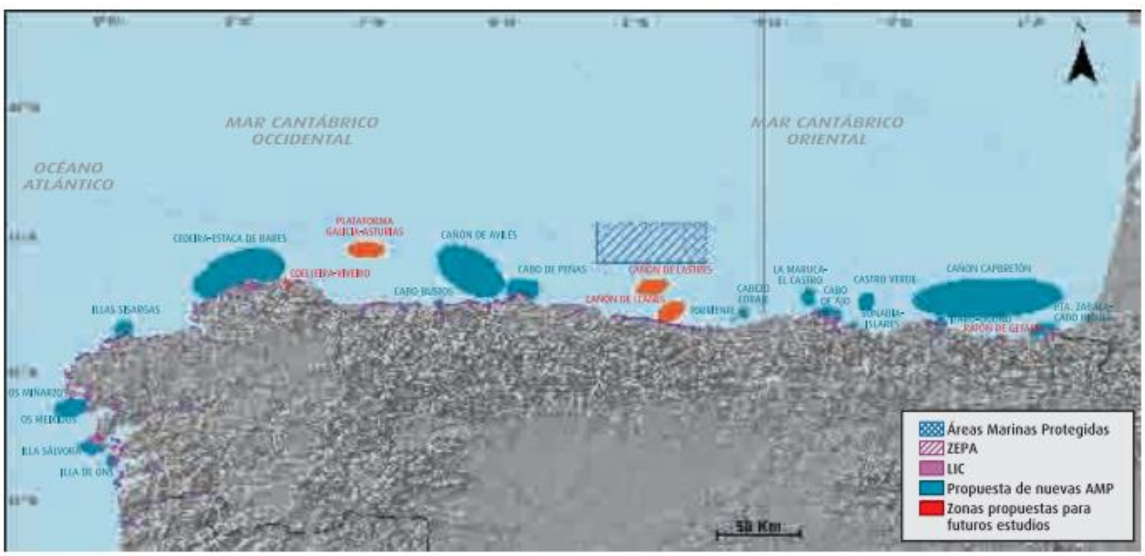


Figure 2. Areas of Ecological Importance from the Cantabrian Sea (Aguilar *et al*., 2009).

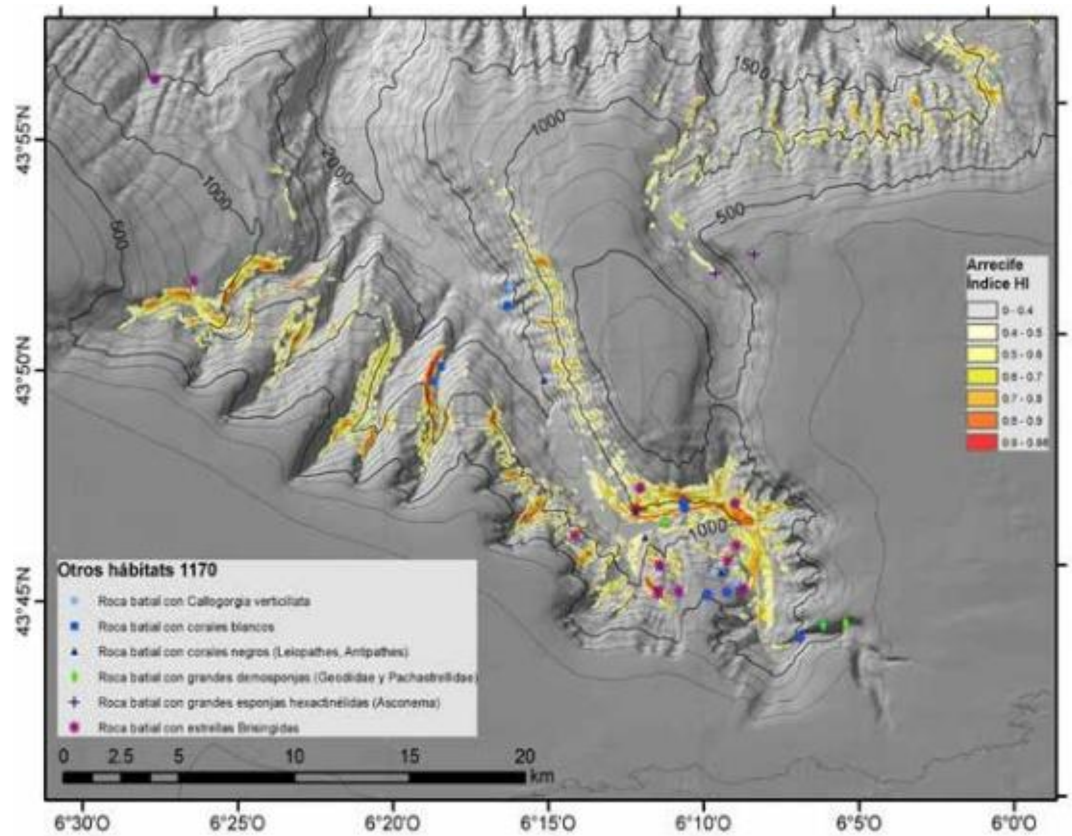


Figure 3. Spatial distribution of habitat "Reefs" (Habitat Directive, Habitat 1170) in Avilés Canyon. The HI index represents the probability of finding coral reefs. The other habitats considered as 1170 are shown with symbols of presence (Sánchez *et al*. 2014).

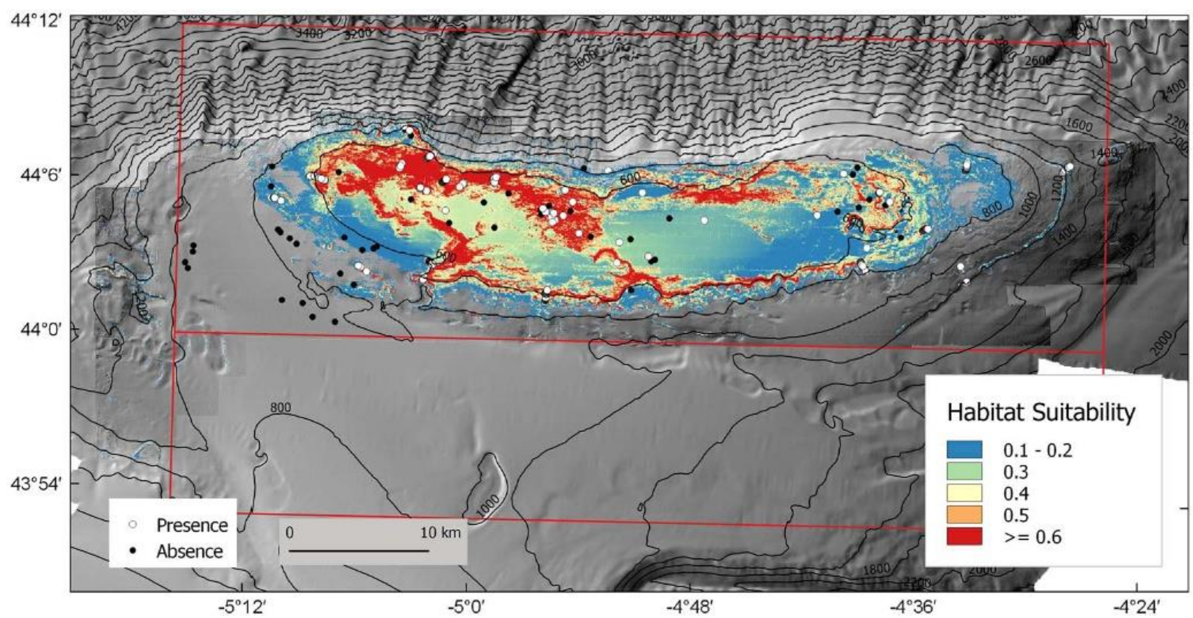


Figure 4. Predicted habitat suitability for all the 1170 reefs habitat types based on six structuring species on the Le Danois Bank. The dots of species presence-absence correspond with those of all previous surveys conducted in the area (Sánchez *et al*., 2017).

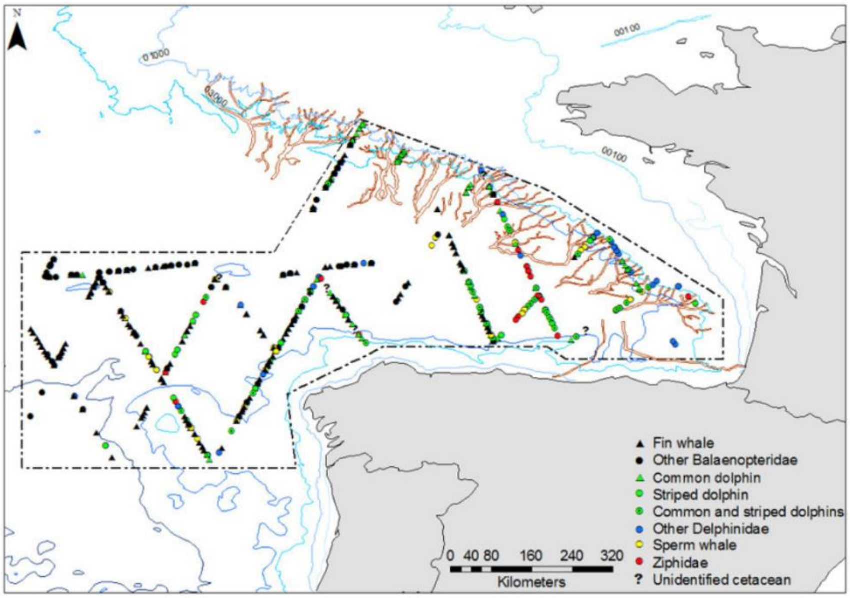
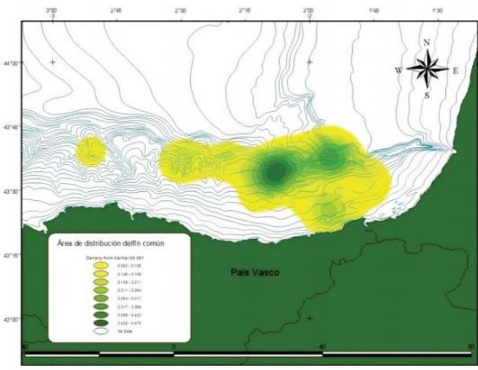
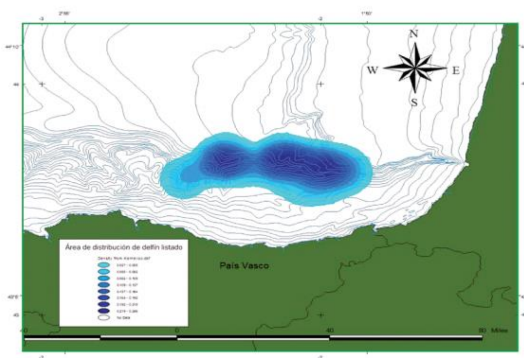


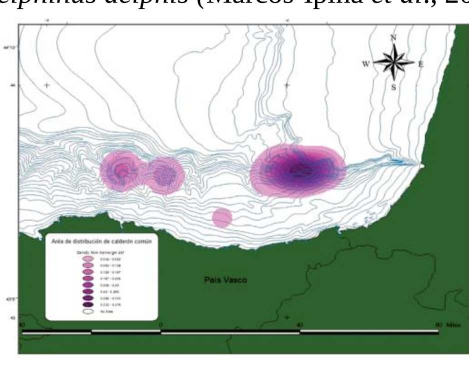
Figure 5. Distribution of cetaceans within the Bay of Biscay during 2007 surveys (Laborde, 2008)



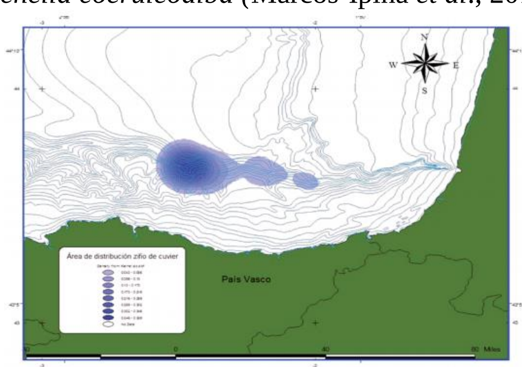
*Delphinus delphis (*Marcos-Ipiña *et al*., 2014*)*



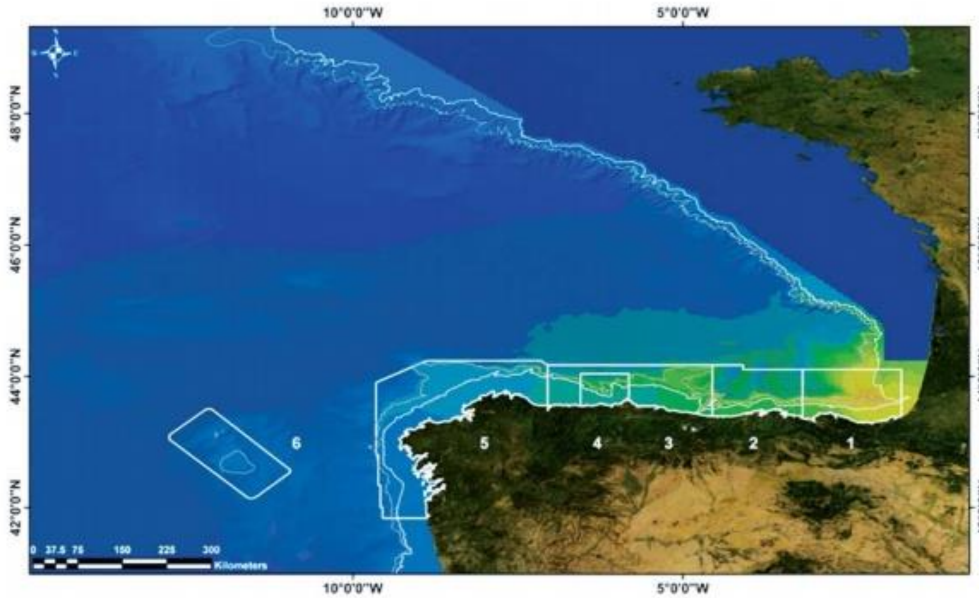
*Stenella coeruleoalba (*Marcos-Ipiña *et al*., 2014*)*



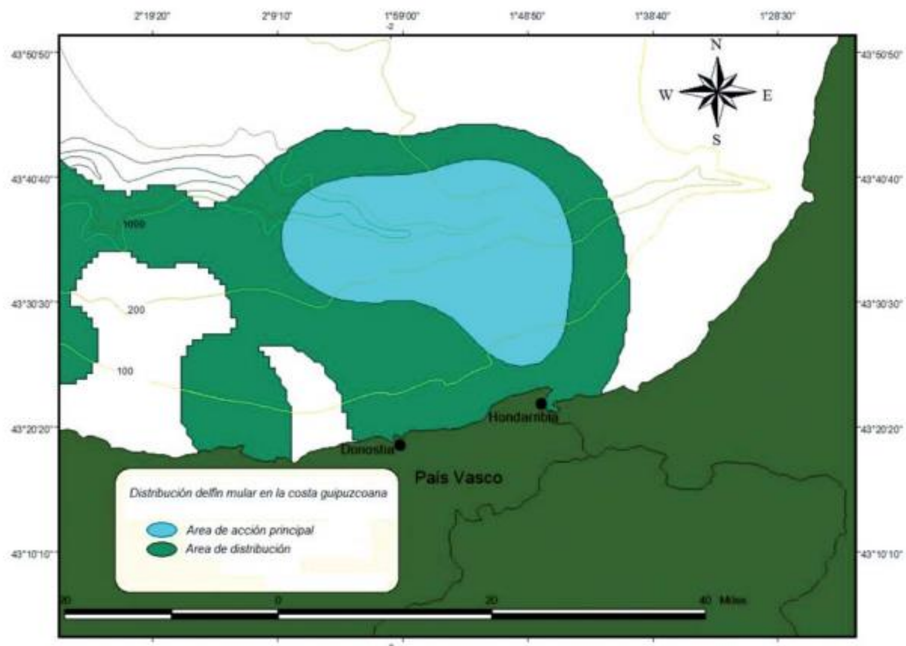
*Globicephala melas (*Marcos-Ipiña *et al*., 2014*)*



*Ziphius cavirostris (*Marcos-Ipiña *et al*., 2014*)*



Tursiops truncatus 2003-2011 (CEMMA, 2012)



*Tursiops truncates (*Marcos-Ipiña *et al*., 2014*)*

Figure 6. Marine mammal distribution in the area.

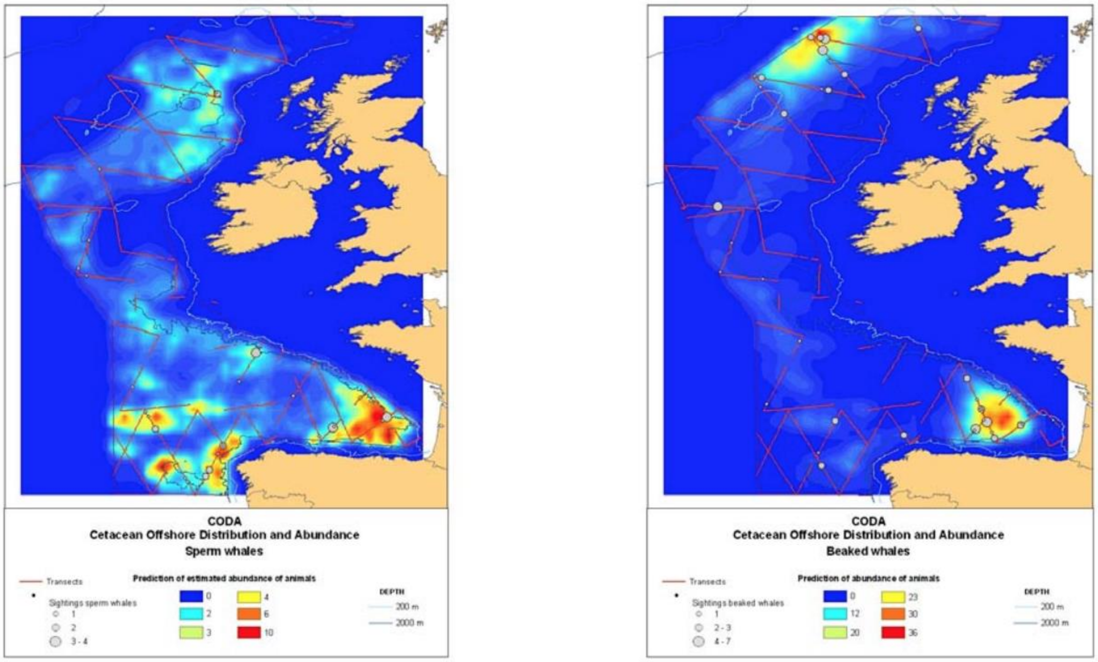


Figure 7. Surface density estimates for sperm whales and beaked whales (including Cuvier's beaked whales) as observed during the 2007 Cetacean Offshore Distribution and Abundance in the European Atlantic (CODA) surveys (CODA, 2009).

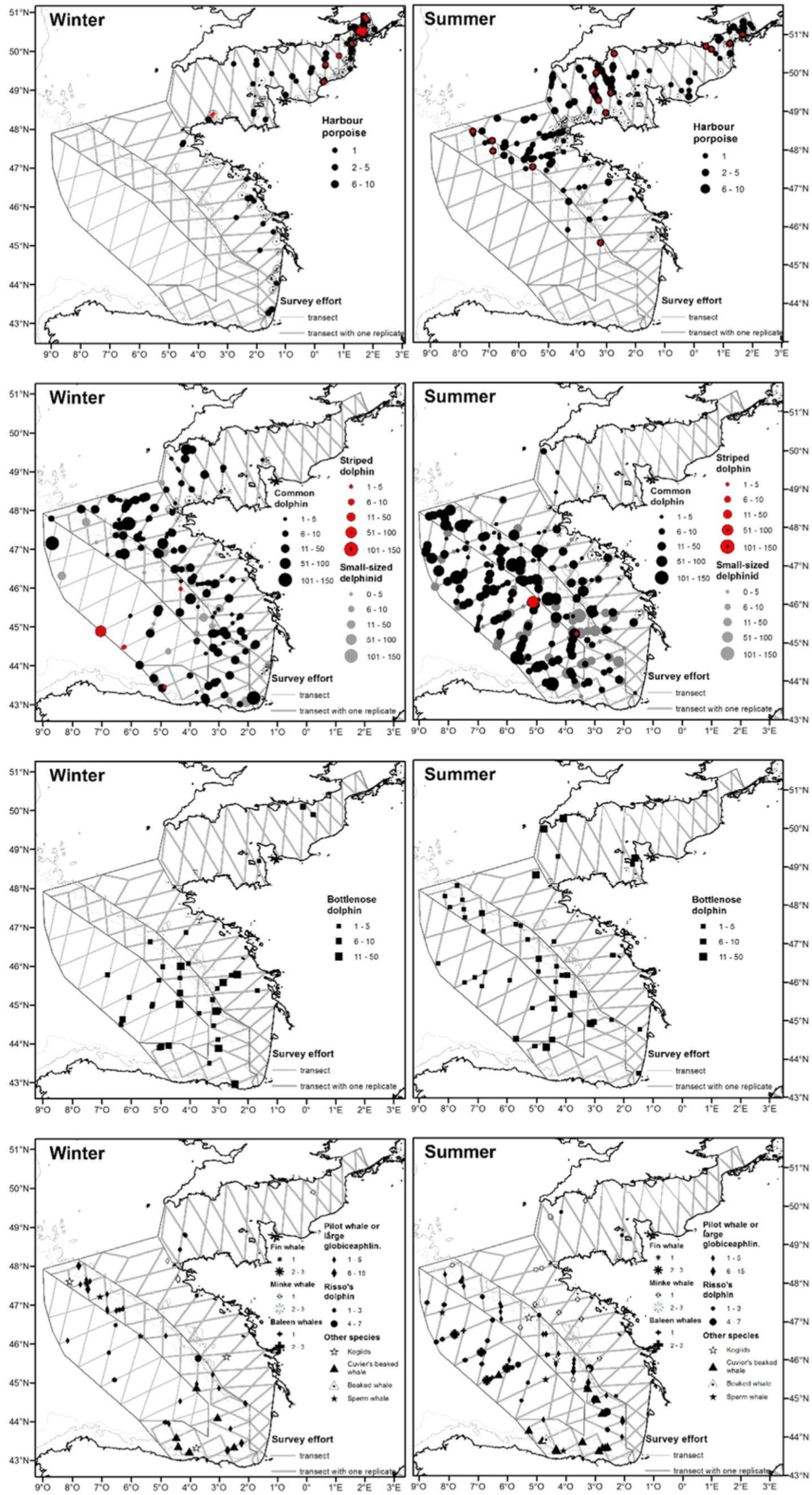


Figure 8. Distribution of sightings and effort for winter and summer surveys, for harbour porpoise (with red dot for calf/young occurrence), common dolphin, small-sized delphinids, bottlenose dolphin, balaenopteridae, sperm-and beaked whales, long-finned pilot whale and risso's dolphin (Laran *et al*. 2016)

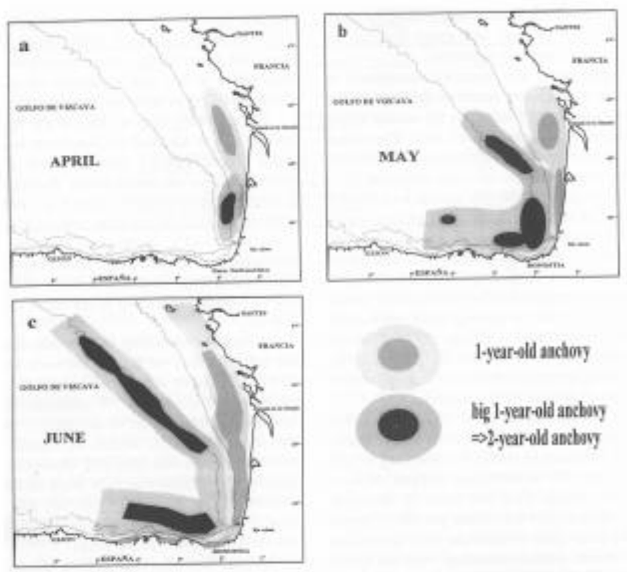


Figure 9. Anchovy spawning grounds in the Bay of Biscay (from Motos *et al*., 1996).

F. Sánchez and J. Gil

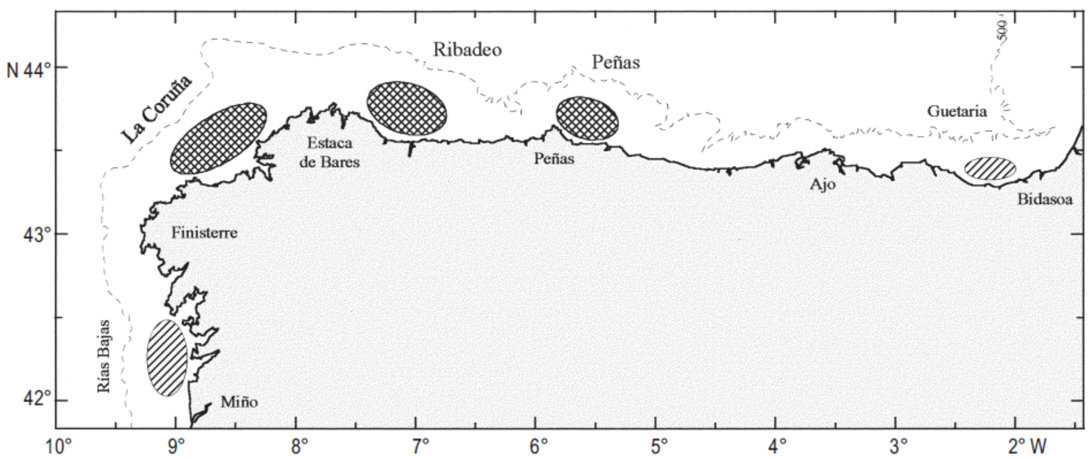


Figure 10. Main hake nursery areas in the last decade (based on Sánchez, 1995). Cross-hatching indicates the main areas appearing all years, and hatching indicates the concentrations that only appear in some years (Sánchez and Gil, 2000).

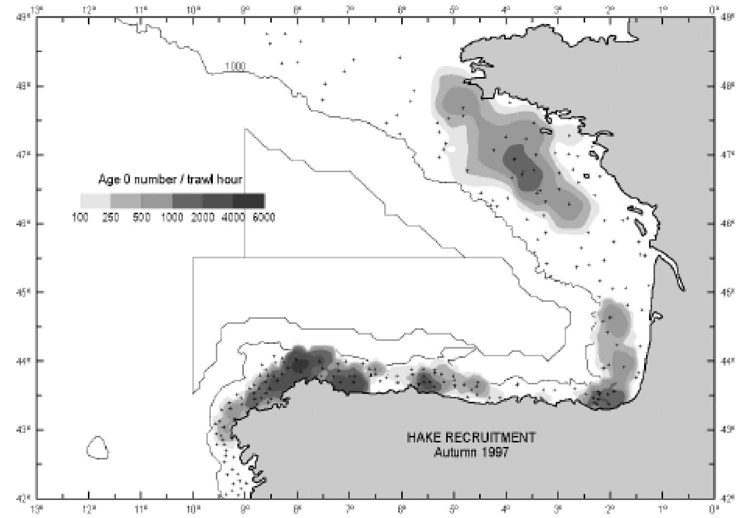


Figure 11. Main nurseries of European hake in the Bay of Biscay in autumn 1997. Data from standardized bottom trawl surveys carried out during the SESITS international project (SESITS, 2000) (From Lavín *et al*., 2004).

Rights and permissions

All quoted documents and sites are public and subject to specific copyrights that must be respected case by case.

Area no. 4: West Iberian Canyons and Banks

Abstract

This area includes marine protected areas (including six that are part of the OSPAR Network of Marine Protected Areas), one protected area, one UNESCO Biosphere Reserve, 12 Natura 2000 Sites of Community Interest and 10 Natura 2000 Special Protection Areas for seabirds. The area is divided into three sections: North Western, Centre Western and South Western. The features in the area are hotspots of marine life, and they represent areas of enhanced productivity, especially when compared with surrounding areas. The area has a high diversity of benthic communities and spawning grounds for several species, and it is an important area for cetaceans. A total of 3411 species are listed in the area, 11 per cent of which are protected under international or regional law.

Introduction

This area comprises coastal protected areas, which were designated under different multilateral agreements, national legislation or European Union Directives, with some of them overlapping partially or totally. As an example, Archipelago of Berlengas is a protected area (Reserva Natural das Berlengas) – Decree-Law No. 264/81, and it overlaps with the Site of Community Interest Arquipélago das Berlengas - PTCON0006, designated under EU Habitats Directive; the Special Protection Area Ilhas Berlengas - PTZPE0009, designated under EU Birds Directive; the UNESCO Berlengas Biosphere Reserve; OSPAR Berlengas Marine Protected Area; and the Council of Europe Berlenga Biogenetic Reserve.

The area comprises submarine canyons, which are major geomorphic features of continental margins (Harris *et al.*, 2014). Canyons are characterized by steep and complex topography (Shepard and Dill, 1966; Lastras *et al.*, 2007; Harris and Whiteway, 2011) that influences current patterns (Shepard *et al.*, 1979; Xu, 2011) and provides a heterogeneous set of habitats, from rocky walls and outcrops to soft sediment (De Leo *et al.*, 2014). These geomorphologic features act as preferential particle-transport routes from the productive coastal zone down continental slopes to the more stable deep seafloor (Allen & Durrieu de Madron, 2009; Puig *et al.*, 2014). On many continental margins, cross-shelf exchanges of water and particulate matter are inhibited by the presence of density fronts and associated slope currents flowing parallel to the isobaths (e.g., Font *et al.*, 1988; Allen & Durrieu de Madron, 2009). Near the seafloor, alignment of the current with the direction of the canyon axis is commonly observed (Shepard *et al.*, 1979; Puig *et al.*, 2000). The adjustments of the current to the canyon topography produce vortex stretching and vertical motions (Klinck, 1996; Hickey, 1997). These modifications of the currents may result in local upwelling, which stimulates primary production (Ryan *et al.*, 2005). Additionally, closed-circulation cells and downwelling may develop over canyons, enhancing the capacity of the canyon to trap particles transported by long-shore currents (Palanques *et al.*, 2005; Allen & Durrieu de Madron, 2009). Canyons are important routes for the transport of organic matter from surface waters and continental shelf areas to deep-sea basins (Durrieu de Madron *et al.*, 2000; Palanques *et al.*, 2005; Canals *et al.*, 2006; Pasqual *et al.*, 2010). There is increasing evidence that submarine canyons play important ecological roles in the functioning of deep-sea ecosystems (Amaro *et al.*, 2016; Thurber *et al.*, 2014) and contribute significantly to regional biodiversity and primary/secondary production along the continental margin (Gili *et al.*, 1999, 2000; Sardà *et al.*, 2009; Ingels *et al.*, 2009; Vetter *et al.*, 2010; De Leo *et al.*, 2010).

The area also comprises seamounts, which are defined as isolated topographic features of the seabed that have a limited lateral extent and rise (Menard, 1964). Seamounts are hotspots of marine life (e.g., Rogers, 1994; Gubbay, 2003; Morato & Pauly, 2004; Pitcher *et al.*, 2007, 2010; Mendonça *et al.*, 2012), and in general represent areas of enhanced productivity in comparison with nearby abyssal areas. In most cases, around the seamounts there is an extensive anticyclonic eddy associated with the lifting of nutrients from the rich deep water, giving rise to high concentrations of nitrates and chlorophyll in shallow waters (Coelho & Santos, 2003). Seamounts are biologically distinctive habitats of the open ocean, exhibiting a number of unique features (Rogers, 1994; Probert, 1999; Morato & Clark, 2007). These structures can host very distinctive biological communities that are different to the communities on nearby abyssal plains dominated by soft sediment, and these particular places may attract pelagic fish, including larger, commercially valuable vertebrate (*Beryx splendens*) and invertebrate (*Charonia lampas*) species and other marine species, like top predators, such as the blue shark (*Prionace glauca*) and marine reptile species, such as loggerhead sea turtles (*Caretta caretta*) and protected marine mammals (*Balaenoptera borealis*) (e.g., Holland & Grubbs, 2007; Kaschner, 2007, Santos *et al.,* 2007). Productivity in oceanic settings depends on light and nutrient availability, while overall production is the result of productivity and accumulation of the phytoplankton. At a seamount, either a seamount-generated, vertical nutrient flux has to be shallow enough to reach the euphotic zone and the ensuing productivity retained over the seamount long enough to allow transfer to higher trophic levels, or the seamount must rely on allochthonous inputs of organic material to provide a trophic subsidy to resident populations (Clark *et al.,* 2010 a), b)).

The area is located next to the mainland area. The area is divided into three sections:1) North Western Iberian Peninsula and Mainland canyons 2) Center Western Iberian Peninsula and Mainland canyons and 3) South Western Iberian Peninsula and Mainland canyons.

To the northwest of the Iberia Abyssal Plain area, the continental rise is relatively wide, ~100 km, and includes three seamounts: the easternmost Porto seamount and the more distant Vigo and Vasco da Gama seamounts. The Dom Carlos Valley, between the seamounts, forms a prominent fault bounded depression into which the sediment transported by the Porto and Aveiro submarine canyons is mainly funnelled (Mougenot *et al.*, 1984; Mougenot, 1988; Milkert *et al.*, 1996; Alves *et al.*, 2003).

Galicia Bank is characterized by two isolated seamounts on its southern edge (Vasco da Gama and Vigo) and is separated from northwestern Iberia by a broad submarine valley. The Galicia Bank has an area of 200x150 km within which the seafloor shoals to about 600 m water depth (Whitmarsh *et al.*, 1998; Wilson *et al.*, 2001).

The Porto submarine canyon is located about 25 km west of Póvoa de Varzim and is deeper than 110m. This canyon is more than 100 km in length, stretching towards the Iberian Abyssal Plain, and its morphology is related to the occurrence of mass movements, with no apparent relation to the present-day watercourses (Vanney & Mougenot, 1981; Rodrigues, 2001; Guerreiro *et al.*, 2007). The Porto submarine canyon is cut deeply into this steep surface (Rodrigues *et al.*, 1991). The bottom sedimentary cover is characterized by the presence of two important muddy deposits with general N-S orientation, located in the mid-shelf off the Minho and Douro rivers (Oliveira *et al.*, 2002; Guerreiro *et al.*, 2009). The normal wave regime promotes bottom sediment remobilization, primarily in the inner and middle shelf region (Vitorino *et al.*, 2002).

The Aveiro Canyon cuts the shelf-break, presenting an "amphitheater" outline, with the head carved in biogenic and detritic limestone formations from the Neogene and Eocene periods (Kenyon *et al.*, 2000; Rodrigues, 2004). The canyon begins about 30 km west of the coast, more than 110 m in depth, has a wide transversal profile with a half-circle upper sector of about 10 km diameter. It shows no apparent relation to present-day watercourses and meets the Porto canyon at the Valle-Inclan Depression, before reaching the Iberian Abyssal Plain (Terrinha *et al.*, 2003; Guerreiro *et al.*, 2007). In Aveiro canyon, due to the interaction of the poleward slope flow with the canyon's topography and with the southwards upwelling, this sector is known to promote recurrent filament activity (Haynes *et al.*, 1993) and generates an anticyclonic eddy in the canyon's mouth (Peliz *et al.*, 2002).

The Nazaré Canyon is the largest submarine canyon of Europe and one of the largest in the world; it is also the longest submarine canyon on the western Iberian margin, extending over 270 km from a water depth of about 50 m near the Portuguese coast to 5000 m at the edge of the Iberian Abyssal Plain (Vanney & Mougenot, 1990). The Nazaré fault, with an ENE-WSW alignment, is a late Variscan structure, which maintained its activity during the Meso-Cenozoic period (Moreira, 1985; Ribeiro *et al.*, 1990). In terms of sediment transport, the canyon is highly active, particularly during winter, because upwelling events may prevent sediment export during summer (Pusceddu *et al.*, 2010). Although the canyon does not connect to a river, the proximity of the head to the shore contributes to its effectiveness at capturing sediment transported along the shelf (Duarte *et al.*, 2000; de Stigter *et al.*, 2007; Oliveira *et al.*, 2007). Under the influence of tidal currents, fine-grained particles suspended from bottom sediments are captured in the upper canyon and actively transported downwards to the abyssal plain (Stigter *et al.*, 2007). Other physical forces promoting active sediment transport are episodic (intermittent) gravity flows (Van Weering *et al.*, 2002; Stigter *et al.*, 2007).

The Berlengas archipelago is located approximately 10 km west of the town of Peniche. The largest island of the archipelago is called Berlenga Island, which reaches an altitude of 88 m, with a maximum length of 1.5 km. Two groups of smaller islets, called Estelas and Farilhões, are also part of the archipelago.

Its geographical location imparts the archipelago with unique characteristics. The archipelago has been studied in detail, because it is located in an area with a temperate maritime climate and is influenced by seasonal coastal upwelling controlled by the atmospheric circulation associated with the Azores anticyclone. Persistent northerlies (upwelling favourable) are observed in summer (June to September) (Peliz *et al.*, 2002; Álvarez-Salgado *et al.*, 2003). However, it is during the non-upwelling season (late winter-spring) that many meroplankton species are observed over the shelf (Santos *et al.*, 2004). Concerning coastal circulation, other important aspects are the Portugal Current flowing off the continental slope westward of 10ºW (Saunders, 1982), the Iberian Poleward Current, which flows over the slope (Haynes & Barton, 1991) and the Western Iberia Buoyant Plume (WIBP) (Peliz *et al.*, 2002). Moreover, it is located at the top of the escarpment of the Nazaré Canyon, one of the most important submarine canyons in the world, located in the transition zone between the Mediterranean and European subregions. This location contributes to the remarkable productivity and diversity of marine species and habitats and to a landscape unique in the region. Previous studies have investigated the distribution and composition of zooplankton along the Berlenga shelf area (Pardal & Azeiteiro, 2001).

The Berlenga Marine Protected Area is about 102 km^2 in area and surrounds seabird-nesting habitats and an important place of passage for migratory birds (Queiroga *et al.*, 2008); it comprises a Special Protection Area for Wild Birds and is integrated in the Natura 2000 network of marine protected areas.

The Cascais Canyon is situated north to Setúbal Canyon and is not connected to any river flow. The organic matter input is thought to be mainly from the Tagus River, though some quantities of sediment and associated materials may be transported from the continental shelf. The canyon acted as the major conduit of sediment from the continental shelf to the abyssal plain at the time of the Lisbon earthquake in 1755 (Amaro *et al.*, 2009; Lastras *et al.*, 2009).

The Lisboa and Setúbal canyons are located in an area of complex topography and coastal configuration. These canyons are conduits with southwards (Lisboa) and westerly (Setúbal) course directions, and their heads are located on the shelf at around 80 and 120 m near the mouth of the Tagus and Sado rivers, respectively (Mougenot, 1988; Alves *et al.*, 2003; Lastras *et al.*, 2009; Jesus *et al.*, 2012).

The Lisboa Canyon's V-shaped channel follows a sinuous course down slope in a southerly direction. From the canyon head, at 100m depth, down to the junction with the Setúbal Canyon, at 1900 m, the channel is 30 km long. Below the junction point, the canyon continues in WSW direction for another 80 km to the foot of the continental slope at a depth of 4500 m (de Stigter *et al.*, 2004). This submarine canyon differs from the other canyons by the width of its valley, which follows a graben. To the south the continental shelf is very narrow and disappears below the sediment progradation of Neogene beds (Kenyon *et al.*, 2001).

The Lagos canyon extends over 60 km, drains towards the SW, and its morphology changes from the upper to the lower parts. In its upper part the canyon displays a wider thalweg with a smaller inner channel carved close to the SE wall. The heights of the flanks vary from 200 m (incising the contourites) to 800 m (closer to the continental slope).

The Portimão Canyon has an important effect on the formation of the filaments, eddies and internal waves that transport the Mediterranean waters long distances into the Atlantic Ocean (Serra & Ambar, 2002; Serra *et al.*, 2005; Garcia-Lafuente *et al.*, 2006; Ambar *et al.*, 2008; Cherubin *et al.*, 2000; Bruno *et al.*, 2006; Garcia *et al.*, 2015).

Its location seems to be related to the Albufeira Fault. Erosion is not active today, as evidenced by its relatively smooth flanks, and the canyon seems to be progressively infilled by sediment load (Mulder *et al.*, 2006; Marchès *et al.*, 2007; Garcia *et al.*, 2015).

In terms of biodiversity, the continental margins are considered major reservoirs of marine biodiversity and productivity (Sanders & Hessler, 1969; Rex, 1983; Snelgrove *et al.*, 1992; Levin *et al.*, 2001; Brandt *et al.*, 2007). The patterns of benthic community structure and productivity have been studied in relatively few submarine canyons (e.g., Vetter 1994; Vetter & Dayton 1999; Hargrave *et al.*, 2004; Schlacher *et al.*, 2007). Habitat diversity and specific abiotic characteristics enhance the occurrence of high levels of biodiversity (Vetter & Dayton, 1998; McClain and Barry, 2010; Company *et al.*, 2012; De Leo *et al.*, 2014). Some findings suggest that increased habitat heterogeneity in canyons is responsible for enhancing benthic biodiversity and creating biomass hotspots (Rowe *et al.*, 1982; Vetter 1994; Vetter *et al.*, 2010). Enhanced local fishery production in canyons, when contrasted to regular slope environments, has also been reported and attributed to the channeling and concentrating of detrital organic matter and pelagic animal populations (Yoklavich *et al.*, 2000; Brodeur, 2001; Company *et al.*, 2008).

The area also encompasses seamounts. Seamounts are host to epipelagic fishes with important functions for migratory species, such as tuna (e.g., *Thunnus thynnus* and *Thunnus albacares*), and habitats that are associated with the species spawning function and recruitment of fish (belonging to the Serranidae, and Carangidae families), benthopelagic and respective communities (including habitats for fish species captured for commercial purposes, such as orange roughy, *Hoplostethus atlanticus*) (Morato & Clark, 2007; OSPAR, 2010). In this set of habitats some endangered and/or declining species can also be found, such as the blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus)*, leatherback and loggerhead turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea* and *Caretta caretta)* (protected under the European Union Habitats Directive, the Bern Convention, Bonn Convention, the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora and the OSPAR Convention), and elasmobranch (*Hoplostethus atlanticus*, *Centroscymnus coelolepis*, *Centrophorus granulosus* and *Centrophorus squamosus)* (protected under the OSPAR Convention) (Morato *et al.*, 2008; Santos *et al.*, 2012).

Seamounts are also important to birds and Cory’s shearwater (*Calonectris borealis*), which breed in the Azores and have been shown to forage over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (Magalhães *et al.*, 2008).

Both seamounts and canyons can host high biodiversity, and both structures have been relatively well studied (see Table 1). A total of 3411 species are listed for the area, and 776 were specifically recorded for the different structures it comprises (see feature description of the described area).

Location

The area is located in waters surrounding Portugal and Spain. Its total area is 189239 km^2 and is divided into three sections: North Western Iberian Peninsula, Center Western Iberian Peninsula and South Western Iberian Peninsula. The area includes 12 submarine canyons, five seamount structures, banks, islands and an archipelago.

Feature description of the area

There are 3174 species reported for the whole area and 776 specifically recorded for the structures. This coastal area exhibits mesoscale spatial and temporal patterns of upwelling. Coastal winds off the north-west exert a conspicuous seasonal cycle, favouring upwelling from March-April to September-October and downwelling for the rest of the year (Wooster *et al*., 1976; Bakun and Nelson, 1991). Upwelling areas are particularly important for the exploitation of resources and for the air-sea exchange of anthropogenic CO_2. Knowledge of the magnitude of "New Production" of this area is of great importance (Alvarez-Salgado *et al*., 2002). "New Production" is defined as the fraction of the gross primary production that is maintained by external nutrients.

Nutrient enrichment associated with upwelled water results in high pelagic productivity on the shelf and in the Rias Bajas (Campos and Gonzalez, 1975; Tenore *et al*., 1995). Along the coast there is an important pelagic fishery, especially off Cape Finisterre. A coastal purse-seine fishery for sardine, *Sardina pilchardus*, typically yields ca. 80,000 metric tons annually along the Galician coast (Porteiro *et al*., 1986). There is also an important demersal fishery along the Galician shelf, including hake (*Merluccius merluccius*), blue-whiting (*Micromesistius poutassou*) and Norway lobster (*Nephrops norvegicus*) (Farina *et al*., 1983).

Around 11 per cent of the 3174 species identified in the area are legally protected or recognized as threatened by CITES, IUCN Red List, European Union Habitats and Birds Directives, Bern Convention or OSPAR Convention. In this area OSPAR identified as endangered or declining the following species:

- Deep-water sharks (*Centrophorus granulosus*, *Centroscymus coeleopsis*, *Centrophorus squam)*
- commercial fish, such as orange roughy *(Hoplostethus atlanticus)*
- three species of corals (*Funiculina quadrangularis*, *Lophelia pertusa*, *Madrepora oculate)*
- sea urchin *(Centrostephanus longispinus)*
- turtles (*Caretta caretta* and *Dermochelys coriacea)*.

Other examples of species under CITES Appendix I are:

- cetaceans (*Balaenoptera borealis, Balaenoptera musculus, Balaenoptera physalus, Megaptera novaeangliae*, *Physeter macrocephalus*, *Tursiops truncates)*
- turtles (*Caretta caretta*, *Dermochelys coriacea*, *Eretmochelys imbricata* and *Lepidochelys kempii)*
- saw-fish (*Pristis pristis)*

Examples of species under CITES Appendix I are (CITES Appendix II)

- sharks (*Lamna nasus*, *Carcharodon carcharias*, *Cetorhinus maximus*, *Sphyrna zygaena)*
- ray (*Mobula mobular)*
- 45 corals (e.g., *Antipathella subpinnata*, *Aulocyathus atlanticus*, *Caryophyllia ambrosia*, *Desmophyllum dianthus*, *Flabellum alabastrum*, *Flabellum angulare*, *Fungiacyathus fragilis*, *Lophelia pertusa*, *Madrepora oculata*, *Schizopathes affinis*, *Solenosmilia variabilis*, *Stauropathes arctica*, *Stephanocyathus moseleyanus)*
- fishes (*Hippocampus guttulatus* and *Hippocampus hippocampus)*
- whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*, *Balaenoptera musculus*, *Balaenoptera borealis*, *Megaptera novaeangliae*, *Physeter microcephalus)*
- dolphins (*Delphinus delphis*, *Tursiops truncates)*
- turtles *(Caretta caretta*, *Dermochelys coriacea)*
- sea urchin (*Centrostephanus longispinus*, protected under the EU Habitats Directive)
- anthozoa (*Astroides calycularis)*
- crustacean (*Homarus gammarus*, *Maja squinado*, *Pagurus bernhardus*, *Palinurus elephas*, *Scyllarides latus* and *Scyllarus arctus)*
- fish (*Epinephelus marginatus*, *Pomatoschistus microps*, *Pomatoschistus minutos*, *Syngnathus abaster* and *Umbrina cirro*, protected by Annex II of the Bern Convention).

Also present in the area are 109 species listed on the IUCN Red List as near threatened/vulnerable/endangered/critically endangered, e.g., 30 cetaceans (e.g., *Balaenoptera musculus* and *Balaenoptera borealis*), six turtles (e.g., *Caretta caretta* and *Dermochelys coriacea*), one coral (*Eunicella verrucose)*, one crustacean (*Palinurus elephas)*, 37 sharks (e.g., *Lamna nasus* and *Carcharhinus brachyurus*), 13 rays (e.g., *Dipturus batis* and *Gymnura altavela*), 15 fishes (e.g., *Epinephelus marginatus* and *Mola mola*), five tunas (e.g., *Thunnus alalunga* and *Thunnus thynnus*), one bird (*Rissa tridactyla)*. There are also 12 species of birds (e.g., *Hydrobates castro* and *Calonectris borealis*) belonging to Annex I of the European Union Birds Directive.

Dedicated surveys for cetacean species from the 2007 Cetacean Offshore Distribution and Abundance (CODA) and the 2017 large-scale surveys for cetaceans in European Atlantic waters (SCANS-III) observed many cetacean species through this area (CODA, 2008; Hammond *et al*., 2017). In particular, modelled density estimates of fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*) and sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*) indicate that the areas of the northwest Iberian Peninsula likely contain some of the highest densities of these species in European waters (see below). Both fin and sperm whales are migratory species, and seasonally move into and through the area to other known key lifecycle areas (foraging, resting, breeding), such as the inner Bay of Biscay and Biscay Seamounts (Cooke, 2018).

There are differences in the proportion of protected species, among the different groups of species. All the bird species observed in this area are protected by the EU Birds Directive, and 86.67 per cent belong to annexes I and II. Of the Elasmobranchi, 23.39 per cent are listed on the IUCN Red List, with 36.17 per cent NT (near threatened), 40.43 per cent VUL (vulnerable), 17.02 per cent EN (endangered), and 6.38 per cent CR (critically endangered); 2.87 per cent of fish are classified by the IUCN Red List, with 26.67 per cent NT (near threatened), 53.33 per cent VUL (vulnerable), 13.3 per cent EN (endangered), and 6.67 per cent CR (critically endangered).

Of all the species described for this area, there is a predominance of species belonging to the phylum Annelida, phylum Mollusca, Superclass Gnathostomata (Fish), class Bryozoa, subphylum Crustacea, class Anthozoa, subclass Elasmobranchii.

The phylum Annelida is composed almost entirely (94.8 per cent) of species belonging to the class polychaeta. The second-most abundant is the phylum Mollusca with species belonging to five different classes: Gastropoda (e.g., *Gibbula umbilicalis*), Bivalvia (e.g., *Crassostrea gigas*), Cephalopoda (e.g.,, *Loligo vulgaris*), Scaphopoda (e.g., *Cadulus subfusiformis*), Polyplacophora (e.g., *Callochiton calcatus*), a suborder Nudibranchia (e.g., *Flabellina affinis*) and order Opisthobranchia (e.g., *Aplysia fasciata*). The Crustacea subphylum includes many different species from different orders: Decapoda (e.g.,, *Scyllarides latus*), Amphipoda (e.g., *Ericthonius punctatus*), Isopoda (e.g., *Zonophryxus grimaldii*), Cumacea (e.g., *Paralamprops semiornatus*), Tanaidacea (e.g., *Apseudes latreillei*), Stomatopoda (e.g., *Pseudosquillisma oculata*); Subclass: Copepoda (e.g., *Temora longicornis*); Infraclass: Cirripedia (e.g., *Pollicipes pollicipes*); Family: Mysidae (e.g., *Diamysis bahirensis*), Caprellidae (e.g., *Caprella andreae*); Class: Ostracoda (e.g., *Munidopsis curvirostra*), Malacostraca (e.g., *Bathyporeia elkaimi*). The subclass Elasmobranchii has a dominance of sharks, with a percentage of 68.8.

Almost 4 per cent of the total species belong to the Anthozoa class, including species of scleractinians (e.g., *Leptopsammia Formosa*) and gorgonians (e.g., *Paramuricea clavata*). In this area (seamounts and canyons) the gorgonian species were reported to form dense gorgonian coral habitat-forming aggregations, which may represent important feeding and sheltering grounds for seamount fishes and potential shark nurseries (WWF, 2001; Etnoyer & Warrenchuk, 2007; OSPAR, 2011). Cold-water, deep-sea, habitat-forming corals can shelter higher megafauna in association with the corals than other habitats without coral communities (Roberts *et al.*, 2006; Mortensen *et al.*, 2008, Rogers *et al.*, 2008). The structures characteristic of this area also harbour large aggregations of demersal or benthopelagic fish (Koslow, 1997; Morato & Pauly, 2004; Pitcher *et al.*, 2007; Morato *et al.*, 2009, 2010).

The Berlengas archipelago is characterized by high biodiversity, with 76 fish species currently reported in the reserve area (Rodrigues *et al.* 2008). This, allied with the favourable combination of bathymetric features and ocean and wind circulation (namely the Azorean anti-cyclone and the Portuguese continental shelf upwelling), characterizes the area as rich feeding and breeding grounds for several species, especially seabird species (Paiva *et al.*, 2010; Werner, 2010).

Berlenga features the only breeding populations of pelagic seabirds in mainland Portugal: the Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris borealis*), and the band-rumped storm-petrel (*Hydrobates castro*). Presently, the archipelago hosts approximately 850 breeding pairs of Cory's shearwaters, distributed among Farilhões Islets (500-550 pairs) and Berlenga Island (300 pairs) (Lecoq *et al.*, 2011). The European shag (*Phalacrorax aristotelis*), lesser black-backed gull (*Larus fuscus),* and, until recently, the critically endangered common murre (*Uria aalge)* also bred on the island. The most abundant bird is the yellow-legged gull (*Larus michahellis*), which possibly exerts a negative effect on the other seabird populations, as stated by Lecoq *et al*., (2011), when they recorded predation of Cory's shearwater eggs at Farilhões Islets.

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

The deep sea, the largest biome on Earth, is composed of a variety of different habitats with specific biotic and abiotic characteristics (Ramirez-Llodra *et al.*, 2010). Submarine canyons and seamounts are two of these habitats. Recent novel technological developments, including underwater acoustic mapping, imaging, and sampling technologies, and long-term/permanent moored or benthic observatories, have greatly contributed to our understanding of the diverse and complex hydrodynamics (Xu, 2011) and geomorphology of canyons over the last two decades (Robert *et al.*, 2014; Quattrini *et al.*, 2015), allowing the spatio-temporal tracking of oceanographic processes and the associated biological responses, with an integration level that grows every day (Aguzzi *et al.*, 2012; Matabos *et al.*, 2014; Fernandez-Arcaya *et al.*, 2017).

In 1981, the Berlengas Islands, a refuge for marine wildlife, became a natural reserve of major importance (Radhouani *et al.*, 2010; Pereira *et al.*, 2017). The Berlengas MPA is a type VI from IUCN's protected area categories: "Protected area with sustainable use of natural resources: Areas that conserve ecosystems and habitats, together with associated cultural values and traditional natural resource management systems" (Day *et al.*, 2012). The Berlengas MPA is not established strictly for the purposes of conservation of species and habitats. It also allows for economic activities, such as fishing and diving under specific regulations with respect to biodiversity conservation (Law Decree 30/98). It includes two Partially Protected Areas as well as a Complementary Protected Area. Partially Protected Areas are buffer zones where recreational and commercial fishing as well as tourism activities are allowed under specific regulation. This regulation establishes a limited number of visitors by site and allows a limited number of fishing boats. The Complementary Protected Area is open to fishing but not necessarily as an open-access fishery, as legislation does not allow for commercial fishing by vessels not registered in Peniche Port Authority, trawl fishing, gill nets, trap fishing and shellfish collecting (Queiroga *et al.*, 2009; Thurber *et al.*, 2014; Boavida *et al.*, 2016).

Galician waters have long suffered from overfishing, illegal fisheries and the consequences of shipping and oil transport:

- *Fishing activities*: Galicia (NW Spain) is one of the EU regions with the highest level of dependence on fishing activities (EC, 2004). The main fishing gears used in the area are bottom trawling, fishing lines and gill nets.
- *Climate change*: this phenomenon seems to have led to an increase in the presence of temperate water fish species in the Cantabrian sea (e.g., among pelagic fishes are *Megalops atlanticus* and*Seriola rivoliana*) over the last twenty years (Quéro *et al*., 1998; Stebbing *et al*., 2002).
- *Shipping and oil transport*: The Galician waters are located on the main route of supertankers transporting oil from the Middle East and Africa to EU harbours. More than 70 per cent of the total oil consumed in the EU is moved by shipping through the Finisterre pass directly towards the English Channel and then to the final destination in different European harbours. In recent years several oil spills have occurred (1992, Aegean Sea; 1999, Erika; 2002, Prestige); the sinking of the Prestige oil tanker in 2002 off the coast of Galicia (Spain) caused one of the worst oil spills off the European coastline and made this region the most severely affected by this kind of accident in the world (Lavín *et al*., 2004).

Conversely, some actions to protect the area and to ensure the conservation of its biodiversity are being carried out, and one specific offshore area within the area being described has been protected in accordance with international and Spanish regulations and conventions: The Galicia Bank is a deep underwater mountain located to the northwest of the Iberian Peninsula, 180 km from the Galician coast. Its summit is located at a depth of between 650 and 1,500 m. Its steep slopes descend from the summit to the abyssal plains located 4,000 metres below sea level.

This submarine mountain belongs to the submerged western extension of the Pyrenees and the Cantabrian mountains. Materials originating from the mainland are not significant, being composed of abundant sediments from shells of tiny marine organisms, which are deposited in the open sea. Located in the middle of the Atlantic, the bank is influenced by various regions and water masses, which create a great disparity of environments. Moreover, local currents that typically originate on undersea mountains – rising water masses, twists and eddies – favour the retention of nutrients and larvae on the Galicia Bank, explaining the existence of a highly biodiverse "submerged island" in the middle of the Atlantic.

The presence of vulnerable and threatened habitats and species, covered by various protection agreements and international standards, has shown the ecological and biological significance of the Galicia Bank. In addition to the presence of the loggerhead sea turtle (*Caretta caretta*), bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*) and numerous species of birds, including the band-rumped storm-petrel (*Hydrobates castro*), the area is home to extremely rare species and harbours the designated habitat "Reefs" (Habitats Directive: 1170), making it a priority for conservation.

A management plan for the area is being developed in the framework of the INTEMARES project. Apart from conservation projects, every autumn the Instituto Español de Oceanografía (IEO) carries out a bottom-trawling survey on the Northern Spanish Shelf named DEMERSALES. This survey aims to provide data for the assessment of commercial fish species and benthic ecosystems on the Galician and Cantabrian shelf (ICES, 2010). This survey is part of an international effort to monitor marine ecosystems and is coordinated by the International Bottom Trawling Surveys working group of the International Council for the Exploration of the Sea (ICES).

Assessment of area no. 4, West Iberian Canyons and Banks, against CBD EBSA Criteria

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">CBD EBSA Criteria
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</td><td rowspan="2">Description
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</td><td colspan="4">Ranking of criterion relevance
(please mark one column with an X)</td></tr>
<tr><td>No information</td><td>Low</td><td>Medium</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td>Uniqueness or rarity</td><td>Area contains either (i) unique ("the only one of its kind"), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
• The submarine canyons known as Mugia, Aveiro, Porto, Cascais, Lisboa, Nazaré, Setúbal, Faro, Lagos, Portimão, Sagres and São Vicente are prominent topographic features connecting shallow coastal waters to the deep continental margin and contribute as preferential pathways to the channeling (efficient drainage) of water masses, sediments and organic matter from the shore to deep basins (Nittrouer et al., 1994; Xu et al., 2002; Canals et al., 2006; Shepard, 1981; Wynn et al., 2002; Normark & Carlson, 2003; Weaver et al., 2004; Canals et al., 2006).
• The Nazaré Canyon is one of the largest and deepest submarine valleys in the world (Duarte et al., 2000; Duarte, 2002; Duarte & Taborda, 2003; de Stigter et al., 2007).
• The fauna and flora of the Berlenga archipelago present unique characteristics even though located near the mainland. The first colonizers arrived about 15,000 years ago, when the valleys (nowadays submarine valleys) were solid ground. They evolved very differently to their "continental siblings" due to other types of pressures, giving rise to different life forms. The Berlengas host the only population of band-rumped storm petrel (Hydrobates castro) and one of the very few of Cory's shearwater (Calonectris borealis) of continental Europe, the residual population of common guillemot (Uria aalge), the largest national population of shags (Phalacrocorax aristotelis), the only couples of lesser black-backed gulls (Larus fuscus) that reproduce in Portugal, and the largest colony in the country of yellow-legged gull (Larus michahellis), with more than 25,000 birds (Azevedo & Nunes, 2010; BirdLife et al. 2019).
• The Galicia Bank is located 180 km from the Galician coast and is influenced by various regions and water masses, which create a great disparity of environments. More than 20 new species have been identified on this seamount (De la Torriente et al., 2014; Gofas et al., 2014).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Special importance for life-history stages</td><td>Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
</table>

of species					

Explanation for ranking

- Both fin and sperm whales (*Balaenoptera physalus* and *Physeter macrocephalus*, respectively) are migratory species and seasonally move into and through the area to other known key lifecycle areas (foraging, resting, breeding), such as the inner Bay of Biscay and Biscay Seamounts (Cooke, 2018).
- Spawning ground of demersal species such as the hake (*Merluccius merluccius*) (Sánchez and Gil, 2000).
- Female *Nephrops norvegicus* spawn from April to August and brood eggs for seven months. The larvae develop in the plankton for one month before settling to the seabed (Lavín *et al*., 2004).
- The Berlengas archipelago is the most important breeding area for seabird species in mainland Portugal, supporting the only known colonies of Procellariiformes, and the largest colony of yellow-legged gull (*Larus michahellis)* in the country. Berlenga also features the only breeding populations of pelagic seabirds in continental Portugal: the Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris borealis*), the band-rumped storm-petrel (*Hydrobates castro*), the European shag (*Phalacrorax aristotelis*), lesser black-backed gull (*Larus fuscus)*, and until recently, the critically endangered common murre (*Uria aalge)*. The most abundant bird is the yellow-legged gull (*Larus michahellis*), which possibly exerts a negative effect on the other seabird populations, as stated by Lecoq *et al*., (2011) when they recorded predation of Cory's shearwater eggs at Farilhões Islets. The area is also important for the critically endangered and OSPAR-listed Balearic shearwater (*Puffinus mauretanicus),* with estimates of up to 4,500 individuals using the site during their migration and winter period (BirdLife *et al*. 2019). The high variety of habitats make these islands a favourable place for reproduction of skates; for example, juvenile undulate ray (*Raja undulata*) and egg capsules of smalleyed ray (*Raja microocellata*) are found in the area (Serra-Pereira *et al.*, 2014).

Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				X

Explanation for ranking

- The submarine canyons and seamounts are hotspots of benthic production (Vetter, 1994) and key habitats of exploited and non-exploited species (Ferrier-Pages *et al.*, 2007). They host cold-water coral and sponge reef habitats that also qualify as Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems in relation to high seas fisheries, according to criteria developed by FAO (FAO, 2007; Rogers *et al.*, 2008).
- In the underwater environment, the Berlengas have the most skate species in mainland Portugal, including coastal and offshore species, such as the IUCN near threatened (NT) longnosed skate (*Dipturus oxyrinchus)*.
- Almost 11 per cent of the 3174 species identified in the area are legally protected or recognized as threatened by CITES, IUCN Red List, European Union Habitats and Birds Directives, Bern Convention or OSPAR Convention. In this area OSPAR identified as endangered or declining the deep-water sharks (see "feature description of the area").
- There are differences in the proportion of protected species among the different groups of species. All the bird species recorded in this area are protected by the EU Birds Directive, and 86.67 per cent belong to annex I and II. Of the Elasmobranchi, 23.39 per cent are listed on the IUCN Red List, with 36.17 per cent near threatened, 40.43 per cent vulnerable, 17.02 per cent endangered, and 6.38 per cent critically endangered; 2.87 per cent of fish are classified by the IUCN Red List, with 26.67 per cent near threatened, 53.33 per cent vulnerable, 13.3 per cent endangered, and 6.67 per cent critically endangered.
- The Berlengas archipelago area has several species and some habitats of high conservation value in a

national and European context, namely the reefs and submerged or semi-submerged marine caves classified by the Habitats Directive (Queiroga *et al*., 2008). It includes the habitat "Reefs (1170)" of the Habitats Directive, consisting of rocky substrates and /or other substrates of biological origin (e.g., Sabelaria reefs).

- The Berlengas encompass a habitat, protected under the EU Habitats Directive, of significant conservation value: "Submerged or semi-submerged sea caves", a type referred to as "8330".

Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				X

Explanation for ranking

- This area encompasses different types of habitats classified by the OSPAR Convention as threatened and/or declining, including coral gardens, deep-sea sponge aggregations, maërl beds and semaounts (Aguilar *et al*., 2009; De la Torriente *et al*., 2014; Serrano *et al*., 2012; 2017). The area also has a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile and with slow recovery, such as coral reefs, gorgonian forest and sponge grounds. Moreover, these habitats provide valuable direct and indirect goods and services, such as food provision and climate regulation (Van den Hove & Moreau, 2007).
- The archipelago of Berlengas, comprising a small island and some islets, is a protected area with controlled access, intended to minimize anthropogenic impacts. The archipelago is part of the Nature Reserve of Berlenga, protected by Portuguese law since 1981. In 1999, under the EU Birds Diretive, the Berlengas Islands were designated as a Special Protection Area (SPA), which was integrated in the Natura 2000 network. This SPA was then enlarged in 2012. A wider area was identified by BirdLife International as an Important Bird Area (IBA) for seabirds (Ramirez *et al*., 2008). The archipelago was also declared a Biosphere Reserve by UNESCO (unesco.org, 2011) and a Site of Community Importance (under the EU Habitats Directive).
- This area contains 136 species of cold-water corals, with 41 belonging to CITES annex I and II (e.g., *Antipathella subpinnata*, *Flabellum alabastrum* and *Stichopathes gracilis*) and 25 belonging to a ist of Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems (VMEs) (e.g., *Caryophyllia ambrosia*, *Lophelia pertusa* and *Madrepora oculata*). These corals are particularly fragile, and their recovery is quite slow (Rogers *et al.*, 2007).
- There are 47 species (from a total of 77) of Elasmobranchii listed on the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (e.g., *Chimaera monstrosa* (chimera), *Dipturus batis* (shark) and *Raja undulate* (ray)). All the cetacean species in the West Iberian Canyons and Banks area belong to CITES annex I and II (e.g., *Balaenoptera musculus*, *Physeter macrocephalus* and *Tursiops truncatus*). The same is true of the five turtle species recorded in the area, which are all protected by CITES (e.g., *Caretta caretta*, *Chelonia mydas* and *Eretmochelys imbricate*). The Balearic shearwater (*Puffinus mauretanicus)* is classified as critically endangered and was listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species (OSPAR 2008).
- There are prominent megafaunal taxa, including sponges (e.g., *Geodia cydonium*), deep-sea bamboo coral (e.g., *Acanella arbuscula*), sea pen (e.g., *Anthoptilum grandiflorum*), solitary corals (e.g., *Caryophyllia ambrosia*), gorgonian species (e.g., *Eunicella verrucosa*), cockscomb cup coral (e.g., *Desmophyllum dianthus*), soft corals (e.g., *Heteropolypus insolitus*), sea fan (e.g., *Paragorgia arborea*), antipatharian and madreporarian corals (e.g., *Leiopathes glabberima* and *Madrepora oculata*), sea cucumber (e.g., *Abyssocucumis abyssorum*), dwarf brittle star (e.g., *Amphipholis squamata*), sand sea star (e.g., *Astropecten irregularis*), sea urchins (*Centrostephanus longispinus*), pea urchin (e.g., *Echinocyamus macrostomus*), sea star (e.g., *Hymenaster anomalus*), seven-armed sea star (e.g., *Luidia ciliaris*), ophiuroidea brittle stars (e.g., *Ophiura ljungmani*) that are vulnerable to anthropogenic activities.
- The recovery from human impacts of vulnerable species and the assemblages that they form is predicted to be very slow in the deep sea (e.g., Roark, *et al.*, 2006; Probert *et al.*, 2007), and the

recruitment can be intermittent as a consequence of the also intermittent dispersal between seamount populations (Rogers *et al.*, 2007; Shank, 2010). Many commercial species are recognized in the area, particularly fishes, e.g., splendid alfonsino (*Beryx splendens)* and crevalle jack (*Caranx rhonchus)*.

Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.				X

Explanation for ranking

- The Nazaré canyon is highly active, particularly during winter. In summer, upwelling events may prevent sediment export (Pusceddu *et al.*, 2010). Several studies point to chlorophyll-a and organic carbon concentrations that are significantly higher in the canyon than in the adjacent open slope sediments (Garcıa *et al.*, 2008; Ingels *et al.*, 2009; Pusceddu *et al.*, 2010).
- The Berlengas Natural Reserve, off Peniche, is located in the Eastern North Atlantic Upwelling Region, which is characterized by strong and frequent coastal upwelling events during spring and summer months, with high chlorophyll-a and organic carbon concentrations, creating biomass hotspots (Wooster *et al.*, 1976, Fraga *et al.*, 1988, Queiroga *et al.*, 2007, Alvarez *et al.*, 2008).
- Coastal winds off NW Spain describe a conspicuous seasonal cycle, favouring upwelling from March-April to September-October and downwelling for the rest of the year (Wooster *et al.*, 1976; Bakun and Nelson, 1991). Upwelling areas are particularly important for the exploitation of resources and for the air-sea exchange of anthropogenic CO_2. Knowledge of the magnitude of "New Production"(defined as the fraction of the gross primary production that is maintained by external nutrients) of this area is of great importance (Alvarez-Salgado *et al.*, 2002). . The coastal areas exhibit mesoscale spatial and temporal patterns of upwelling.
- Studies conducted in the structures of the area prove that it has high biological productivity (e.g., Mougenot *et al.*, 1984; Whitmarsh & Sawyer, 1996; Vetter *et al.*, 1998; Cascalho & Fradique, 2007; Guerreiro *et al.*, 2009; Cruz *et al.*, 2010; Keijzer *et al.*, 2010; Van Rooij *et al.*, 2010; De Leo, 2012; Tuya *et al.*, 2012; Muacho *et al.*, 2013; Muñoz *et al.*, 2013; Leduc *et al.*, 2014; Souto *et al.*, 2014; Hernández-Molina *et al.*, 2015).

Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X

Explanation for ranking

- The Berlengas archipelago has high biodiversity, with 76 fish species currently reported in the reserve area (Rodrigues *et al*. 2008). This, combined with the favourable combination of bathymetric features and ocean and wind circulation (namely the Azorean anti-cyclone and the Portuguese continental shelf upwelling), characterizes the area as rich feeding and breeding grounds for several species, especially seabirds (Paiva *et al*., 2010; Werner, 2010).
- The canyon circulation phenomena are responsible for enhancing both pelagic and benthic productivity inside canyon habitats as well as the biodiversity of many benthic faunal groups (Schlacher *et al.*, 2007; Vetter *et al.*, 2010). In addition to currents and topography, substrate heterogeneity is a key factor contributing to the highly diverse faunal assemblage present in submarine canyons (De Leo *et al.*, 2014). Submarine canyons host a wide variety of substrate types, including mud, sand, hardground, gravel, cobbles, pebbles, boulders, and rocky walls, occurring either separately or in various combinations (Baker *et al.*, 2011). Most species are restricted to either hard substratum (most scleractinians, antipatharians, gorgonians and sponges) or soft substratum (most pennatulids and some scleractinians, gorgonians and sponges) (Vetter & Dayton, 1998).
- Being already partially enclosed by the Berlengas Natural Reserve, it is believed that this area could be one of the main contributors to the known biodiversity and abundance of skates in the surroundings of Peniche (Serra-Pereira *et al.*, 2014).
- The benthic macrofauna of the canyons and banks of this area show important variations in taxonomic and functional composition, abundance, biodiversity and community structure. Abundance in the upper canyons has been shown to be significantly higher than in the adjacent slopes, and in all canyons bathymetric trends were identical to peak abundances at intermediate depths (Cunha *et al.*, 2011).

- The area integrates different types of species belonging to phylum Anellida (e.g., Erpobdellidae - *Erpobdella octoculata*; Hirudinea - *Glossiphonia complanata*; Oligochaeta - *Enchytraeus capitatus*; Polychaeta - *Eulalia viridis*); phylum Acanthocephala (e.g., *Acanthocephalus clavula*); phylum Echinordermata, including ophiuroidea (e.g., *Ophiothrix fragilis*), starfish (*e.g., Echinaster sepositus*), sea urchins (e.g., *Paracentrotus lividus*), crinoide (*e.g., Anachalypsicrinus nefertiti*) and sea cucumbers (e.g., *Holothuria forskali*); phylum Mollusca, including classes Gastropoda (e.g., *Bittium reticulatum*), Bivalvia (e.g., *Bathyarca pectunculoides*), Cephalopoda (e.g., squid - *Cranchia scabra*; octopuses - *Callistoctopus macropus*), Scaphopoda (e.g., *Fissidentalium candidum*) and Polyplacophora (e.g., *Leptochiton cancellatus*), suborder Nudibranchia (e.g., *Tambja ceutae*), and order Opisthobranchia (e.g., *Aplysia fasciata*); phylum Nemertea: (e.g., *Tetrastemma vermiculus*); phylum Porifera (e.g., *Clathrina cerebrum*); subphylum Crustacea with representation of orders Decapoda (e.g., crab - *Acanthonyx brevifrons*, hermit crabs - *Dardanus calidus*, shrimp - *Gnathophyllum elegans*) Amphipoda (e.g., *Normanion quadrimanus*), Isopoda (e.g., *Anilocra physodes*), Tanaidacea (e.g., *Tanais dulongii*), Cumacea (e.g., *Makrokylindrus inermis*), and Stomatopoda (e.g., *Pseudosquillisma oculata*), subclass Copepoda (e.g., *Paracalanus parvus*), infraclass Cirripedia (e.g., *Lepas anatifera*), class Ostracoda (e.g., *Henryhowella sarsii*), family Balanidae (e.g., *Balanus spongicola*), family Caprellidae (e.g., *Caprella andreae*) and family Mysidae (e.g., *Boreomysis arctica*); superclass Osteichthyes including all the reported fish (e.g., commercial - *Aphanopus carbo*; non-commercial - *Serrivomer beanie*; protected - *Hippoglossus hippoglossus*); class Anthozoa (e.g., *Flabellum alabastrum*); class Ascideacea (e.g., *Botryllus schlosseri*); class Aves (e.g., seabirds - *Calonectris* (*diomedea*) *borealis*); class Brachiopoda (e.g., *Megathiris detruncate*); class Bryozoa (e.g., *Membranipora membranacea*); class Elasmobranchii (e.g., shark - *Dipturus batis*; ray - *Raja microocellata*); class Hydrozoa (e.g., *Dynamena disticha*); class Pycnogonida (e.g., *Ammothella longipes*); class Reptilia (e.g., sea turtle - *Caretta caretta*); class Scyphozoa (e.g., *Catostylus tagi*); infraorder Cetacea (e.g., *Balaenoptera musculus*); family Chimaeridae (e.g., *Chimaera monstrosa*).

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.		X		

Explanation for ranking

- Seafloor resources of the mainland canyons, the steep slopes and rocky topography have seen limited exploitation by human activities (Würtz, 2012). Consequently, many canyon areas experience lower levels of anthropogenic pressure than adjacent areas on the shelf and slope.
- Nevertheless, submarine canyons are increasingly subjected to different stressors, not only in relation to fishing (Company *et al.*, 2008; Martín *et al.*, 2008; Orejas *et al.*, 2009; Puig *et al.*, 2012). The hydrodynamic processes of canyons enhance the transport of litter (Mordecai *et al.*, 2011; Ramirez-Llodra *et al.*, 2013; Tubau *et al.*, 2015) and chemical pollutants from the shelf to deep-sea environments (Palanques *et al.*, 2008; Koenig *et al.*, 2013; Pham *et al.*, 2014).
- The Lisbon, Setúbal and Cascais canyons are located adjacent to the Lisbon and Setúbal regions of Portugal, where Lisbon, the capital city, and Setúbal and their suburbs are located. The Lisbon and Setúbal regions are relatively heavily populated and industrialized and a potential source of more litter than less populated regions. As the abundance of litter in canyons off Lisbon was associated with both distance from the coast and depth, we infer that most litter is from terrestrial sources. Studies performed in the Tagus estuary and prodelta indicated the occurrence of anthropogenic metal enrichment (e.g., Paiva *et al.*, 1997; Jouanneau *et al.*, 1998, Mil-Homens *et al.*, 2009). Richter *et al.* (2009) also demonstrated a contribution of anthropogenic metals in surface sediments from the Lisboa-Setúbal Canyon System.
- The Portimão Canyon has a strong influence on the regional sediment cover distribution (Moita, 1986; Hernández-Molina *et al.*, 2006). It becomes a distinct feature at only 100 m depth, sinking for about 8 km (first from NNE–SSW then turning in a NNW–SSE direction) until it joins the Lagos Canyon at ca. 4000 m depth (Mouguenot, 1989). The head of this canyon is, therefore, in the route of the crustacean trawlers operating here with intense activity (Borges *et al.*, 2001); being aware of this

feature, fishers often choose to "fly" their nets over the canyon rather than stopping the haul (Morais *et al.*, 2007).

- In Nazaré Canyon, at 460 km from the coast, the abundance of litter remains at a relatively low constant level. This canyon is less influenced by nearby population centres than the canyons further south. Over all, the distribution of litter in canyons suggests that litter from terrestrial sources (population sources) is not transported in large quantities more than a few tens of kilometres from the source, although the observed litter distribution may primarily be a function of local oceanographic conditions (De Stigter *et al.*, 2011).
- The composition and abundance of litter varies among canyons. The litter in Lisbon, Setúbal and Cascais canyons is dominated by plastics has been found to comprise up to 70 per cent plastic, similar to the European coast (Galgani *et al.*, 2000). In contrast, most of the litter in Nazaré canyon is fishing gear (37 per cent), followed by plastic (25 per cent) and metal (17 per cent). Although it is difficult to ascertain the exact source of litter, the results suggest that the Nazaré canyon is mostly affected by marine-sourced litter (June, 1990; Keller *et al.*, 2010; Watters *et al.*, 2010).
- Galician waters have been suffering for many years from overfishing, illegal fisheries and the consequences of the Prestige oil spill in 2002.
- Fishing activities: The region of Galicia (NW Spain) has one of the highest levels of dependence on fishing activities in the EU (EC, 2004). The main fishing gears used in the area are bottom trawling, fishing lines and gill nets. Trawlers operate on the muddy bottoms of the shelf and produce serious negative impacts over certain habitat types. Long-liners also operate mainly at the bottom but on the shelf-break, whereas gill nets are used on rocky grounds near the coast and shelf-break. Additionally, fishing activities have an impact on a great diversity of species, such as sea turtles, cetaceans and seabirds (longline bycatch).
- Galician fisheries have had a very negative impact on the bottom communities and have induced changes in their structure. This impact has been mainly direct (fishing mortality on target species and bycatch) and indirect by means of modifications to the habitat through erosion of the sediment and damage to the benthos by different elements of the gears.
- there is no information on historic or current fishing effort in seamount areas, although there are reports of illegal/unreported fishing by vessels using unmarked monofilament gill nets and small drift nets, which are abandoned when they are detected (Morato *et al.*, 2013). Seamount fisheries have typically proven difficult to research and manage sustainably. Many deep-sea commercial species have characteristics that generally make them more vulnerable to fishing pressure than shallower shelf species. They can form large and stable aggregations over seamounts for spawning or feeding, which enables very large catches and rapid depletion of stock size (Clark *et al.*, 2010a), b)).

References

Abelló, P., Arcos, J. & Sola, L. (2003). Geographical patterns of seabird attendance to a research trawler along the Iberian Mediterranean coast. *Scientia Marina* 67: 69–75.

Abrantes, I., & Rocha, F. (2007). Sedimentary dynamics of the Aveiro shelf (Portugal). *Journal of Coastal Research* 50: 1005-1009.

Abrantes, I., Dias, J. & Rocha, F. (2004). Spatial and Temporal Variability of Suspended Sediments Concentration in Ria de Aveiro Lagoon and Fluxes between the Lagoon and the Ocean. *Journal of Coastal Research*, SI 39 (Proc. 8th Intern. Coastal Symp.), 718 - 723. Itajai, SC, Brazil, ISSN 0749-0208.

Aguilar, J.S. (1999). *Species Action Plan for the Balearic Shearwater Puffinus mauretanicus in Europe.* BirdLife International on behalf of the European Commission.

Aguilar, R., De la Torriente, A., García, A., 2009. Propuesta de Áreas Marinas de Importancia Ecológica; Zona galaico- cantábrica. OCEANA

Aguilar, R., García S., De la Torriente A., Peñalver, J., 2009. Cetáceos del área galaico-cantábrica. Zonas de importancia para su conservación. Oceana - Obra Social Caja Madrid, 82 pág.

Allen, S. & Durrieu de Madron, X. (2009). A review of the role of submarine canyons in deep-ocean exchange with the shelf. *Ocean Science* 5: 607-20.

Alvarez, I., Gomez-Gesteira, M., deCastro, M. & Dias, J. (2008). Spatiotemporal evolution of upwelling regime along the western coast of the Iberian Peninsula. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans* 113:C07020.

Álvarez-Salgado XA, Beloso S, Joint I, Nogueira E and others (2002) New production of the NW Iberian shelf during the upwelling season over the period 1982-1999. Deep-Sea Res I 49:1725 – 739.

Álvarez-Salgado, X., Figueiras, F., Pérez, F., Groom, S., Nogueira, E., Borges, A., Chou, L., Castro, C., Moncoiffé, G., Ríos, A., Miller, A., Frankignoulle, M., Savidge, G. & Wollast, R. (2003) The Portugal coastal counter current off NW Spain: new insights on its biogeochemical variability. *Progress in Oceanography* 56: 281-321.

Álvarez-Salgado, X.A., beloso, S., Joint, I., Nogueira, E., Chou, L., Pérez, F.F., Groom, S., Cabanas, J.M., Rees, A.P., Elskens, M., 2002. New production of the NW Iberian shelf during the upwelling season over the period 1982- 1999.

Alves, T., Gawthorpe, R., Hunt, D. & Monteiro, J. (2003). Cenozoic Tectono-Sedimentary Evolution of the Western Iberian Margin. *Marine Geology* 195(1–4): 75–108.

Alves, T., Moita, C., Sandnes, F., Cunha, T., Monteiro, J. & Pinheiro, L. (2006). Mesozoic-Cenozoic evolution of North Atlantic continental-slope basins: The Peniche basin, western Iberian margin. *AAPG Bulletin* 90(1): 31–60.

Amaro, T., Huvenne, V., Allcock, A., Aslam, T., Davies, J., Danovaro, R., De Stigter, H., Duineveld, G., Gambi, C., Gooday, A., Gunton, L., Hall, R., Howell, K., Ingels, J., Kiriakoulakis, K., Kershaw, C., Lavaleye, M., Robert, K., Stewart, H., Van Rooij, D., White, M. & Wilson, A. (2016). The Whittard Canyon– A case study of submarine canyon processes. *Progress in Oceanography* 146: 38–57.

Amaro, T., Witte, H., Herndl, G. J., Cunha, M. R., & Billett, D. S. M. (2009). Deep-sea bacterial communities in sediments and guts of deposit-feeding holothurians in Portuguese canyons (NE Atlantic). *Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 56(10): 1834–1843.

Ambar, I., Armi, L., Bower, A., & Ferreira, T. (1999). Some aspects of time variability of the Mediterranean Water off south Portugal. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 46(7): 1109-1136.

Ambar, I., Serra, N., Neves, F. & Ferreira, T. (2008). Observations of the Mediterranean Undercurrent and eddies in the Gulf of Cadiz during 2001. *Journal of Marine Systems* 71(1–2): 195–220.

Arcos, J.M. and Oro, D. (2004) Pardela Balear *Puffinus mauretanicus*. Pp. 46–50 *in:* Madroño, A., González, C., and Atienza, J.C. (eds.) *Libro Rojo de las Aves de España*. Madrid, Spain: Dirección General para la Biodiversidad – SEO/BirdLife.

Arzola, R., Wynn, R., Lastras, G., Masson, D. & Weaver, P. (2008). Sedimentary features and processes in the Nazaré and Setúbal submarine canyons, west Iberian margin. *Marine Geology* 250: 64–88.

Azevêdo, T. & Nunes, E. (2010). The Evolution of the Coastline at Peniche and the Berlengas Islands (Portugal) - State of the Art. *The Egyptian Journal of Environmental Change* 2(1): 13–23.

Baker, E. (1976). Distribution, composition, and transport of suspended particulate matter in the vicinity of Willapa submarine canyon, Washington. *Geological Society of America Bulletin* 87(4): 625-632.

Baker, K., Wareham, V., Snelgrove, P., Haedrich, R., Fifield, D., Edinger, E. & Gilkinson, K. (2011). Distributional patterns of deep-sea coral assemblages in three submarine canyons off Newfoundland, Canada. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 445: 235–249.

Bakun, A., Nelson, C.S., 1991. The seasonal cycle of wind-stress curl in subtropical eastern boundary current regions. Journal of Physical Oceanography, 21, 1815- 1834.

Balseiro, C.F., Carracedo, P., Gómez, B., Leita˜oP.C., Montero, P., Naranjo, L., Penabad, E., Pérez-Mun˜uzuri, V., 2003. Tracking the Prestige oil spill: An operational experience in simulation at MeteoGalicia. Weather Vol. 58.

Bañón R., J.C. Arronte, A. Serrano & F. Sánchez, 2011. First records of Purplemouthed conger Pseudophichthys splendens (Anguilliformes: Congridae) from the Galicia Bank (NW Spain). A northward range extension of their distribution in the eastern Atlantic. Cybium, 35(3): 262-264.

Barberá C., Bordehore C., Borg J.A., Glémarec M,, Grall J,, Hall-Spencer J.M., De la Huz C.H., Lanfranco E., Lastra M., Moore P.G., Mora J., Pita M.E., Ramos-Esplá A.A., Rizzo M., Sánchez-Mata A., Seva A., Schembri P.J. & C. Valle (2003). Conservation and management of northeast

Atlantic and Mediterranean maërl beds. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 13: 65-76.

Berner, R. (1982). Burial of organic carbon and pyrite Sulphur in the modern ocean; its geological and environmental significance. *American Journal of Science* 282: 451–473.

Bianchelli, S., Gambi, C., Zeppilli, D., Danovaro, R., 2010. Metazoan meiofauna in deep-sea canyons and adjacent open slopes: A large-scale comparison with focus on the rare taxa. *Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 57: 420-433.

BirdLife International (2019) Important Bird Areas factsheet: Berlengas. Downloaded from http://www.birdlife.org on 25/09/2019

Boavida, J., Assis, J., Silva, I. & Serrão, E. (2016). Overlooked habitat of a vulnerable gorgonian revealed in the Mediterranean and Eastern Atlantic by ecological niche modelling. *Scientific reports* 6: 36460.

Boehlert, G. & Mundy, B. (1993). Ichthyoplankton assemblages at seamounts and oceanic islands. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 53(2): 336-361.

Boehlert, G. & Sasaki, T. (1988) Pelagic biogeography of the armourhead, Pseudopentaceros wheeleri, and recruitment to isolated seamounts in the North Pacific Ocean. *Fishery Bulletin US* 86: 453-465.

Borges T., Costa M., Erzini K., Gonçalves I., Malaquias M., Olim S., Pais C., Ramos J, Santos J. & Sendão J. (2001) *Análise e avaliação do efeito do arrasto nas espécies demersais da costa do Algarve: quantificação e estudos bioecológicos* (REG 21). Relatório final: INTERREGII. Project No. 21/REG II/6/96. Fundação para a Ciência e Tecnologia, Portugal 325 pp.

Bosley, K., Lavelle, J., Brodeur, R., Wakefield, W., Emmett, R., Baker, E. & Rehmke, K. (2004). Biological and physical processes in and around Astoria submarine Canyon, Oregort, USA. *Journal of Marine Systems* 50: 21-37.

Bourillet, J., Zaragosi, S. & Mulder, T. (2006). The French Atlantic margin and deep-sea submarine systems. *Geo-Marine Letters* 26(6): 311-315.

Bower, A., Le Cann, B., Rossby, T., Zenk, W., Gould, J., Speer, K., Richardson, P., Prater, M. & Zhang, H. (2002). Directly measured mid-depth circulation in the northeastern North Atlantic Ocean. *Nature* 419: 603 – 607.

Brandt, A., Gooday, A., Brandão, S., Brix, S., Brökeland, W., Cedhagen, T., Choudhury, M., Cornelius, N., Danis, B., Mesel, I., Diaz, R., Gillan, D., Ebbe, B., Howe, J., Janussen, D., Kaiser, S., Linse, K., Malyutina, M., Pawlowski, J., Raupach M. & Vanreusel A. (2007) First insights into the biodiversity and biogeography of the Southern Ocean deep sea. *Nature* 447: 307–311.

Brodeur, R. (2001). Habitat-specific distribution of Pacific ocean perch (Sebastes alutus) in Pribilof Canyon, Bering Sea. *Continental Shelf Research* 21: 207–224.

Bruno, M., Vazquez, A., Gomez-Enri, J., Vargas, J., Garcia Lafuente, J., Ruiz-Canavate, A., Mariscal, L. & Vidal, J. (2006). Observations of internal waves and associated mixing phenomena in the Portimão Canyon area. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 53(11-13): 1219–1240.

Buhl-Mortensen, L., Vanreusel, A., Gooday, A., Levin, L., Priede, I., Buhl-Mortensen, P., Gheerardyn, H., King, N. & Raes, M. (2010). Biological structures as a source of habitat heterogeneity and biodiversity on the deep ocean margins. *Marine Ecology* 31(1): 21-50.

Campos, M. J., and N. Gonzales, Phytoplankton in relation with nutrient concentrations in the ria de Arosa, in Proceedings of the 10th European Symposium on Marine Biology, Ostende, Belgium, Sept. 17-23, vol. 2, pp. 111-125, 1975.

Cañadas, A., Sagarminaga, R. & Garcıa-Tiscar, S. (2002) Cetacean distribution related with depth and slope in the Mediterranean waters off southern Spain. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 49(11): 2053-2073.

Canals, M., Danovaro, R., Heussner, S., Lykousis, V., Puig, P., Trincardi, F., Calafat, A., Durrieu de Madron, X., Palanques, A. & Sanchez-Vidal, A. (2009). Cascades in Mediterranean Submarine Grand Canyons. *Oceanography*, 22. 26-43.

Canals, M., Lastras, G., Urgeles, R., Casamor, J., Mienert, J., Cattaneo, A., Batist, M., Haflidason, H., Imbo, Y., Laberg, J., Locat, J., Long, D., Longva, O., Masson, D., Sultan, N., Trincardi, F. & Bryn,

P. (2004). Slope failure dynamics and impacts from sea floor and shallow sub-seafloor geophysical data: case studies from the COSTA project. *Marine Geology* 213(1–4): 9–72.

Canals, M., Puig, P., de Madron, X., Heussner, S., Palanques, A. & Fabres, J. (2006). Flushing submarine canyons. *Nature* 444: 354–357.

Cardador, F., Sanchéz, F., Pereiro, F.J., Borges, M.F., Caramelo, A.M., Azevedo, M., Silva, A., Pérez, N., Martins, M.M., Olaso, I., Pestana, G., Trujillo, V., Fernandez, A., 1997. Groundfish surveys in the Atlantic Iberian waters (Ices Divisions VIIIc and IXa): history and perspectives. ICES, Council Meeting 1997/Y:08, 30 pp.;

Cartes, J., Huguet, C., Parra, S. & Sanchez, F. (2007 a)) Trophic relationships in deep-water decapods of Le Danois bank (Cantabrian Sea, NE Atlantic): Trends related with depth and seasonal changes in food quality and availability. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 54: 1091–1110.

Cartes, J., Serrano, A., Velasco, F., Parra, S., & Sanchez, F. (2007 b)) Community structure and dynamics of deep-water decapod assemblages from Le Danois Bank (Cantabrian Sea, NE Atlantic): Influence of environmental variables and food availability. *Progress in Oceanography* 75: 797–816.

Cascalho, J., & Fradique, C. (2007). The Sources and Hydraulic Sorting of Heavy Minerals on the Northern Portuguese Continental Margin. *Developments in Sedimentology*, 58(7): 75–110.

CBD - Convention on Biological Diversity (2008). *Report of the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity on the Work of its Ninth Meeting in Bonn (Germany)*, 19–30 May 2008. UNEP/CBD/COP/9/29, 20 June 2008. Available online at: http://www.cbd.int/doc/meetings/cop/cop-09/official/cop-09-29-en.doc (14.09.2008)

Cherubin, L., Carton, X., Paillet, J., Morel, Y. & Serpette, A. (2000). Instability of the Mediterranean Water undercurrents southwest of Portugal: effects of baroclinicity and of topography. *Oceanologica Acta* 23: 551–573.

Clark, M. (2001) Are deepwater fisheries sustainable? The example of orange roughy. *Fisheries Research* 51: 123–35.

Clark, M., Rowden, A., Schlacher, T., Williams, A., Consalvey, M., Stocks, K., Rogers, A., O'Hara, T., White, M., Shank, T. & Hall-Spencer, J. (2010 a)). The ecology of seamounts: structure, function, and human impacts. *Annual Review of Marine Science* 2: 253-278.

Clark, M., Williams, A., Schlacher, T., Rowden, A., Althaus, F., Bowden, D. & Kloser, R. (2010 b)) Seamount megabenthic assemblages fail to recover from trawling impacts. *Marine Ecology* 31(1): 183-199.

Clarke, K., Somerfield, P. & Chapman, M. (2006). On resemblance measures for ecological studies, including taxonomic dissimilarities and a zero-adjusted Bray-Curtis coefficient for denuded assemblages. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 330: 55–80.

CODA, 2009. Cetacean Offshore Distribution and Abundance in the European Atlantic (CODA), 43pp.

Coelho, H. & Santos, R. (2003) Enhanced primary production over seamounts: a numerical study. *Thalassas* 19: 144-145.

Company, J. B., Puig, P., Sarda, F., Palanques, A., Latasa, M. & Scharek, R. (2008). Climate influence on deep sea populations. *PLoSONE* 3(1), e1431.

Company, J. B., Ramirez-Llodra, E., Sardà, F., Puig, P., Canals, M., Calafat, A. (2012). "*Submarine canyons in the Catalan Sea (NW Mediterranean): megafaunal biodiversity patterns and anthropogenic threats Mediterranean Submarine Canyons: Ecology and Governance*," ed W. M. (Ed.). Gland (Switzerland) and Malaga (Spain): IUCN), 133–144.

Connell, J. (1978). Diversity in tropical rain forests and coral reefs. *Science* 199: 1302–1310.

Cooke, J.G. (2018) *Balaenoptera physalus*. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2018: e.T2478A50349982. http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T2478A50349982.en.

Coppier, G. & Mougenot, D. (1982). Stratigraphie sismique et evolution geologique des formations neogenes et quaternaires de la plate-forme continentale portugaise au Sud de Lisbonne. *Bulletin de la Société géologique de France* 24: 421-431.

Correia, A., Tepsich, M., Rosso P., Caldeira M., & Sousa-Pinto, I. (2015) Cetacean occurrence and spatial distribution: Habitat modelling for offshore waters in the Portuguese EEZ (NE Atlantic). *Journal of Marine Systems* 143: 73– 85.

Cruz, T., Castro, J. & Hawkins, S. (2010). Recruitment, growth and population size structure of Pollicipes pollicipes in SW Portugal. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 392(1–2): 200–209.

Cunha, M., Paterson, G., Amaro, T., Blackbird, S., de Stigter, H., Ferreira, C., Glover, A., Hilário, A., Kiriakoulakis, K., Neal, L., Ravara, A., Rodrigues, C., Tiago, A. & Billett, D. (2011). Biodiversity of macrofaunal assemblages from three Portuguese submarine canyons (NE Atlantic). *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 58(23–24): 2433–2447.

Curdia, J., Carvalho, S., Ravara, A., Gage, J., Rodrigues, A. & Quintino, V. (2004). Deep macro benthic communities from Nazare submarine canyon (NW Portugal). *Scientia Marina* 68, 171-180.

Davies, J., Howell, K., Stewart, H., Guinan, J. & Golding, N. (2014). Defining biological assemblages (biotopes) of conservation interest in the submarine canyons of the South West Approaches (offshore United Kingdom) for use in marine habitat mapping. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 104: 208–229.

Day, K. (2002). "*Deepwater Canyon slope stability*," in Offshore Site Investigation and Geotechnics' Diversity and Sustainability'; Proceedings of an International Conference (London: Society of Underwater Technology).

Dde Forges de, B., Koslow, J. & Poore, G. (2000) Diversity and endemism of the benthic seamount fauna in the south-west Pacific. *Nature* 405: 944–47.

Dde Stigter, H., Boera, W., Mendesb, P., Jesusc, C., Thomsenb, L., van den Bergha, G. & van Weeringa, T. (2007). Recent sediment transport and deposition in the Nazaré Canyon, Portuguese continental margin. *Marine Geology* 246(2-4): 144-164.

Dde Stigter, H., Jesus, C., Boer, W., Richter, T., Costa, A., & van Weering, T. (2011). Recent sediment transport and deposition in the Lisbon-Setúbal and Cascais submarine canyons, Portuguese continental margin. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*, 58(23–24): 2321–2344.

Dde Stigter, H., shipboard party (2004). *Report of cruise 64 PE 218 with R. V. "Pelagia"*, Valencia-Lisbon, 11–31 October, 2003. Sediment Dispersal in Submarine Canyons of the Portuguese Atlantic Margin, 43pp.

De la Torriente, A., Serrano, Alberto; Druet, María; Gómez- Ballesteros, María; Acosta, Juan; Parra, Santiago; *et al*, Banco de Galicia. Áreas de estudio del proyecto LIFE+ INDEMARES. Proyecto LIFE+ INDEMARES. Ed. Fundación Biodiversidad del Ministerio de Agricultura, Alimentación y Medio Ambiente. 2014.

De Leo, F., Drazen, J., Vetter, E., Rowden, A. & Smith, C. (2012). The effects of submarine canyons and the oxygen minimum zone on deep-sea fish assemblages off Hawai'i. *Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 64: 54–70.

De Leo, F., Smith, C., Rowden, A., Bowden, D. & Clark, M. (2010). Submarine canyons: hotspots of benthic biomass and productivity in the deep sea. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences* 277(1695): 2783–2792.

De Leo, F., Vetter, E., Smith, C., Rowden, A. & McGranaghan, M. (2014). Spatial scale-dependent habitat heterogeneity influences submarine canyon macrofaunal abundance and diversity off the Main and Northwest Hawaiian Islands. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*. 104: 267–290.

Díez, I., A. Secilla, A. Santolaria and J.M. Gorostiaga, 2000. The north coast of Spain. In Seas at the Millennium. An environmental evaluation. C. Sheppard (Ed.). Pergamon, Amsterdam, Volume I, 135–150.

Drago, T., Araujo, F., Valerio, P., Weber, O. & Jouanneau, J. (1999). Geomorphological control of fine sedimentation on the northern Portuguese shelf. *Boletin del Instituto Espanol de Oceanografia.* 15(14): 111-122.

Duarte, F. (2002) *Distribuição espacial dos sedimentos da Nazaré e plataforma adjacente*. Proceedings of the 3.ª Asamblea Hispano-Portuguesa de Geodesia y Geofísica, Espanha, 477 pp.

Duarte, J. & Taborda, R. (2003) *Multibeam analysis of Nazaré Canyon Head*. 4th Symposium on the Iberian Atlantic Margin, Vigo, pp. 45 – 46.

Duarte, J., Dias, J. & Taborda, R. (2000) *Cabeceira do canhão da Nazaré: erosão versus sedimentação*. In: Dias, J., Ferreira, O. (eds) 3º Simpósio sobra a Margem Ibérica Atlântica, Faro, pp. 227 – 228.

Duineveld, G., Lavaleye, M., Berghuis, E. & Wilde, P. (2001). Activity and composition of the benthic fauna in the Whittard Canyon and the adjacent continental slope (NE Atlantic). *Oceanologia Acta* 24: 69–83.

Durrieu de Madron, X., Abassi, A., Heussner, S., Aloisi, J., Radakovitch, O., Giresse, P., Buscáil, R. & Kerherve, P. (2000). Particulate matter and organic carbon budgets for the Gulf of Lions (NW Mediterranean). *Oceanologia Acta* 23: 717–730.

Epping, E., van der Zee, C., Soetaert, K. & Helder, W. (2002). On the oxidation and burial of organic carbon in sediments of the Iberian margin and Nazaré Canyon (NE Atlantic). *Progress in Oceanography* 52: 399–431.

Etnoyer, P. & Warrenchuk, J. (2007) A catshark nursery in a deep gorgonian field in the Mississipi Canyon, Gulf of Mexico. Bulletin of Marine Science 81: 553−559.

FAO (2007) State of the World's Forests 2007. Rome. www.fao.org/docrep/009/a0773e/a0773e00.htm.

Faria, J. (2014). *Using a seabird top predator to assess the adequacy of the Berlengas Marine Protected Area* (Master's thesis).

Fariña A.C., Freire J. & E. González-Gurriarán (1997). Demersal Fish Assemblages in the Galician Continental Shelf and Upper Slope (NW Spain): Spatial Structure and Long-term Changes. Est., Coast. Shelf Sci. 44, 435–454.

Farina, A. c., F. 1. Pereiro and A. Fernandez. 1983. Peces de los fondos de arrastre de la plataforma continental de Galicia. Actas II Jornadas Ictiologia Iberica, Barcelona, Mayo 1983.

Faris, J. & Hart, K. (1994). *Seas of Debris: A Summary of the Third International Conference on Marine Debris*. Alaska Fisheries Science Center, Seattle.

Farrugio, H. (2012). "*A refugium for the spawners of exploited Mediterranean marine species: the canyons of the continental slope of the Gulf of Lion*," in Mediterranean Submarine Canyons: Ecology and Governance, ed M. Würtz (Gland; Málaga: IUCN), 45.

Fernandez-Arcaya, U., Ramirez-Llodra, E., Aguzzi, J., Allcock, A., Davies, J., Dissanayake, A. & Martín, J. (2017). Ecological role of submarine canyons and need for canyon conservation: a review. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 4, 5.

Fernandez-Arcaya, U., Rotllant, G., Ramirez-Llodra, E., Recasens, L., Aguzzi, J., Flexas, M., Vidal, A., López-Fernández, P., García, J. & Company, J. (2013). Reproductive biology and recruitment of the deep-sea fish community from the NW Mediterranean continental margin. *Progress in Oceanography* 118: 222–234.

Fohrmann, H., Backhaus, J., Blaume, F. & Rumohr, J. (1998). Sediments in bottom-arrested gravity plumes: Numerical case studies. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 28: 2250-2274.

Font, J., Salat, J. & Tintoré, J. (1988). "*Permanent features of the circulation in the Catalan Sea*," in Océanographie Pélagique Méditerranéenne, eds H. J. Minas and P. Nival (Montrouge: Gauthier-Villars), 51–57.

Fraga, S., Anderson, D., Bravo, I., Reguera, B., Steidinger, K. & Yentsch, C. (1988). Influence of upwelling relaxation on dinoflagellates and shellfish toxicity in Ria de Vigo, Spain. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 27: 349-361.

Frouin R., Fiúza A.F.G., Ambar I. & T.J. Boyd (1990). Observations of a Poleward Surface Current off the coasts of Portugal and Spain during winter. J. Geophys. Res., 5: 679–691.

Fusco, G., V. Artale, Y. Cotroneo, and G. Sannino, 2008: Thermohaline variability of Mediterranean Water in the Gulf of Cadiz, 1948–1999. Deep-Sea Res. I, 55, 1624–1638, doi:10.1016/ j.dsr.2008.07.009

Gage, J. & Tyler, P. (1991) *Deep-sea biology: a natural history of organisms at the deep-sea floor*. Cambridge University Press.

Galgani, F., Leaute, J., Moguedet, P., Souplet, A., Verin, Y., Carpentier, A., Goraguer, H., Latrouite, D., Andral, B., Cadiou, Y., Mahe, J., Poulard, J., Nerisson, P. (2000). Litter on the sea floor along European coasts. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 40: 516–527.

Galgani, F., Souplet, A. & Cadiou, Y. (1996). Accumulation of debris on the deep sea floor off the French Mediterranean coast. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 142: 225–234.

Garcia, A. C. M. (2008). Fine Sediments resuspension processes and transport in Nazaré Submarine Canyon (Doctoral dissertation, Dissertation presented to the Instituto Superior Técnico of the Universidade Técnica de Lisboa, for the PhD degree in Environmental Engineering. 150 pp.

Garcia, K., Koho, H., de Stigter, H., Epping, E., Koning, L. & Thomsen, L. (2007). Distribution of meiobenthos in the Nazare canyon and adjacent slope (western Iberian Margin) in relation to sedimentary composition. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 340: 207–220.

Garcia, M., Ercilla, G., Alonso, B., Estrada, F., Jane, G., Mena, A. & Juan, C. (2015). Deep-water turbidite systems: a review of their elements, sedimentary processes and depositional models. Their characteristics on the Iberian margins-Sistemas turbidíticos de aguas profundas: revisión de sus elementos, procesos sedimentarios y modelos deposicionales. Sus características en los márgenes Ibéricos. *Boletín Geológico y Minero* 126(2-3): 189-218.

Garcia, R. & Thomsen, L. (2008). Bioavailable organic matter in surface sediments of the Nazare canyon and adjacent slope (Western Iberian Margin). Journal of Marine Systems 74, 44–59.

García-Lafuente, J., Delgado, J., Criado-Aldeanueva, F., Bruno, M., del Río, J. & Vargas, J. (2006). Water mass circulation on the continental shelf of the Gulf of Cadiz. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 53(11-13): 1182-1197.

Gardner, W. (1989). Periodic resuspension in Baltimore Canyon by focusing of internal waves. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 94: 18185–18194.

Garrett, C. (2003). Internal tides and ocean mixing. *Science* 301: 1858-1859.

Genin, A. & Dower, J. (2007) *Seamount plankton dynamics*. In: Pitcher, T.J., T. Morato, P.J.B. Hart, M.R. Clark, N. Haggan and R.S. Santos (Eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom, pp 85-100.

Genin, A. (2004). Bio-physical coupling in the formation of zooplankton and fish aggregations over abrupt topographies. *Journal of Marine Systems* 50: 3–20.

Gili, J. M., Pagès, F., Bouillon, J., Palanques, A., Puig, P., Heussner, S. & Monaco, A. (2000). A multidisciplinary approach to the understanding of hydromedusan populations inhabiting Mediterranean submarine canyons. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 47(8): 1513-1533.

Gili, J., Bouillon, J., Pages, E., Palanques, A. & Puig, P. (1999). Submarine canyons as habitats of prolific plankton populations: three new deep-sea Hydroido-medusae in the western Mediterranean. *Journal of the Linnean Society* 225: 313–329.

Goetz, S., Read, F.L., Ferreira, M., Martínez-Portela, J., Santos, M.B., Vingada, J., Siebert, U., Marcalo, A., Santos, J., Araújo, H., Monteiro, S., Caldas, M., Riera, M., Pierce, G.J., Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems, 25: 138-154.

Goezt *et al*., S, Read, F.L., Ferreira, M., Martínez Portela, J., Santos, M.B., Vingada, J., Siebert, U., Marcalo, A., Santos, J., Araújo, H., Monteiro, S., Caldas, M., Riera, M., Pierce, G.J., 2015. Cetacean occurrence, habitat preferences and potential for cetacean–fishery interactions in Iberian Atlantic waters: results from cooperative research involving local stakeholders. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems, 25(1): 138-154

Gofas S., Kantor Y. & Luque Á. A. (2014). *A new Aforia (Gastropoda: Conoidea: Cochlespiridae) from Galicia Bank (NW Iberian Peninsula)*. Iberus. 32(1): 45-51

Gómez-Ballesteros, M., Druet, M., Muñoz, A., Arrese, B., Rivera, J., Sánchez, F., Cristobo, J., Parra, S., García- Alegre, A., González-Pola, C., Gallastegui, J. & Acosta, J. (2014). Geomorphology of the Avilés Canyon System, Cantabrian Sea (Bay of Biscay). *Deep-Sea Research II* 106: 99-117.

Gong, C., Wang Y., Zhu, W., Li, W. & Xu, Q. (2013). Upper Miocene to Quaternary unidirectionally migrating deepwater channels in the Pearl River Mouth Basin, northern South China Sea. *AAPG Bulletin* 97: 285-308.

González-Irusta, J.M., De la Torriente, A., Punzón, A., Blanco, M., Serrano, A., 2018. Determining and mapping species sensitivity to trawling impacts: the BEnthos Sensitivity Index to Trawling Operations (BESITO). ICES Journal of Marine Science, 75(5), 1710–1721. doi:10.1093/icesjms/fsy030

González-Pola, C., del Río, G., Ruiz-Villarreal, M., Sánchez, R. & Mohn, C. (2012) Circulation patterns at Le Danois Bank, an elongated shelf-adjacent seamount in the Bay of Biscay. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 60: 7-21.

Greene, C., Wiebe, P., Burczynski, J. & Youngbluth, M. (1988). Acoustical detection of high-density krill demersal layers in the submarine canyons off Georges Bank. *Science* 241: 359–361.

Grime, J. (1973). Competitive exclusion in herbaceous vegetation. *Nature* 242: 344–347.

Gruetzner, J., Uenzelmann-Neben, G. & Franke, D. (2016). Evolution of the northern Argentine margin during the Cenozoic controlled by bottom current dynamics and gravitational processes. *Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystems* 17(8): 3131-3149.

Gubbay, S. (2003) *Seamounts of the North-East Atlantic*. WWF Germany, Frankfurtam Main, Germany.

Guerreiro, C., Oliveira, A. & Rodrigues, A. (2009) Shelfbreak canyons versus “Gouf” canyons: A comparative study based on the silt-clay mineralogy of bottom sediments from Oporto, Aveiro and Nazaré Submarine Canyons. *Journal of Coastal Research* 56: 722–726.

Guerreiro, C., Rodrigues, A., Duarte, J., Oliveira, A. & Taborda, R. (2007). Bottom sediment signature associated with the Oporto, Aveiro and Nazaré Submarine Canyons (NW off Portugal): *Thalassas* 23: 9–18.

Guerreiro, C., Sá, C., de Stigter, H., Oliveira, A., Cachão, M., Cros, L. & Rodrigues, A. (2014). Influence of the Nazaré Canyon, central Portuguese margin, on late winter coccolithophore assemblages. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 104: 335-358.

Hall, R. & Carter, G. (2011). Internal tides in Monterey submarine canyon. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 41: 186–204.

Hammond, P.S., C. Lacey, A. Gilles, S. Viquerat, P. Börjesson, H. Herr, K. Macleod, V. Ridoux, M.B.

Hargrave, B., Kostylev, V. & Hawkins, C. (2004). Benthic epifauna assemblages, biomass and respiration in The Gully region on the Scotian Shelf, NW Atlantic Ocean. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 270: 55–70.

Harris, P. & Whiteway, T. (2011). Global distribution of large submarine canyons: Geomorphic differences between active and passive continental margins. *Marine Geology* 285: 69–86.

Harris, P., Macmillan-Lawler, M., Rupp, J. & Baker, E. (2014). Geomorphology of the oceans. *Marine Geology* 352: 4–24.

Harrold, C., Light, K. & Lisin, S. (1998). Organic enrichment of continental shelf and deep-sea benthic communities by macroalgal drift imported from nearshore kelp forests. *Limnology and Oceanography* 43: 669–678.

Harvey, J., 1982. Theta-S relationships and water masses in the eastern North Atlantic. Deep Sea Res., 29 (8A), 1021–1033.

Haynes, R. & Barton, E. (1991) Lagrangian observations in the Iberian Coastal Transition Zone. *Journal of Geophysical Research-Oceans* 96: 14731-14741.

Haynes, R., Barton, E. & Pilling, I. (1993). Development, persistence and variability of upwelling filaments off the Atlantic coast of the Iberian peninsula. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 98: 22681- 22692.

Hernández-Molina, F., Llave, E., Stow, D., García, M., Somoza, L., Vázquez, J. & Medialdea, T. (2006). The contourite depositional system of the Gulf of Cadiz: a sedimentary model related to the bottom current activity of the Mediterranean outflow water and its interaction with the continental margin. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 53(11-13): 1420-1463.

Hernández-Molina, F., Wåhlin, A., Bruno, M., Ercilla, G., Llave, E., Serra, N. & Sánchez-González, J. (2015). Oceanographic processes and morphosedimentary products along the Iberian margins: A new multidisciplinary approach. *Marine Geology* 378: 127-156

Heussner, S., Calafat, A. & Palanques, A. (1996). *Quantitative and qualitative features of particle fluxes in the North-Balearic Basin*. In: Canals, M., Casamor, J.L., Cacho, I., Calafat, A.M., Monaco, A. (Eds.), EUROMARGE-NB Final Report. MAST II Programme, EC, vol. 2, 41–66 p.

Hickey, B. (1997). The response of a steep-sided, narrow canyon to time variable wind forcing. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 27: 697–726.

Hickey, B.M. 1995. *Coastal Submarine Canyons*. In: Proceedings Aha Huliko'a Hawaiian Winter Workshop 1995, Topographic Effects in the Ocean, pp. 95-110.

Hill, A., Souza, A., Jones, K., Simpson, J., Shapiro, G., McCandliss, R., Wilson, H. and Leftley, J. (1998). The Malin cascade in winter 1996. *Journal of Marine Research* 56: 87-106.

Hoff, G. (2010). Identification of skate nursery habitat in the eastern Bering Sea. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 403, 243–254.

Holland, K. & Grubbs, R. (2007) *Fish Visitors to Seamounts: Tunas and Billfish at Seamounts*. Chapter 10 Section A. in Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. and Santos, R.S. (eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Conservation and Management. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. pp. 189-201.

Huang, Z., Nichol, S., Harris, P. & Caley, M. (2014). Classification of submarine canyons of the Australian continental margin. *Marine Geology*. 357,

Hughes, D., Shimmield, T., Black, K. & Howe, J. (2015). Ecological impacts of large-scale disposal of mining waste in the deep sea. *Scientific Reports* 5:9985.

Huston, M., 1994. Biological Diversity— - The Coexistence of Species on Changing Landscapes. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Huthnance, J. (1995). Circulation, exchange and water masses at the ocean margin: the role of physical processes at the shelf edge. *Progress in Oceanography*. 35, 353–431.

Huvenne, V., Tyler, P., Masson, D., Fisher, E., Hauton, C., Hühnerbach, V. (2011). A picture on the wall: innovative mapping reveals cold-water coral refuge in submarine canyon. *PLoS ONE* 6:e28755.

ICES, 2016. Bay of Biscay and the Iberian Coast Ecoregion – Ecosystem overview. ICES Ecosystem Overviews. Published 04 March 2016 Version 2; 13 May 2016

ICES, 2019. Nephrops in Division 8c. WGBIE

Ingels, J., Kiriakoulakis, K., Wolff, G. & Vanreusel, A. (2009). Nematode diversity and its relation to the quantity and quality of sedimentary organic matter in the deep Nazaré Canyon, Western Iberian Margin. *Deep-Sea Research I* 56: 1521–1539.

IUCN, 2019. IUCN Red List of Threatened Species

Ivanov, M., Akhmetzhanov, A. & Akhmanov, G. (2000). Multidisciplinary Study of Geological Processes on the North East Atlantic and Western Mediterranean Margins. *Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission technical series* - UNESCO 56: 136.

Ivanov, V., Shapiro, G., Huthnance, J., Aleynik, D. & Golovin, P. (2004). Cascades of dense water around the world ocean. *Progress in Oceanography* 60: 47–98.

Jesus, C., Stigter, H., Oliveira, A. & Rocha, F. (2012). *Fine-Fraction mineralogy of Setubal canyon and adjacent continental margim and slope (SW Portugal).* 5th Symposium on the Iberian Atlantic Margin, 103–105.

Jouanneau, J. M., Garcia, C., Oliveira, A., Rodrigues, A., Dias, J. A., & Weber, O. (1998). Dispersal and deposition of suspended sediment on the shelf off the Tagus and Sado estuaries, SW Portugal. *Progress in Oceanography* 42(1-4): 233-257.

June, J. (1990). Type, source, and abundance of trawl-caught marine litter off Oregon, in the Eastern Bering Sea, and in Norton Sound in 1988.In: Shomura, R., Godfrey, M. (Eds.), Proceedings of the Second International Conference on Marine Debris, April 2–7, 1989. US Dept. Commerce, NOAA Technical Memo, NMFS-SWF-SC-154, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 279–301.

Kaschner, K. (2007) *Air-breathing visitors to seamounts*: Marine Mammals. A. in Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. and Santos, R.S. (eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Conservation and Management. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. pp. 230-238.

Katsanevakis, S. & Katsarou, A. (2004). Influences on the distribution of marine debris on the seafloor of shallow coastal areas in Greece (Eastern Mediterranean). *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution* 159(1): 325-337.

Keijzer, G. & Boer, P. (2010). *Influence of climate and oceanography on Cretaceous sedimentation in the North Atlantic*. Geowetenschappen, MSc. Retrieved from http://igitur-archive.library.uu.nl/student-theses/2010-0223-200211/UUindex.html

Keller, A., Fruh, E., Johnson, M., Simon, V. & Mc Gourty, C. (2010). Distribution and abundance of anthropogenic marine debris along the shelf and slope of the US West Coast. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 60: 692–700.

Kennett, J.P. 1982. *Marine Geology*. Prentice-Hall, Englewood.

Kenyon, N., Klaucke, I., Millington, J., Ivanov, M. (2002). Sandy submarine canyon mouth lobes on the western margin of Corsica and Sardinia, Mediterranean Sea. *Marine Geology* 184: 69–84.

Kenyon, N., Lvanov, M., Akhmetzhanov, A. & Akhmanov, G. (2001). *Interdisciplinary Approaches to Geoscience on the North East Atlantic Margin and Mid-Atlantic Ridge*. Unesco.

Keppel, G., Lowe, A. & Possingham, H. (2009). Changing perspectives on the biogeography of the tropical South Pacific: influences of dispersal, vicariance and extinction. *Journal of Biogeography* 36(6): 1035-1054.

King, M. (1987). Distribution and ecology of deep-water caridean shrimps (Crustacea: Natantia) near tropical Pacific Islands. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 41: 192–203.

Klinck, J. (1996). Circulation near submarine canyons: a modeling study. J. Geophys. Res.: Oceans 101, 1211–1223.

Koenig, S., Fernández, P., Company, J., Huertas, D. & Solé, M. (2013). Are deep-sea organisms dwelling within a submarine canyon more at risk from anthropogenic contamination than those from the adjacent open slope? A case study of Blanes canyon (NW Mediterranean). *Progress in Oceanography* 118: 249–259.

Koslow, J. (1997). Seamounts and the ecology of deep-sea fisheries. *Americam Scientist* 85: 168-176.

Koslow, J. A., Auster, P., Bergstad, O. A., Roberts, J. M., Rogers, A., Vecchione, M. & Bernal, P. (2016). Biological communities on seamounts and other submarine features potentially threatened by disturbance. *Chapter,* 51: 1-26.

Koslow, J., Gowlett-Holmes, K., Lowry, J., O'Hara, T., Poore, G. & Williams, A. (2001). Seamount benthic macrofauna off southern Tasmania: community structure and impacts of trawling. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 213: 111-125.

Kunze, E. & Llewellyn Smith, S. (2004). The role of small-scale topography in turbulent mixing of the global ocean. *Oceanography* 17(1): 55–64.

Kunze, K., Rosenfeld, L., Carter, G. & Gregg, M. (2002). Internal waves in Monterey submarine canyon. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 32: 1890-1913.

Lack, M., Short, K. & Willock, A (2003) *Managing risk and uncertainty in deep-sea fisheries: lessons from orange roughy*. Traffic Oceania and WWF Endangered Seas Programme.

Lam, F.P.A., T. Gerkema and L.R.M. Maas, 2003. Preliminary results from observations of internal tides and solitary waves in the Bay of Biscay. http://www.whoi.edu/ science/AOPE/people/tduda/isww/text/lam/

Lastras, G., Arzola, R., Masson, D., Wynn, R., Huvenne, V., Hühnerbach, V. & Canals, M. (2009) Geomorphology and sedimentary features in the central Portuguese submarine canyons. *Western Iberian margin: Geomorphology* 103: 310–329.

Lastras, G., Canals, M., Urgeles, R., Amblas, D., Ivanov, M., Droz, L., Dennielou, B., Fabrés, J., Schoolmeester, T., Akhmetzhanov, A., Orange, D. & García-García, A. (2007). A walk down the Cap de Creus canyon, northwestern Mediterranean Sea: recent processes inferred from morphology and sediment bedforms. *Marine Geology* 246: 176–192.

Lavín, A., Valdés, L., Sánchez, F., Abaunza, P., 2004. The Bay of Biscay: the encountering of the ocean and the shelf. Chapter 24, In book: The Sea, Volume 14, edited by Allan R. Robinson and Kenneth H. Brink ISBN 0–674– ©2004 by the President and Fellows of Harvard College 933

Lavoie, D., Simard, Y. & Saucier, F. (2000). Aggregation and dispersion of krill at channel heads and shelf edges: the dynamics in the Saguenay-St.Lawrence Marine Park. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 57: 1853–1869.

Leal, J. & Bouchet, P. (1991) Distribution patterns and dispersal of prosobranch gastropods along a seamount chain in the Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the UK* 71: 11-25.

Lebreiro, S., McCave, N. & Weaver, P. (1997). Late Quaternary turbidite emplacement on the Horseshoe abyssal plain (Iberian margin). *Journal of Sedimentary Research* 67: 856-870.

Lecoq, M., Andrade, J., Geraldes, P. & Ramírez, I. (2011) First complete census of Cory's Shearwaters Calonectris diomedea borealis breeding at Berlengas Islands (Portugal), including the small islets of the archipelago. *Airo* 21: 31-34.

Leduc, D., Rowden, A., Nodder, S., Berkenbusch, K., Probert, P. & Hadfield, M. (2014). Unusually high food availability in Kaikoura Canyon linked to distinct deep-sea nematode community. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 104: 310–318.

Lee, D., Cho, H. & Jeong, S. (2006). Distribution characteristics of marine litter on the sea bed of the East China and the South Sea of Korea. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 70: 187–194.

Levin, L. A., and Le Bris, N. (2015). The deep ocean under climate change. *Science* 350: 766–768.

Levin, L., Etter, R., Rex, M., Gooday, A., Smith, C., Pineda, J., Stuart, C., Hessler, R. & Pawson, D. (2001) Environmental influences on regional deep-sea species diversity. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics* 32: 51–93.

Leynaud, D., Mulder, T., Hanquiez, V., Gonthier, E. & Régert, A. (2017). Sediment failure types, preconditions and triggering factors in the Gulf of Cadiz. *Landslides* 14(1): 233-248.

Lopes, J., Ferreira, J., Cardoso, A. & Rocha, A. (2014). Variability of Temperature and Chlorophyll of the Iberian Peninsula near Costal Ecosystem during an Upwelling Event for the Present Climate and a Future Climate Scenario. *Journal of Marine Systems* 129: 271–88.

Louzao, M., Hyrenbach, K.D., Arcos, J.M., Abelló, P., Gil de Sola, L. and Oro, D. (2006). Oceanographic habitat of a critically endangered Mediterranean Procellariiform: implications for Marine Protected Areas. Ecological Applications 16: 1683–1695.

Mackas, D., Kieser, R., Saunders, M., Yelland, D., Brown, R. & Moore, D. (1997). Aggregation of euphausiids and Pacific hake (Merluccius productus) along the outer continental shelf off Vancouver Island. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 54(9): 2080-2096..

Maestro, A., Bohoyo, F., López-Martínez, J., Acosta, J., Gómez-Ballesteros, M., Llave, E. & Fernández-Sáez, F. (2015). Influência de los procesos tectónicos y volcánicos en la morfología de los márgenes continentales ibéricos. *Boletín Geológico y Minero* 126(2-3): 427-482.

Magalhães, M., Santos, R. & Hamer, K. (2008) Dual-foraging of Cory's shearwaters in the Azores: feeding locations, behaviour at sea and implications for food provisioning of chicks. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 359: 283-293.

Marchès, E., Mulder, T., Cremer, M., Bonnel, C., Hanquiez, V., Gonthier, E. & Lecroart, P. (2007). Contourite drift construction influenced by capture of Mediterranean Outflow Water deep-sea current by the Portimão submarine canyon (Gulf of Cadiz, South Portugal). *Marine Geology* 242(4): 247–260.

Marchès, E., Mulder, T., Gonthier, E., Cremer, M., Hanquiez, V., Garlan, T. & Lecroart, P. (2010). Perched lobe formation in the Gulf of Cadiz: Interactions between gravity processes and contour currents (Algarve Margin, Southern Portugal). *Sedimentary Geology* 229(3): 81-94.

Martín, J., Puig, P., Masqué, P., Palanques, A. & Sánchez-Gómez, A. (2014). Impact of bottom trawling on deep-sea sediment properties along the flanks of a submarine canyon. *PLoS ONE* 9:e104536.

Martín, J., Puig, P., Palanques, A., Masqué, P. & García-Orellana, J. (2008). Effect of comercial trawling on the Deep sedimentation in a Mediterranean submarine canyon. *Marine Geology* 252(3–4): 150–155.

Martins, I., Vitorino, J., & Almeida, S. (2010, May). *The Nazare Canyon observatory (W Portugal) real-time monitoring of a large submarine canyon*. In OCEANS'10 IEEE SYDNEY (pp. 1-7). IEEE.

Masson, D., Huvenne, V., de Stigter, H., Arzola, R. & LeBas, T. (2011). Sedimentary processes in the middle Nazaré Canyon. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 58(23–24): 2369–2387.

Masson, D., Huvenne, V., De Stigter, H., Wolff, G., Kiriakoulakis, K., Arzola, R. & Blackbird, S. (2010). Efficient burial of carbon in a submarine canyon. *Geology* 38(9): 831-834.

Matabos, M., Best, M., Blandin, J., Hoeberechts, M., Juniper, S. K., Pirenne, B., Robert, K., Ruhl, H., Sarrazin, J. & Vardaro, M. (2016). Seafloor observatories. *Biological Sampling in the deep sea* 306-337.

Matabos, M., Bui, A., Mihály, S., Aguzzi, J., Juniper, S. & Ajayamohan, R. (2014). High-frequency study of epibenthic megafaunal community dynamics in Barkley Canyon: a multi-disciplinary approach using the NEPTUNE Canada network. *Journal of Marine Systems* 130, 56–68.

Mayol-Serra, J., Aguilar, J.S. and Yésou, P. (2000). The Balearic Shearwater Puffinus mauretanicus: status and threats. Pp. 24–37 in Yésou, P. and Sultana, J. (eds.) Monitoring and conservation of birds, mammals and sea turtles of the Mediterranean and Black Seas. Proceedings of the 5th Medmaravis Symposium. Malta: Environment Protection Department.

McClain, C. & Barry, J. (2010). Habitat heterogeneity, disturbance, and productivity work in concert to regulate biodiversity in deep submarine canyons. *Ecology* 91: 964–976.

Menard, H. (1964) *Marine Geology of the Pacific*, 271 pp., McGraw-Hill, New York.

Mendonça, A., Arístegui, J., Vilas, J., Montero, M., Ojeda, A., Espino, M. & Martins, A. (2012). Is there a seamount effect on microbial community structure and biomass? The case study of Seine and Sedlo Seamounts (Northeast Atlantic). *PLoS ONE* 7(1).

Mil-Homens, M., Branco, V., Vale, C., Boer, W., Alt-Epping, U., Abrantes, F. & Vicente, M. (2009). Sedimentary record of anthropogenic metal inputs in the Tagus Prodelta (Portugal). *Continental Shelf Research* 29: 381-392.

Milkert, D., Weaver, P. P. E., & Liu, L. (1996). *Pleistocene and Pliocene Turbidites from the Iberia Abyssal Plain*. Proceedings of the Ocean Drilling Program, Scientific Results, 149(May), 281–294.

Miranda, R. (2010). Petrogenesis and geochronology of late Cretaceous Alkaline magnetism in the West Iberian margin. *Tectonics* 19(6), 1095-1106.

Moita, I. (1986) *Notıcia explicativa da carta de sedimentos superficiais da plataforma continental*. Folha SED 7 e 8: Cabo de S. Vicente ao Rio Guadiana, Instituto Hidrográfico: 18 pp.

Moore, S. & Allen, M. (2000). Distribution of anthropogenic and natural debris on the mainland shelf of the Southern California Bight. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 40: 83–88.

Moors-Murphy, H. (2014). Submarine canyons as important habitat for cetaceans, with special reference to the Gully: a review. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 104: 6–19.

Morais, P., Borges, T., Carnall, V., Terrinha, P. & Cooper, R. (2007). Trawl-induced bottom disturbances off the south coast of portugal: direct observations by the “delta” manned-submersible on the submarine canyon of portimão. M*arine Ecology* 28, 112–122.

Morato, T, Kvile, K., Taranto, G., Tempera, F., Narayanaswamy, B., Hebbeln, D., Menezes, G., Wienberg, C., Santos, R. & Pitcher, T. (2013) Seamount physiography and biology in The North-East Atlantic and Mediterranean Sea. *Biogeosciences* 10(5): 3039–3054.

Morato, T. & Clark, M. (2007*). Seamount fishes: ecology and life histories*. Chapter 9 In:Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. & Santos, R.S. (eds) Seamounts: ecology, fisheries & conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. pp. 170 -188.

Morato, T. & Pauly, D. (2004). *Seamounts: Biodiversity and fisheries*. Fisheries Centre, University of British Columbia.

Morato, T., Allain, V., Hoyle, S. & Nicol, S. (2009*) Tuna Longline Fishing around West and Central Pacific Seamounts*. Information Paper. Scientific Committee, Fifth Regular Session, 10-21 August 2009, Port Vila, Vanuatu. WCPFC-SC5-2009/EB-IP-04. Western and Central Pacific Fisheries Commission, Palikir, Pohnpei.

Morato, T., Hoyle, S., Allain, V. & Nicol, S. (2010) Seamounts are hotspots of pelagic biodiversity in the open ocean. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 107(21): 9707–9711.

Morato, T., Varkey, D., Damaso, C., Machete, M., Santos, M., Prieto, R., Santos, R. & Pitcher, T. (2008) Evidence of a seamount effect on aggregating visitors. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 357: 23-32.

Mordecai, G., Tyler, P., Masson, D. & Huvenne, V. (2011). Litter in submarine canyons off the west coast of Portugal. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 58: 2489–2496.

Moreira, V.S., 1985. Seismotectonics of Portugal and its adjacent area in the Atlantic. *Tectonophysics* 117: 85–96.

Morris, K., Tyler, P., Masson, D., Huvenne, V. & Rogers, A. (2013). Distribution of cold-water corals in the Whittard Canyon, NE Atlantic Ocean. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 92: 136–144.

Mortensen, P., Buhl-Mortensen, L., Gebruk, A. & Krylova, E. (2008) Occurrence of deep-water corals on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge based on MAR-ECO data. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 55(1-2): 142–152.

Mougenot, D. (1988*). Geologie de la marge Portugaise*. These de Doctorat D'Etat des Sciences Naturelles, Universite Pierre et Marie Curie, Paris, 155 pp.

Mougenot, D., Kidd, R., Mauffret, A., Regnauld, H., Rothwell, R. & Vanney, J. (1984). Geological interpretation of combined SEABEAM, GLORIA and seismic data from Porto and Vigo Seamounts, Iberian continental margin. *Marine Geophysical Researches*, 6(4): 329–363.

Mouguenot, D. (1989) *Geologia da margem Portuguesa*. Documentos Técnicos do Instituto Hidrográfico, Vol. 32, Lisboa: 259 pp.

Moura, D., Gomes, A., & Horta, J. (2017). *The Iberian Atlantic Margin*. Submerged Landscapes of the European Continental Shelf: Quaternary Paleoenvironments, 281-300.

Mouriño, B., Fernández, E., Serret, P., Harbour, D., Sinha, B. & Pingree, R. (2001) Variability and seasonality of physical and biological fields at the Great Meteor Tablemount (subtropical NE Atlantic). *Oceanologica Acta* 24(2): 167–185.

Muacho, S., Da Silva, J., Brotas, V. & Oliveira, P. (2013). Effect of internal waves on near-surface chlorophyll concentration and primary production in the Nazaré Canyon (west of the Iberian Peninsula). *Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*, 81: 89–96.

Mulder T, Gonthier E, Lecroart P, Hanquiez V, Marchès E. & Voisset M (2009) Sediment failures and flows in the Gulf of Cadiz (eastern Atlantic). *Marine and Petroleum Geology* 26: 660–672.

Mulder, T., Lecroart, P., Hanquiez, V., Marches, E., Gonthier, E., Guedes, J. & Perez, C. (2006). The western part of the Gulf of Cadiz: contour currents and turbidity currents interactions. *Geo-Marine Letters*, 26(1): 31-41.

Muñoz, A., Acosta, J., Cristobo, J., Druet, M., Uchupi, E., Iglesias, S. & López, V. (2013). Geomorphology and shallow structure of a segment of the Atlantic Patagonian margin. *Earth-Science Reviews* 121:73–95.

Neres, M., Bouchez, J., Terrinha, P., Font, E., Moreira, M., Miranda, R. & Carvallo, C. (2014). Magnetic fabric in a Cretaceous sill (Foz da Fonte, Portugal): Flow model and implications for regional magmatism. *Geophysical Journal International* 199(1): 78–101.

Nittrouer, C. & Wright, L. (1994). Transport of particles across continental shelves. *Reviews of Geophysics* 32: 85–113.

Normark, W. & Carlson, P., 2003. Giant submarine canyons: Is size any clue to their importance in the rock record? *Geological Society of America Special Paper* 370: 175– 190.

O'Neill-Baringer MO, Price JF. 1999. A review of the physical oceanography of the Mediterranean outflow. Marine Geology 155: 63–82. Sardina pilchardus, typically yields ca. 80,000 metric tons annually along the Galician coast.

Okey, T. (1997). Sediment flushing observations, earthquake slumping, and benthic community changes in Monterey Canyon head. *Continental Shelf Research* 17: 877–897.

Oliveira, A., Rocha, F., Rodrigues, A., Jouanneau, Dias, J., Weber, O. & Gomes, C. (2002). Clay minerals from the sedimentary cover from the Northwest Iberian shelf. *Progress in Oceanography* 52: 233-247.

Oliveira, A., Santos, A., Rodrigues, A. & Vitorino, J. (2007). Sedimentary particle distribution and dynamics on the Nazaré canyon system and adjacent shelf (Portugal). *Marine Geology* 246(2–4): 105–122.

Orejas, C., Gori, A., Lo Iacono, C., Puig, P., Gili, J. & Dale, M. (2009). Cold-water corals in the Cap de Creus canyon, northwestern Mediterranean: spatial distribution, density and anthropogenic impact. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 397: 37–51.

Oro, D., Aguilar, J.S., Igual, J.M. and Louzao, M. (2004). Modelling demography and extinction risk in the endangered Balearic shearwater. Biological Conservation 116: 93–102.

Orsi, W., Biddle, J. & Edgcomb, V. (2013). Deep sequencing of subseafloor eukaryotic rRNA reveals active fungi across marine subsurface provinces. *PLoS One* 8(2):e56335.

OSPAR (2008). OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats. OSPAR Convention for the Protection of the Marine environment of the North-East Atlantic. (Reference Number: 2008-6).

OSPAR (2010) *Quality Status Report 2010*. OSPAR Commission. London. 176 pp.

OSPAR Commission, 2000. Quality Status Report 2000: Region IV - Bay of Biscay and Iberian Coast. Ospar Commission. London. 134 + xiii pp.

Paiva V., Geraldes P., Ramírez I., Meirinho A., Garthe S. & Ramos J. (2010). Oceanographic characteristics of areas used by Cory's shearwaters during short and long foraging trips in the North Atlantic. *Marine Biology* 157: 1385-1399.

Paiva, P., Jouanneau, J., Araújo, F., Weber, O., Rodrigues, A. & Dias, J. (1997). Elemental distribution in a sedimentary deposit on the shelf off the Tagus Estuary (Portugal). *Water, Air and Soil Pollution*, 99: 507-514.

Pakhorukov, N. (2008) Visual observations of fish from seamounts of the Southern Azores Region (the Atlantic Ocean). *Journal of Ichthyology* 48: 114–123.

Palanques, A., García-Ladona, E., Gomis, D., Martín, J., Marcos, M., Pascual, A. & Guillén, J. (2005). General patterns of circulation, sediment fluxes and ecology of the Palamós (La Fonera) submarine canyon, northwestern Mediterranean. *Progress in Oceanography* 66(2-4): 89-119.

Palanques, A., Martín, J., Puig, P., Guillén, J., Company, J. & Sardà, F. (2006). Evidence of sediment gravity flows induced by trawling in the Palamós (Fonera) submarine canyon (northwestern Mediterranean). *Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 53: 201–214.

Palanques, A., Masqué, P., Puig, P., Sanchez-Cabeza, J. A., Frignani, M. & Alvisi, F. (2008). Anthropogenic trace metals in the sedimentary record of the Llobregat continental shelf and adjacent Foix Submarine Canyon (northwestern Mediterranean). *Marine Geology*. 248: 213–227.

Palanques, A., Puig, P., Latasa, M. & Scharek, R. (2009). Deep sediment transport induced by storms and dense shelf-water cascading in the northwestern Mediterranean basin. *Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 56(3): 425-434.

Pardal, M. & Azeiteiro, U. (2001) Zooplankton biomass, abundance and diversity in a shelf area of Portugal (the Berlenga Marine Natural Reserve). *Arquipélago Life and Marine Sciences* 18A, 25-33.

Pasqual, C., Sànchez Vidal, A., Zúñiga, D., Calafat Frau, A., Canals Artigas, M., Durrieu de Madron, X. & Delsaut, N. (2010). Flux and composition of settling particles across the continental margin of the Gulf of Lion: the role of dense shelf water cascading. *Biogeosciences* 7(1): 217-231.

Paterson, G., Glover, A., Cunha, M., Neal, L., de Stiger, H., Kiriakoulakis, K., Billet, D., Wolff, G., Tiago, A., Ravara, A., Lamont, P. & Tyler, P., (2011). Disturbance, productivity and diversity in deep-sea canyons: A worm's eye view. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 58(23-24): 2448-2460.

Peffley, M. & O'Brien, J. (1975). A Three-Dimensional simulation of coastal upwelling off Oregon. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 6: 164 – 180.

Peliz, A., Dubert, J., Santos, A., Oliveira, P. & Le Cann, B. (2005). Winter upper ocean circulation in the Western Iberian Basin—Fronts, Eddies and Poleward Flows: an overview. *Deep sea research Part I: Oceanographic research papers* 52(4): 621-646.

Peliz, A., Rosa, T., Santos, A. & Pissarra, J. (2002) Fronts, jets, eddies and counterflows in the western Iberia upwelling system. *Journal of Marine Systems* 35: 61-77.

Peña V. & I. Bárbara (2008). Biological importance of an Atlantic European maërl bed off Benencia Island (northwest Iberian Peninsula). Bot. Mar.

Pereira, T., Manique, J., Quintella, B., Castro, N., de Almeida, P. & Costa, J. (2017). Changes in fish assemblage structure after implementation of Marine Protected Areas in the south western coast of Portugal. *Ocean & Coastal Management* 135: 103-112.

Pham, C., Ramirez-Llodra, E., Alt, C., Amaro, T., Bergmann, M., Canals, M., Company, J., Davies, J., Duineveld, G. Galgani, F., Howell, K., Huvenne, V., Isidro, E., Jones, D., Lastras, G., Morato, T., Gomes-Pereira, J., Purser, A., Stewart, H., Tojeira, I., Tubau, X., Rooij, D. & Tyler, P. (2014). Marine litter distribution and density in european seas, from the shelves to deep basins. *PLoS ONE* 9:e95839.

Picket, S. & White, P. (Eds.), (1985). *The Ecology of Natural Disturbance and Patch Dynamics*. Academic Press, New York.

Pitcher, T. & Bulman, C. (2007) *Raiding the larder: a quantitative evaluation framework and trophic signature for seamount food webs*. In: Pitcher TJ, Morato T, Hart PJB, Clark MR, Haggen N, Santos R (eds) Seamounts: ecology, fisheries and conservation. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford, p 282–295.

Pitcher, T., Clark, M., Morato, T. & Watson, R. (2010) Seamount fisheries: Do they have a future? *Oceanography* 23: 134–144.

Pitcher, T., Morato, T., Hart, P., Clark, M., Haggan, N. & Santos, R. (2007) *Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries, and Conservation*. Blackwell Fisheries and Aquatic Resources Series, Vol. 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, 527 pp.

Porteiro, F. & Sutton, T. (2007) *Midwater fish assemblages and seamounts*. In: Pitcher, T.J., T. Morato, P.J.B. Hart, M.R. Clark, N. Haggan and R.S. Santos (Eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom. pp. 101–16.

Prego, R., Guzmán-Zuñiga, D., Varela, M. & Gómez-Gesteira, M. (2007). Consequences of winter upwelling events on biogeochemical and phytoplankton patterns in a western Galician ria (NW Iberian peninsula). *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 73(3-4): 409-422.

Probert P. (1999) Seamounts, sanctuaries and sustainability: moving towards deep-sea conservation. *Aquatic Conservation* 9: 601-605.

Probert, P., Christiansen, S., Gjerde, K., Gubbay, S. & Santos R. (2007) *Management and conservation of seamounts*. In: Pitcher TJ, Morato T, Hart PJB, Clark MR, Haggan N, Santos RS, eds. Seamounts: ecology, fisheries, and conservation. Blackwell Fisheries and Aquatic Resources Series 12. Oxford, UK: Blackwell Publishing. pp 442–475.

Puig, P., Canals, M., Company, J.B., Martín, J., Amblas, D., Lastras, G., Palanques, A., Calafat, A.M. (2012). The ploughing of the deep seafloor. *Nature* 489: 286–290.

Puig, P., Durrieu de Madron, X., Salat, J., Schroeder, K., Martín, J., Karageorgis, A.P., Palanques, A., Roullier, F., Lopez-Jurado, J.L., Emelianov, M., Moutin, T. and Houpert, L. 2013. Thick bottom nepheloid layers in the western Mediterranean generated by deep dense shelf water cascading. *Progress in Oceanography* 111: 1-23.

Puig, P., Martín, J., Masqué, P. & Palanques, A. (2015 a)). Increasing sediment accumulation rates in La Fonera (Palamós) submarine canyon axis and their relationship with bottom trawling activities. *Geophysical Research Letters* 42(19): 8106-8113.

Puig, P., Masqué, P., Martín, J., Paradis, S., Juan-Díaz, X., Toro, M. & Palanques, A. (2015b)). *Changes on sediment accumulation rates within NW Mediterranean submarine canyons caused by bottom trawling activities*. In: Briand, F. (Ed.), CIESM Workshop Monographs N° 47 “Submarine canyon dynamics in the Mediterranean and tributary seas - An integrated geological, oceanographic and biological perspective”. CIESM Publisher, Monaco, 71–78.

Puig, P., Ogston, A., Mullenbach, B., Nittrouer, C. & Sternberg, R. (2003). Shelf to canyon sediment-transport processes on the Eel continental margin (northern California). *Marine Geology* 193: 129-149.

Puig, P., Palanques, A. & Martín, J. (2014). Contemporary sediment-transport processes in submarine canyons. *Annual review of marine science* 6: 53-77.

Puig, P., Palanques, A., Guillén, J. & Garcıa-Ladona, E. (2000). Deep slope currents and suspended particle fluxes in and around the Foix submarine canyon (NW Mediterranean). *Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 47: 343–366.

Pusceddu, A., Bianchelli, S., Canals, M., Sanchez-Vidal, A., De-Madron, X., Heussner, S., Lykousis, V., de-Stigter, H., Trincardi, F. & Danovaro, R. (2010). Organic matter in sediments of canyons and open slopes of the Portuguese, Catalan, Southern Adriatic and Cretan Sea margins. *Deep-Sea Research I* 57: 441–457.

Pusceddu, A., Bianchelli, S., Martín, J., Puig, P., Palanques, A., Masqué, P. & Danovaro, R. (2014). Chronic and intensive bottom trawling impairs deep-sea biodiversity and ecosystem functioning. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 111(24): 8861-8866.

Quattrini, A., Nizinski, M., Chaytor, J., Demopoulos, A., Roark, E., France, S. & Ruppel, C. (2015). Exploration of the canyon-incised continental margin of the northeastern United States reveals dynamic habitats and diverse communities. *PLoS One*, 10(10): e0139904.

Queiroga, H., Cruz, T., Santos, A., Dubert, J.,González-Gordillo, J., Paula, J., Peliz, Á. & Santos, A. (2007). Oceanographic and behavioural processes affecting invertebrate larval dispersal and supply in the western Iberia upwelling ecosystem. *Progress in Oceanography* 74: 174-191.

Queiroga, H., Leão, F. & Coutinho, M. (2009). *Nomination of the Berlengas Islands as a UNESCO Biosphere Reserve.* Câmara Municipal de Peniche, Portugal.

Queiroga, H., Leão, F., & Coutinho, M., (2008). *Candidatura das Berlengas a Reserva da Biosfera da UNESCO*, Versão para Consulta Pública, Instituto do Ambiente e Desenvolvimento, 38-83.

Quéro, J., M.H. Du Buit and J.J. Vayne, 1998. Les observations de poissons tropicaux et le réchauffement des eaux dans l'Atlantique européen. Oceanol. Acta, 21 (2), 345–351.

Radhouani, H., Poeta, P., Pinto, L., Miranda, J., Coelho, C., Carvalho, C. & Domingues, P. (2010). Proteomic characterization of van A-containing Enterococcu s recovered from Seagulls at the Berlengas Natural Reserve, W Portugal. *Proteome science* 8(1): 48.

Ramirez, I., Geraldes, P., Meirinho, A., Amorim, P. & Paiva, V. (2008) *Áreas Marinhas Importantes para as Aves em Portugal.* Projecto LIFE 04NAT/PT/000213 – Sociedade Portuguesa para o Estudo das Aves. Lisboa, Portugal.

Ramirez-Llodra, E., Ballesteros, M., Company, J., Dantart, L. & Sardà, F. (2008). Spatio-temporal variations of biomass and abundance in bathyal non-crustacean megafauna in the Catalan Sea (North-western Mediterranean). *Marine Biology* 153: 297-309.

Ramirez-Llodra, E., Brandt, A., Danovaro, R., De Mol, B., Escobar, E., German, C., Levin, L., Martinez Arbizu, P., Menot, L., Buhl-Mortensen, P., Narayanaswamy, B., Smith, C., Tittensor, D., Tyler, P., Vanreusel, A. & Vecchione, M. (2010) Deep, Diverse and Definitely Different: Unique Attributes of the World's Largest Ecosystem. *Biogeosciences* 7: 2851–2899.

Ramirez-Llodra, E., De Mol, B., Company, J., Coll, M. & Sardà, F. (2013). Effects of natural and anthropogenic processes in the distribution of marine litter in the deep Mediterranean Sea. *Progress in Oceanography* 118: 273–287.

Ramirez-Llodra, E., Trannum, H., Evenset, A., Levin, L., Andersson, M., Finne, T. & Vanreusel, A. (2015). Submarine and deep-sea mine tailing placements: a review of current practices, environmental issues, natural analogs and knowledge gaps in Norway and internationally. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 97(1-2): 13-35.

Reis, R. & Gonçalves, M. (1988). *O clima de Portugal*, WLI. Instituto Nacional de Meteorologia e Geofísica, Lisboa, p. 160.

Relvas, P., Barton, E., Dubert, J., Oliveira, P., Peliz, Á., da Silva, J. & Santos, A. (2007). Physical oceanography of the western Iberia ecosystem: Latest views and challenges. *Progress in Oceanography* 74(2–3): 149–173.

Ressurreição, A. & Giacomello, E. (2013) Quantifying the direct use value of Condor seamount. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 98: 209–217.

Rex, M. (1983). Geographic patterns of species diversity in deep-sea benthos. *Seas* 8: 453–472.

Ribeiro, A., Kullberg, M., Kullberg, J., Manupella, A., Phipps, S. (1990). A review of Alpine Tectonics in Portugal: foreland detachment in basement and cover rocks. *Tectonophysics* 184: 357–366.

Richardson, P., Bower, A. & Zenk, W. (2000). A census of Meddies tracked by floats. *Progress in Oceanography* 45: 209–250.

Richter, T., de Stigter, H., Boer, W., Jesús, C. & van Weering, T. (2009). Dispersal of natural and anthropogenic lead through submarine canyons at the Portuguese Margin. *Deep-Sea Research I* 56: 267-282.

Roark, E., Guilderson, T., Dunbar, R. & Ingram, B. (2006) Radiocarbon-based ages and growth rates of Hawaiian deep-sea corals. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 327: 1–14.

Robert, K., Jones, D., Tyler, P., Van Rooij, D. & Huvenne, V. (2014). Finding the hotspots within a biodiversity hotspot: fine-scale biological predictions within a submarine canyon using high-resolution acoustic mapping techniques. *Marine Ecology* 36: 1256–1276.

Roberts, J., Wheeler, A. & Freiwald, A. (2006) Reefs of the deep: The biology and geology of cold-water coral ecosystems. *Science* 213: 543–547.

Robison, B. (2004). Deep pelagic biology. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 300(1): 253-272.

Robison, B. (2009) Conservation of deep pelagic biodiversity. *Conservation Biology* 23: 847–858.

Roditi-Elasar, M., Kerem, D., Angel, D., Steindler, L., Herut, B. & Shoham-Frider, E. (2013). "*Akhziv Submarine Canyon: an oasis in the warming oligotrophic Levantine Basin?*" in C40th CIESM, Congress Communications Webpages (Marsiglia).

Rodrigues, A. (2001) – *Tectono-Estratigrafia da Plataforma Continental Setentrional Portuguesa*. Tese de Doutoramento, Faculdade de Ciências da Univ. Lisboa, 244 pp.

Rodrigues, A. 2004. *Tectono-Estratigrafia da Plataforma Continental Setentrional Portuguesa*. Doc. Tec. 111(35): 227pp.

Rodrigues, A., Magalhaes, F. & Dias, J. (1991). Evolution of the north Portuguese coast in the last 18000 years. Quaternary International (9): pp. 67-74.

Rodrigues, N., Maranhão, P., Oliveira, P. & Alberto, J. (2008). *Guia de espécies submarinas, Portugal–Berlengas*. Instituto Politécnico de Leiria. Leiria, Portugal. 231 pp.

Rogers, A. (1994). The biology of seamounts. *Advances in marine biology* 30: 305-305.

Rogers, A., Baco, A., Griffiths, H., Hart, T. & Hall-Spencer, J. (2007) *Corals on seamounts*. In: Pitcher, T., Morato, T., Hart, P., Clark, M., Haggan, N. & Santos, R. eds. Seamounts: ecology, fisheries, and conservation. Blackwell Fisheries and Aquatic Resources Series 12. Oxford, UK: Blackwell Publishing. pp 141–169.

Rogers, A., Clark, M., Hall-Spencer, J. & Gjerde, K. (2008) *The Science behind the Guidelines: A Scientific Guide to the FAO Draft International Guidelines* (December 2007) for the Management of Deep-sea Fisheries in the High Seas and Examples of How the Guidelines May Be Practically Implemented. IUCN, Switzerland.

Rowe, G. (1971). Observations on bottom currents and epibenthic populations in Hatteras Submarine canyon. *Deep-Sea Research* 18: 569–581.

Rowe, G. (1972). The Exploration of Submarine Canyons and their Benthic Faunal Assemblages. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Edinburgh, Section B: Biological Sciences* 73: 159-169.

Rowe, G., Morse, J., Nunnally, C. & Boland, G. (2008). Sediment community oxygen consumption in the deep Gulf of Mexico. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 55(24-26): 2686-2691.

Rowe, G., Polloni, P. & Haedrich, R. (1982). The deep-sea macrobenthos on the continental margin of the northwest Atlantic Ocean. *Deep Sea Research Part A. Oceanographic Research Papers* 29(2): 257-278.

Ryan, J., Chave, F. & Bellingham, J. (2005). Physical-biological coupling in Monterey Bay, California: topographic influences on phytoplankton ecology. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 287: 23-32.

Saavedra, C., 2017. Multispecies population modelling of the common dolphin (Delphinus delphis), the bottlenose dolphin (Tursiops truncatus) and the southern stock of European hake (Merluccius merluccius), in Atlantic waters of the Iberian Peninsula. Dosctotal Dissertation, Universidad de Vigo.

Samadi, S., Bottan, L., Macpherson, E., Richer de Forges, B. & Boisselier, M. (2006) Seamount endemism questioned by the geographical distribution and population genetic structure of marine invertebrates. *Marine Biology* 149: 1463–75.

Samadi, S., Schlacher, T. & de Forges, B. (2007) *Seamount benthos*. In: Pitcher, T.J., T. Morato, P.J.B. Hart, M.R. Clark, N. Haggan and R.S. Santos (Eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom, pp 119-140.

Sánchez F., Blanc M., Gancedo, R., 2002. Atlas de los peces demersales y de los invertebrados de interés comercial de Galicia y el Cantábrico. Otoño 1997–1999. Ed. CYAN (Inst. Esp.Oceanogr.) 158 p.;

Sanchez F., Olaso, I., 2004. Effects of fisheries on the Cantabrian Sea shelf ecosystem. Ecol. Model. 172, 151–-174;

Sánchez, F., de la Gándara, F., Gancedo, R., 1995. Atlas de los peces demersales de Galicia y el Cantábrico, Otoño 1991–1993. Publ. Esp. Inst. Esp. Oceanogr. 20, 99.

Sánchez, F., Gil, J., 2000. Hydrographic mesoscale structures and Poleward Current as a

Sánchez, F., Serrano, A., Parra, S., Ballesteros, M. & Cartes, J. (2008) Habitat characteristics as determinant of the structure and spatial distribution of epibenthic and demersal communities of Le Danois Bank (Cantabrian Sea, N. Spain). *Journal of Marine Systems* 72: 64–86.

Sanchez-Vidal, A., Pasqual, C., Kerhervé, P., Calafat, A., Heussner, S., Palanques, A., Durrieu de Madron, X., Canals, M. & Puig, P. (2008). Impact of dense shelf water cascading on the transfer of organic matter to the deep western Mediterranean basin. *Geophysical Research Letters* 35: L05605.

Sanders, H. & Hessler, R. (1969). Ecology of the deep-sea benthos. *Science* 163: 1419–1424.

Santos, A., Azeiteiro, U., Sousa, F. & Alves, F. (2012). The role of knowledge and the way of life of local inhabitants in sustainable development: an exploratory study on the impact of the Natural Reserve of the Berlengas Islands (Portugal) on the life of its local fishing community. *Journal of Integrated Coastal Zone Management* 12(4): 429-436.

Santos, A., Peliz, A., Ré, P., Dubert, J., Oliveira, P. & Angélico, M. (2004) Impact of a winter upwelling event on the distribution and transport of sardine eggs and larvae off western Iberia: A retention mechanism. *Continental Shelf Reseach* 24: 149-165.
Santos, M. Scheidat, J. Teilmann, J. Vingada & N. Øien (2017) Estimates of cetacean abundance in European Atlantic waters in summer 2016 from the SCANS-III aerial and shipboard surveys.

Santos, M., Bolten, A., Martins, H., Riewald, B. & Bjorndal, K. (2007). *Air-breathing Visitors to Seamounts: Sea Turtles.* Chapter 12 Section B. in Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. and Santos, R.S. (eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Conservation and Management. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. pp. 239-244.

Sardà, F. & Cartes, J. (1994). Spatio-temporal variations in megabenthos abundance in three different habitats of the Catalan deep-sea (Western Mediterranean). *Marine Biology* 120: 211–219.

Sardà, F., Company, J.B., Bahamon, N., Rotllant, G., Flexas, M.M., Sánchez, J.D., Zúñiga, D., Coenjaerts, J., Orellana, D., Jorda, G., Puigde fabregas, J., Sánchez-Vidal, A., Calafat, A., Martín, D. & Espino, M. (2009). Relationship between environmental and occurrence of the deep-water rose shrimp Aristeus antennatus (Risso, 1826) in Blanes submarine canyon (Northwestern Mediterranean). *Progress in Oceanography* 82(4): 227–238.

Saunders, P. (1982) Circulation in the eastern North Atlantic. *Journal of Marine Research* 40: 641-657.

Sauvaget, P., David, E. & Soares, C. (2000). Modelling tidal currents on the coast of Portugal. *Coastal Engineering* 40(4): 393-409.

Schlacher, T., Schlacher-Hoenlinger, M., Williams, A., Althaus, F., Hooper, J. & Kloser, R. (2007). Richness and distribution of sponge megabenthos in continental margin canyons off southeastern Australia. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 340: 73–88.

Schlacher, T., Williams, A., Althaus, F. & Schlacher-Hoenlinger, M. (2010). High-resolution seabed imagery as a tool for biodiversity conservation planning on continental margins. *Marine Ecology* 31: 200-221.

Schmidt, S., Stigter, H. & Weering, T. (2001). Enhanced short-term sediment deposition within the Nazare Canyon, North-East Atlantic. *Marine Geology* 173: 55–67.

Serra, N. & Ambar, I. (2002). Eddy generation in the Mediterranean undercurrent. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 49(19): 4225-4243.

Serra, N., Ambar, I. & Kase, R. (2005). Observations and numerical modelling of the Mediterranean outflow splitting and eddy generation. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 52 (3-4): 383–408.

Serrano A., Preciado I., Abad E., Sánchez F., Parra S. & I. Frutos (2008). Spatial distribution patterns of demersal and epibenthic communities on the Galician continental shelf (NW Spain). J. Mar. Syst., Vol. 72(1-4): 87-100;

Serrano A., Sanchez F., Garcia-Castrillo, G., 2006. Epibenthic communities of trawlable grounds of the Cantabrian Sea. Sci. Mar., 70, 149–159.

Serrano, A., A. Punzón, P. Ríos, J. Cartes, X. Valeiras, A. Lourido, J..C. Arronte, J. Cristobo, R. Bañón, V. Papiol, S. Parra, F, Sánchez, I. Frutos, A. García-Alegre, I. Preciado, M. Blanco, A, Luque, S. Gofas, C. Orejas, M. Druet, M. Gómez-Ballesteros and M. Ruiz-Villarreal, 2012. Deep sea benthic assemblages of the Galicia Bank: effects of seamount environmental variables. XIII International Symposium on Oceanography of the Bay of Biscay, ISOBAY13 (Santander, Abril 2012).

Serrano, A., Sánchez, F., Preciado, I., Parra, S., Frutos, I., 2006. Spatial and temporal changes in benthic communities of the Galician continental shelf after the Prestige oil spill. Marine Pollution Bulletin, 53: 315–331

Serrano, S., González-Irusta. J.M., Punzón, A., García-Alegre, A., Lourido, A., Ríos, P., Blanco, M., Gómez-Ballesteros, M, Druet, M., Cristobo, J., Cartes, J.E., 2017. Deep-sea benthic habitats modeling and mapping in a NE Atlantic seamount (Galicia Bank). Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 136: 115-127.

Serra-Pereira, B., Erzini, K., Maia, C. & Figueiredo, I. (2014). Identification of potential essential fish habitats for skates based on fisher's knowledge. *Environmental management* 53(5): 985-998..

Shank, T. (2010) Deep-ocean laboratories of faunal connectivity, evolution, and endemism. *Oceanography* 23: 108–122.

Shanmugam, G. (2012). *New perspectives on deep-water sandstones: origin, recognition, initiation, and reservoir quality*. Handbook of Petroleum Exploration and Production, 9, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 524 pp.

Shepard, F. & Drill, R. (1966). *Submarine canyons and other sea valleys*. Rand McNally, Chicago, 381pp.

Shepard, F. (1976). *Tidal components of currents in submarine canyons*. Journal of Geology, 84, 343-350.

Shepard, F., Marshall, N., McLoughlin, P. & Sullivan, G. (1979). *Currents in submarine canyons and other sea valleys*. AAPG, Tulsa, Studies in Geology, 8.

Shepard, R. (1981). Submarine Canyons: Multiple Causes and Long-Time Persistence. *American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin* 65: 1062–1077.

SIMNORAT, 2019. Marine Protected Areas in the Bay of Biscay and Iberian Coasts Database Completion and Analysis. European Commission; Directorate-General for Maritime Affairs and Fisheries

Snelgrove, P., Grassle J. & Petrecca R. (1992). The role of food patches in maintaining high deep-sea diversity: field experiments with hydrodynamically unbiased colonization trays. *Limnology and Oceanography* 37: 1543–1550.

Sobarzo, M., Figueroa, M. & Djurfeldt, L. (2001). Upwelling of subsurface water into the rim of the Biobio submarine canyon as a response to surface winds. *Continental Shelf Research* 21: 279-299.

Solomon, S. (2007). *Climate change 2007-the physical science basis*, In Working Group I Contribution to the Fourth Assessment Report of the IPCC (Cambridge University Press).

Sousa, W. (1984). The role of disturbance in natural communities. *Annual Review of Ecology of Ecology and Systematics* 15: 353–391.

Souto, J., Reverter-Gil, O., De Blauwe, H. & Fernández-Pulpeiro, E. (2014). New records of bryozoans from Portugal. *Cahiers de Biologie Marine* 55(1): 129–150.

Spyrakos, E., Santos-Diniz, T.C., Martínez-Iglesias, G., Torres-Palenzuela, J.M., Pierce, G.J., 2011. Spatiotemporal patterns of marine mammal distribution in coastal waters of Galicia, NW Spain. Hydrobiologia, 670: 87-109.

Staudigel, H. & Clague, D. (2010). The geological history of deep-sea volcanoes: Biosphere, hydrosphere, and lithosphere interactions*.* *Oceanography* 23(1): 58–71.

Stebbing, A. R. D., S. M. T. Turk, A. Wheeler and K. R. Clarke, 2002. Immigration of southern fish species to south-west England linked to warming of the North Atlantic (1960–2000). J. Mar. Biol. Ass. U.K., 82, 177–180.

Stow, D. & Mayall, M. (2000). Deep-water sedimentary systems: new models for the 21st century. *Marine and Petroleum Geology* 17(2): 125-135.

Stow, D., Hernández-Molina, F., Llave, E., Bruno, M., García, M., Díaz del Río, V., Somoza, L. & Brackenridge, R. (2013). The Cádiz Contourite Channel: Sandy contourites, bedforms and dynamic current interaction. *Marine Geology* 343: 99-114.

Tabachnick, K. & Menchenina, L. (2007). Revision of the genus Asconema (Porifera: Hexactinellida: Rossellidae*). Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the UK* 87: 1403–1429.

Tenore, K. R., M. T. Alvarez-Ossorio, L. P. Atkinson, J. M. Cabanas, R. M. Cal, M. J. Campos, F. Castillejo, E. J. Chesney, N. Gonzalez, R. B. Hanson, C. R. McLain, A. Miranda, M. Noval, M. R. Roman, J. Sanchez, G. Santiago, L. Valdes, M. Varela and J. Yoder. 1995. Fisheries and oceanography off Galicia, NW Spain: Mesoscale spatial and temporal changes in physical processes and resultant patterns of biological productivity. Journal of Geophysical Research, Vol 100: 10,943-10,966

Terrinha, P., Matias, L., Vicente, J., Duarte, J., Luís, J., Pinheiro, L., Víctor, L. (2009). Morphotectonics and strain partitioning at the Iberia-Africa plate boundary from multibeam and seismic reflection data. *Marine Geology* 267(3–4): 156–174.

Terrinha, P., Pinheiro, L, Henriet, J., Matias, L., Ivanov, M., Monteiro, J., Akhmetzhanov, A., Volkonskaya, A., Cunha, T., Shaskin, P. & Rovere, M. (2003). Tsunamigenic-seismogenic structures, neotectonics, sedimentary processes and slope instability on the southwest Portuguese margin. *Marine Geology* 195: 55–73.

Thurber, A., Sweetman, A., Narayanaswamy, B., Jones, D., Ingels, J. & Hansman, R. (2014). Ecosystem function and services provided by the deep sea. *Biogeosciences* 11(14): 3941-3963.

Thurnherr, A. (2006). Diapycnal mixing associated with an overflow in a deep submarine canyon. *Deep-Sea Research II* 53: 194-206.

Toucanne, S., Zaragosi, S., Bourillet, J., Cremer, M., Eynaud, F., Van Vliet-Lanoë, B., Penaud, A., Fontanier, C., Turon, J., Cortijo, E. & Gibbard, P. (2009). Timing of massive 'Fleuve Manche' discharges over the last 350 kyr: insights into the European ice-sheet oscillations and the European drainage network from MIS 10 to 2. *Quaternary Science Reviews,* 28(13-14): 1238-1256.

Tubau, X., Canals, M., Lastras, G., Rayo, X., Rivera, J. & Amblas, D. (2015). Marine litter on the floor of deep submarine canyons of the Northwestern Mediterranean Sea: the role of hydrodynamic processes. *Progress in Oceanography* 134: 379–403.

Tuya, F., Cacabelos, E., Duarte, P., Jacinto, D., Castro, J., Silva, T. & Wernberg, T. (2012). Patterns of landscape and assemblage structure along a latitudinal gradient in ocean climate. *Marine Ecology Progress Series,* 466: 9–19.

Tyler ,P., Amaro, T., Arzola, R., Cunha, M., deStigter, H., Gooday, A., Huvenne, V., Ingels, J., Kiriakoulakis, K., Lastras, G., Masson, D., Oliveira, A., Pattenden, A., Vanreusel, A., VanWeering, T., Vitorino, J., Witte, U. & Wolff, G. (2009). Europe's Grand Canyon: Nazaré submarine canyon. *Oceanography* 22: 46–57.

Uiblein, F., Lorance, P. & Latroite, D. (2003). Behaviour and habitat utilization of seven demersal fish species on the Bay of Biscay continental slope, NE Atlantic. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 257: 223–232.

Valadares, V. (2012) – *The morphotectonics offshore Southwest Iberia and the origin of the South Portuguese submarine canyons*. PhD thesis, Universidade de Lisboa, Lisboa, 346 pp.

Valadares, V., Roque C. & Terrinha P. (2009). Tectonic control and mass-wasting processes along S. Vicente Canyon (SW Iberia): evidences from multibeam bathymetry and seismic reflection data. *Geophysical Research Abstracts*, 11: 12685-12685.

Valdés, L. and A. Lavín, 2002. Dynamics and human impact in the Bay of Biscay: An ecological perspective. In Large Marine Ecosystems of the North Atlantic: Changing States and Sustainability. K. Shermann and H.R. Skjoldal (ed.). Elsevier Science B.V., Amsterdam, 293–320.

Van den Hove, S. & Moreau, V. (2007) *Ecosystems and Biodiversity in Deep Waters and High Seas: A scoping report on their socio-economy, management and governance*. Switzerland: UNEP-WCMC. 84 pp.

Van Rooij, D., De Mol, L., Le Guilloux, E., Wisshak, M., Huvenne, V., Moeremans, R. & Henriet, J. (2010). Environmental setting of deep-water oysters in the Bay of Biscay. *Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 57(12): 1561–1572.

Van Weering, T., de Stigter, H., Balzer, W., Epping, E., Graf, G., Hall, I., Helder, W., Khripounoff, A., Lohse, L., McCave, I., Thomsen, L. & Vangriesheim, A. (2001). Benthic dynamics and carbon fluxes on the NW European continental margin. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 48(14-15): 3191-3221.

Van Weering, T., de Stigter, H., Boer W. & de Haas H. (2002). Recent sediment transport and accumulation on the NW Iberian margin. *Progress in Oceanography* 52(2-4): 349-371.

Vanney, J. & Mougenot, D. (1981). La plate-forme continentale du Portugal et les provinces adjacentes: Analyse Geomorphologique. *Serviços Geologicos Portugal* 28: 145 pp.

Vanney, J. & Mougenot, D. (1990). Un canyon sous-marin du type “gouf”: le Canhão da Nazaré (Portugal). *Oceanologica Acta* 13: 13 – 14.

Varela M. (1992). Upwelling and phytoplankton ecology in Galician (NW Spain) rías and shelf waters. Bol. Inst. Esp. Oceanogr, 8, 57–74.

Vetter, E. & Dayton, P. (1998). Macrofaunal communities within and adjacent to a detritus-rich submarine canyon system. *Deep-Sea Research* 45: 25–54.

Vetter, E. & Dayton, P. (1998). Macrofaunal communities within and adjacent to a detritus-rich submarine canyon system. *Deep Sea Res. II* 45: 25–54.

Vetter, E. & Dayton, P. (1999). Organic enrichment by macrophyte detritus, and abundance patterns of megafaunal populations in submarine canyons. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 186: 137-148.

Vetter, E. (1994). Hot spots of benthic production. *Nature* 372, 47.

Vetter, E. (1995). Detritus-based patches of high secondary production in the nearshore benthos. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 120: 251–262.

Vetter, E., Smith, C. & De Leo, F. (2010). Hawaiian hotspots: enhanced mega-faunal abundance and diversity in submarine canyons on the oceanic islands of Hawaii. *Marine Ecology* 31: 183–199.

Viana, A., Faugères, J. & Stow, D. (1998). Bottom current controlled sand deposits: A review from modern shallow to deep water environments. *Sedimentary Geology*, 115: 53-80.

Vitorino, J., Oliveira, A., Jouanneau, J. & Drago, T. (2002). Winter dynamics on the northern Portuguese shelf. Part 2: bottom boundary layers and sediment dispersal. *Progress in Oceanography* 52: 155 – 170.

Watters, D., Yoklavich, M., Love, M. & Schrodeder, D. (2010). Assessing marine debris in deep seafloor habitats off California. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 60. 131–139.

Weaver, P., Billett, D., Boetius, A., Danovaro, R., Freiwald, A, Sibuet, M., (2004). Hotspot ecosystems research on Europes deep-ocean margins. *Oceanography* 17: 132–143.

Weaver, P., Wynn, R., Kenyon, N., Evans, J. (2000). Continental margin sedimentation, with special reference to the north-east Atlantic margin. *Sedimentology* 47: 239–256.

Webb, T., Vanden Berghe, E. & O’Dor, R. (2010) Biodiversity’s big wet secret: the global distribution of marine biological records reveals chronic underexploration of the deep pelagic ocean. *PLoS ONE* 5(8): e10223.

Werner A. (2010). *Pre-breeding period in Cory's shearwater: bird quality and foraging behavior* (unpublished Master's thesis, Universidade de Coimbra, Portugal). 82 p.

White, M., Bashmachnikov, I., Aristegui, J. & Martins, A. (2007) *Physical processes and seamount productivity*. In: Pitcher, T., Morato T., Hart, P., Clark, M., Haggan, N. & Santos, R. (Eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom, pp 65-84.

Whitmarsh, R. & Sawyer, D. (1996). *The ocean/continent transition beneath the Iberia Abyssal Plain and continental-rifting to seafloor-spreading processes*. Proceedings of the Ocean Drilling Program, 149(September), 713–736. https://doi.org/10.2973/odp.proc.sr.149.249.1996

Whitmarsh, R., Beslier, M., & Wallace, P. (1998). *Leg 173 introduction*. Proceedings of the Ocean Drilling Program, Initial Reports, Vol. 173, 173, 7–23.

Wilson, A., Kiriakoulakis, K., Raine, R., Gerritsen, H., Blackbird, S., Allcock, A. & White, M. (2015). Anthropogenic influence on sediment transport in the Whittard Canyon, NE Atlantic. *Marine pollution bulletin* 101(1): 320–329.

Wilson, R., Manatschal, G. & Wise, S. (2001). *Rifting along non-volcanic passive margins: stratigraphic and seismic evidence from the Mesozoic successions of the Alps and western Iberia*. Geological Society, London, Special Publications, 187(1), 429-452.

Wooster, W., Bakun, A. & McClain, D. (1976). The seasonal upwelling cycle along the eastern boundary of the north Atlantic. *Journal of Marine Research* 34: 131–141.

Worm, B., Hilborn, R., Baum, J., Branch, T., Collie, J., Costello, C., Fogarty, M., Fulton, E., Hutchings, J., Jennings, S., Jensen, O., Lotze, H., Mace, P., McClanahan, T., Minto, C., Palumbi, S., Parma, A., Ricard, D., Rosenberg, A., Watson, R. & Zeller, D. (2009) Rebuilding Global Fisheries. *Science* 325(5940): 578–585.

Würtz, M. (2012). *Mediterranean Submarine Canyons: Ecology and Governance*. Gland; Málaga: IUCN.

WWF (2001) *Implementation of the EU Habitats Directive Offshore: Natura 2000 sites for reefs and submerged seabanks*. Vol. II. Northeast Atlantic and North Sea, 87pp. World Wildlife Fund.

Wynn, R., Kenyon, N., Masson, D., Stow, D., Weaver, P. (2002). Characterization and recognition of deep-water channel-lobe transition zones. *American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin* 86: 1441–1462.

Wynn, R., Masson, D., Stow, D. & Weaver, P. (2000). The Northwest African slope apron: a modern analogue for deep-water systems with complex seafloor topography. *Marine and Petroleum Geology* 17(2): 253-265.

Xu, J. (2011). Measuring currents in submarine canyons: technological and scientific progress in the past 30 years. *Geosphere* 7: 868–876.

Xu, J., Noble, M., Eittreim, S., Rosenfeld, L., Schwing, F. & Pilskaln, C. (2002). Distribution and transport of suspended particulate matter in Monterey Canyon, California. *Marine Geology* 193: 129–149.

Yasui, M. (1986). *Albacore, Thunnus alalunga, pole-and-line fishery around the Emperor Seamounts. From Environment and Resources of Seamounts in the North Pacific*. R. Uchida, S. Hayashi, and G. Boehlert [eds]. NOAA Technical Report NMFS 43. September. pp 37 – 40.

Yoklavich, M., Greene, H., Cailliet, G., Sullivan, D., Lea, R. & Love, M. (2000). Habitat associations of deep-water rockfishes in a submarine canyon: an example of a natural refuge. *Fishery Bulletin* 98(3), 625–641.

Zaragosi, S., Auffret, G., Faugeres, J., Garlan, T., Pujol, C., Cortijo, E. (2000). Physiography and recent sediment distribution of the Celtic Deep-sea Fan, Bay of Biscay. *Marine Geology* 169: 207–237.

Maps and Figures

Location of area no. 4: West Iberian Canyons and Banks

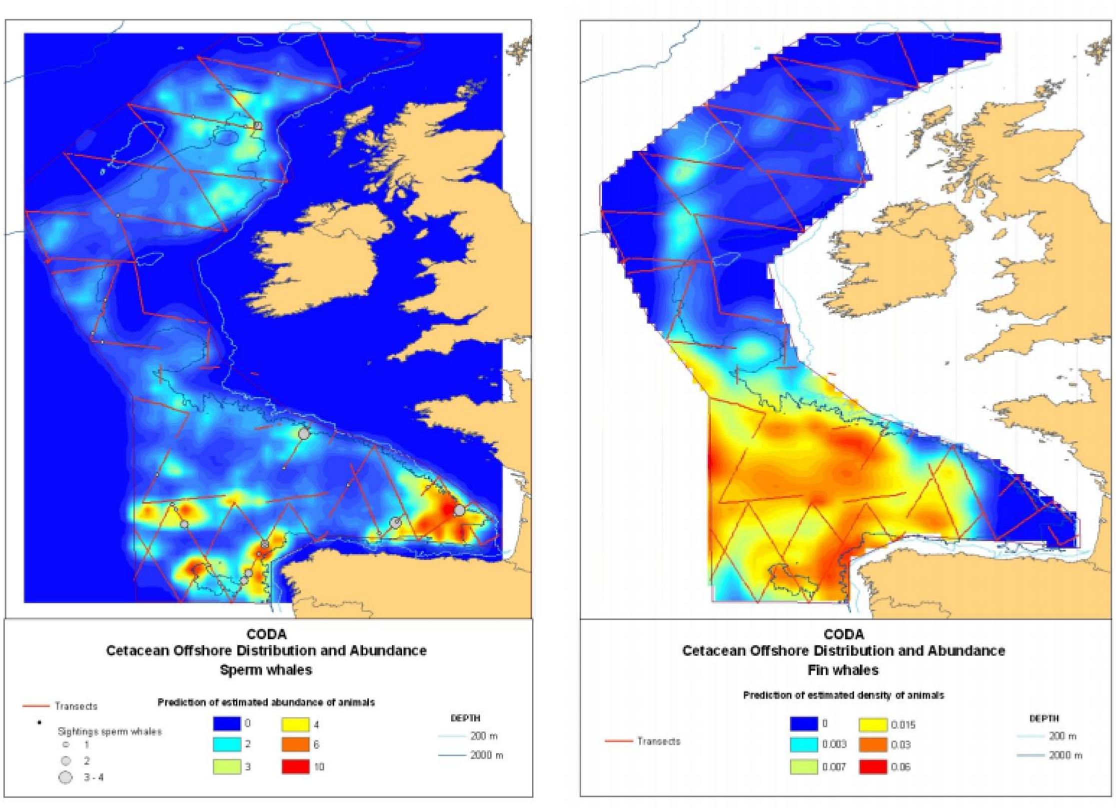


Figure 1. Modelled density estimates of sperm and fin whales in the European Atlantic from the 2007 Cetacean Offshore Distribution and Abundance surveys (CODA, 2008).

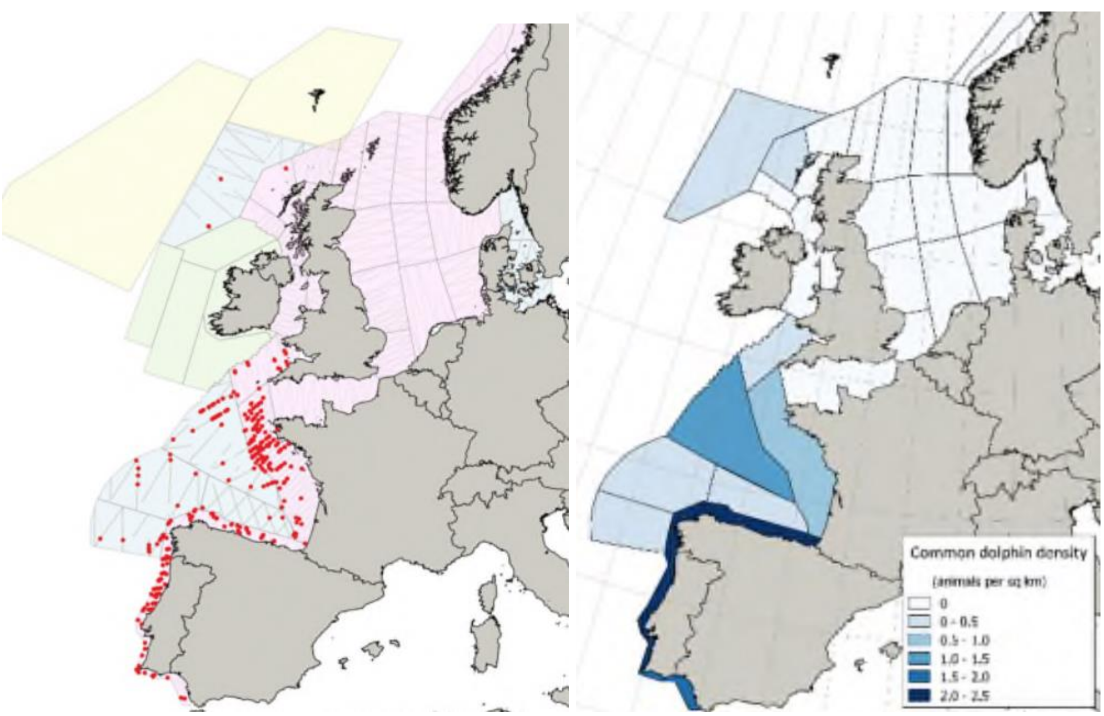


Figure 2. Sighting locations and coarse density estimates of common dolphins (*Delphinus delphis*) in the waters of the European Atlantic from the 2016 SCANS-III aerial and shipboard surveys (Hammond *et al*., 2017).

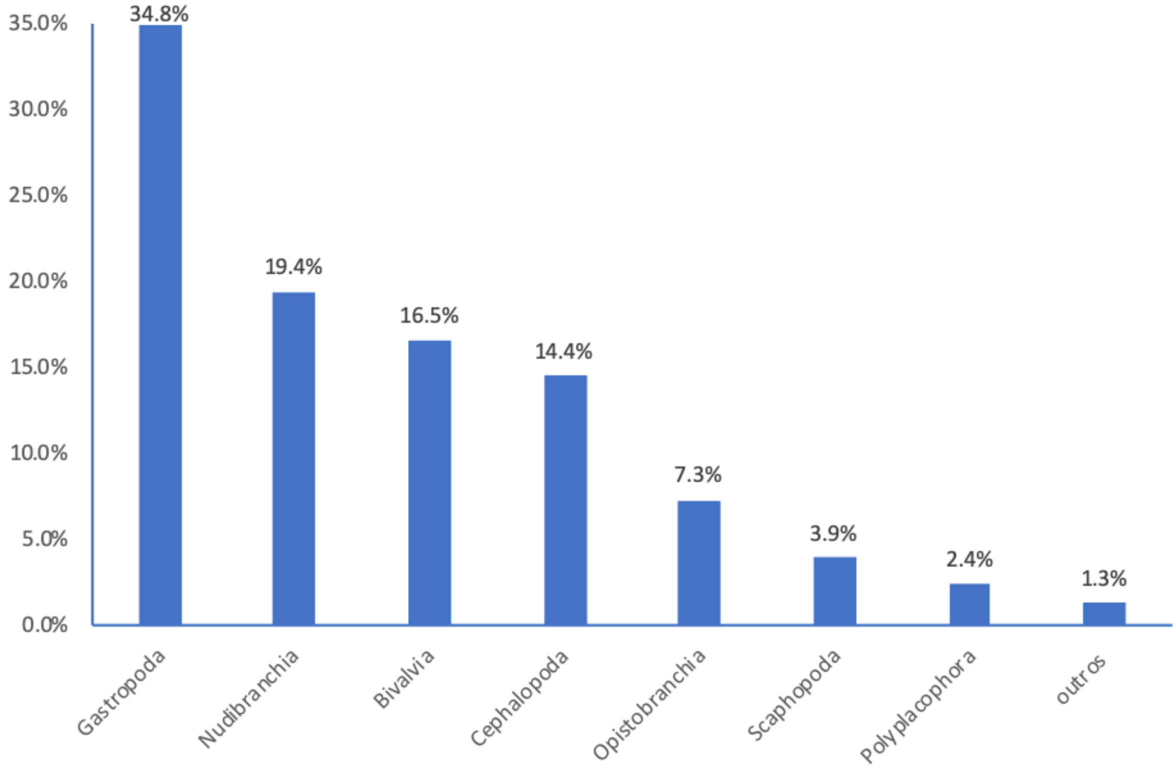


Figure 3. Relative frequency (per cent) of the species identified in the area described belonging to different taxa in the phylum Mollusca.

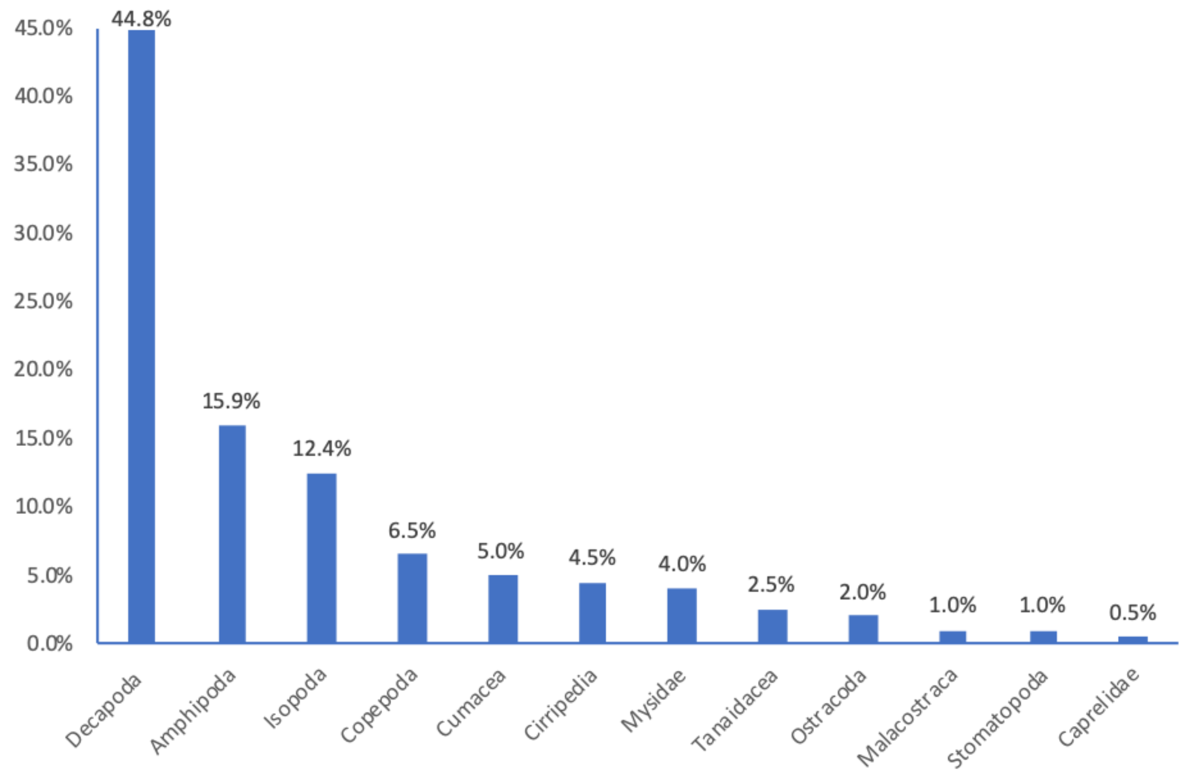


Figure 4. Relative frequency (per cent) of the species identified in the area described belonging to different taxa in the subphylum crustacea.

Rights and permissions

Only processed and analysed information is included here, and the results from these analyses are publicly available.

Area no. 5: Gulf of Cádiz

Abstract

The Gulf of Cádiz is a very structurally complex area, containing important geomorphological elements, such as large submarine canyons and seamounts. The hydrology is also complex due to the interaction between waters formed in the Atlantic and waters of Mediterranean origin. This area includes a variety of benthic habitats, both on soft and rocky bottoms, that are considered hotspots of biodiversity and which serve as various habitats for endangered, threatened and declining species. It is also a seasonal migratory pathway for large migratory pelagic species and is an important area for cetacean species, in particular.

Introduction

The Gulf of Cadiz is located in the North-East Atlantic Ocean, to the southwest of the Iberian Peninsula. Its eastern boundary is the Strait of Gibraltar, at the western border of the Mediterranean Sea. Its complex physiographic is characterized by irregular reliefs and a diversity of geomorphological features, including the continental shelf of the Spanish coast, channels, numerous mud volcanoes and the deep basin.

In the Gulf of Cádiz, oceanographic circulation follows an anti-cyclonic gyre (Pelegrí *et al*. 2005) and is controlled by the exchange of water masses through the Strait of Gibraltar: a surface flow of Atlantic origin enters the Mediterranean Sea, while another deep flow of Mediterranean origin circulates under the former towards the Atlantic Ocean.

The upper thermocline water mass is the North Atlantic Central Water (NACW), located at 300–600m water depth (Machín *et al*. 2006). Two intermediate water masses are found between 600 and 1,500 m: the low-salinity Antarctic Intermediate Water (AAIW) and the Mediterranean water mass out into the Atlantic (Mediterranean Outflow Water, MOW). Below 1,500 m occurs the North Atlantic Deep Water (NADW). MOW circulation is poorly constrained and flows in three main branches: an intermediate branch towards the northwest, a principal branch towards the west, and a southern branch that plunges as far as the Canary Islands. The latter has been reported at 800 m along the Moroccan margin (Pelegrí *et al*. 2005), possibly transported through eddies (Ambar *et al*. 1999).

The MOW exerts a greater influence on the bottom of the area as it circulates in contact with the friction surface of the seabed. This interaction with the seabed causes very particular small-scale hydrodynamics, producing subdivisions of the main flow as current energy is dissipated at greater depths.

Location

The area is located to the southwest of the Iberian Peninsula. Its eastern boundary is the Strait of Gibraltar, on the western border of the Mediterranean Sea. It is bounded by the parallels (37º 00'N and 35º 56'N) and meridians (6º 00'W and 7º 24'W).

Feature description of the area

- *The area includes a variety of benthic habitats that are considered hotspots of biodiversity, including mud volcanoes.*

Unique and significant geomorphological features are present in the continental margins, and they are known as mud volcanoes (León *et al*., 2012; Díaz del Río *et al*., 2014; Mascle *et al*., 2014). Mud volcanoes (MVs) are defined as conic edifices constructed by surface extrusion of cold fluids containing mud, saline water and/or gases expelled from a pressurized deep source upwards through structurally controlled conduits (e.g., Brown, 1990; Milkov, 2000; Dimitrov, 2002; Kopf 2002). This process causes substantial changes to the surface of deposits, significantly changing the existing reliefs and generating new carbonated structures. In this way, these bottoms become consolidated surfaces or surfaces of a mixed nature, composed of fragments of new carbonate rock created by the bacterial consumption of methane. The active process of the expulsion of fluid saturated gas through them causes high levels of biological diversity in the benthic ecosystems, which in turn determines the development of important deep-water habitats. The community associated with these bottoms is composed of symbiont species, such as polychaetes, bivalves and decapods, that excavate galleries, but also of other species not strictly linked to the emissions, and which are characteristic of the bathyal sludge, such as molluscs, sea pens, polychaetes and echinoderms. The communities of sea pens and excavator megafauna are widely distributed across different areas adjacent to the mud volcanoes, presenting high densities (as in the case of Tarshish and Pipoca volcanoes) and low densities (Anastasya) of sea pens (*Funiculina quadrangularis*, *Kophobelemnon stelliferum*, *Pennatula* cf. *aculeata*). Other species that are part of this community are the sponge *Thenea muricata*, molluscs, decapods, echinoderms and fish (Díaz del Río, 2014, ATLAS, 2019).

Many other benthic habitats occur in this area, both on soft and rocky bottoms. Among them, there are mud with mixed communities such as bamboo corals (*Isidella elongate)*, gorgonian (*Radicipes fragilis)*, hexactinellid sponges (*Pheronema carpenter)*, crinoids of the genus *Leptometra*, cnidarians (*Flabellum chunii)*; and rocky bottoms with aggregations of gorgonians (*Acanthogorgia*, *Swiftia*, *Gymnosarca bathybius*, *Placogorgia* spp., *Callogorgia verticillata*, *Viminella flagellum*, *Paramuricea clavata*), black corals (*Leiopathes*, *Stichopathes*, *Anthipathella*) and scleratinians (*Madrepora oculata* dominates, *Lophelia pertusa* and *Dendrophyllia cornigera*) (e.g., Aguilar *et al*., 2010; Cúrdia *et al*., 2012; Fonseca et a., 2013; Díaz del Río, 2014; Boavida *et al*., 2016) as well as assemblages of the red coral (*Corallium rubrum*) deep reefs (Boavida *et al*., 2016).

- *The area includes habitats for endangered, threatened and declining species.*

Many species recorded in the area are considered endangered, threatened and/or declining species, according to, for example, the IUCN, OSPAR, ICES and the EU HABITAT DIRECTIVE.

Table 1, below, shows a list of species that are considered endangered, threatened and/or declining by different laws and conventions. Additionally, some species that are not currently protected have been proposed for inclusion (Aguilar *et al*., 2010):

Especie	Figura de Protección	
Plantas		
Zostera marina	Berna (Anexo I)	Barcom (Anexo II)*
Feofíceas		
Cystoseira usneoides	Barcom (Anexo II)*	OCEANA
Rodofíceas		
Lithophyllum cf. *stictaeforme*	OCEANA	
Poríferos		
Aplysina aerophoba	Barcom (Anexo II)*	OCEANA
Cnidarios		
Anemonia sulcata	Hexacoralarios	OCEANA
Caryophyllia cf. *smithii*	CITES (Apéndice II)	
Dendrophyllia cornigera	CITES (Apéndice II)	VU-Andalucia
Eunicella gazella	VU-Andalucia	OCEANA
Leptogorgia sarmentosa	OCEANA	
Caryophyllia sp.	CITES (Apéndice II)	
Dendrophyllia ramea	CITES (Apéndice II)	VU-Andalucía
Eunicella verrucosa	VU-Lista Roja, VU-Andalucía	
Parazoanthus axinellae	Hexacoralario	
cf. *Polycyathus muellerae*	CITES (Apéndice II)	
Briozoos		
Pentapora fascialis	VU-Andalucia	
Crustáceos		
Maja squinado	Berna (Apéndice III) Barcom (Anexo III)	VU-Andalucía
Moluscos		
Ostrea edulis	OSPAR (Reg II)	
Equinodermos		
Paracentrotus lividus	Berna (Apéndice III)	Barcom (Anexo III)
Peces		
Accipenser sturio	DH (Anexo II y IV)	
Argyrosomus regius	OCEANA	
Engraulis encrasicholus	OCEANA, EN-Baleares*	
Gadus morhua	OSPAR (Reg II, III)	VU- Lista Roja
Hippocampus hippocampus	CITES (Apéndice II) OSPAR (Reg. II, III, IV, V)	VU- Lista Roja

Especie	Figura de Protección	
Pagrus pagrus	EN- Lista Roja	
Raja asterias	LC- Lista Roja	
Syngnathus abaster	CR-Baleares*	
Thunnus thynnus	OSPAR (Reg. V) DD- Lista Roja	Barcom (Anexo III) Unclos (Anexo I)
Torpedo torpedo	DD-Lista Roja, CR-Baleares*	
Alosa alosa	DH (Anexo II y V) OSPAR (Reg. II, III, IV)	Berna (Apéndice III) Barcom (Anexo III)*
Anguilla anguilla	Barcom (Anexo III)*	
Euthynnus alleteratus	Unclos (Anexo I)	
Galeorhinus galeus	Barcom (Anexo III)* VU- Lista Roja	Unclos (Anexo I)
Mugil cephalus	EN-Baleares*	
Mustelus mustelus	Barcom (Anexo III)*	LR- Lista Roja, EN-Baleares*
Pteromylaeus bovinus	DD- Lista Roja	
Raja clavata	LRnt- Lista Roja,	OSPAR (Reg II)*
Rhinobatos cemiculus	Barcom (Anexo III)	EN- Lista Roja
Sphyrna sp.	Barcom (Anexo III)* EN- Lista Roja	Unclos (Anexo I)
Torpedo marmorata	DD- Lista Roja	OCEANA
Xiphias gladius	Barcom (Anexo III) DD- Lista Roja	Unclos (Anexo I)
Alosa fallax	DH (Anexo II y V) OSPAR (Reg. II, III, IV)	Berna (Apéndice III) Barcom (Anexo III)
Aphia minuta	EN-Baleares*	
Atherina boyeri	DD- Lista Roja	
Echiichthys vipera	EN-Baleares*	
Gymnura altavela	Barcom (Anexo II)*	VU- Lista Roja
Hippocampus guttulatus	CITES (Apéndice II) OSPAR (Reg. II, III, IV, V) DD- Lista Roja	Berna (Apéndice II-Med) Barcom (Anexo II)*
Rhinobatos rhinobatos	Barcom (Anexo III)*	EN-Red List
Squatina squatina	Ospar (Reg. II, III, IV) CR- Lista Roja	Berna (Anexo III) Barcom (Anexo II)*
Torpedo nobiliana	DD- Lista Roja	
Umbrina cirrhosa	Berna (Apéndice III)	Barcom (Anexo III)*
Cetáceos		
Balaenoptera acutorostrata	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) LC-Lista Roja
Balaenoptera edeni	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) DD- Lista Roja
Balaenoptera physalus	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) EN-Lista Roja.
Globicephala melas	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) DD-Lista Roja
Grampus griseus	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) LC-Lista Roja
Delphinus delphis	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) LC-Lista Roja

Especie	Figura de Protección	
Stenella coeruleoalba	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) LC-Lista Roja
Phocoena phocoena	DH (Anexo II y IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) LC-Lista Roja
Physeter macrocephalus	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) VU-Lista Roja
Mesoplodon europaeus	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) DD-Lista Roja
Tursiops truncatus	DH (Anexo II y IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) LC-Lista Roja
Kogia breviceps	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) DD-Lista Roja
Megaptera novaeangliae	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) LC-Lista Roja
Orcinus orca	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) DD-Lista Roja
Kogia simus	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) DD-Lista Roja
Mesoplodon densirostris	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I y II) Berna (Apéndice II y III)	Unclos (Anexo I) DD-Lista Roja
Reptiles		
Caretta caretta	DH (Anexo II y IV) CMS (Apéndice I)	Barcom (Anexo II)* EN-Red List y Andalucía
Dermochelys coriacea	DH (Anexo IV) CMS (Apéndice I)	Unclos (Anexo I) CR-Red List/Andalucía
Chelonia mydas	DH (Anexo II y IV) CMS (Apéndice I)	Barcom (Anexo II)* EN-Red List y Andalucía
Eretmochelys imbricata	DH (Anexo IV)	CR-Lista roja, EN-Andalucía

<u>**Directiva Hábitats**</u> **(DH).**
Anexo II: especies para cuya protección se requieren zonas especiales de conservación/ **Anexo IV**: especies que requieren una protección estricta.

<u>**Convenio de Berna**</u> **(Berna).**
Apéndice I: listado de especies de flora estrictamente protegidas./ **Apéndice II**: listado de especies de fauna estrictamente protegidas/ **Apéndice III**: listado de especies de fauna protegidas.

<u>**Convenio de Barcelona**</u> **(Barcom).**
Anexo II: listado de especies en peligro o amenazadas/ **Anexo III**: lista de especies cuya explotación debe estar regulada. (*Este convenio es para el Mediterráneo, pero la proximidad e influencias en el golfo de Cádiz requieren su mención).

<u>**Convenio de Especies Migratorias**</u> **(CMS).**
Apéndice I: especies migratorias en peligro/ **Apéndice II**: especies migratorias en estado desfavorable que deben ser objeto de acuerdos.

<u>**CITES**</u>.
Apéndice I: listado de especies cuyo comercio internacional está prohibido/ **Apéndice II:** listado de especies cuyo comercio internacional está regulado.

<u>**Lista Roja de UICN**</u>.
CR-Peligro Crítico/ **EN**-Peligro/ **VU**-Vulnerable/ **NT**-Casi amenazado/ **LC**- Preocupación menor/ **DD**-Datos insuficientes.

<u>**OSPAR**</u>.
Indica las Regiones OSPAR donde la especie está en riesgo. El golfo de Cádiz está incluido en Región IV (*no obstante se indican Regiones adyacentes que pueden estar relacionadas).

<u>**OCEANA**</u>.
Especies consideradas de importancia, pero no siempre incluidas en convenios o listados de protección.

<u>**United Nations Convention on the Law Of the Sea**</u> **(UNCLOS).**
Ley del Mar. **Anexo I:** Especies altamente migratorias.

Table 1: Endangered, threatened and/or declining species in the area

The following habitats are also endangered or threatened and are considered by different laws and conventions:

<u>OSPAR Habitats</u>
Coral gardens
Deep-sea sponge aggregations
Seamounts
Sea-Pen & Burrowing Megafauna Communities

<u>Habitat Directive Habitats</u>
1170 Reefs
1180 Submarine structures made by leaking gases

- *The area is important for cetaceans.*

This Atlantic–Mediterranean water interface is considered a biogeographic boundary (Sanjuán *et al*. 1994). Nevertheless, there is substantial transport of organisms across this ecotone, and different cetaceans species are present in the waters of the Gulf of Cádiz and Strait of Gibraltar: short-beaked common dolphins (*Delphinus delphis*), striped dolphins (*Stenella coeruleoalba*), bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*), long-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala melas*), sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*) and killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) (De Stephanis *et al*., 2008).

During spring and summer this area provides essential feeding and nursing habitat for killer whales (*Orcinus orca*). The small seasonal resident population of 39 killer whales, which are genetically and ecologically distinct from killer whales in the Atlantic Ocean, use the area, and the same individuals have been re-sighted annually from 1999 to 2016. They belong to five social pods, which were stable over the study period (Esteban *et al*., 2014; 2016). Esteban *et al*. (2014) showed, using model predictions, that killer whale occurrence in the Strait is related to the migration of their main prey, Atlantic bluefin tuna (*Thunnus thynnus*). In spring, whale distribution was restricted to shallow waters off the western coast of the Strait, where all pods were observed actively hunting tuna. In summer, the whales were observed towards the shallow central waters of the Strait. A relatively new feeding strategy has been observed among two of the five pods. These two pods interact with an artisanal drop-line fishery. Pods predating the fishery had access to larger tuna in comparison with pods that were actively hunting. The Strait of Gibraltar killer whales are socially and ecologically different from individuals in the Canary Islands, where genetic research has indicated that there is little or no female-mediated gene migration between these areas (Esteban *et al*., 2016).

The Strait of Gibraltar subpopulation of killer whales is considered vulnerable in the Spanish National Catalogue of Endangered Species but may be considered endangered based upon other monitoring studies. In 2016 the area of the Strait of Gibraltar and Gulf of Cádiz was classified as an Important Marine Mammal Area (IMMA) resulting from the assessment of experts within the IUCN joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammals Taskforce (IUCN MMPATF, 2017; IUCN MMPATF, 2019).

- *The area is also a seasonal migratory pathway for a large migratory pelagic species: Atlantic bluefin tuna* (Thunnus thynnus).

The Atlantic bluefin tuna (*Thunnus thynnus)* (Linnaeus, 1758) is the largest of all tunas (ICCAT 2006–2014) and one of the most highly prized fish species in the world (Ottolenghi *et al*., 2004). In spring, Atlantic bluefin tuna perform long seasonal reproductive migrations between feeding areas in the Atlantic Ocean and spawning grounds, either in the Gulf of Mexico (western stock) or the Mediterranean Sea (eastern stock). Like all bluefin tuna stocks, both stocks of the Atlantic bluefin tuna are threatened by overfishing.

The bluefin tuna reproductive season in the Mediterranean Sea extends from May to July. In correlation with a progressive east-to-west increase of the sea surface temperature, the spawning process begins in the Levantine Sea, shifts to the southern Tyrrhenian-Malta region and eventually to the Balearic Sea (Heinisch *et al*., 2008). Like the eastern spawning area, the reproductive season is known to last approximately three months (April-June) in the Gulf of Mexico (Baglin *et al*., 1982).

In addition, the Strait of Gibraltar has been identified as a transiting area for satellite-tagged fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) moving between the Gulf of Cádiz and the Ligurian Sea area of the northern Mediterranean (Gauffier *et al*. 2009,2018; Cotte *et al*., 2011; Notarbartolo di Sciara *et al*., 2016).

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

The waters of the Gulf of Cádiz are impacted by fishing, shipping and pollution.

Fishing activities: probably the fishing activity that has the greatest impact is bottom trawling, which is responsible for the destruction of some ecosystems. This type of non-selective fishing causes changes in the composition of ecosystems, affecting the long-term productivity of the fishery. The physical consequences of bottom trawling are the alteration and/or direct destruction of habitat and the re-suspension of sediment, increasing turbidity and changing the geochemical composition of the deposits.

Shipping: due to its proximity to the Strait of Gibraltar and the Cape of San Vicente there are important navigation routes that pass over this area, with a high intensity of large-tonnage vessels that mainly transport oil and containers. Maritime traffic is an important source of pollution both because of the potential risk of accidental spillage and because of the intense noise that it generates.

- Water pollution: the main sources of pollution are ships and cities located on the coast (mostly in summer when the intensity of tourism in some coastal areas increases).

Conversely, some actions to protect the area and to ensure the conservation of its biodiversity are being carried out, and one specific area has been protected in accordance with international and Spanish regulations and conventions: "The Gulf of Cádiz mud volcanoes" is located in the bathymetric range between 300 and 1,200 m, placing it on the upper middle part of the continental slope and the southern Iberian continental margin.

Three basic types of habitats have been identified, catalogued and described within the generic Habitats Directive habitat type 1180: (1) the "Mud volcanoes" subtype, which is widespread in the area; (2) the subtype "Collapsed depressions", located next to the volcanoes Anastasya, Pipoca, Hesperides, Almazan, Aveiro and San Petersburg, and (3) the "Pockmarks" subtype, which is widespread throughout the area, especially in the south, being a very diffuse phenomenon in the more distal areas of the slope (112 locations have been mapped). Other habitats at different levels, within the generic 1180 habitat type, include the "Structures produced by leaking gases with carbonate substrates of chemosynthetic origin", which is extensive in the area of gas emission, as well as the designation "Structures produced by leaking gases with chemosynthetic species", which has been identified in the volcanoes Albolote, Gazul, Anastasya, Pipoca, Tarsis, Hesperides, Almazan, Aveiro and St. Petersburg.

In addition, and of equal importance, nine subtypes of habitats linked to the habitat type 1170 "Reefs" have been identified. These are: (1) Bathyal rock with *Acanthogorgia hirsuta*, on Pipoca; (2) reef of deep coral *Lophelia pertusa* and/or *Madrepora oculata*, on bottoms of carbonate rocks and accumulations of compressed dead coral on the slopes of the Gazul mud volcano, which presents significantly more active hydrodynamics than in other areas of the SCI, as well as a low level of dragnet fishing activity; (3) deep rocky bottoms with antipataria, of the genus *Leiopathes*, *Antipathes* and *Stichopathes*, have been found in the environment of the volcanoes Gazul, Hesperides and Almazan; (4) bathyal rock with large hexactinellid sponges (*Asconema setubalense*), in the surroundings of Chica and Enmedio; (5) bathyal sedimentary rock with *Bebryce mollis*, found only on Gazul; (6) bathyal rock with *Callogorgia verticillata* in specific areas of the Chica complex; (7) bathyal rock with *Callogorgia* and Demospongiae, in the area around Enmedio; (8) deep rocky bottoms with aggregations of Demospongiae, identified in Gazul, Magallanes, Enano, Enmedio and Chica, and (9) deposits of dead coral with remains of escleractinias (e.g., *Lophelia pertusa*, *Madrepora oculata*, *Dendrophyllia alternata*), colonized by small octocorals (e.g., *Swiftia*, *Bebryce*, *Placogorgia*) scattered around the volcanoes Albolote, Gazul, Hesperides, Almazan and Aveiro. Between them, these reef habitats occupy a surface area of approximately 2,063 hectares.

The management plan for the area is being developed in the framework of the INTEMARES project.

Apart from conservation projects, every year the Instituto Español de Oceanografía (IEO) carries out a bottom trawling survey on the Gulf of Cádiz named ARSA. This survey aims to provide data for the assessment of demersal commercial fish species and benthic ecosystems on the area. This survey is part of an international effort to monitor marine ecosystems and is coordinated by the International Bottom Trawling Surveys (IBTS) working group of the International Council for the Exploration of the Sea (ICES).

Assessment of area no. 5, Gulf of Cádiz, against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA	Description	Ranking of criterion relevance

Criteria (Annex I to decision IX/20)	(Annex I to decision IX/20)	(please mark one column with an X)			
		No information	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique ("the only one of its kind"), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.				X

Explanation for ranking

Existence of unusual and restricted geomorphological structures (pockmarks and mud volcanoes), and the presence of chemosynthetic processes and rare species (such as molluscs and polychaetes associated with the fluid emissions and with submarine structures made by leaking gases) characterize the area (Díaz del Río, 2014, ATLAS, 2019). A rare eucalliacid crustacean, belonging to the genus Calliax, and other species, such as the polychaete *Siboglinum* sp., the molluscs *Solemya elarraichensis*, *Lucinoma asapheus* and *Acharax gadirae* are typical of these anoxic muddy substrates with low potential redox and living in symbiosis with chemotrophic bacteria (Rueda *et al*., 2012; García Raso *et al*., 2018).

Special importance for life-history stages of species	Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.				X

Explanation for ranking

An important area for cetaceans and a seasonal migratory pathway for large migratory pelagic species: short-beaked common dolphins (*Delphinus delphis*), striped dolphins (*Stenella coeruleoalba*), bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*), long-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala melas*), sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*) and killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) (De Stephanis *et al*., 2008).

Specifically, during spring and summer this area provides essential feeding and nursing habitat for killer whales (*Orcinus orca*). The small seasonal resident population of 39 killer whales, which are genetically and ecologically distinct from killer whales in the Atlantic Ocean, use the area, and the same individuals have been re-sighted annually from 1999 to 2016. They belong to five social pods (Esteban *et al*., 2014; 2016).

Moreover, in spring Atlantic bluefin tuna, *Thunnus thynnus* (Linnaeus, 1758), perform long seasonal reproductive migrations between feeding areas in the Atlantic Ocean and spawning grounds, either in the Gulf of Mexico (western stock) or the Mediterranean Sea (eastern stock). The Gulf of Cádiz is one of the regions located on the migratory pathway between the western Mediterranean and the North Atlantic Ocean (Aranda *et al*., 2013).

In addition, the Strait of Gibraltar has been identified as a transiting area for satellite tagged fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) moving between the Gulf of Cádiz and the Ligurian Sea area of the northern Mediterranean (Gauffier *et al*. 2009, Cotte *et al*., 2011, Notarbartolo di Sciara *et al*. 2016, Gauffier *et al*. 2018).

Importance for	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of				

threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				X
Explanation for ranking More than 60 species (see Table 1) considered "threatened, endangered or declining", based on different international regulations and agreements, are present in the area described, including benthic species as well as marine mammals, fish and reptiles (Aguilar *et al*., 2010; Díaz del Río, 2014).					
Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				X
Explanation for ranking Many Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems, characterized by sessile habitat-forming species with long-life cycles (e.g., coral reefs, gorgonian forest, sponge grounds) are present in the area and are vulnerable and sensitive to fishing activities: communities of sea pens (*Funiculina quadrangularis*, *Kophobelemnon stelliferum*, *Pennatula* cf. *aculeata*) and bamboo corals (*Isidella elongata*), which are widely distributed across different areas adjacent to the mud volcanoes, as well as other habitats, such as cold-water corals reefs (*Madrepora oculata*, *Lophelia pertusa*, *Dendrophyllia cornigera*), gorgonian gardens (e.g., *Callogorgia verticillata*, *Acanthogorgia hirsuta*, *Swiftia pallida*, *Bebryce mollis*, *Eunicella verrucosa*) and aggregations of antipatharia (*Leiopathes*, *Stichopathes*, *Anthipathella*) (Aguilar *et al*., 2010; Díaz del Río, 2014; ICES, 2019).					
Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.				X
Explanation for ranking The productivity of the area is reflected in the abundance of marine resources. Productivity is related to the bathymetric characteristics of its continental shelf and slope, the existence of a warm-temperate climate, the presence of oceanographic processes, and, importantly, the nutrient enrichment delivered by the outflows of important rivers such as Guadalquivir and Guadiana (Vila *et al*., 2004; Ramos *et al*., 2012).					
Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X
Explanation for ranking The highly complex area includes a great variety of geomorphological features (e.g., submarine canyons, seamounts, banks and mounds, mud volcanoes, slope affected by smaller rock outcrops) and hence, a great diversity of benthic niches available. Numerous vulnerable marine ecosystems have been recorded					

in the area using a remotely operated vehicle (Aguilar *et al*., 2010; Díaz del Río, 2014).

There are mainly three distinct communities that should be highlighted in the area: those associated with mud volcanoes and their emissions, those associated with soft substrates and those associated with rocky bottoms.

1. Communities of polychaetes (*Siboglinum* sp.), molluscs (*Solemya elarraichensis, Lucinoma asapheus* and *Acharax gadirae*) and crustacean (Calliax sp.) are associated with mud volcanoes and their emissions (Díaz del Río, 2014, ATLAS, 2019).
2. Communities of sea pens (*Funiculina quadrangularis*, *Kophobelemnon stelliferum*, *Pennatula* cf. *aculeata*), bamboo coral gardens (*Isidella elongate*) and other gorgonians (*Radicipes fragilis*), scleractinians (*Flabellum chunii*) and sponges (*Thenea muricata*, *Pheronema carpenteri*) are widely distributed across soft bottoms in areas adjacent to these structures such as (Díaz del Río, 2014, ATLAS, 2019).
3. Communities made up of gorgonians (*Acanthogorgia*, *Swiftia*, *Gymnosarca bathybius*, *Placogorgia* spp., *Callogorgia verticillata*, *Viminella flagellum, Paramuricea clavata*), black corals (*Leiopathes*, *Stichopathes*, *Anthipathella*) and scleratinians (*Madrepora oculata* dominates, *Lophelia pertusa* and *Dendrophyllia cornigera*) are associated with rocky bottoms across the entire area (e.g., Aguilar *et al*., 2010; Cúrdia *et al*., 2012; Fonseca *et al*., 2013; Díaz del Río, 2014).

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.		X		

Explanation for ranking
This area is an important fishing ground with a high diversity and high productivity of exploited species (Sobrino *et al*., 1994). The exploitation of fisheries composed mainly of trawlers, purse seiners and artisanal boats is intensive in the Gulf of Cádiz, with all fleets exerting high impacts on most living groups of the ecosystem. Therefore, the Gulf of Cádiz is a notably stressed ecosystem, displaying characteristics of a heavily exploited area (Torres *et al*., 2010).

References

Abascal, F.J., medina, A., De la Serna, J.M., Godoy, D., Aranda, G., 2016. Fisheries Oceanography, 25:1, 54-66.

Aguilar, R., Pardo, E., Cornax, M.J., García, S., Ubero, J., 2010. Doñana y el Golfo de Cádiz. Propuesta para la ampliación del área marina protegida. OCEANA.

Ambar, I., Armi, L., Bower, A., Ferreira, T., 1999. Some aspects of time variability of the Mediterranean Water off south Portugal. Deep- Sea Res I 46:1109–1136.

Aranda, G., Abascal, F.J., Varela, J.L., Medina, A., 2013. Spawning Behaviour and Post-Spawning Migration Patterns of Atlantic Bluefin Tuna (*Thunnus thynnus*) Ascertained from Satellite Archival Tags. PLoS ONE 8(10): e76445. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0076445

ATLAS (2019) Deliverable 3.3 Biodiversity, biogeography and GOODS classification system under current climate conditions and future IPCC scenarios.

Baglin, R.E. Jr. 1982. Reproductive biology of western Atlantic bluefin tuna. Fish Bull 80: 121-134 .

Boavida, J., Paulo, D., Aurelle, D., Arnaud-Haond, S., Marschal, C., Reed, J., Gonçalves, J.M.S., Serrao, E.A., 2016. A Well-Kept Treasure at Depth: Precious Red Coral Rediscovered in Atlantic Deep Coral Gardens (SW Portugal) after 300 Years. PLoS ONE 11(1): e0147228. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0147228

Boavida, J., Assis, J., Silva, I., Serrao, E.A., 2016. Overlooked habitat of a vulnerable gorgonian revealed in the Mediterranean and Eastern Atlantic by ecological niche modelling. Scientific Reports, 6:36460. DOI: 10.1038/srep36460

Brown, K.M., 1990. The nature and hydrogeologic significance of mud diapirs and diatremes for accretionary systems. J Mar Geophys Res 95(6):8969–8982.

Cotte, C., Ovidio, F., Chaigneau, A., Levy, M., Taupier-Letage, I., Mate, B. & Guinet, C (2011) Scale-dependent interactions of Mediterranean whales with marine dynamics. Limnology and Oceanography. 56. 10.4319/lo.2011.56.1.0219.

Cúrdia, J., Monteiro, P., Alfonso, C.M.L., Santos, M.N., Cunha, M.R., Gonçalves, J.M.S., 2012. Spatial and depth-associated distribution patterns of shallow gorgonians in the Algarve coast (Portugal, NE Atlantic). Helgol Mar Res DOI 10.1007/s10152-012-0340-1

De la Torriente, A., Aguilar, R., 2011. OSPAR Workshop on the improvement of the definitions of habitats on the OSPAR list. Background document for discussion: "Coral gardens", "Deep sea sponge aggregations" and "Seapen and burrowing megafauna communities". Bergen, Norway, 20-21 October.

De Stephanis, R., Cornulier, T., Verborgh, P., Salazar Sierra, J., Pérez Gimeno, N., Guinet, C., 2008. Summer spatial distribution of cetaceans in the Strait of Gibraltar in relation to the oceanographic context. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 353: 275-288.

Diaz del Rio, Victor, *et al*. Volcanes de fango del golfo de Cádiz, Proyecto LIFE + INDEMARES. Ed. Fundacion Biodiversidad del Ministerio de Agricultura, Alimentacion y Medio Ambiente. 2014.

Dimitrov LI (2002) Mud volcanoes-the most important pathway for degassing deeply buried sediments. Earth Sci Rev 59:49–76.

Esteban, R., Verborgh, P., Gauffier, P. 2016. Dynamics of killer whale, bluefin tuna and human fisheries in the Strait of Gibraltar. Biological Conservation 194:31-38.

Esteban, R., Verborgh, P., Gauffier, P. 2016. Using a multi-disciplinary approach to identify a critically endangered killer whale management unit. Ecological Indicators 66, 291-300.

Esteban, R., Verborgh, P., Gauffier, P. 2016. Conservation Status of Killer Whales, *Orcinus Orca*, in the Strait of Gibraltar. In: G. Notarbartolo di Sciara, M. Podestà, B.E. Curry (Editors), Mediterranean marine mammal ecology and conservation. Advances in Marine Biology 75:141-172. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/bs.amb.2016.07.001

Esteban, R., Verborgh, P., Gauffier, P. 2014. Identifying key habitat and seasonal patterns of a critically endangered population of killer whales. Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom. doi:10.1017/S002531541300091X

Fonseca, P., Abrantes, F., Aguilar, R., Campos, A., Cunha, M., Ferreira, D., Fonseca, T.P., García, S., Henriques, V., Machado, M., Mechó, A., Relvas, P., Rodriguez, A.F., Salgueiro, E., Vieira, R., Weetman, A., Castro, M., 2013. A deep-water crinoid Leptometra celtica bed off the Portuguese south coast. Mar Biodiv DOI 10.1007/s12526-013-0191-2

García Raso, J.E., García Muñoz, J.E., Mateo-Ramírez, A., López-González, N., Fernández-Salas, L.M., Rueda, J.L., 2018. Decapod crustaceans Eucalliacidae in chemoautotrophic bathyal bottoms of the Gulf of Cadiz (Atlantic Ocean), environmental characteristics and associated communities.

Gauffier, P., Verborgh, P., Andréu, E., Esteban, R., Medina, B., Gallego, P., de Stephanis, R., 2009. An update on fin whales (Balaenoptera physalus) migration through intense maritime traffic in the Strait of Gibraltar. Paper SC/61/BC6 presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission, May 2009, Funchal.

Gauffier, P., Verborgh, P., Giménez, J., Esteban, R., Sierra, J., & Stephanis, R, 2018. Contemporary migration of fin whales through the Strait of Gibraltar. Marine Ecology Progress Series. 588. 215-228. 10.3354/meps12449.

Heinisch, G., Corriero, A., Medina, A., Abascalm F.J., de la Serna, J.M. *et al*., 2008. Spatial-temporal pattern of bluefin tuna (*Thunnus thynnus* L. 1758) gonad maturation across the Mediterranean Sea. Mar Biol 154: 623-630. doi:10.1007/s00227-008-0955-6.

ICES, 2019. New information regarding the impact of fisheries on other components of the ecosystem. ICES Special Request Advice Ecoregions in the Northeast Atlantic and adjacent sea.

IUCN Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force, 2019. The IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN IMMA). Made available under agreement on terms and conditions of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible via the IMMA e-Atlas http://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas/

IUCN Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force, 2017. Final Report of the Workshop: First IMMA Regional Workshop for the Mediterranean, Chania, Greece, 24-28 October2016, 29pp.

Kopf, A. (2002) Significance of mud volcanism. Rev Geophys 40:1–52.

León, R., Somoza, L., Medialdea, T., Vázquez, J.T., González, F.J., López-González, N., Casas, D., Mata, M.P., Fernández-Puga, M.C., Giménez-Moreno, C.J., Díaz del Río, V., 2012. New discoveries of mud volcanoes on the Moroccan Atlantic continental margin (Gulf of Cádiz): morpho-structural characterization. Geo-Mar Letters DOI 10.1007/s00367-012-0275-1.

Machín F., Pelegrí, J.L., Marrero-Díaz, A., Laiz, I., Ratsimandresy, A.W., 2006. Nearsurface circulation in the southern Gulf of Cádiz. Deep-Sea Res II 53(11/13):1161–1181.

Mascle, J., Mary, F., Praeg, D., Brosolo, L., Camera, L., Ceramicola, S., Durpé, S., 2014. Distribution and geological control of mud volcanoes and other fluid/free gas seepage features in the Mediterranean Sea and nearby Gulf of Cadiz. Geo-Marine Letters, 34, Issue 2-3: 89-110.

Milkov, A.V., 2000. Worldwide distribution of submarine mud volcanoes and associated gas hydrates. Mar Geol 167:29–42.

Notarbartolo di Sciara, *et al*. 2016. Fin Whales, *Balaenoptera physalus*: At Home in a
Changing Mediterranean Sea? Advances in Marine Biology, 75: 75-101.

Ottolenghi, F., Silvestri, C., Giordano, P., Lovatelli, A. and New, M.B., 2004. Capture-Based Aquaculture. The Fattening of Eels, Groupers, Tunas and Yellowtails. Rome: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 308 pp.

Pelegrí, J.L., Marrero-Díaz, A., Ratsimandresy, A., Antoranz, A., Cisneros- Aguirre, J., Gordo, C., Grísolia, D., Hernández-Guerra, A., Láiz, I., Martínez, A., Parrilla, G., Pérez-Rodriguez, P., Rodríguez-Santana, A., Sangrà, P., 2005. Hydrographic cruises off northwest Africa: the Canary Current and the Cape Ghir region. J Mar Syst 54: 39–63.

Ramos, F., Gil, J., Torres, M.A., Silva, L., Vila, Y., Sánchez, R., Jiménez, M.P., Baldó, F., Fernández-Salas, F., Rueda, L.M., Díaz del Rio, V., Vázquez, J.T., LópezGonzález, N., Lens, S., Bellas, J., Besada, V., Vinas, ˜ L., González-Quijano, A., Franco, A., Fumega, J., 2012. Estrategias Marinas. Demarcación Marina Sudatlántica. Parte I. Marco General: Características de la demarcación marina. Ministerio de Agricultura, Alimentación y Medio Ambiente (MAGRAMA), Instituto Espanol ˜ de Oceanografía (IEO), Centro de Estudios de Puertos y Costas-Centro de Estudios y Experimentación de Obras Públicas (CEPYC-CEDEX), Madrid, pp. 127 pp.

Rueda, J.L., González-García, E., Urra, J., Oporto,T., Gofas, S., García-Raso, E., López-González, N., Fernández-Salas, L.M., Díaz del Río, V., 2012. Chemosymbiotic species associated with mud breccia sediments from mud volcanoes within Spanish waters (Gulf of Cadiz). XVII Iberian Symposium on Marine Biology Studies.

Sanjuán, A., Zapata, C., Álvarez, G., 1994. *Mytilus galloprovincialis* and M. edulis on the coasts of the Iberian Peninsula. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 113:131–146.

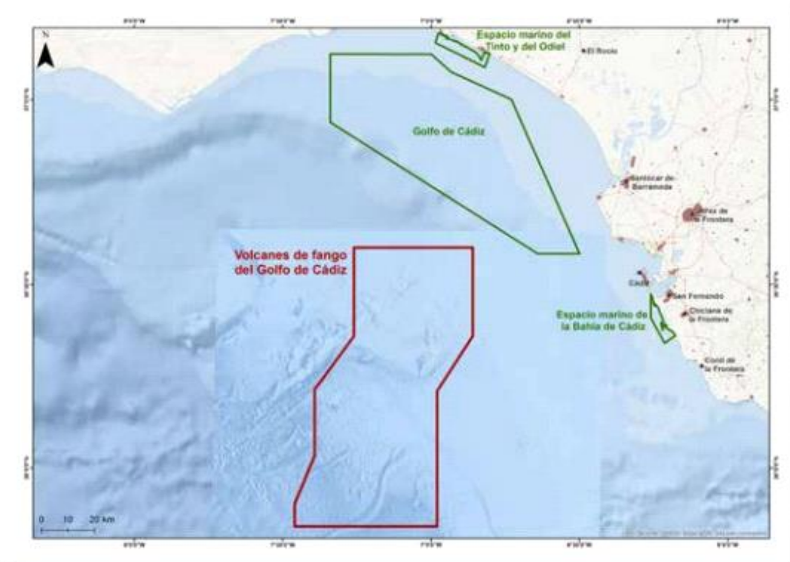
Sobrino, I., Jiménez, M.P., Ramos, F., Baro, J., 1994. Descripción de las pesquerías demersales de laRegiónSuratlántica Espanola, ˜ vol. 151.BoletínInstituto Espanol ˜ de Oceanografía, 76 pp.

Torres, M.A., Coll, M., Heymans, J.J., Christensen, V., Sobrino, I., 2010. Food-web structure of and fishing impacts on the Gulf of Cadiz ecosystem (South-western Spain). Ecological Modelling, 265: 26–44.

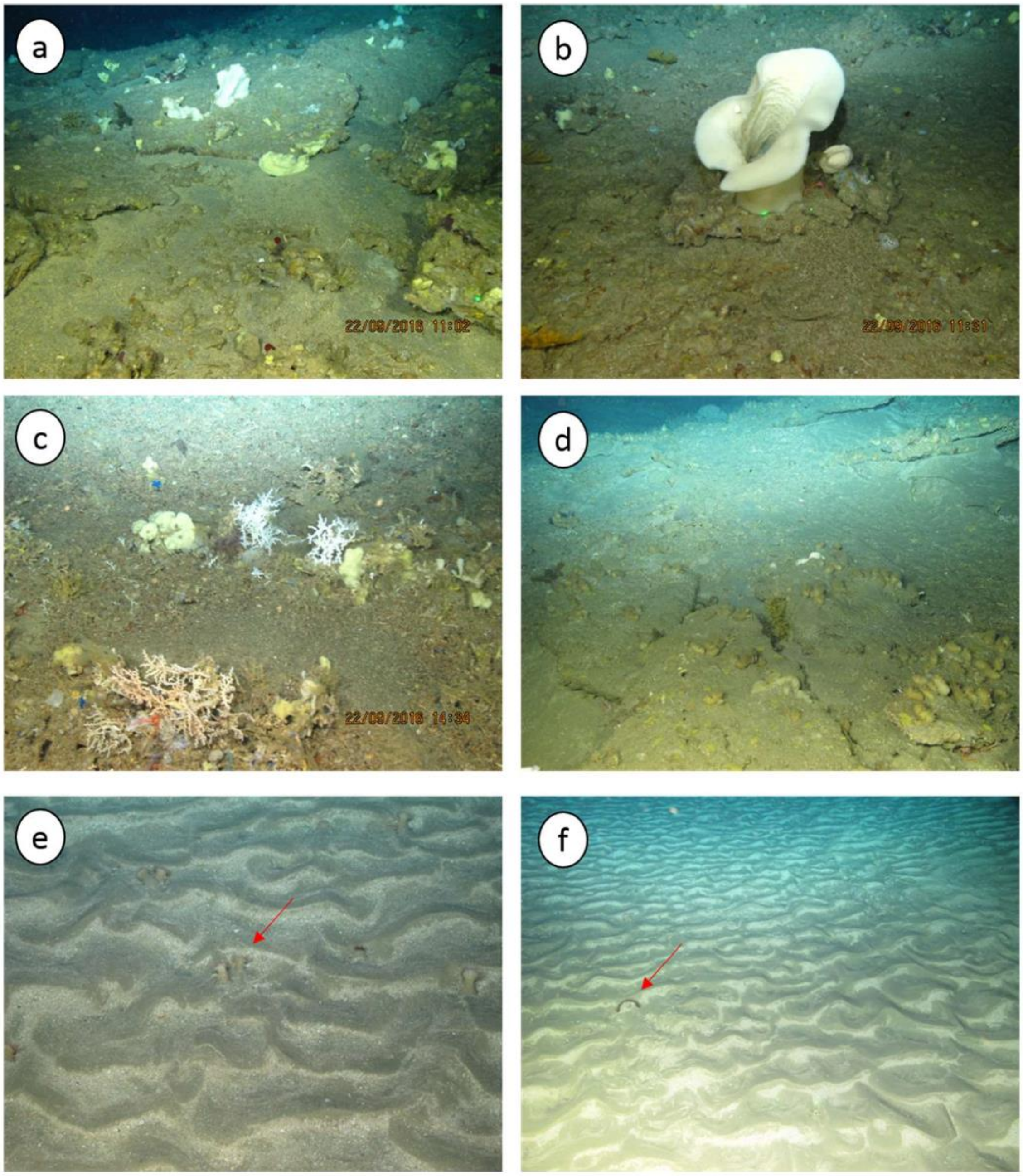
Vila, Y., Silva, L., Millán, M., Ramos, F., Gil, J., Jiménez, M.P., 2004. Los recursos pesqueros del Golfo de Cádiz: estado actual de explotación. Informes Técnicos. Instituto Espanol ˜ de Oceanografía, pp. 200 pp.

Maps and Figures

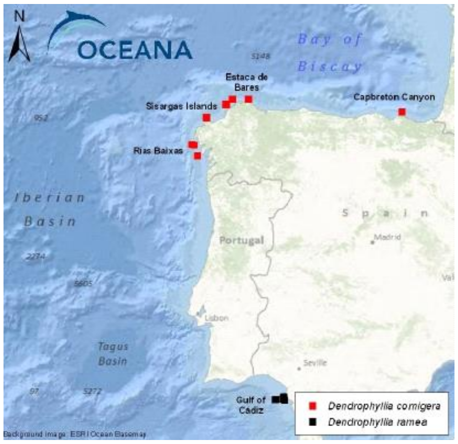
Location of area no. 5: Gulf of Cádiz



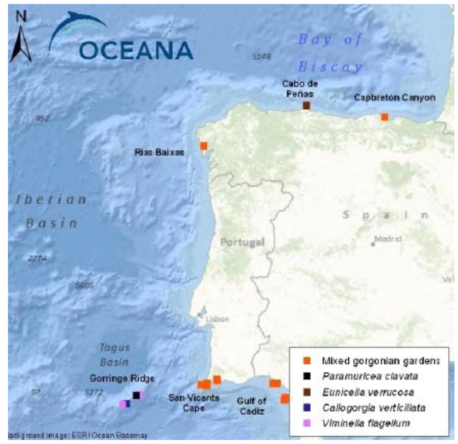
Location of mud volcanoes along the Spanish margin (Díaz del Río *et al*., 2014).



Benthic habitats and communities of Gazul Mud Volcano (from ca. 470 to ca. 400 m depth). a) Sponge field colonising areas in hard authigenic carbonates (slabs), b) specimen of the sponge *Asconema setubalense*, c) patches of small colonies of the scleractinian coral *Madrepora oculata* with sponges, d) specimens of the ascidian Polycarpa sp. in hard authigenic carbonates (slabs), e) sandy bottom with ripples and the actinia *Actinauge richardi* (indicated by the red arrows) f) sandy substrate with presence of the solitary corals *Flabellum chunii* (indicated by the red arrows) (ATLAS, 2019).

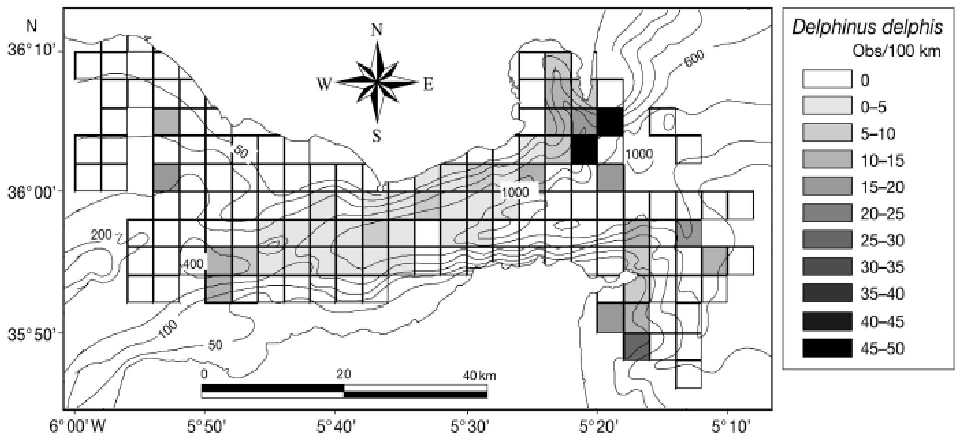


Locations of *Dendrophyllia* spp. forest recorded by OCEANA (2011)

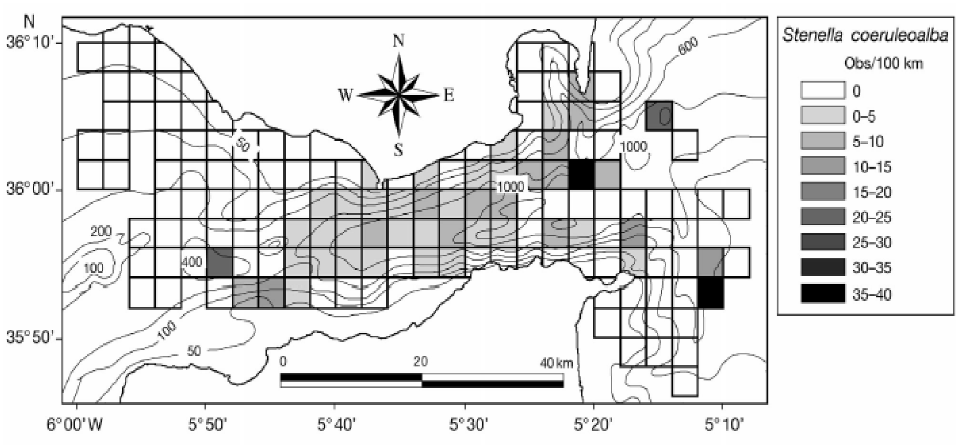


Locations of gorgonian gardens recorded by OCEANA (2011)

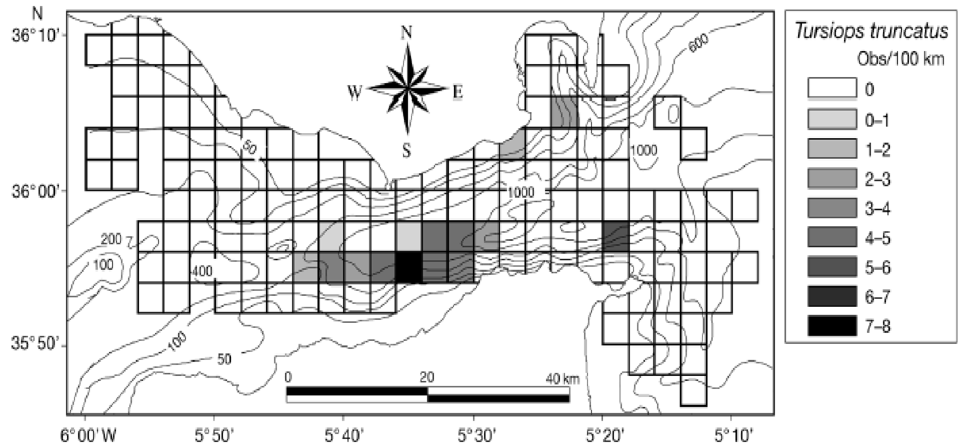
Location of some coral gardens located in the Spanish continental shelf



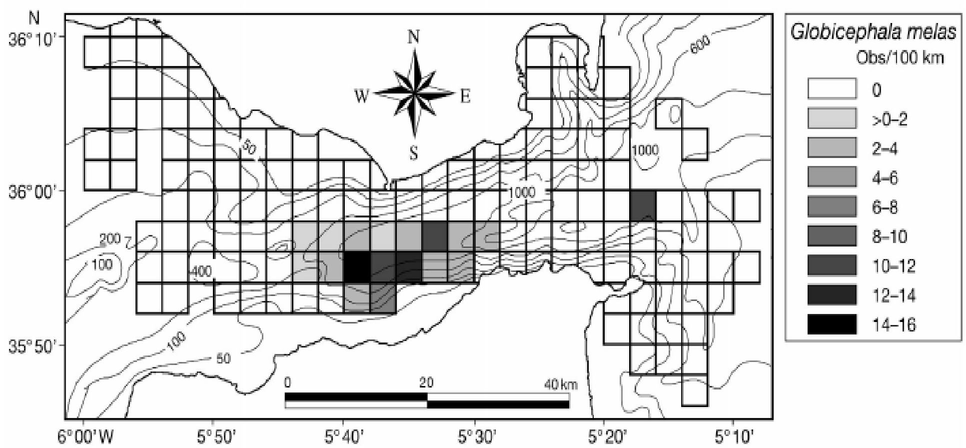
Delphinus delphis. Distribution of encounter rates of common dolphins over the study area during this study (De Stephanis *et al*., 2008)



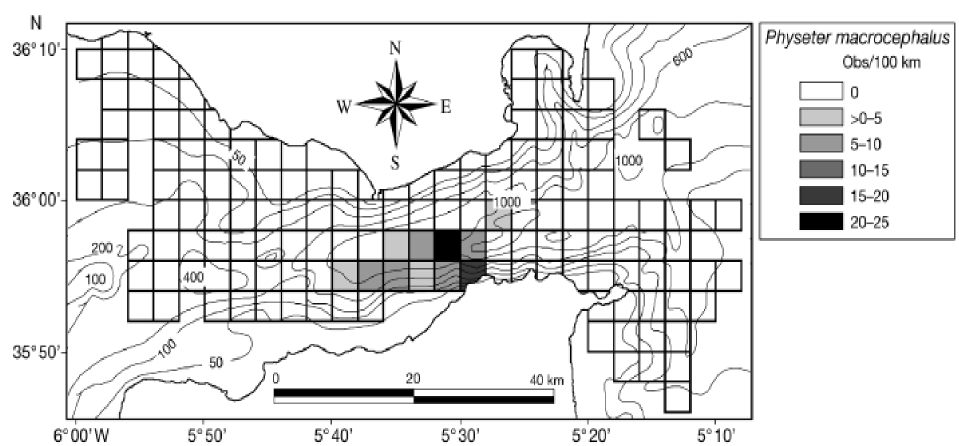
Stenella coeruleoalba. Distribution of encounter rates of striped dolphins over the study area during this study (De Stephanis *et al*., 2008)



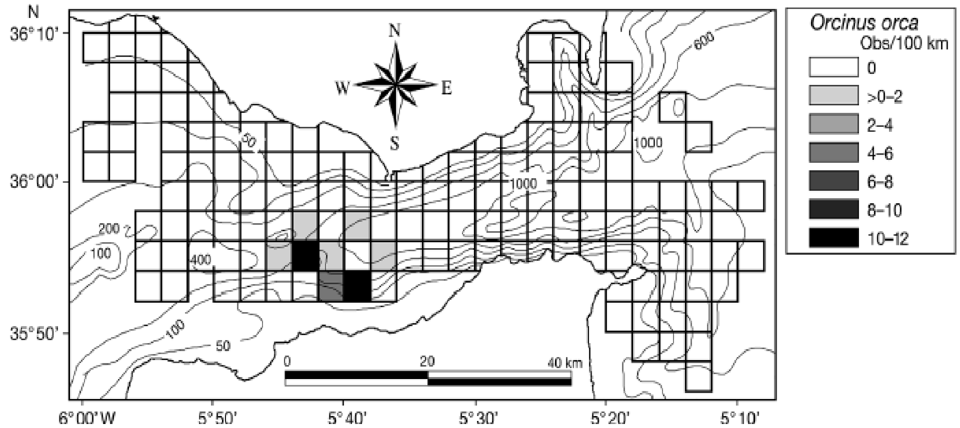
Tursiops truncatus. Distribution of encounter rates of bottlenose dolphins over the study area during this study (De Stephanis *et al*., 2008)



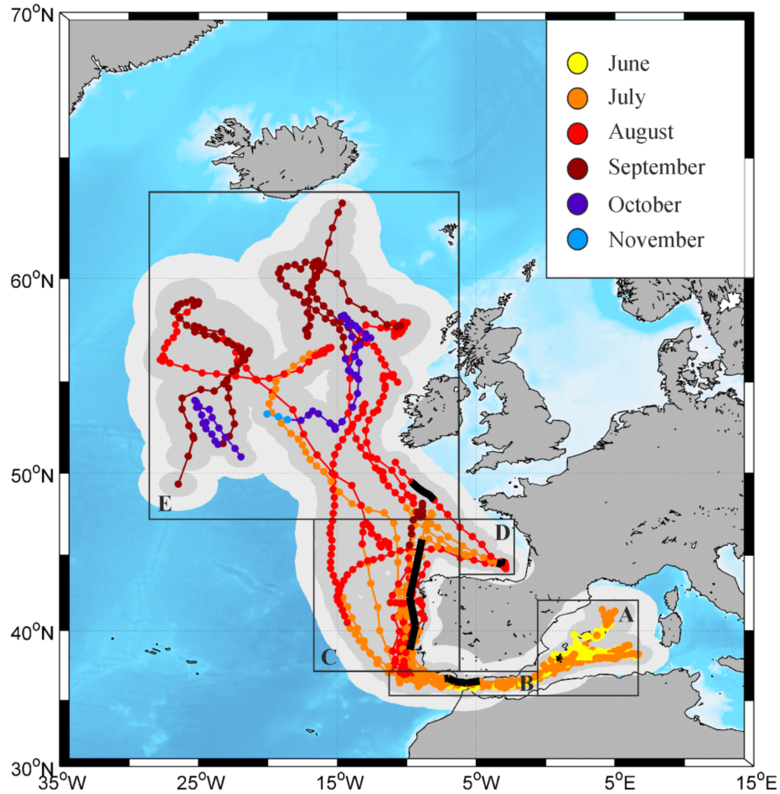
Globicephala melas. Distribution of encounter rates of long-finned pilot whales over the study area during this study (De Stephanis *et al*., 2008).



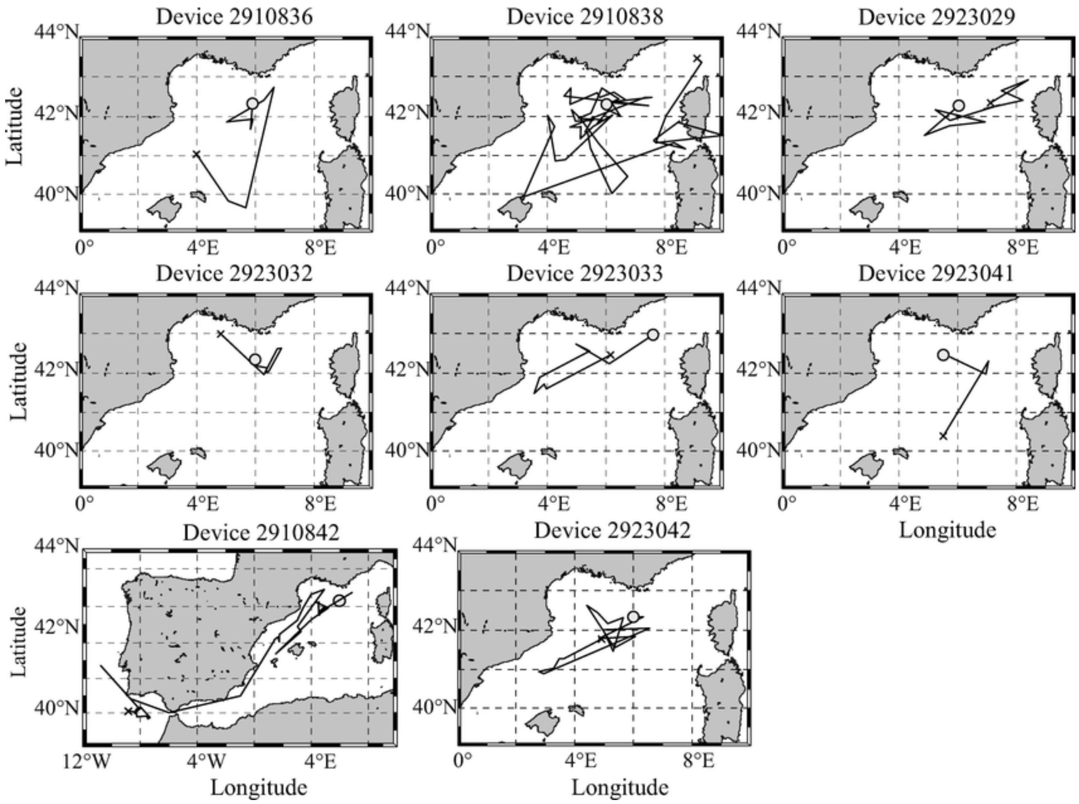
Physeter macrocephalus. Distribution of encounter rates of sperm whales over the study area during this study (De Stephanis *et al*., 2008)



Orcinus orca. Distribution of encounter rates of killer whales over the study area during this study (De Stephanis *et al*., 2008)



Estimated paths (with 50 per cent and 95 per cent confidence intervals) of 13 Atlantic bluefin tuna tagged in early June 2009-2011 (≥45 d). Five successive regions throughout the migratory pathways between the western Mediterranean and the North Atlantic Ocean are distinguished (A-E, black boxes): Balearic area (A), Strait of Gibraltar (B), western Iberian coast (C), Bay of Biscay (D), and North Atlantic area (E). Bold black lines represent five-day coverage of tag #39 track in each of these regions (Aranda *et al*., 2013).



Tracking of fin whales. Gray full circles represent the first obtained locations, and the black crosses represent the last locations (reproduced from Cotte *et al.*, 2011).

Rights and permissions

All the quoted documents and sites are public and subject to specific copyrights that must be respected, case by case.

Area no. 6: Madeira – Tore

Abstract

This area includes 19 remarkable structures, 17 of which are seamounts. Seamounts are hotspots of marine life and, in general, they are areas of enhanced productivity, especially when compared with surrounding abyssal areas. Madeira – Tore has a total area of 197,431 km^2, with depths ranging from 25m (top of Gettysburg seamount) to 4930m (bottom of Tore seamount). The area includes Gorringe Bank (a proposed Site of Community Importance under the Natura 2000 network), and the Josephine Seamount High Seas Marine Protected Area (part of the OSPAR Network of Marine Protected Areas). A total of 965 species are present in this area, 7 per cent of which are protected under international or regional law.

Introduction

The area covers pelagic waters through to lower bathyal depths. The area includes a total of 17 seamounts (Ampere, Ashton, northern part of Coral Patch, Dragon, Erik, Gago Coutinho, Godzilla, Gorringe Bank—Ormond and Gettysburg seamounts—, Hirondelle II, Josephine, Lion, Pico Pia, Tore, Seine, Sponge Bob and Unicorn). Located ~700 km off the NW African coast, it forms a prominent NE trending submarine seamount complex in the central east Atlantic and is bounded by abyssal plains to the west and south and by a number of large isolated seamounts on its eastern side and the Madeira Islands to the southeast. Seamounts are rising from ~5000m water depths to as shallow as 25m below sea level and represent prominent geomorphological features affecting the entire water column (Geldmacher *et al.*, 2000, 2001, 2005, Jiménez-Munt *et al.*, 2001).

Location

The area is bounded by the parallels 39º28`4.39``N and 33º31`17.04``N, and the meridians 13º31`12.88`` W and 14º25`58.54``W (Figure 3).

The polygon is defined by 26 points (see Table 2). The datum used is World Geodetic System 1984 (WGS84).

Table 1 – Geographic coordinates in two different formats: Decimal degrees and Degrees, Minutes and Seconds, corresponding to the vertices of the polygon that defines the area.

Vertices	Latitude	Longitude	Latitude	Longitude
1	37,41282592230°	-10,78412204750°	37° 24' 46,173" N	10° 47' 2,839" W
2	37,14775660190°	-10,36140031970°	37° 8' 51,924" N	10° 21' 41,041" W
3	36,40609631810°	-10,30061815410°	36° 24' 21,947" N	10° 18' 2,225" W
4	35,82664926560°	-11,54178462270°	35° 49' 35,937" N	11° 32' 30,425" W
5	35,86752382000°	-12,34720852460°	35° 52' 3,086" N	12° 20' 49,951" W
6	35,86956765170°	-14,09668145850°	35° 52' 10,444" N	14° 5' 48,053" W
7	35,46583663810°	-14,20440676570°	35° 27' 57,012" N	14° 12' 15,864" W
8	35,24920143450°	-13,61929025320°	35° 14' 57,125" N	13° 37' 9,445" W
9	35,60380569240°	-12,45599288130°	35° 36' 13,700" N	12° 27' 21,574" W
10	35,48803548040°	-11,00669030540°	35° 29' 16,928" N	11° 0' 24,085" W
11	34,97245166170°	-11,00669030540°	34° 58' 20,826" N	11° 0' 24,085" W
12	34,91594670000°	-11,66657670000°	34° 54' 57,408" N	11° 39' 59,676" W
13	34,94888410000°	-12,27663790000°	34° 56' 55,983" N	12° 16' 35,896" W
14	34,80178379610°	-12,94233128480°	34° 48' 6,422" N	12° 56' 32,393" W
15	33,72656498090°	-13,93098136950°	33° 43' 35,634" N	13° 55' 51,533" W
16	33,52139899400°	-14,43292650180°	33° 31' 17,036" N	14° 25' 58,535" W
17	34,34262149180°	-17,54777045230°	34° 20' 33,437" N	17° 32' 51,974" W

18	35,18898118290°	-17,56475831490°	35° 11' 20,332" N	17° 33' 53,130" W
19	36,37201723670°	-16,15598386020°	36° 22' 19,262" N	16° 9' 21,542" W
20	36,88215087210°	-16,14847475890°	36° 52' 55,743" N	16° 8' 54,509" W
21	37,73812613930°	-15,15628451950°	37° 44' 17,254" N	15° 9' 22,624" W
22	37,97115828810°	-14,28645992790°	37° 58' 16,170" N	14° 17' 11,256" W
23	39,46788555050°	-13,52024533110°	39° 28' 4,388" N	13° 31' 12,883" W
24	39,00253692540°	-12,66150018240°	39° 0' 9,133" N	12° 39' 41,401" W
25	36,85653531250°	-13,06745495460°	36° 51' 23,527" N	13° 4' 2,838" W
26	36,85415214800°	-12,30030626900°	36° 51' 14,948" N	12° 18' 1,103" W

Feature description of the area

Based on morphology, the main fault zone seems to cut the northern part of the area near Josephine Seamount and continues along the Gorringe Bank to the Iberian continental rise. A zone of diffuse seismicity, however, suggests that interaction between the African and Eurasian plates in this region is occurring over a broad zone rather than along a distinct boundary (Peirce and Barton, 1991). South of the Azores-Gibraltar Fracture Zone, the area forms a broad plateau with several large seamounts on its eastern flank (Josephine, Erik, Lion, and Dragon seamounts) (Figure 1).

Table 2 – Summary of the Madeira-Tore structures, EBSA criteria fulfilled by each structure (Crit 1: Uniqueness or rarity, 2: Special importance for life-history stages of species, 3: Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats, 4: Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery, 5: Biological productivity, 6: Biological diversity, and 7: Naturalness), Nº sps – total number of species in each structure. Nº refs - total number of references in each structure. n.i. – No information available.

Structures	**Crit 1**	**Crit 2**	**Crit 3**	**Crit 4**	**Crit 5**	**Crit 6**	**Crit 7**	**Nº sps**	**Nº Refs**
Ampere seamount	√	√	√	√	√	√		319	28
Ashton seamount	√		√	√	√	√	√	12	6
Coral Patch seamount	√	√	√	√		√	√	38	12
Dragon seamount	√			√	√	√	√	n.i.	4
Erik seamount	√			√		√	√	n.i.	3
Gago Coutinho seamount	√			√		√	√	n.i.	1
Gorringe bank	√	√	√	√	√	√		656	55
Godzilla seamount	√			√		√	√	n.i.	3
Hirondelle II seamount	√		√	√		√	√	4	1
J-Anomaly ridge	√			√		√	√	n.i.	1
Josephine seamount	√	√	√	√	√	√		207	36
Lion seamount	√	√		√		√	√	23	11
Pico Pia seamount	√			√		√	√	n.i.	2

Seine seamount	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	315	31
Sponge Bob seamount	√			√		√	√	n.i.	1
Toblerone ridge	√			√		√	√	n.i.	1
Tore seamount	√			√	√	√	√	1	6
Unicorn seamount	√	√	√	√	√	√		33	9

In terms of geology, the structures of the area vary in terms of their composition, location and age (Geldmacher *et al.*, 2000, 2001, 2005).

Seine seamount (33º 45.60' N 14º 22.80' W) is located 200 km NE of Porto Santo, rising from more than 4000m to less than 200m water depths. This round seamount has steep sides and a characteristic flat top.

Unicorn seamount (34º 45.00' N 14º 27.00' W) lies 100 km north of Seine seamount.

Ampere (35º 05.00' N 12º 55.00' W 00' W) and Coral Patch (34º 56.00' N 11º 57.00' W) seamounts are located 190 km NE of Seine seamount. Bathymetric data show that the shape of Ampere seamount is also similar to a guyot with a summit that extends to 59 m below sea level (Litvin *et al.*, 1982; Marova & Yevsyukov, 1987). Alkaline nepheline basaltoids have been described from two short drill holes on the top of the seamount (Matveyenkov *et al.*, 1994). The neighboring Coral Patch seamount forms an elongated E–W oriented structure rising up to 900 m below sea level.

Gorringe Bank, which lies along the Azores-Gibraltar fracture zone (the Eurasia-African Plate boundary), is 250 km long and belongs to the "Horseshoe" submarine chain. Contrary to other volcanic seamounts of the chain, it consists chiefly of mantle ultrabasic rocks (Ryan *et al.*, 1973). It is dominated by two summits, the Gettysburg (west) and Ormonde (east) seamounts, which almost reach the sea surface. The two summits are separated by an 800m deep saddle and raise 30 to 40m from the sea surface. Except for the Ormonde summit, the rest of Gorringe Bank consists primarily of altered tholeiitic basalt and serpentinized peridotite (Auzende *et al.*, 1978; Matveyenkov *et al.*, 1994). This bank represents a notable site where a section of lower oceanic crust and mantle is exposed. Other peculiarities reside in the extremely elevated bathymetric gradient occurring between the summit of the bank and the surrounding Tagus and Horseshoe Abyssal Plains located at 5000m depth (Alteriis *et al.*, 2003).

Josephine seamount can be considered the first seamount discovered as a direct result of oceanic explorations (Brewin *et al.*, 2007) and has been studied in several scientific expeditions. Josephine seamount is one of the Lusitanian seamounts and represents the westernmost point of east-west trending series of banks and seamounts separating the Tagus and Horseshoe Abyssal Plains, also known as the Horseshoe seamount chain. It is located to the east of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and is a component of the Azores-Gibraltar complex (Pakhorukov, 2008). It is oval-shaped with a minimum water depth of 170 m at the southern end and almost flat top surface of ~150 km^2 within the 400m depth contour and ~210 km^2 within the 500m depth contour. There are very steep south, south-west and south-east slopes down to water depths of 2000-3700m. Towards the NNW the seamount extends into a northward-sloping ridge about 1000m deep. The seamount originated in the Middle Tertiary as an island volcano that became extinct approximately 9 million years ago and has a subsidence rate of ~ 2-3 cm/1000 years.

Ampere seamount is part of the Horseshoe Seamounts Chain and is located between the island of Madeira and the Portuguese southern coast, to the west of Morocco. Ampere rises from a depth of ca. 4500 to 59 m below the surface. It is separated from the neighbouring Coral Patch seamount by a deep valley of 3400m depth. The seamount has a conical shape with an elongated base and a small, rough summit plateau at 110–200m, with a single narrow peak reaching to 59 m. The slopes are steep and rocky, with canyon-like structures, particularly at the northern, eastern and southern sides (Halbach *et al*. 1993; Kuhn *et al*. 1996; Hatzky 2005), but sediment-covered flat areas exist as well.

The Coral Patch seamount was discovered in 1883 during an expedition for laying telegraph cable between Cádiz and the Canary Islands (Buchanan, 1885). Buchanan (1885) remarked that a dredge from 970m water depth revealed many fragments of the crinoid *Neocomatella pulchella* and a large quantity of live occurrences of the coldwater coral *Lophelia pertusa*, the latter findings presumably giving the inspiration for the geographic name. Coral Patch is a sub-elliptical ENE-WSW elongated seamount, about 120 km long and 70 km wide (D'Oriano *et al.,* 2010). Bathymetric and seismic data show that Coral Patch is a composite structure as it originates from a pre-existing sedimentary structural high that extends to a water depth of up to 2500m (Zitellini *et al.,* 2009) while on the upper part of the seamount there are volcanic edifices (D'Oriano *et al.,* 2010). Eight distinct coalescent volcanic cones are clustered on the southwestern top of Coral Patch seamount, while in the NE a single isolated cone of 8 km in diameter has developed (called Vince volcano; D'Oriano *et al.,* 2010).

Productivity in oceanic settings depends on light and nutrient availability, while overall production is the result of productivity and accumulation of the phytoplankton. At a seamount, either a seamount-generated, vertical nutrient flux has to be shallow enough to reach the euphotic zone and the ensuing productivity retained over the seamount long enough to allow transfer to higher trophic levels, or the seamount must rely on allochthonous inputs of organic material to provide a trophic subsidy to resident populations (Clark *et al.,* 2010).

In terms of biology, the structures have a relatively small number of studies. A total of 965 species have been identified all over the area (see feature description of the area). Although seamounts are ecologically important and abundant features in the world's oceans (Hillier & Watts, 2007), biological research on seamounts has been rare (Consalvey *et al.,* 2010).

The knowledge of the Madeira-Tore area is based on the analysis of 220 scientific articles containing relevant information about the area. Several of the seamounts have been the subject of numerous geological and biological studies. The total number of 965 species reported was estimated from scattered taxonomical literature, and the species number is probably underestimated. The knowledge of each structure is uneven, and it is possible to observe these differences in Table 2. In the same table it is also possible to evaluate how many EBSA criteria each structure meets.

Around of 7 per cent of the 965 species identified in all seamounts in this are legally protected or have been recognized as threatened by CITES, IUCN Red List, European Union Habitats and Birds Directives, Bern Convention and OSPAR Convention. For example, OSPAR identified as endangered or declining the reptiles *Dermochelys coriacea* and *Caretta caretta* (turtles), the bony fish orange roughy *(Hoplostethus atlanticus)*, the cetaceans *Balaenoptera musculus*, *Delphinus delphis*, *Tursiopsis truncatus*, the deep water sharks *Centroscymus coeleopsis*, *Centrophorus granulosus*, *Centrophorus niaukang*, *Centrophorus squamosus*, *Rostroraja alba*, *Lamna nasus*, and the seabirds *Calonectris diomedea*, *Puffinus myasthenia*, *Puffinus griseus, Puffinus puffinus*, *Puffinus mauretanicus*, *Hydrobates pelagicus*, *Oceanodroma castro*, *Oceanodroma leucorhoa*, *Stercorarius parasiticus*, *Stercorarius skua*, *Uria aalge* and *Phalaropus fulicarius*. Other examples of species with legal protection (CITES Appendix II) are the corals *Antipathes dichotoma*, *Antipathes furcate*, *Stichopathes gracilis*, *Leiopathes spp.* (Antipatharia), *Pennatula phosphorea*, *Pteroeides griseum*, *Funiculina quadrangularis* (Pennatulacae), *Caryophyllia smithii*, *Caryophyllia abyssorum*, *Caryophyllia cyathus*, *Caryophyllia sarsiae*, *Coenosmilia fecunda*, *Deltocyanthus eccentricus*, *Deltocyanthus moseleyi*, *Paracyathus arcuatus*, *Paracyathus pulchellus*, *Lophelia pertusa*, *Balanophyllia cellulosa*, *Dendrophyllia cornigera*, *Flabellum alabastrum*, *Flabellum chunii*, *Fungiacyathus crispus*, *Stenocyathus vermiformi*s, *Deltocyathoides stimpsonii*, *Peponocyathus folliculus* and *Peponocyathus stimpsoni* (Scleractinia), among others. *Centrostephanus longispinus*, *Scyllarides latus*, *Chelonia mydas* and *Caretta caretta* are protected by the EU Habitats Directive and *Ranella olearia* and *Tonna galea* are protected by Annex II of the Bern Convention.

The species studied in the area belong to several phyla, classes or orders (Figure 5). The category "others" includes Acari, Ctenophora, Nudibranchia, reptilia, sea-birds, Sipuncula and scyphozoa. Madeira-Tore includes various species of scleractinians and gorgonians. In some seamounts the gorgonian and sponge species were reported to form dense gorgonian coral habitat-forming aggregations of *Callogorgia* *verticillata* and *Elisella flagellum,* which may be important feeding and sheltering grounds for seamount fishes and also potential shark nurseries (WWF, 2001; Etnoyer & Warrenchuk, 2007; OSPAR, 2011). Cold-water, deep, habitat-forming corals can shelter more megafauna than other habitats without coral communities (Roberts *et al.*, 2006; Mortensen *et al.*, 2008, Rogers *et al.*, 2008). Seamounts also harbour large aggregations of demersal or benthopelagic fish (Koslow, 1997; Morato and Pauly, 2004; Pitcher *et al.,* 2007; Morato *et al.,* 2009, 2010).

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

The unique ecosystems of seamounts are highly vulnerable and sensitive to external actions. Most of the fauna found on seamounts are long-lived, slow-growing organisms with low fecundity and natural mortality, so called "K-selected species" (Brewin *et al.*, 2007). Recruitment events of long-lived seamount fauna seem to be episodic and rare (Brewin *et al.,* 2007). The type of gear (usually rock-hopper trawls) used to fish over the rough and rocky substrata that can be found on seamounts is particularly destructive of benthic habitat, destroying the very long-lived and slow-growing sessile suspension-feeding organisms that dominate these habitats (Brewin *et al.,* 2007). Benthic seamount communities are highly vulnerable to the impacts of fishing because of their limited habitat, the extreme longevity of many species, apparently limited recruitment between seamounts and the highly localized distribution of many species (Richer de Forges *et al.,* 2000; Samadi *et al.,* 2006; Samadi *et al.,* 2007).

In just a few decades, the attention of fishers has been drawn to the high abundances of commercially valuable fish species around many seamounts (Koslow, 1997). The reasons for the fish aggregations can be explained by the hypotheses that seamount areas can be ''meeting points'' of usually dispersed fish stocks, for example to aggregate for spawning, or that an enhanced food supply caused by special current conditions is the basis for locally maintaining large fish stocks. The importance of seamounts for fisheries is very well documented (Boehlert & Sasaki, 1988; Koslow, 1997; Morato *et al.*, 2006). The fishery for horse mackerel (*Trachurus trachurus*, Carangidae), mackerel (Scomber sp., Scombridae), scabbardfish (family Trichiuridae) and orange roughy (*H. atlanticus*) has been operating in the seamounts of this area. Some fishing techniques can trawl corals, with an estimated age of 300 to 500 years, out of the ocean (Tracey *et al*., 2003; Samadi *et al*., 2007). Structural deep-sea sponge habitat is also vulnerable to bottom fishing and has been shown to suffer immediate declines in populations through the physical removal of sponges, which then reduces the reproductive potential of the population, thereby reducing recovery capacity or even causing further declines (Freese, 2001). Experimental trawling over sponge communities in Alaska showed that one year after the experiment, individuals within the community showed no sign of repair or growth, and there was no indication of the recovery of the community (Freese *et al.*, 1999).

In 2010, the Ministerial Meeting of the OSPAR Commission adopted OSPAR Decision 2010/5 to establish the Josephine Seamount High Seas Marine Protected Area in the water column above Josephine seamount. Later, in 2015, Portugal designated Gorringe Bank as a national site and is planning to propose it as a European Union Site of Community Importance.

Assessment of area no. 6, Madeira – Tore, against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA Criteria (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Description** (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		No information	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique ("the only one of its kind"), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.				X

Explanation for ranking

- The Madeira-Tore area is characterized by complex topography: seamounts and banks of the area rise from the abyssal depth of Tagus, Horseshoe and Madeira basins to the photic zone (Ryan *et al*., 1973; Auzende *et al*., 1978; Matveyenkov *et al*., 1994, Alteriis *et al*., 2003); each seamount supports a unique faunistic complex, including fauna of hard substrata inhabited sessile suspension feeders as corals, sponges and associated fauna (Xavier & van Soest, 2007; Christiansen *et al*. 2009) and sandbanks (Annex 1 of the Habitats Directive, Natura 2000 Code 1110) with high diversity of soft-substrate communities and meiofauna. These two types of habitats are well represented at Ampere, Gorringe, Josephine and Seine seamounts, but less so in others. At greater depths the slope is usually covered by silt and clay from the continent, and bioclastic sand formed by the shells of pelagic organisms on the seamount plateau (Surugiu *et al.*, 2008).
- Coral Patch has a unique composite structure as it originates from a pre-existing sedimentary structural high that extends to a water depth of up to 2500m, while there are volcanic edifices on the upper part of the seamount (Wienberg *et al.*, 2013).
- Some taxa show a high level of endemism; 28 per cent of Demospongia reported from the Gorringe are endemic to this Bank or have a restricted geographical distribution (Xavier & van Soest, 2007); a high level of endemism (45.6 per cent) has been demonstrated in the micromolluscs Rissoidae (Gofas, 2007).

Special importance for life-history stages of species	Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.				X

Explanation for ranking

- The Coral Patch, Gorringe Bank, Josephine and Unicorn are vital stopping points for certain migratory species of whales and cetaceans, including sperm whales (e.g., *Physeter microcephalus*), fin whales (e.g., *Balaenoptera acutorostrata*), striped (e.g., *Stenella coeruleoalba*) and bottlenose dolphins (e.g., *Tursiops truncates*) (e.g., Correia *et al*., 2015; Gil, 2018). The Ashton, Gorringe Bank, Seine and other seamounts receive many species of seabirds that use these places to feed (e.g., *Calonectris diomedea*, *Oceanodroma castro*, *Puffinus myasthenia*) (Paiva *et al*., 2010; Faria, 2014)
- This seamount complex hosts aggregations of commercially important fish and shellfish species that use this ecosystem for spawning and as nursery grounds (e.g., toothed rock crab – *Cancer bellianus*), devil crab (*Necora puber*) and slipper lobster (*Scyllarides latus*) in the Gorringe Bank; spider crab (*Maja brachydactyla*) in Ampere and Gorringe Bank.
- All of the 17 seamounts are home to coral gardens (e.g., *Antipathella wollastoni*, *A. sibpinnata. Antipathes furcata, Stichopathes gracilis, Leiopathes spp.*), molluscs (e.g., *Calliostoma leptophyma*, *Charonia lampas*) and fish species (*Aphanopus carbo*, *Beryx decadactylus*) (Christiansen, 2010).

Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				X

Explanation for ranking

- Around of 7 per cent of the 965 species identified in all seamounts in this area are legally protected or recognized as threatened by CITES, IUCN Red List, European Union Habitats and Birds Directives, Bern Convention and OSPAR Convention. For example, OSPAR identified as endangered or declining the reptiles *Dermochelys coriacea* and *Caretta caretta* (turtles), the cetaceans *Balaenoptera musculus*, *Delphinus delphis*, *Tursiopsis truncatus*, the deep water sharks, *Centroscymus coeleopsis*, *Centrophorus granulosus*, *Centrophorus niaukang*, *Centrophorus squamosus*, *Rostroraja alba*, *Lamna nasus* and the seabirds *Calonectris diomedea*, *Puffinus myasthenia*, *Puffinus griseus, Puffinus puffinus*, *Puffinus mauretanicus*, *Hydrobates pelagicus*, *Oceanodroma castro, Oceanodroma leucorhoa*, *Stercorarius parasiticus*, *Stercorarius skua*, *Uria aalge* and *Phalaropus fulicarius*. Other examples of species with legal protection (CITES Appendix II) are cold-water habitat-forming corals *Antipathes dichotoma*, *Antipathes furcata, Stichopathes gracilis, Leiopathes spp.* (Antipatharia), *Pennatula phosphorea*, *Pteroeides griseum*, *Funiculina quadrangularis* (Pennatulacae), *Lophelia pertusa*, *Caryophyllia smithii*, *Caryophyllia abyssorum*, *Caryophyllia cyathus*, *Caryophyllia sarsiae*, *Coenosmilia fecunda*, *Deltocyanthus eccentricus*, *Deltocyanthus moseleyi*, *Paracyathus arcuatus*, *Paracyathus pulchellus*, *Lophelia pertusa*, *Balanophyllia cellulosa*, *Dendrophyllia cornigera*, *Flabellum alabastrum, Flabellum chunii*, *Fungiacyathus crispus*, *Stenocyathus vermiformi*s, *Deltocyathoides stimpsonii*, *Peponocyathus folliculus* and *Peponocyathus stimpsoni* (Scleractinia), among others. *Centrostephanus longispinus*, *Scyllarides latus*, *Chelonia mydas* and *Caretta caretta* are protected by the EU Habitats Directive, and *Ranella olearia* and *Tonna galea* are protected by Annex II of the Bern Convention.

Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				x

Explanation for ranking

- Twenty-eight species of Elasmobranchiida (e.g., *Prionace glauca*, *Manta birostris*) and 68 species of cold-water corals *(*e.g., *Antipathella wollastoni*; *Leiopathes spp., Stichopathes gracilis, Caryophyllia smithii*; *Flabellum macandrewi)* reported from the Madeira Tore seamounts. Some of those species are extremely slow recovering (Rogers *et al*., 2007), such as the black corals *Leiopathes spp*, some specimens of which have been estimated to be more than 2000 years old (Carreiro-Silva *et al*., 2012).
- In total 12.1 per cent of the total species in this area belong to the potentially vulnerable, fragile, sensitive and slow-to-recover class Anthozoa (7.6 per cent), subclass Elasmobranchii (2,9 per cent) and order Cetacea (1.6 per cent) (see Figure 5).

Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.				X

Explanation for ranking

Studies with plankton prove that Ampere (Gibson *et al.*, 1993; Martin & Christiansen, 2009; Denda & Christiansen, 2014) Ashton (Paiva *et al.*, 2010; Pingree, 2010), Dragon (Martin & Christiansen, 2009), Gorringe Bank (Bett, 1999; Coelho & Santos, 2000; White *et al.*, 2007), Josephine (Hesthagen, 1970; Synnes, 2007; Paiva *et al.*, 2010), Seine (Christiansen *et al.*, 2009; Martin & Christiansen, 2009; Hirch & Christiansen, 2010; Mendonca *et al.*, 2010) Tore (Lebreiro *et al.*, 1997) and Unicorn (Correia *et al.,* 2015) have shown high biological productivity.

Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X

Explanation for ranking

- The Madeira-Tore area includes various species of scleractinians and gorgonians. In some seamounts the gorgonian and sponge species were reported to form dense aggregations of *Callogorgia verticillata* and *Elisella flagellum,* which may represent important feeding and sheltering grounds for seamount fishes, potential shark nurseries, and thickets of habitat-forming scleractinian *Lophelia pertusa* (WWF, 2001; Etnoyer & Warrenchuk, 2007; OSPAR, 2011). Cold-water, habitat-forming corals can shelter higher megafauna in association with the corals than other habitats without coral communities (Roberts *et al*, 2006; Mortensen *et al*, 2008, Rogers *et al*, 2008).

- Records tell us that most of the structures included in the area harbour a rich benthic fauna typically dominated by suspension-feeding organisms, of which cold-water corals and sponges are the dominant elements. The structures also host large aggregations of demersal or benthopelagic fish.
- In the Ampere, Gorringe Bank, Josephine and Seine there is evidence of a great diversity, with records of midwater fish as major predators of zooplankton. For example, the hatchetfish *Argyropelecus aculeatus* is equally abundant over the slopes of Ampere, Gorringe Bank, Josephine and Seine seamounts (Pusch *et al.*, 2004), and probably forms an important trophic link to higher predators (e.g., almaco jack – *Seriola rivoliana*), including squids (e.g., *Taningia danae* – Dana octopus squid), piscivorous fishes (e.g., *Thunnus thynnus* – Atlantic bluefin tuna), seabirds (e.g., *Calonectris diomedea* – Cory's shearwater), and marine mammals (*Physeter microcephalus* – sperm whale) present in most of the structures in the Madeira-Tore area (see Introduction and Feature Description of the area).

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.			X	

Out of a total of 12 out of 17 undersea structures there are no records of anthropogenic disturbances (Campos *et al*., 2019).

References

Alteriis, G., Passaro, S. & Tonielli, R. (2003) New, high resolution swath bathymetry of Gettysburg and Ormonde Seamounts (Gorringe Bank, eastern Atlantic) and first geological results. *Marine Geophysical Researches* 24(3-4): 223–244.

Auzende, J., Olivet, J., Lann, A., Pichon, J., Monteiro, A., Nicolas, S. & Ribeiro, A. (1978) Sampling and observation of oceanic mantle and crust on Gorringe Bank, *Nature*, 273: 45–49.

Bett, B. (1999) *Cruise Report No. 25. RRS Charles Darwin Cruise 112C*, 19th May - 24th June, 1998 Atlantic Margin Environmental Survey: Seabed survey of the deep-water areas (17th Round Tranches) to the north and west of Scotland. NERC/University of Southampton. Published by Challenger Division for Seafloor Processes. Southampton Oceanography Centre, European Way, Southampton, SO14 3ZH.

Brewin, P., Stocks, K. & Menezes, G. (2007) A History of Seamount Research. Chapter 3. pp 41- 61. In Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. and Santos, R.S. (eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Conservation and Management.* Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK.

Buchanan, J. (1885) On Oceanic Shoals discovered in the S. Dacia in October 1883, *Proceedings of*

Campos, A., Lopes, P., Fonseca, P., Figueiredo, I., Henriques, V., Gouveia, N. & Drago, T. (2019). Portuguese fisheries in seamounts of Madeira-Tore (NE Atlantic). Marine Policy, 99, 50-57.

Carreiro-Silva, M., & McClanahan, T. R. (2012). Macrobioerosion of dead branching Porites, 4 and 6 years after coral mass mortality. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, *458*, 103-122.

Christiansen B, Martin B, Hirch S (2009) The benthopelagic fish fauna of Seine Seamount, NE Atlantic: composition, population structure and diets. Deep-Sea Res II 56(25):2705–2712.

Christiansen, B. (2010). *Short cruise report. Meteor M 83/2. Mindelo-Cadiz. 16 November-22 December 2010*. Institut für Hydrobiologie und Fischereiwissenschaft.

Christiansen, B., Martin, B. & Hirch, S. (2009) The benthopelagic fish fauna on the summit of Seine Seamount, NE Atlantic: Composition, population structure and diets. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 56(25): 2705–2712.

Clark, M. & Tittensor, D. (2010) An index to assess the risk to stony corals from bottom trawling on seamounts. *Marine Ecology* 31: 200-211.

Coelho, H. & Santos, R. (2000) Enhanced primary production over seamounts: A numerical study. *4o Simpósio Sobre a Margem Ibérica Atlântica*, 3–4.

Consalvey, M., Clark, M., Rowden, A. & Stocks K. (2010) Life on seamounts. In: McIntyre AD (ed.), *Life in the world's oceans*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing. pp 123–138.

Convention on Biological Diversity (2008) Decision IX/20. *Ninth meeting of the Conference of Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity*. Montreal: Convention on Biological Diversity.

Correia, A. M., Tepsich, P., Rosso, M., Caldeira, R., & Sousa-Pinto, I. (2015). Cetacean occurrence and spatial distribution: Habitat modelling for offshore waters in the Portuguese EEZ (NE Atlantic). *Journal of Marine Systems*, *143*, 73-85.

Correia, A., Tepsich, M., Rosso P., Caldeira M., & Sousa-Pinto, I. (2015) Cetacean occurrence and spatial distribution: Habitat modelling for offshore waters in the Portuguese EEZ (NE Atlantic). *Journal of Marine Systems* 143: 73– 85.

D'Oriano, F., Angeletti, L., Capotondi, L., Laurenzi, M., Lopez Correa, M., Taviani, M., Torelli, L., Trua, T., Vigliotti, L. & Zitellini, N. (2010) Coral Patch and Ormonde seamounts as a product of the Madeira hotspot, Eastern Atlantic Ocean. *Terra Nova*, 22: 494–500.

Denda, A. & Christiansen, B. (2014) Zooplankton distribution patterns at two seamounts in the subtropical and tropical NE Atlantic. *Marine Ecology* 35(2): 159–179.

Etnoyer, P. & Warrenchuk, J. (2007) A catshark nursery in a deep gorgonian field in the Mississipi Canyon, Gulf of Mexico. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 81: 553−559.

Faria, J. (2014). *Using a seabird top predator to assess the adequacy of the Berlengas Marine Protected Area* (Master's thesis).

Freese, J. (2001) Trawl-induced damage to sponges observed from a research submersible. *Marine Fisheries Review* 63: 38–42.

Freese, L., Auster, P., Heifetz, J. & Wing, B. (1999) Effects of trawling on seafloor habitat and associated invertebrate taxa in the Gulf of Alaska. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 182: 119 –126.

Geldmacher, J., Hoernle, K., Klügel, A., Wombacher, F. & Berning, B. (2006) Origin and geochemical evolution of the Madeira-Tore Rise (eastern North Atlantic). *Journal of Geophysical Research: Solid Earth* (1978–2012), 111(B9).

Geldmacher, J., Hoernle, K., van den Bogaard, P., Duggen, S. & Werner R. (2005) New 40Ar/39Ar age and geochemical data from seamounts in the Canary and Madeira volcanic provinces. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters* 237: 85–101.

Geldmacher, J., Hoernle, K., van den Bogaard, P., Zankl, G., & Garbe-Schönberg, D. (2001) Earlier history of the≥ 70-Ma-old Canary hotspot based on the temporal and geochemical evolution of the Selvagen Archipelago and neighboring seamounts in the eastern North Atlantic. *Journal of Volcanology and Geothermal Research* 111(1): 55-87.

Geldmacher, J., van den Bogaard, P., Hoernle, K., & Schmincke, H. (2000) The 40Ar/39Ar age dating of the Madeira Archipelago and hotspot track (eastern North Atlantic). *Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystems* 1(2).

Gibson, C., Nabatov, V. & Ozmidov, R. (1993) Measurements of turbulence and fossil turbulence near ampere seamount. *Dynamics of Atmospheres and Oceans* 19(1-4): 175–204.

Gil, A. (2018). Cetáceos na Zona Económica Exclusiva Continental Portuguesa: distribuição espaço-temporal e registo de novas ocorrências.

Gofas, S. (2007). Rissoidae (Mollusca: Gastropoda) from northeast Atlantic seamounts. Journal of Natural History 41(13-16): 779-885.

Halbach, P., Pracejus, B. & Marten, A. (1993) Geology and mineralogy of massive sulfide ores from the central Okinawa Trough Japan. *Economic Geology* 88: 2210- 2225.

Hatzky, J. (2005) Ampere Seamount. In: Wille PC (ed) *Sound imagesof the ocean in research and monitoring*. Springer, Berlin, pp 131–132.

Hesthagen, I. (1970) On the near-bottom plankton and benthic invertebrate fauna of the Josephine Seamount and Great Meteor Seamount. *Meteor Forschungs-Ergebnisse* 8: 61-70.

Hirch, S. & Christiansen, B (2010) The trophic blockage hypothesis is not supported by the diets of fishes on Seine Seamount. *Marine Ecology* 31(1): 107–120.

Jiménez-Munt, I., Fernandez, M., Torne, M. & Bird, P. (2001) The transition from linear to diffuse plate boundary in the Azores-Gibraltar region: Results from a thin-sheet model. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters* 192: 175–189.

Koslow, J. (1997) Seamounts and the ecology of deep-sea fisheries. *Americam Scientist* 85: 168-176.

Koslow, J., Gowlett-Holmes, K., Lowry, J., O'Hara, T., Poore, G. & Williams, A. (2001) Seamount benthic macrofauna off southern Tasmania: community structure and impacts of trawling. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 213: 111-125.

Kuhn, T., Halbach, P. & Maggiulli, M. (1996) Formation of ferromanga-nese microcrusts in relation to glacial/interglacial stages inPleistocene sediments from Ampere Seamount (Subtropical NEAtlantic). *Chemical Geology* 130: 217–232.

Lebreiro, S., Moreno, S., Abrantes, F. & Pflaumann, U. (1997) Productivity and paleoceanographic implications on the Tore Seamount (Iberian Margin) during the last 225 kyr: Foraminiferal evidence. *Paleoceanography* 12: 718 – 727.

Litvin, V. M., V. V. Matveyenkov, E. L. Onishchenko, M. V. Rudenko, and A. M. Sagalevich (1982), New data on the structure of Ampere Seamount, *Oceanology* 22(1), 62–64.

Marova, N., & Yevsyukov, Y. (1987) The geomorphology of the Ampére submarine seamount (in the Atlantic Ocean), *Oceanology* 27(4), 452–455.

Martin, B. & Christiansen, B. (2009) Distribution of zooplankton biomass at three seamounts in the NE Atlantic. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 56(25): 2671–2682.

Matveyenkov, V., Poyarkov, S., Dmitriyenko, O., Al'Mukhamedov, A., Gamsakhurdia, I. & Kuznetsov O. (1994) Geological particularities of the seamount structure in the Azoro-Gibraltar Zone, *Oceanology* 33(5), 664–673.

Mendonca, A., Martins, A., Figueiredo, M., Bashmachnikov, I., Couto, A., Lafon, V. & Aristegui, J. (2010) Evaluation of ocean color and sea surface temperature sensors algorithms using in situ data: a case study of temporal and spatial variability on two northeast Atlantic seamounts. *Journal of Applied Remote Sensing* 4(1): 043506.

Morato, T. & Clark, M. (2007). Seamount fishes: ecology and life histories. Chapter 9 In:Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. & Santos, R.S. (eds) *Seamounts: ecology, fisheries & conservation*. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. Pp. 170 -188.

Morato, T. & Pauly, D. (2004). *Seamounts: Biodiversity and fisheries*. Fisheries Centre, University of British Columbia.

Morato, T., Allain, V., Hoyle, S. & Nicol, S. (2009) *Tuna Longline Fishing around West and Central Pacific Seamounts*. Information Paper. Scientific Committee, Fifth Regular Session, 10-21 August 2009, Port Vila, Vanuatu. WCPFC-SC5-2009/EB-IP-04. Western and Central Pacific Fisheries Commission, Palikir, Pohnpei.

Morato, T., Cheung, W. & Pitcher, T. (2006) Vulnerability of seamount fish to fishing: fuzzy analysis of life history attributes. *Journal of Fish Biology* 68: 209–221

Morato, T., Hoyle, S., Allain, V. & Nicol, S. (2010) *Seamounts are hotspots of pelagic biodiversity in the open ocean*. PNAS Early Edition - www.pnas.org/cgi/doi/10.1073/pnas.0910290107.

Morato, T., Hoyle, S., Allain, V., & Nicol, S. (2010) Seamounts are hotspots of pelagic biodiversity in the open ocean. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 107(21): 9707–9711.

Morato, T., Varkey, D., Damaso, C., Machete, M., Santos, M. & Pitcher, T. (2008) Evidence of a seamount effect on aggregating visitors. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 357: 23-32.

Mortensen, P., Buhl-Mortensen, L., Gebruk, A. & Krylovab, E. (2008) Occurrence of deep-water corals on the MidAtlantic Ridge based on MAR-ECO data. *Deep-Sea Research II* 55:142–152

OSPAR (2011) *Background Document on the Josephine Seamount Marine Protected Area*. Report prepared by the OSPAR Intersessional Correspondence Group on Marine Protected Areas. Biological Diversity and Ecosystems, 551, 27.

Paiva, V. H., Geraldes, P., Ramírez, I., Meirinho, A., Garthe, S., & Ramos, J. A. (2010). Foraging plasticity in a pelagic seabird species along a marine productivity gradient. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, *398*, 259-274.

Paiva, V., Geraldes, P., Ramírez, I., Meirinho, A., Garthe, S. & Ramos, J. (2010) Oceanographic characteristics of areas used by Cory's shearwaters during short and long foraging trips in the North Atlantic. *Marine Biology* 157(6): 1385–1399.

Pakhorukov, N. (2008) Visual observations of fish from seamounts of the Southern Azores Region (the Atlantic Ocean). *Journal of Ichthyology* 48: 114–123.

Peirce, C. & Barton, P. (1991), Crustal structure of the Madeira-Tore Rise, eastern North Atlantic-results of a DOBS wide-angle and normal incidence seismic experiment in the Josephine Seamount region. *Geophysical Journal International* 106: 357–378.

Pingree, R. (2010) Ocean structure and climate (Eastern North Atlantic): in situ measurement and remote sensing. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the UK* 82: 681–707.

Pitcher, T. & Bulman, C. (2007) Raiding the larder: a quantitative evaluation framework and trophic signature for seamount food webs. In: Pitcher TJ, Morato T, Hart PJB, Clark MR, Haggen N, Santos R (eds) *Seamounts: ecology, fisheries and conservation*. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford, p 282–295.

Richer de Forges, B., Koslow, J. & Poore, G. (2000) Diversity and endemism of the benthic seamount fauna in the south-west Pacific. *Nature* 405: 944–47

Roberts, J., Wheeler, A. & Freiwald, A. (2006) Reefs of the deep: The biology and geology of cold-water coral ecosystems. *Science* 213: 543–547.

Rogers, A., Baco, A., Griffiths, H., Hart, T. & Hall-Spencer, J. (2007) Corals on seamounts. In: Pitcher, T., Morato, T., Hart, P., Clark, M., Haggan, N. & Santos, R. eds. *Seamounts: ecology, fisheries, and conservation*. Blackwell Fisheries and Aquatic Resources Series 12. Oxford, UK: Blackwell Publishing. pp 141–169.

Rogers, A., Clark, M., Hall-Spencer, J. & Gjerde, K. (2008) *The Science behind the Guidelines: A Scientific Guide to the FAO Draft International Guidelines* (December 2007) for the Management of Deep-sea Fisheries in the High Seas and Examples of How the Guidelines May Be Practically Implemented. IUCN, Switzerland.

Ryan, W., Hsu, K., Cita, M., Dumitrica, P., Lort, J., Maync, W., Nesteroff, W., Pautot, G., Stradner, W. & Wezel, F. (1973) Gorringe bank Site 120, Initial Reports Deep Sea Drilling Project, WashingtonNat. National Science Foundation. US government 13:11941

Samadi, S., Bottan, L., Macpherson, E., Richer de Forges, B. & Boisselier, M. (2006) Seamount endemism questioned by the geographical distribution and population genetic structure of marine invertebrates. *Marine Biology* 149: 1463–75.

Samadi, S., Schlacher, T. & De Forges, B. (2007) Seamount benthos. In: Pitcher, T.J., T. Morato, P.J.B. Hart, M.R. Clark, N. Haggan and R.S. Santos (Eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources* Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom, pp 119-140.

Surugiu, V., Dauvin, J. C., Gillet, P. & Ruellet, T. (2008) Can seamounts provide a good habitat for polychaete annelids? Example of the northeastern Atlantic seamounts. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 55(11): 1515-1531.

Synnes, M. (2007) Bioprospecting of organisms from the deep-sea: scientific and environmental aspects. *Clean Technologies and Environmental Policy* 9(1): 53 – 59.

Tracey, D., Neil, H., Gordon, D. & O'Shea, S. (2003) Chronicles of the deep: ageing deep-sea corals in New Zealand waters. *Water and Atmosphere* 11: 22 –24.

White, M., Bashmachnikov, I., Aristegui, J. & Martins, A. (2007) Physical processes and seamount productivity. In: Pitcher, T., Morato T., Hart, P., Clark, M., Haggan, N. & Santos, R. (Eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation*. *Fish and Aquatic Resources* Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom, pp 65-84.

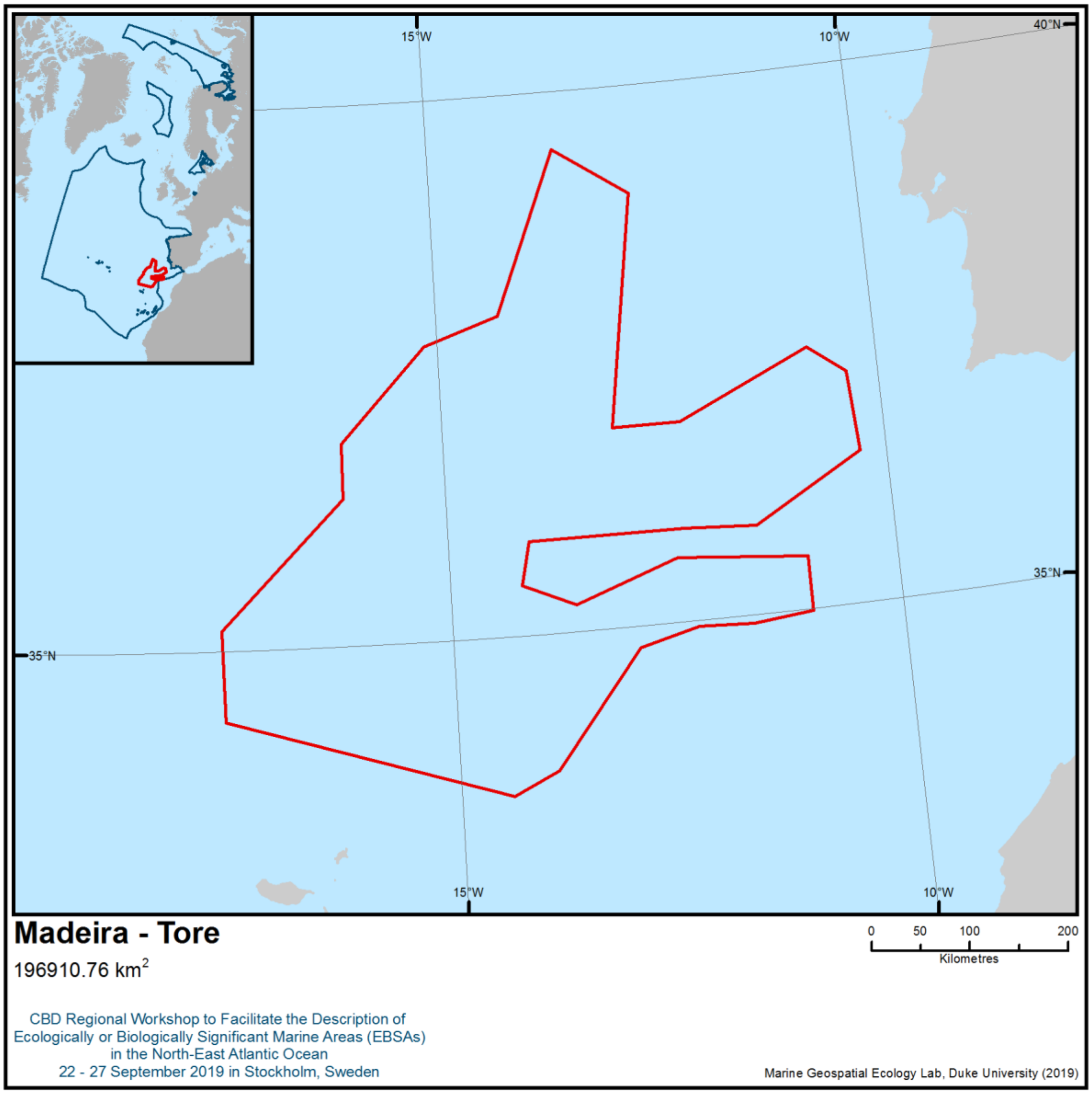
Wienberg, C., Wintersteller, P., Beuck, L. & Hebbeln, D. (2013) Coral Patch seamount (NE Atlantic) – a sedimentological and megafaunal reconnaissance based on video and hydroacoustic surveys. *Biogeosciences* 10(5): 3421-3443.

WWF (2001) *Implementation of the EU Habitats Directive Offshore: Natura 2000 sites for reefs and submerged seabanks*. Vol. II. Northeast Atlantic and North Sea, 87pp. World Wildlife Fund.

Xavier, Joana, & van Soest, Rob. (2007). *Demosponge fauna of Ormonde and Gettysburg Seamounts (Gorringe Bank, north-east Atlantic): diversity and zoogeographical affinities. Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the UK, 87(06).*

Zitellini, N., Gracia, E., Matias, L., Terrinha, P., Abreu, M., De Alteriis, G., Henriet, J., Danobeitia, J., Masson, D., Mulder, T., Ramella, R., Somoza, L. & Diez, S. (2009) The quest for the Africa-Eurasia plate boundary west of the Strait of Gibraltar, *Earth and Planetary Science Letters* 280: 13–50.

Maps and Figures



Location of area no. 6: Madeira – Tore

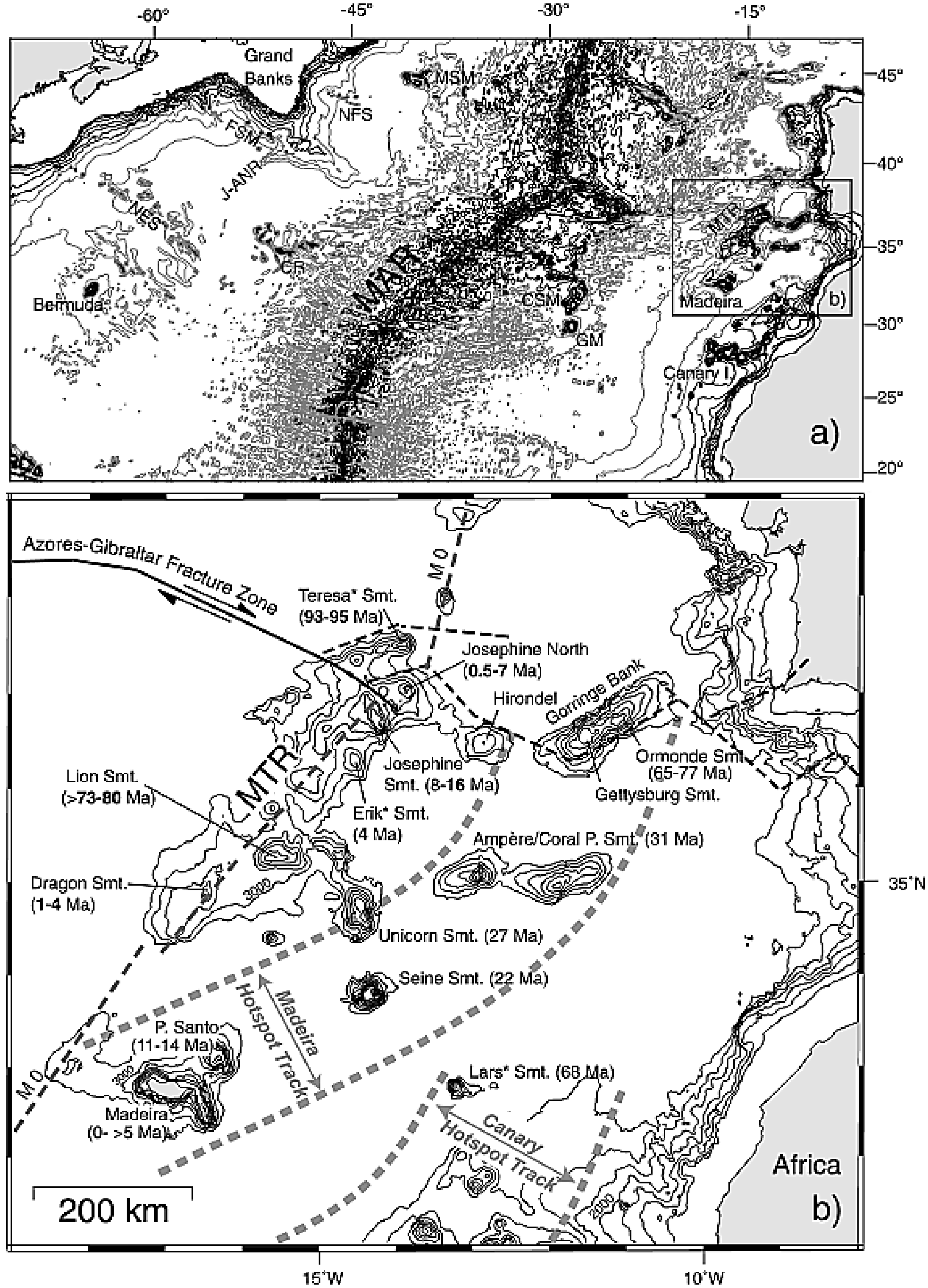


Figure 1. Adapted from Geldmacher *et al.*, 2006. (a) Bathymetric map of the central Atlantic. MAR, Mid-Atlantic Ridge; NFS, Newfoundland seamounts; MSM, Milne seamounts; FSM, Fogo seamounts; J-ANR, J-Anomaly Ridge; NES, New England seamounts; CR, Corner Rise; CSM, Cruiser seamounts; GM, Great Meteor Seamount; MTR, Madeira-Tore Rise. Source is GEBCO (Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission *et al.*, 1994), 500 m depth intervals, to highlight prominent structures depths contours below 3500 m are shown in gray). (b) Bathymetric map of the Madeira-Tore Rise (MTR) and neighbouring seamounts of the Madeira and Canary hot spot track (framed with heavy gray dashed lines) from TOPEX (Smith and Sandwell, 1997). Only depth contours above 3500 m are shown for clarity. Ages determined in

this study for individual MTR seamounts are shown in bold. For all other age data, see Geldmacher *et al*. (2005) for reference.

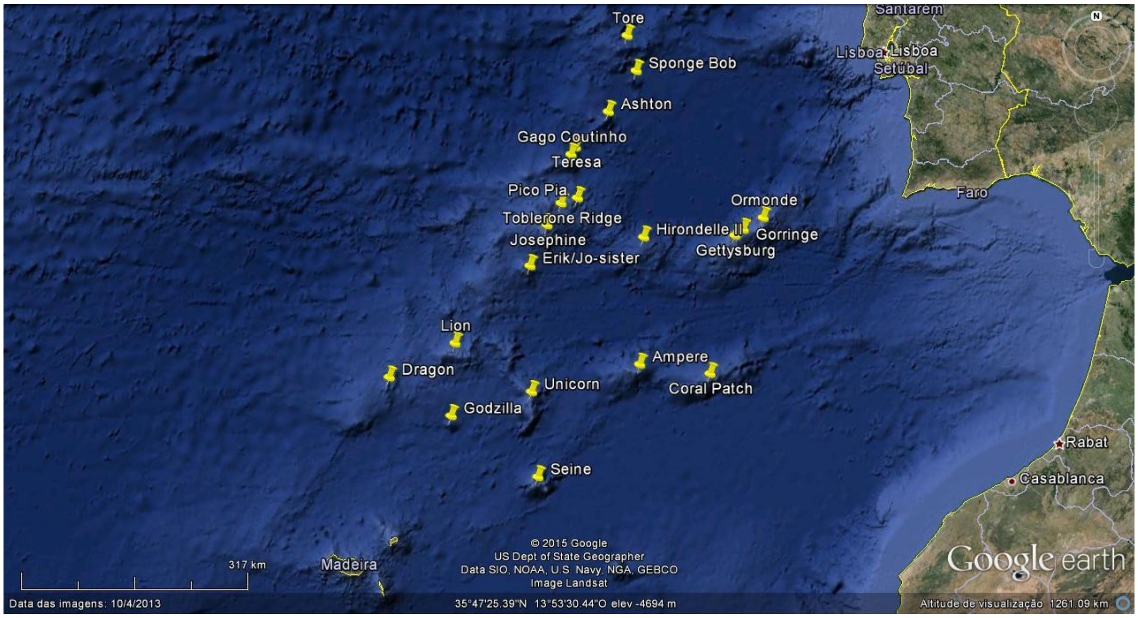


Figure 2. Structures included in Madeira-Tore area

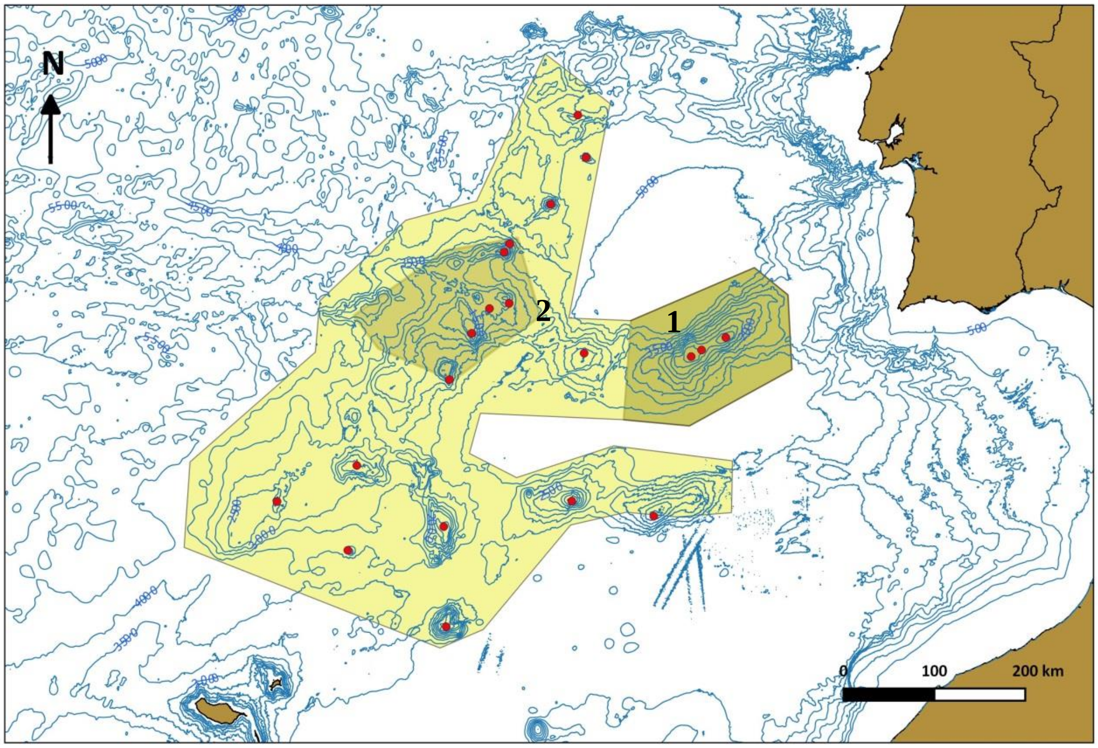


Figure 3. Madeira-Tore. Yellow shadow – area meeting EBSA criteria. Light brown shadows 1 - pSCI - Gorringe Bank; 2 - Josephine Seamount High Seas Marine Protected Area (OSPAR) (water column only).

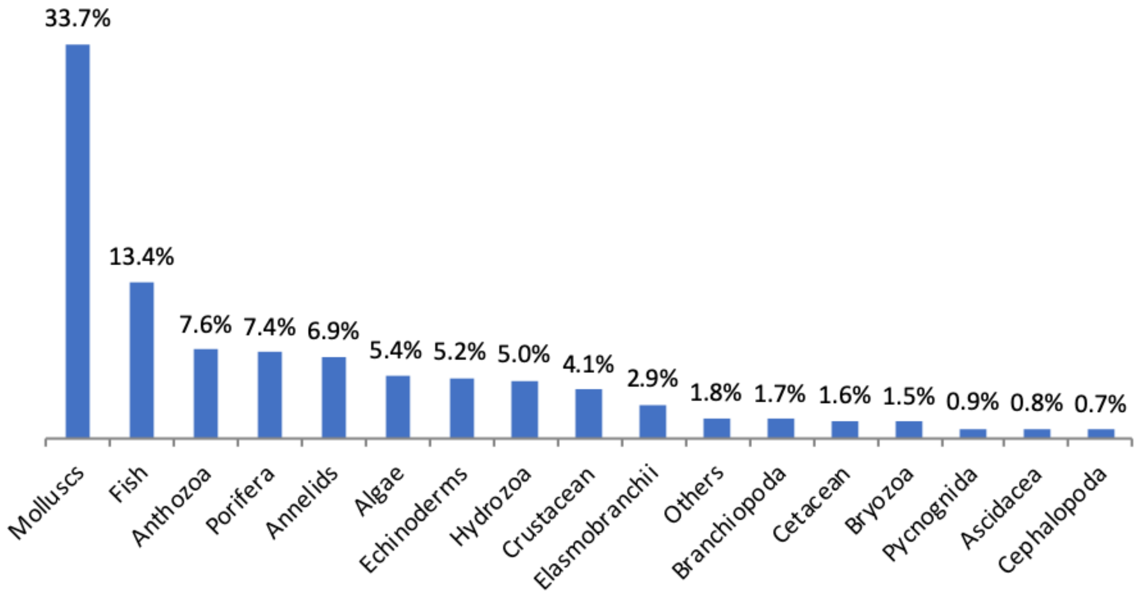


Figure 5. Relative frequency (per cent) of the different phylum/class/order of the species identified in Madeira-Tore.

Rights and permissions

Only processed and analysed information is included here, and the results from these analyses are publicly available.

Area no.7: Desertas

Abstract

The Desertas Islands hold some of the most important seabird colonies in the Atlantic, with large populations of Procellariiforms, including the only population of vulnerable Desertas petrel (*Pterodroma deserta).* They also contain important reproductive and resting habitats for the endangered monk seal (*Monachus monachus)* in the form of pupping caves and resting beaches.

Introduction

The Desertas Islands hold some of the most important seabird colonies in the Atlantic. It is a globally important site for the vulnerable and endemic Desertas petrel (*Pterodroma deserta)* (BirdLife International 2019a), with an estimated 160-180 breeding pairs (Menezes *et al.* 2010). It also has the largest colony of Bulwer's petrel (*Bulweria bulwerii)* in the Atlantic (8,300 pairs: Catry *et al*. 2015); an important population of Audubon's shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli)* – listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species; and the band-rumped storm-petrel (*Hydrobates castro)* (1,000 breeding pairs). The area also contains an important population of 25-40 endangered Mediterranean monk seal (*Monachus monachus)* (Pires *et al*. 2007, Pires 2011). The Madeira *M. monachus* population is isolated from the other main areas of the species distribution in the Eastern Mediterranean as well as the only other and nearest Atlantic colony, roughly 1000 km south of Madeira, at Cap Blanc, Mauritania (Pires *et al*. 2008). The site has been classified as an Important Bird and Biodiversity Area by BirdLife International (BirdLife International 2019b) http://datazone.birdlife.org/site/factsheet/desertas-iba-portugal, as well as an Important Marine Mammal Area (IMMA) by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (IUCN MMPATF 2019).

Location: This area includes the marine areas adjacent to the Desertas Islands. It has an area of 455 km^2 and is located southeast of Madeira Island, Portugal (32.47N/-16.52W)
(Figure 1).

Feature description of the area

The Desertas (and specifically Bugio) contains the only breeding colony of Desertas petrel (*Pterodroma deserta)* in the world, with 160-180 pairs. Birds return to their breeding grounds in early June. Incubation occurs between mid-July and the end of August, and juveniles fledge throughout November-December. It is also globally important for a breeding population of band-rumped storm-petrel (*Hydrobates castro)* (1,000 breeding pairs), and Audubon's shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli),* listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species. The Madeira population of *M. monachus* uses cave and beach habitats around the Desertas Islands, where mating behaviour has been observed and pupping occurs. Neves (1998) and Pires *et al*. (2007) further recorded and identified feeding sites near the coastline around the Desertas Islands. Moreover, studies have shown that feeding occurs regularly inside of the 200 m depth around the Desertas Islands as well as Madeira (IUCN MMPATF 2018).

The Desertas petrel (*Pterodroma deserta)* is listed as vulnerable because, although it appears to be stable, it has a very small population (Meirinho *et al*. 2014). It occupies a very small range on only one island when breeding and is susceptible to human impacts, introduced species and stochastic events, which could drive the species towards extinction in a very short time (BirdLife International 2019a). The Audubon's shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli)* – listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species – has a small population size and is considered rare. Much of the suitable breeding habitat for this species has been rendered unsuitable due to the introduction of rats and cats, putting it at risk of further declines (OSPAR 2009). The area also contains an important population of 25-40 endangered Mediterranean monk seal (*Monachus monachus),* which utilise cave and beach habitats respectively for pupping as well as resting (Pires *et al*. 2007, Hale *et al*. 2011, Pires *et al*. 2011; Figure 2). The endangered Mediterranean monk seal is regarded as one of the most endangered pinniped species in the world, with approximately 600-700 animals in the global population, of which an estimated 350-450 of these are mature individuals (Karamanlidis & Dendrinos, 2015). The population has also been fragmented into three to four subpopulations, of which the Desertas supports an isolated population (25-40 individuals) separated by roughly 1000 km from the only other Atlantic breeding colony (250 individuals) to the south, in Cap Blanc, Mauritania (Pires *et al*. 2008).

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

Xeveral projects regarding habitat restoration and scientific research (e.g., Life Recover Natura – https://liferecovernatura.madeira.gov.pt/). The population of the Desertas petrel is now considered stable and has benefited from management measures under the project LIFE SOS Freira-do-Bugio - https://ifcn.madeira.gov.pt/biodiversidade/projetos/freira-do-bugio.html). There are ongoing studies focusing on the seabird community, in particular the Desertas petrel (e.g., Ramírez *et al*. 2013, Silva *et al*. 2019). For the Mediterranean monk seal, the Madeira subpopulation was once restricted to the remote Desertas Islands (Neves and Pires 1999); monk seals have recently recolonized the main island of Madeira (Pires, 2011), where suitable habitat for the species still exists (Karamanlidis *et al*. 2004). Recent observations and reports indicate that there are strong indications of pupping on the marine island (Karamanlidis & Dendrinos, 2015). Both the populations of Monk seals and Desertas petrels are regularly monitored by IFCN (Madeiran Government).

Assessment of area no. 7, Desertas, against CBD EBSA Criteria

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">CBD EBSA Criteria
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</th><th rowspan="2">Description
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</th><th colspan="4">Ranking of criterion relevance
(please mark one column with an X)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No information</th><th>Low</th><th>Medium</th><th>High</th></tr>
<tr><td>Uniqueness or rarity</td><td>Area contains either (i) unique (“the only one of its kind”), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
The Desertas (and specifically Bugio) contain the only breeding colony in the region (and in the world) of the endemic Desertas petrel (Pterodroma deserta) (Menezes 2010, 2011; BirdLife International 2019a).

The endangered Mediterranean monk seal is regarded as one of the most endangered pinniped species in the world, with approximately 600-700 animals in the global population, of which an estimated 350-450 are mature individuals (Karamanlidis & Dendrinos 2015). The population has also been fragmented into three to four subpopulations, of which the Desertas supports an isolated population separated by roughly 1000 km from the only other Atlantic breeding colony to the south in Cap Blanc, Mauritania (Pires et al. 2008).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Special importance for life-history stages of species</td><td>Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
The Desertas (and specifically Bugio) contain the only breeding colony of the Desertas petrel (Pterodroma deserta), with 160-180 pairs (Menezes et al. 2010). Birds return to their breeding grounds in early June. Incubation occurs between mid-July and the end of August, and juveniles fledge throughout November-December. It is also globally important for the breeding population of band-rumped storm-petrel (Hydrobates castro) (1,000 breeding pairs) and Audubon’s shearwater (Puffinus lherminieri baroli) – listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species. The Madeira population of M. monachus uses cave and beach habitats around the Desertas, where mating behaviour has been observed and pupping occurs. Neves (1998) and Pires et al. (2007) further recorded and identified feeding sites near the coastline around the Desertas Islands. Moreover, studies have shown that feeding occurs regularly inside of the 200</td></tr>
</table>

m depth around the islands of Desertas and Madeira (IUCN MMPATF 2018).					
Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				X
Explanation for ranking The Desertas hold some of the most important colonies of seabirds in the Atlantic, including the vulnerable and endemic Desertas petrel (*Pterodroma deserta)* and Audubon's shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli)* – listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species (OSPAR 2009). The Mediterranean monk seal is a threatened species, assessed and Red Listed as endangered (Karamanlidis & Dendrinos 2015) and is regarded as one of the most endangered pinniped species in the world.					
Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				X
Explanation for ranking The Desertas petrel (*Pterodroma deserta)* is listed as vulnerable because, although it appears to be stable, it has a very small population. It occupies a very small range on only one island when breeding and is susceptible to human impacts, introduced species and stochastic events, which could drive the species towards extinction in a very short time (BirdLife International 2019a; Dias *et al*. 2019; Rodríguez *et al*. 2019). The Audubon's shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli)* – listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species – has a small population size and is considered rare. Much of the suitable breeding habitat for this species has been rendered unsuitable due to the introduction of rats and cats, putting it at risk of further declines (OSPAR 2009). The endangered Mediterranean monk seal is regarded as one of the most endangered pinniped species in the world, with approximately 600-700 animals in the global population, of which an estimated 350-450 are mature individuals (Karamanlidis & Dendrinos 2015). The population has also been fragmented into three to four subpopulations, of which the Desertas supports an isolated population separated by roughly 1000 kmfrom the only other Atlantic breeding colony to the south in Cap Blanc, Mauritania (Pires *et al.* 2008).					
Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.	X			
Explanation for ranking					
Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.	X			
Explanation for ranking					
Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low	X			

	level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.				
Explanation for ranking					

Sharing experiences and information applying other criteria (Optional)

Other Criteria	**Description**	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		Don't Know	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
IBA and IMMA criteria					X
The site has been classified as an Important Bird and Biodiversity Area by BirdLife International (BirdLife International 2019b), http://datazone.birdlife.org/site/factsheet/desertas-iba-portugal, as well as an Important Marine Mammal Area (IMMA) by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (IUCN MMPATF 2019).					

References

BirdLife International (2019a) Species factsheet: *Pterodroma deserta*. Downloaded from http://www.birdlife.org on 28/08/2019.

BirdLife International (2019b) Important Bird Areas factsheet: Desertas. Downloaded from http://www.birdlife.org on 28/08/2019.

Catry, P., Dias, M.P., Catry, T., Pedro, P., Tenreiro, P., Menezes, D., (2015). Bulwer's petrels breeding numbers on the Desertas Islands (Madeira): improved estimates indicate the NE Atlantic population to be much larger than previously thought. ISSN 0871-6595 Depósito legal 47713/91 Tiragem: 100 exemplares Impressão: Estria, Produções Gráficas, SA Disponível em www. spea. pt 10.

Dias, M.P., Martin, R., Pearmain, E.J., Burfield, I.J., Small, C., Phillips, R.A., Yates, O., Lascelles, B., Borboroglu, P.G., Croxall, J.P., (2019). Threats to seabirds: A global assessment. Biological Conservation in press. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2019.06.033

IUCN MMPATF (2018) Final Report of the IMMA Extraordinary Workshop for the Mediterranean Monk Seal, La Spezia, Italy, 5 April 2018.

IUCN MMPATF (2019) The IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA). Made available under agreement on terms and conditions of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible via the IMMA e-Atlas http://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas/

Karamanlidis, A. & Dendrinos, P. (2015) *Monachus monachus* (errata version published in 2017). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2015: e.T13653A117647375.

Karamanlidis, A.A., Pires, R., Silva, N.C., Neves, H.C. (2004). The availability of resting and pupping habitat for the Critically Endangered Mediterranean monk seal *Monachus monachus* in the archipelago of Madeira. Oryx 38, 180–185.

Meirinho, A., Barros, N., Oliveira, N., Catry, P., Lecoq, M., Paiva, V., Geraldes, P., Granadeiro, J.P., Ramírez, I., Andrade, J., (2014). Atlas das Aves Marinhas de Portugal. Sociedade Portuguesa para o Estudo das Aves. Lisboa

Menezes D, Oliveira P & Ramírez I (2010). Pterodromas do arquipélago da Madeira. Duas espécies em recuperação. Serviço do Parque Natural da Madeira, Funchal

Menezes D, Oliveira P & Ramírez I (2011). Medidas Urgentes para a Recuperação da Freira do Bugio Pterodroma feae e do seu Habitat. Relatório Final. Serviço Parque Natural da Madeira/ Sociedade Portuguesa para o Estudo das Aves

Neves, H. C. (1998). 'Preliminary findings on the feeding behaviour and general ecology strategy of the Mediterranean monk seal *Monachus monachus* – (Pinnipedia: Monachinae) on the Desertas Islands'. Boletim Museu Municipal do Funchal, 5: 263-271.

OSPAR (2009). Background document for Little Shearwater *Puffinus assimilis baroli*. Biodiversity Series.

Pires, R. (2011). Monk Seals of the archipelago of Madeira. Funchal. Serviço do Parque Natural da Madeira, 63p

Pires, R., Costa Neves, H. & A. Karamanlidis, (2007). 'Activity Patterns of the Mediterranean Monk Seal (*Monachus monachus*) in the Archipelago of Madeira'. Aquatic Mammals, 33(3): 327-336.

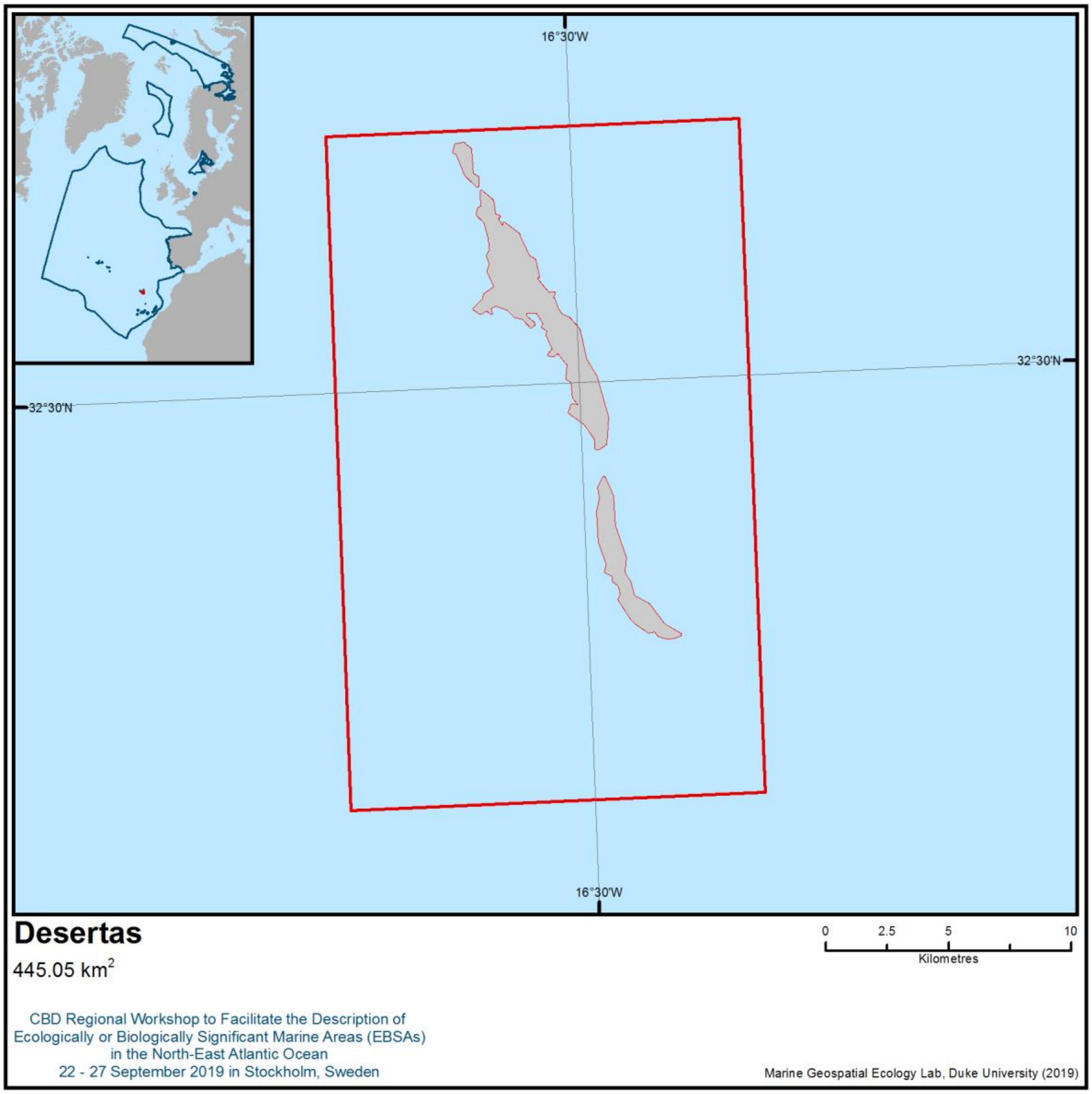
Pires, R., Costa Neves, H. & A. Karamanlidis, (2008). 'The Critically Endangered Mediterranean monk seal *Monachus monachus* in the archipelago of Madeira: priorities for conservation', Oryx, 42(2): 278– 285.

Ramírez, I., Paiva, V., Menezes, D., Silva, I., Phillips, R., Ramos, J., Garthe, S., (2013). Year-round distribution and habitat preferences of the Bugio petrel. Marine Ecology Progress Series 476, 269–284. https://doi.org/10.3354/meps10083

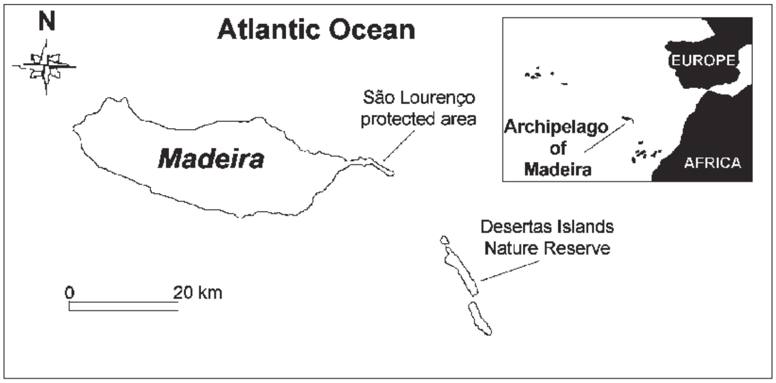
Rodríguez, A., Arcos, J.M., Bretagnolle, V., Dias, M.P., Holmes, N.D., Louzao, M., Provencher, J., Raine, A.F., Ramírez, F., Rodríguez, B., Ronconi, R.A., Taylor, R.S., Bonnaud, E., Borrelle, S.B., Cortés, V., Descamps, S., Friesen, V.L., Genovart, M., Hedd, A., Hodum, P., Humphries, G.R.W., Le Corre, M., Lebarbenchon, C., Martin, R., Melvin, E.F., Montevecchi, W.A., Pinet, P., Pollet, I.L., Ramos, R., Russell, J.C., Ryan, P.G., Sanz-Aguilar, A., Spatz, D.R., Travers, M., Votier, S.C., Wanless, R.M., Woehler, E., Chiaradia, A., (2019). Future Directions in Conservation Research on Petrels and Shearwaters. Front. Mar. Sci. 6. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmars.2019.00094

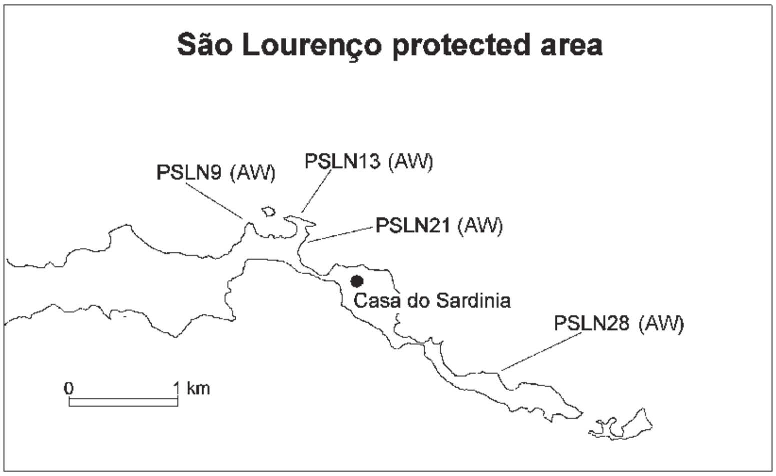
Silva, M., Catry, P., Menezes, D., Zino, F., Viveiros, C., Camara, J., Gouveia, P., Gomes, J., Catry, T., Granadeiro, J.P. (2019). Mechanisms of breeding asynchrony in sympatric Portuguese seabirds, the endangered Zino's Petrel (*Pterodroma madeira*) and Deserta´s Petrel (*Pterodroma deserta*). in SPEA (2019) (Eds). Livro de Resumos do X Congresso de Ornitologia da SPEA – 1.ª edição. Sociedade Portuguesa para o Estudo das Aves, Lisboa

Maps and Figures



Location of area no. 7: Desertas


N
Atlantic Ocean
São Lourenço
protected area
Madeira
EUROPE
Archipelago
of
Madeira
AFRICA
Desertas Islands
Nature Reserve
0
20 km


São Lourenço protected area
PSLN9 (AW)
PSLN13 (AW)
PSLN21 (AW)
Casa do Sardinia
PSLN28 (AW)
0
1 km

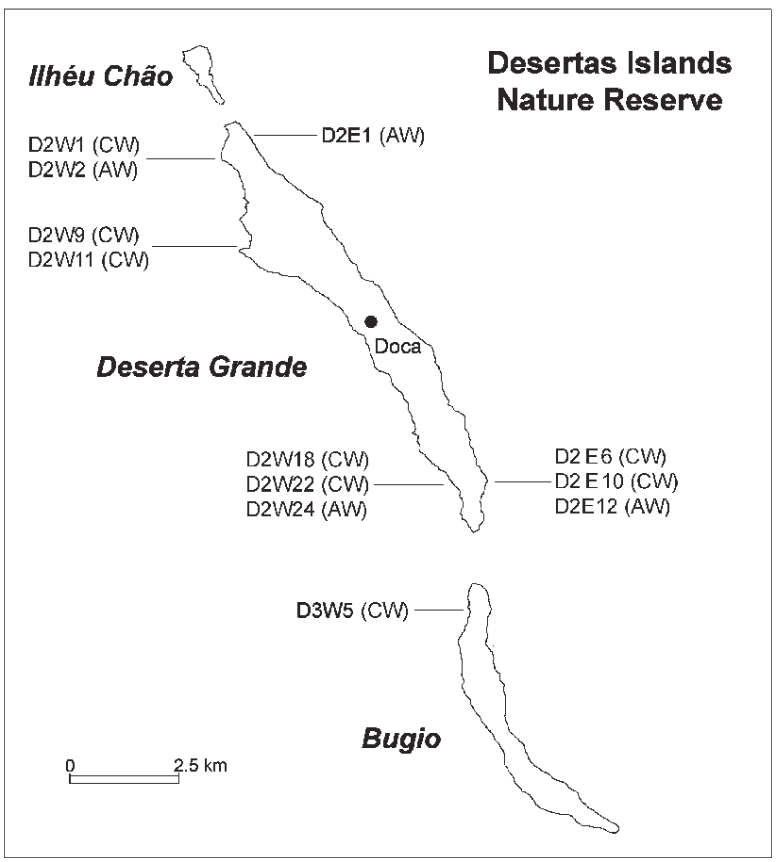

Ilhéu Chão
Desertas Islands
Nature Reserve
D2E1 (AW)
D2W1 (CW)
D2W2 (AW)
D2W9 (CW)
D2W11 (CW)
Doca
Deserta Grande
D2W18 (CW)
D2W22 (CW)
D2W24 (AW)
D2 E6 (CW)
D2 E10 (CW)
D2E12 (AW)
D3W5 (CW)
Bugio
0
2.5 km

Figure 2. The location of the Desertas Islands Nature Reserve and the protected area at São Lourenço, in the archipelago of Madeira, with locations of the 16 individually coded caves that offer good pupping conditions for the monk seal *Monachus monachus* under all weather conditions (AW), or good pupping conditions only during calm weather (CW) (Karamanlidis *et al*. 2004).

Area no. 8: Oceanic Islands and Seamounts of the Canary Region

Abstract

The area around the Canary Islands includes a set of islands and seamounts influenced by magma-driven processes over tens of millions of years over the Canary hotspot. The archipelago is made up of seven major islands, a group of islets in the northeast and three seamount fields: one in the northeast of the archipelago, one in the southwest and another between the islands. Some of these seamounts (Concepción Bank, El Banquete and Amanay) as well as coastal areas of the Canary region have been intensively studied. Thirty-nine marine Special Areas of Conservation and two Sites of Community Importance (both under the Natura 2000 network), as well as three marine reserves are located in the area. This region, with its subtropical oceanographic conditions, represents the southern distribution limit for many pelagic and benthic species. It includes a variety of benthic habitats, including some that are considered hotspots of biodiversity. These habitats serve as spawning grounds for several commercial species. The area also includes habitats for endangered, threatened and declining species and for migratory pelagic species, including cetaceans.

Introduction

The area around the Canary Islands includes a set of islands and seamounts influenced by magma-driven processes over tens of millions of years over the Canary hotspot. This subtropical region is located 100 km off the northwestern coast of Africa. Due to its proximity to Africa and the Sahara Desert, the archipelago is influenced by coastal upwelling that produces complex mesoscale variation in temperature and organic matter (Arístegui *et al*., 2009). The archipelago comprises seven major islands, a group of islets in the northeast andthree seamounts fields: one in the northeast of the archipelago, one in the southwest and another between the emerged islands. Some of these seamounts (Concepción Bank, El Banquete and Amanay) have been intensively studied over the years and even as a Site of Community Interest (SCI).

In total, the Canary Islands archipelago includes 39 marine Special Areas of Conservation, two Sites of Community Importance and three marine reserves; one of them, in the northeast of Lanzarote, is the largest marine reserve in Europe and covers 706.34 km^2. Wave exposure also varies within the islands according to shoreline orientation. The northern and northeastern coasts of the islands are the most exposed to wave action due to dominant winds from the northeast and fetch (a measure of coastal exposure to wind and waves that corresponds to the length of water over which a given wind blows). Western–southwestern shores are more sheltered in comparison. The volcanic origin of the Canary Islands and associated geological processes mean the islands stand on narrow platforms, in between which the waters reaches depths of up to 3000 m. The shallow seabed immediately surrounding the islands is characterized by a seascape of rocky platforms, large stones, pebbles and sandy patches. Erosion has generated a higher proportion of sandy or mixed substrates on the northern and eastern shores, especially around the two oldest islands of the archipelago, Lanzarote and Fuerteventura. By contrast, La Palma and El Hierro, the western islands, have narrower platforms and are dominated by rocky bottoms.

The geographic location of the Canary Islands archipelago and its lack of a continental shelf likely contribute to its dissimilarity compared to other Spanish marine areas. Moreover, this area is rich and diverse due to the effect of the Canary Current Large Marine Ecosystem (Arístegui *et al*., 2009; Hernández-Guerra *et al*., 2017), its location, the great environmental heterogeneity of the archipelago, and the high diversity of habitats (Brito *et al*., 2001; Falcón, 2015).

The Canary Islands archipelago belongs to the Northeastern Atlantic Warm Temperate Region, the biogeographic region with the highest seaweed richness on eastern side of the Atlantic (Hoek, 1984; Lüning, 1990). Flora and fauna around the Canary Islands consists of an ensemble of species from both warm temperate and tropical regions (Sansón *et al*., 2001; Brito and Ocaña, 2004; Sangil *et al*., 2011). In recent years there have been many changes in the composition and richness of the habitats and marine communities of the region. The oceanographic conditions of the area (subtropical region with presence of upwelling) create unique conditions for the development of species with both tropical and temperate affinity. Studies currently being carried out in deep areas will expand the information on the different roles that the seamount and oceanic island play in the colonization and development of benthic species and communities.

The seamounts, located in flat abyssal areas, pose topographic obstacles that modify the circulation and lead to complex vortices and Taylor columns (Roden, 1986), whereby a rotating body of water is retained over the summit of a seamount. These effects promote blooms of primary production, with increases in zooplankton and suprabenthos, which lead to increases in the availability of food for wildlife (White *et al*., 2007). Taylor columns can also trap advected organisms and zooplankton with vertical migration. All these conditions translate into an external contribution of food for the seamount communities. In addition, the currents and steep slopes expose the rock and favour, together with the increase in production, the presence of sessile-gorgonian suspension feeders, corals, sponges, etc., and therefore the development of vulnerable habitats. The increase of food and the increase of the environmental complexity that these sessile benthic communities contribute favour the aggregations of demersal and benthopelagic fish and, consequently, the increase in the presence of migrant species such as pelagic sharks, tunas, cetaceans, turtles and seabirds. Finally, the particular conditions of isolation and high diversity of environments favour the appearance of a large number of endemic species (Almón *et al*., 2014b).

The existence of anchialine caves (volcanic tubes flooded by the sea) on islands such as Lanzarote, where there are conditions of isolation and specific environmental variables, propitiates the existence of endemic species such as *Munidopsis polymorpha* (Koelbel, 1892), and others under study, such as several species of polychaetes.

The area includes 13 Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs, BirdLife International 2019). Key species breeding in the Canary archipelago and using the area to forage, rest or commute are the Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris diomedea),* band-rumped storm-petrel (*Hydrobates castro)*, white-faced storm-petrel (*Pelagodroma marina)*, Audubon’s shearwater (*Puffinus lherminieri),* Bulwer's petrel (*Bulweria bulwerii),* roseate tern (*Sterna dougallii)* and common tern (*Sterna hirundo)* (BirdLIfe International 2019). All these species occur in regionally or globally significant numbers that meet the criteria to classify the IBAs in the region (BirdLife International 2019; Donald *et al*. 2018).

Location

The area is located in and around the Canary Islands, between the parallels 24º60’N and 32º27’N and meridians 20º96’W and 30º33’W. It includes volcanic edifices (e.g., emerged islands, seamounts and banks) and has a maximum depth of 3000 m.

Feature description of the area

- Variety of benthic habitats that are considered hotspots of biodiversity

The Canary Islands is one of five archipelagos of Macaronesia, a biogeographic region of the North Atlantic, that share similar characteristics, such as vulcanological origin or the high number of endemic species. The area includes a great variety of benthic habitats, from typically infralittoral to bathyal depths (Aguilar *et al*., 2009; Brito, 2004), as well as seamounts or banks located on the northern and central areas of the islands (Almón *et al*., 2014a, 2014b). Research on seamounts located to the south of the islands has also been done in the framework of the Drago0511 oceanographic campaign, which yielded biological information that is yet to be analysed and published.

The study area has a wide variety of communities due to the occurrence of a great bathymetric variation, coupled with different types of substrates. Several communities are included under the Habitats Directive habitat type 1170 "Reefs". Regarding the infralittoral and circalittoral areas, there are different species of erect algae (mainly fucoids and red macroalgae), black corals (*Antipathella wollastoni), Stichopathes* spp. on the rocky slopes and gorgonians (*Leptogorgia* spp) in mixed substrates (Martín-García *et al*, 2016).

In the bathyal zone, we highlight the presence of rocky bottoms with corals (antipataria) and large hexactinellid sponges (*Asconema*), frequently observed on different substrates (rocky, soft and mixed sediments) of bathyal zones. Other important habitats and communities are gorgonian forests comprising *Callogorgia verticillata* and *Narella bellissima* species and accompanied by high densities of *Bebryce mollis* and *Eunicella verrucose*, as well as *Pheronema carpenteri* and *Paramuricea biscaya* on rocky bottoms between 500 and 1500 m, or those formed by lithistid sponges (*Leiodermatium-Neophryssospongia*). At the same depth range, siliceous sponges occur on rocky substrates covered by sediments. The anthozoan *Viminella flagellum* is also present mixed with these sponges. *Corallium niobe* and *Corallium tricolor* are found on rocky substrate between 500 and 1600m depth. It should be noted that habitats included in the 1170 habitat type relate to the group of white cold-water corals (Scleractinia), such as *Dendrophyllia cornigera* and *Phakellia ventilabrum*, which usually appear in the rocky reefs of the lower part of the continental shelf and upper area of the slope, and the deep coral reefs of *Lophelia pertusa* and / or *Madrepora oculata*, and the habitat defined by a white coral of cold waters *Solenosmilia variabilis*, the main framework building coral of reefs in deeper areas between 1300 and 1700 m.

In soft bottoms, considered the "1110" habitat type under the Habitats Directive, we have found important communities at shallow depths, such as seagrass meadows of *Cymodocea nodosa* and *Halophila decipiens* sometimes mixed with the green algae *Caulerpa prolifera*, or the large populations of garden eels (*Heteronger longissimus*). The coral *Flabellum,* which lives on sandy bottoms, together with sea urchins, and the habitat defined by dead coral or rubble are all present in the bathyal and muddy seabed (Martín-Sosa *et al*, 2013).

Three species of seagrass meadows have been found in the Canary Islands: *Cymodocea nodosa*, *Halophila decipiens* and *Zostera noltii*. However, *C. nodosa* is the seagrass that forms the largest meadows throughout the Canary Islands, and it is of greater importance in marine ecosystems (Reyes *et al*. 1995, Barquín-Diez *et al*., 2005). Seagrass meadows play a crucial role in coastal areas because of their high primary production and their support to the increasing biodiversity (Mazzella *et al*., 1993) and food web complexity (Mazzella *et al*., 1992; Buia *et al*.,2000). But seagrass meadows are undergoing a world-wide decline, with global loss rates estimated at 2-5 per cent per year, compared to 0.5 per cent per year for tropical forests (Duarte & Gattuso, 2008). In the Canaries, *Cymodocea* meadows are considered a habitat in decline throughout the coastal areas; hence *Cymodocea nodosa* has been legislated as an endangered species.

Seaweed assemblages, dominated by the brown algae (*Cystoseira abies-marina* and *Lobophora variegate)*, red algae (*Gelidium* spp.) or mixed species (*Dyctiota, Lobophora* and filamentous red algae) cover a high proportion of the hard substrate with good conservation status in the infralittoral zone (Martín-García *et al*. 2016). These communities have high biological productivity and represent refuge habitat for fish and juveniles of many species. In deeper bottoms (from 30 m depth) but in the infralittoral areas, there are vast areas of maërl (*Lithothamniun corallioides*, *Lithophyllum*, *Mesophyllum* y *Peyssonnelia rosa-marina*) around the islands (Afonso-Carrillo & Gil-Rodríguez, 1982), most of them understudied. Maërl beds can harbour high densities of broodstock bivalves and act as nursery areas for the juvenile stages of commercial species (Barberá *et al*., 2003).

The Canary Islands are considered a biodiversity hotspot. The most recent revision on fishes in Spanish waters recorded a total of 1075 species, the Canary Islands being the most diverse, with 795 species, and also having the greatest species richness (see below Table 1 from Báez *et al*., 2019).

Table 1. Number of species, species richness (d), area size, and species/area for each demarcation. Key: CAN, the Canary Islands; NOR, Spanish north coast; SUD, Spanish coast of the Gulf of Cádiz; ESAL, the Strait of Gibraltar and Alboran Sea; LEBA, East coast of Spain and the Balearic Islands.

Demarcation	Number of Species	Species richness (d)	Area (Km^2)	(Species/Area) *100
CAN	795	261.9	486195	0.164
NOR	506	166.3	306499	0.165
SUD	397	130.6	14978	2.651
ESAL	464	152.7	25853	1.795
LEBA	498	164	232642	0.214

Taking into account only the littoral zone (from shore to a depth of 200 m), a marine multi-taxon study of the Macaronesian ecoregion (Freitas *et al*. in press) shows that the Canary Islands are by far the most diverse archipelago for five of the six groups studied (85 echinoderms, 811 gastropods, 120 brachyurans (Crustacea:Decapoda), 465 polychaetes, 689 macroalgae), and they have a similar number of coastal fish (299) as Cape Verde (303), despite the latter's location in the tropical region. This same study highlights the importance of the Canary Islands in relation to the high number of species restricted to two or more of the Macaronesian archipelagos (130 of a total of 144 shared endemic species).

- *Important area for cetaceans*

The Canary Islands archipelago is one of the most important areas for cetaceans, with a high diversity of species, since the distributions of tropical and warm water species in this oceanic region overlap with those of large oceanic migrants (López, 2017).

Around 30 species of cetaceans have been documented in the Canary Islands, making it one of the world's marine mammal hotspots. The Canary Islands archipelago shows the highest diversity of cetaceans in Macaronesia and harbours five resident species. Due to the islands' location, they also harbour as many tropical marine mammal species as those in colder latitudes. Moreover, due to the steep slopes and canyons surrounding the islands, deep-diving species are well represented, including two resident species of beaked whales: Blainville´s beaked whale (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) and Cuvier´s beaked whale (*Ziphius cavirostris*) with an estimate of 103 (87-130) and 87 (78-106) off El Hierro island, respectively (Aparicio, 2008; Arranz, 2011; Reyes, 2017). In the Canary Islands, we can also find one the few resident populations of short-finned pilot whales *(Globicephala macrorhynchus*) of the world, with a population estimate of 391 (325-470) off Tenerife (Marrero *et al.* 2016).

In summary, the following species are common in the archipelago:

Physeter macrocephalus	*Grampus griseus*	*Globicephala macrorhynchus*
Delphinus delphis	*Steno bradanensis*	*Stenella coeruleoalba*
Stenella frontalis	*Tursiops truncatus*	*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*
Balaenoptera physalus	*Balaenoptera edeni*	*Ziphius cavirostris*
Mesoplodon europaeus		

Other species are occasional visitors or have been observed anecdotally:

Balaenoptera musculus	*Eubalaena glacialis*	*Megaptera novaeangliae*
Kogia sima	*Kogia breviceps*	*Lagenorhynchus acutus*
Lagenodelphis hosei	*Lagenorhynchus albirostris*	*Stenella attenuata*
Stenella longirostris	*Pseudorca crassidens*	*Feresa attenuata*
Balaenoptera borealis	*Mesoplodon densirostris*	*Hyperoodon ampullatus*
Mesoplodon bidens	*Mesoplodon mirus*	

- *Habitats for endangered, threatened and declining species*

Listed below are some examples of species registered in the area that need special attention:

<u>IUCN Red List of threatened species</u>

Physeter macrocephalus	*Balaenoptera physalus*	*Caretta caretta*
Dermochelys coriacea	*Squatina squatina*	*Sardinella maderensis*
Megalops atlanticus	*Trachurus trachurus*	*Kajikia albida*
Makaira nigricans	*Bodianus scrofa*	*Pomatomus saltatrix*
Thunnus obesus	*Thunnus thynnus*	*Epinephelus itajara*
Epinephelus marginatus	*Mycteroperca fusca*	*Dentex dentex*
Balistes capriscus	*Mola mola*	*Carcharhinus falciformis*
Carcharhinus obscurus	*Sphyrna lewini*	*Sphyrna zygaena*
Galeorhinus galeus	*Mustelus mustelus*	*Alopias superciliosus*
Alopias vulpinus	*Carcharodon carcharias*	*Isurus oxyrinchus*
Gymnura altavela	*Manta birostris*	*Mobula mobular*
Mobula tarapacana	*Rhincodon typus*	*Pristis pristis*
Dipturus batis	*Leucoraja circularis*	*Raja maderensis*
Rostroraja alba	*Rhinobatos rhinobatos*	*Centrophorus granulosus*

Centrophorus squamosus	*Dalatias licha*	*Centroscymnus owstoni*
Squatina squatina	*Eunicella verrucosa*	

OSPAR Species

Patella aspera	*Centroscymnus coelolepis*	*Dipturus batis*
Raja montagui	*Hippocampus hippocampus*	*Raja clavata*
Rostroraja alba	*Squatina squatina*	*Thunnus thynnus*
Balaenoptera musculus *	*Eubalaena glacialis**	*Caretta caretta*
Dermochelys coriacea		

(* species with occasional presence)

OSPAR Habitats
Coral gardens
Deep-Sea Sponge Aggregations
Lophelia pertusa Reefs
Mäerl Beds
Seamounts
Sea-Pen & Burrowing Megafauna Communities
Zostera Beds

Habitat Directive Habitat Types
1110 Sandbanks which are slightly covered by sea water all the time
1170 Reefs
8330 Submerged or partially submerged caves

Habitat Directive Species (Annex IV)
Caretta caretta
Centrostephanus longispinus
*Cetacea (*all the species present)

Particular consideration should be given to the angel shark (*Squatina squatina*), which has been assessed as critically endangered by the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN) (Ferretti *et al*.,2015) and belongs to the second-most endangered shark family in the world (Dulvy *et al*., 2014).The Canary Islands angel shark population is frequent throughout the year, and angel shark nursery areas can be found around the islands (Escánez *et al*., 2016).

- *Spawning grounds for several fish species of commercial interest*

Several species (benthic, pelagic and demersal species) with commercial interest spawn in waters around the Canary Islands, such as small pelagic species like mackerel (*Trachurus picturatus* and *Scomber colias),* whose breeding season is between November and March (Lorenzo & Pajuelo, 1996).

- *Seasonal migratory pathway for large migratory pelagic species*

Migrant species like sharks and tunas criss-cross the archipelago. The tuna species *Thunnus obesus*, *T. alalunga* and *T. thynnus* represent an important economic resource with high presence in the catches of local artisanal fisheries (Delgado de Molina, 2011).

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

Most of key threats to the marine environment and biodiversity around the Canary Islands are no different from those affecting coastal marine flora and fauna across the globe, but these have different local importance and a different degree of ecological concern along the depth range. The main threats are described and summarised by Riera *et al*. (2014):

- *Climate change.* Climate change arguably poses the greatest threat to the marine ecosystem around the Canary Islands, particularly the western islands (e.g., El Hierro, La Gomera and La Palma), which are less affected by the Saharan upwelling off the African coast (Barton *et al*., 1998). A progressive tropicalization of coastal ecosystems of the Canary archipelago has been observed in recent decades, and 78 per cent of the fish species newly recorded in recent years are considered to have tropical origins (Brito *et al*., 2005). Ocean warming has promoted the arrival of tropical species. There are several cases occurring at present in coastal waters of the Canaries related to invasive algal species, including the green alga *Caulerpa racemosa* aff. *Cylindracea*, the cyanobacteria *Lyngbya majuscula* (Martín-García *et al*. 2014), or the proliferation of the green alga *Penicillus capitatus* (Sangil *et al*., 2010).

- *Fishing activities.* Coastal fisheries have been massively overexploited in the Canary Islands due to pressure from artisanal fisheries and recreational fishers (Falcon *et al*., 1996). The target species are demersal species of the central Atlantic. The shallowest seamounts have a higher level of richness of target species and are the most suscentible to fishing activity. In addition, the shallowest seamounts commonly host the most sensitive habitats formed by hard corals and gorgonians (IEO 2012).

- *Coastal development pressure* on coastal ecosystems in the Canaries is driven by high human population density and continues to increase rapidly. About 9 per cent of the Canarian coast has been heavily transformed by the construction of rockwalls and other artificial structures on the shoreline. Highest concentrations of coastal structures (e.g., groins, dykes, breakwaters) and beach infrastructure (e.g., boardwalks) are located in tourist areas on the south coast of Tenerife and Gran Canaria, to protect and encourage use of artificial beaches. Likewise, a consistent increase in the number of harbours and marina facilities has occurred along the coast, without significant effort to understand the impacts of these coastal structures on marine biodiversity. Besides, impacts of land-based facilities and transport infrastructure associated with harbours would add additional impacts and pollution sources at different levels upon mesolittoral and sublittoral habitats.

- *Water pollution.* The waters surrounding the Canary Islands are oligotrophic, lacking the seasonal phytoplankton blooms that typify warm temperate seas elsewhere (Barton *et al*., 1998; Basterretxea and Arístegui, 2000). The archipelago also lacks permanent rivers, so nutrients and inorganic pollutants tend to enter the sea via smaller, isolated point sources like pipelines, sea-cage aquaculture (mainly for seabass *Dicentrarchus labrax* and seabream *Sparus aurata*) or desalination plants. Organic and inorganic pollutants from intensive farming (mainly banana and tomato) along the coast also have an impact on marine waters but their effects are not well understood. Fortunately, the presence of continuous coastal currents around the Canary Islands facilitates the dispersion of pollutants. Thus, while impacts may be acute near highly concentrated point sources, broader impacts of pollution along coastlines have not been identified.

- *Shipping and maritime traffic.* Chronic pollution derived from ship traffic is another potentially large but understudied threat to the marine environment of the islands. On average, 30,000 commercial vessels per year entered and exited local harbours (mostly in Gran Canaria and Tenerife) between 1998 and 2012 (ISTAC 2013). Aside from pollutant emissions from moving and docked ships, the impact for cetaceans posed by collisions and other disturbances (noise and vibration, human presence) is far from negligible. African hind (*Cephalopholis taeniops)* and the butterflyfish (*Chaetodon sanctaehelenae)* are two examples of fish species believed to have arrived at the Canaries in ballast water (Brito *et al*., 2005, 2010).

- *Proliferation of the sea urchin Diadema africanum.* This species has been responsible for an acute impoverishment of coastal rocky substrates in all the islands of the archipelago, with the exception of El Hierro, where fishing pressure has been lower and more strictly regulated in recent decades (Tuya *et al*., 2004). Effects of ocean warming on recruitment and growth, topographic complexity, and release from predation due to overfishing of predators (sensu Ling *et al*., 2009) are all likely to have played a role in the explosion of *D. africanum* populations in the Canaries (Hereu *et al*., 2004; Clemente *et al*., 2007), with the latter mechanism appearing most important (Tuya *et al*., 2004).

Extraction of construction materials from the seabed, and fuel prospecting and extraction, are two further disturbance sources for the marine biota of the Canary Islands, with unknown impacts.

In general, most of the impact occurs in the coastal and infralittoral zones. At present, there are many studies that different research entities are carrying out to better understand the impact of both climate change and invasive species on the shallowest waters of the archipelago. On the other hand, the human impacts and threats in deep waters, including seamounts, are insufficiently studied. The Spanish Institute of Oceanography (IEO) is currently working on the effects of fishing activities in some seamounts included in Special Areas of Conservation of the Canary Islands. There are more specific studies of biodiversity and oceanography of all seamounts of the region, but these are isolated and scarce.

Assessment of area no. 8, Oceanic Islands and Seamounts of the Canary Region, against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA Criteria (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Description** (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		No information	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique ("the only one of its kind"), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.				X

Explanation for ranking

Flora and fauna around the Canary Islands consists of an ensemble of species with either tropical or warm temperate affinity (Sansón *et al*., 2001; Brito and Ocaña, 2004; Sangil *et al*., 2011). The geographic location of the Canary Islands archipelago, its lack of a continental shelf and the oceanographic conditions of the area (subtropical region with presence of upwelling) likely contributes to its dissimilarity compared to other marine Atlantic regions. This region, with subtropical oceanographic conditions, represents the southern distribution limit for many pelagic and benthic species.

The Canary Islands archipelago belongs to the Northeastern Atlantic Warm Temperate Region, the biogeographic region with the highest seaweed richness on the eastern side of the Atlantic (Hoek, 1984; Lüning, 1990).

Moreover, the particular conditions of isolation that the area suffers and the high diversity of environments occurring favour the appearance of many endemic species (Almón *et al*., 2014b). In addition, the existence of anchialine caves (volcanic tubes flooded by the sea) on islands such as Lanzarote, where there are conditions of isolation and specific environmental variables, propitiates the existence of endemic species such as *Munidopsis polymorpha* (Koelbel, 1892), and others under study, such as several species of polychaetes.

On the other hand, compared to the surrounding deep-sea environment, seamounts may also form biological hotspots with a distinct, abundant and diverse fauna, and sometimes contain many species new to science.

One of the few resident populations of short-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*) of the world can be found in the waters around the islands, with a population estimate of 391 (325-470) off Tenerife (Marrero *et al*. 2016).

Special importance for life-history	Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.				X

stages of species					
Explanation for ranking Around 30 species of cetaceans have been documented in the Canary Islands, making it one of the world's marine mammal hotspots. The Canary Islands archipelago shows the highest diversity of cetaceans in Macaronesia and harbours both migratory and five resident species. Due to the geographical location of the islands, they also harbour many tropical marine mammal species as well as marine mammals from colder latitudes. Moreover, due to the steep slopes and canyons surrounding the islands, deep-diving species are well represented, including two resident species of beaked whales: Blainville´s beaked whale (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) and Cuvier´s beaked whale (*Ziphius cavirostris*) with an estimate of 103 (87-130) and 87 (78-106) off El Hierro island, respectively (Aparicio, 2008; Arranz, 2011; Reyes, 2017). With regard to other migrant species, tuna species (*Thunnus obesus*, *T. alalunga* and *T. thynnus*) represent an important economic resource with a frequent presence in the catches of local artisanal fisheries (Delgado de Molina, 2011).In addition, habitat-forming species that characterize benthic habitats and offer substrate and refuge to other species spend their entire life cycle within the area. Regarding commercial species, some spawn in waters around the Canary Islands, such as small pelagic species like mackerel (*Trachurus picturatus* and *Scomber colias),* whose breeding season is between November and March (Lorenzo & Pajuelo, 1996). The area is a regionally and globally important for the breeding populations of several species of seabirds, including the Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris diomedea),* band-rumped storm-petrel (*Hydrobates castro)*, white-faced storm-petrel (*Pelagodroma marina)*, Audubon's shearwater (*Puffinus lherminieri),* Bulwer's petrel (*Bulweria bulwerii)*, roseate tern (*Sterna dougallii)* and common tern (*Sterna hirundo)* (BirdLife International 2019).					
Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				X
Explanation for ranking More than 50 species considered threatened, endangered or declining, based on different international regulations and agreements, are present in the area, mainly marine mammals and sharks, but also including benthic species as well as other fish and reptiles (Aguilar *et al*., 2009; Almón *et al*., 2014a, 2014b; IUCN, 2019; Habitat Directive, 1992, OSPAR 2008). Particular consideration should be given to the angel shark (*Squatina squatina*), which has been assessed as critically endangered by the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN) (Ferretti *et al*., 2015) and belongs to the second-most endangered shark family in the world (Dulvy *et al*., 2014).The Canary Islands angel shark population is frequent throughout the year, and different angel shark nursery areas can be found around the islands (Escánez *et al*., 2016). The area contains globally important breeding populations of little shearwater (*Puffinus lherminieri baroli)* and roseate tern (*Sterna dougallii),* both of which are listed by OSPAR as threatened and/or declining species (OSPAR 2009a, b).					
Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by				X

	human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				
Explanation for ranking A high diversity and abundance of marine benthic habitat-forming species that are slow-growing and have a very high longevity (e.g., coral gardens, blacks coral forests) are located all around the islands as well as on seamounts (e.g., coral reefs, coral gardens, black coral forest, sponge grounds) (Aguilar *et al*., 2009; Brito, 2004; Martín-Sosa *et al*, 2013; Almón *et al*., 2014a, 2014b; Martín-García *et al*, 2016) and are vulnerable and sensitive to fishing activities. The Macaronesian population of little shearwater (*Puffinus lherminieri baroli*) is listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species. – It has a small population size and is considered rare, primarily because the suitable breeding habitat for this species has been rendered unsuitable due to the introduction of rats and cats, putting it at risk of further declines (OSPAR 2009a). The roseate tern (*Sterna dougallii)* is also listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species and has comparatively low adult survival rates (Green 1995), and therefore needs to maintain exceptionally high productivity to achieve population stability (Newton 2004). It is threatened by predation and disturbance at the breeding colonies, in particular (OSPAR 2009b, Dias *et al*. 2019).					
Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.				X
Explanation for ranking Due to its relative proximity to Africa and the Sahara Desert, the archipelago is influenced by coastal upwelling that produces complex mesoscale variation in temperature and organic matter (Arístegui *et al*., 2009). Additionally, the seamounts, located in flat abyssal areas, pose topographic obstacles that modify the circulation and lead to complex vortices and Taylor columns (Roden, 1986), whereby a rotating body of water is retained over the summit of a seamount. These effects promote blooms of primary production, with increases in zooplankton and suprabenthos, which lead to increases in the availability of food for wildlife (White *et al*., 2007). Taylor columns can also trap advected organisms and zooplankton with vertical migration. All these conditions translate into an external contribution of food for the seamount communities. Seagrass meadows play a crucial role in coastal areas because of their high primary production and their support to the increasing biodiversity (Mazzella *et al*., 1993) and food web complexity (Mazzella *et al*., 1992; Buia *et al*., 2000). But seagrass meadows are undergoing a worldwide decline, with global loss rates estimated at 2-5 per cent per year, compared to 0.5 per cent per year for tropical forests (Duarte & Gattuso, 2008).					
Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X
Explanation for ranking The high biodiversity of the area is due to the effect of the Canary Current Large Marine Ecosystem on this area (Arístegui *et al*., 2009; Hernández-Guerra *et al*., 2017), its location, the great environmental heterogeneity of the archipelago, and the high diversity of benthic habitats (Brito *et al*., 2001; Falcón, 2015). Among the high diversity of benthic habitats both on hard and soft bottoms around the area, we find: black-coral forests (*Antipathella wollastoni*, *Stichopathes spp*.), gorgonian gardens (*Leptogorgia spp Callogorgia verticillata*, *Narella bellissima*, *Bebryce mollis*, *Eunicella verrucose*, *Paramuricea biscaya*, *Viminella flagellum*), mixed corals (*Dendrophyllia cornigera*) and sponge (*Phakellia ventilabrum*) and sponge assemblages (large hexactinellid sponge, *Asconema setubalense*, and lithistid sponges, *Leiodermatium-Neophryssospongia*), deep coral reefs (*Lophelia pertusa*, *Madrepora oculate*, *Solenosmilia variabilis*), seagrass meadows (*Cymodocea nodosa*) and *Halophila decipiens* sometimes					

mixed with green algae (*Caulerpa prolifera*) (Aguilar *et al*., 2009; Brito, 2004; Martín-Sosa *et al*, 2013; Almón *et al*., 2014a, 2014b; Martín-García *et al*, 2016).

Considering the diversity of multi-taxon species and compared to other areas of the Macaronesian, the Canary Islands are by far the most diverse archipelago for five of the six groups studied (85 echinoderms, 811 gastropods, 120 brachyurans (Crustacea:Decapoda), 465 polychaetes, 689 macroalgae) (Freitas *et al*. in press).

Regarding the diversity of fish species, the Canary Islands are considered a biodiversity hotspot, with 795 species, (Báez *et al*., 2019).

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.			X	

Explanation for ranking
Climate change (Barton *et al*., 1998), artisanal fisheries and recreational fishers (Falcon *et al*., 1996), water pollution, the introduction of invasive alien species (Occhipinti-Ambrogi and Savini, 2003; Molnar *et al*., 2008) and the proliferation of the sea urchin (*Diadema africanum)* (Tuya *et al*., 2004, Hereu *et al*., 2004; Clemente *et al*., 2007) have impacted the Canaries communities. Therefore, the area displays characteristics of a medium-level of naturalness, since one of the most serious threats for marine diversity in other areas, trawling, is prohibited.

References

Afonso-Carrillo J., Gil-Rodríguez MC. 1982. Sobre la presencia de un fondo de “Maerl” en las Islas Canarias. Collectanea Botanica 13: 703–708.

Aguilar, R., De la Torriente, A., Peñalver, J., López, J., Greenberg, R., Calzadilla, C., 2009. Propuesta de Áreas de Importancia Ecológica. Islas Canarias. OCEANA.

Almón, B., Arcos, J.M., Martín, V., Pantoja, J., Consuegra, E. Martín Sosa, P., González-Porto, M., 2014 (a). Banco de la Concepción, Proyecto LIFE + INDEMARES. Ed. Fundación Biodiversidad del Ministerio de Agricultura, Alimentación y Medio Ambiente. 2014.

Almón, B., Garrido, M., Meseguer, C., Arcos, J.M., Martín, V., Pantoja, J., Consuegra, E., 2014 (b). Espacio Marino del Oriente y Sur de Lanzarote-Fuerteventura. Proyecto LIFE + INDEMARES. Ed. Fundación Biodiversidad del Ministerio de Agricultura, Alimentación y Medio Ambiente. 2014.

Aparicio, C. 2008. Estudio de las poblaciones de los zifios de Blainville y de Cuvier (*Mesoplodon densirostris* y *Ziphius cavirostris*) en El Hierro. PhD thesis, Universidad La Laguna, Spain.

Arístegui, J., Barton, E.D., Alvarez-Salgado, X.A., Santos, A.M.P., Figueiras, F.G. *et al*., 2009. Sub-regional ecosystem variability in the Canary Current upwelling (Review). Progress in Oceanography 83, 33-48.

Arranz, P. 2011. Descripción de la selección y uso del hábitat de los Zifios de Blainville (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) y de Cuvier (*Ziphius cavirostris*) en la isla de El Hierro. Propuestas de conservación. PhD thesis, Universidad de la Laguna, España.

Báez, J., Rodríguez-Cabello, C., Bañón, R., Brito, A., Falcón, J., Maño, T., Baro, J., Macías, D., Meléndez, M., Camiñas, J., Arias-García, A., Gil, J., Farias, C., Artexe, I., & Sánchez, F. (2019). Updating the national checklist of marine fishes in Spanish waters: An approach to priority hotspots and lessons for conservation. Mediterranean Marine Science, 20(2), 260-270. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.12681/mms.18626

Barberá C, Bordehore C, Borg JA, Glémarec M, Grall J, Hall-Spencer JM, De la Huz CH, Lanfranco E, Lastra M, Moore PG, Mora J, Pita ME, Ramos-Esplá AA, Rizzo M, Sánchez-Mata A, Seva A, Schembri PJ, Valle C. 2003. Conservation and management of northeast Atlantic and Mediterranean maërl beds. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 13: 65-76.

Barton, E., 1998. Eastern boundary of the North Atlantic: Northwest Africa and Iberia. Coastal segment (18, E). In: Robinson, A., Brink, K.H. (Eds.), The Sea, vol. 11. John Wiley & Sons Inc., pp. 633–657.

Basterretxea, G., Aristegui, J., 2000. Mesoscale variability in phytoplankton biomass distribution and photosynthetic parameters in the Canary-NW African coastal transition zone. Marine Ecology-progress Series - MAR ECOL-PROGR SER. 197. 27-40.

BirdLife International, 2019. Marine IBA e-atlas. Downloaded from https://maps.birdlife.org/marineIBAs/default.html on 26/09/2019.

Brito, A., Falcón, J., Herrera, R., 2005. Sobre la tropicalización reciente de la ictiofauna litoral de las islas Canarias y su relación con cambios ambientales y actividades antrópicas. Vieraea. 33. 515-525.

Brito, A., Falcón, J.M., Aguilar, N., Pascual, P., 2001. Fauna vertebrada marina. En: Fenández-Palacios, J. M. y Martín Esquivel, J. L. (Coord.). Naturaleza de las Islas Canarias. Ecología y Conservación. pp. 219-229. J. Editorial Turquesa. Santa Cruz de Tenerife.

Brito, A., Ocaña, O., 2004. Corales de las Islas Canarias. In: Lemus, Francisco (Ed.), La Laguna, p.477.

Clark MR, Tittensor D, Rogers AD, Brewin P, Schlacher T, Rowden A, Stocks K, Consalvey M (2006). Seamounts, deep-sea corals and fisheries: vulnerability of deep-sea corals to fishing on seamounts beyond areas of national jurisdiction. UNEPWCMC, Cambridge, UK.

Clemente, Sabrina & Hernández, José. (2007). Evolución de las poblaciones del erizo Diadema aff. antillarum en Canarias y valoración de la depredación como factor de control. 10.13140/RG.2.2.35756.36489.

Delgado de Molina, A. 2011. Historia y situación actual de la pesquería de túnidos de las Islas Canarias. Biología y estudio poblacional del patudo (Thunnus obesus (Lowe, 1869)) capturado en aguas próximas al Archipiélago Canario. Tesis doctoral.

Dias, M.P., Martin, R., Pearmain, E.J., Burfield, I.J., Small, C., Phillips, R.A., Yates, O., Lascelles, B., Borboroglu, P.G., Croxall, J.P., (2019). Threats to seabirds: A global assessment. Biological Conservation in press. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2019.06.033

Dulvy, N.K., Fowler, S.L., Musick, J.A., Cavanagh, R.D., Kyne, P.M., Harrison, L.R., ... Francis, M.P. (2014). Extinction risk and conservation of the world's sharks and rays. Elife,3, e00590.https://doi.org/10.7554/eLife.00590.001

Escánez, A., Crespo, A., Rodríguez, S., Oñate, M. & Marrero, J. (2016). Estudio del primer área de cría del Angelote (Squatina squatina) descubierta en Canarias. Chronica naturae, 6, 50-62

Falcón, J., Bortone, S., Brito, A., Bundrick, C., 1996. Structure of and relationships within and between the littoral, rock- substrate fish communities off four islands in the Canarian Archipelago. Marine Biology. 125. 215-231.

Falcón, J.M., 2015. Ictiofauna de las Islas Canarias. Análisis biogeográfico. Doctoral thesis. Universidad de La Laguna. 310 pp.

Ferretti, F., Morey, G., Serena, F., Mancusi, C., Fowler, S.L., Dipper, F. & Ellis, J. (2015). Squatina squatina. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2015. http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2015-1.RLTS.T39332A48933059.

Freitas *et al*. in press. Restructuring of the 'Macaronesia' biogeographic unit: A marine multi-taxon biogeographical approach. Biological reviews.

Green, R.E., 1995. Demography of Roseate Terns in Britain and Ireland. Pp 8-11 in: Ratcliffe, N. (ed) Proceedings of the 6th Roseate Tern Workshop. RSBP: Sandy, UK.

Habitat Directive, 1992. Council Directive 92/43/EEC of 21 May 1992 on the conservation of natural habitats and of wild fauna and flora. OJ L 206, 22 July 1992

Hereu, Bernat & Zabala, M. & Linares, Cristina & Sala, Enric. (2004). Temporal and spatial variability in settlement of the sea urchin Paracentrotus lividus in the NW Mediterranean. Marine Biology. 144. 1011-1018.

Hernández-Guerra, A., Espino-Falcón E., Vélez-Belchí, P., Pérez-Hernández, M.D., Martínez-Marrero, A. *et al*., 2017. Recirculation of the Canary Current in fall 2014. Journal of Marine Systems, 174, 25-39.

Hernández-Molina, F. & Larter, R.D. & Rebesco, Michele & Maldonado, A.. (2006). Miocene reversal of bottom water flow along the Pacific Margin of the Antarctic Peninsula: Stratigraphic evidence from a contourite sedimentary tail. Marine Geology. 228. 93-116.

Hernández-Molina, F. & Larter, R.D. & Rebesco, Michele & Maldonado, A., 2006. Miocene reversal of bottom water flow along the Pacific Margin of the Antarctic Peninsula: Stratigraphic evidence from a contourite sedimentary tail. Marine Geology. 228. 93-116.

Hoek, C., 1984. World-wide latitudinal and longitudinal seaweed distribution patterns and their possible causes, as illustrated by the distribution of Rhodophytan genera. Helgoländer Meeresun. 38 (2) 227–257.

IEO. 2012. Informe sobre la actividad pesquera del buque palangrero “Maransa” en aguas internacionales del área de CECAF (División FAO 34). Centro Oceanográfico de Canarias, Santa Cruz de Tenerife, 57 pp.

IUCN 2019. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. Version 2019-2. http://www.iucnredlist.org. Downloaded on 18 July 2019.

Lorenzo, J. & Pajuelo, J., 2010. Growth and reproductive biology of chub mackerel Scomber japonicus off the Canary Islands. South African Journal of Marine Science. June 1996. 275-280.

Lüning, K., 1990. Seaweeds. Their Environment, Biogeography and Ecophysiology. Wiley, NewYork,527pp.

Marrero Pérez, J., Crespo Torres, A., Escánez Pérez, A. y Albaladejo Robles, G. 2016. MITCALD. Determinación de factores de riesgo para la conservación de la población de Calderón tropical (Globicephala macrorhynchus) en el ZEC ES-7020017. TENERIFE. Contaminación acústica, interacciones tróficas y colisiones (Memoria técnica). Informe de Asociación Tonina para la Fundación Biodiversidad-MAGRAMA.

Martín-García L., Barquín-Diez J., Brito-Izquierdo T. 2016. Bionomía bentónica de las Reservas Marinas de Canarias (España). Comunidades y hábitats bentónicos del infralitoral. Ministerio de Agricultura y Pesca, Alimentación y Medio Ambiente. 181 pp.

Martín-García L., Barquín-Diez J., Brito-Izquierdo T. 2016. Bionomía bentónica de las Reservas Marinas de Canarias (España). Comunidades y hábitats bentónicos del infralitoral. Ministerio de Agricultura y Pesca, Alimentación y Medio Ambiente. 181 pp.

Martín-García L., Herrera R., Moro-Abad L., Sangil C., Barquín-Diez J., 2014. Predicting the potential habitat of the harmful cyanobacteria Lyngbya majuscula in the Canary Islands (Spain). Harmful Algae 34: 76-86.

Molnar, Jennifer & Gamboa, Rebecca & Revenga, Carmen & Spalding, Mark. (2008). Assessing the global threat of invasive species to marine biodiversity. Frontiers in Ecology and The Environment - FRONT ECOL ENVIRON. 6. 485-492.

Navarro, P. G., Ramírez, R., Tuya, F., Fernández-Gil, C., Sánchez-Jerez, P. & Haroun, R. J. 2005. Hierarchical analysis of spatial distribution patterns of patellid limpets in the Canary Islands. Journal of Molluscan Studies, 71: 67-73.

Newton, S.F.m (2004). Roseate Tern *Sterna dougallii* pp 302-314 in: Mitchell, P.L., Newton, S.F., Ratcliffe, N. and Dunn, T.C. (eds.) Seabird Populations of Britain and Ireland T & AD Poyser, London.

Occhipinti, A., Savini, D., 2003. Biological invasions as a component of global change in stressed marine ecosystems. Marine pollution bulletin. 46. 542-51.

OSPAR, 2008. LIST OF THREATENED AND/OR DECLINING SPECIES & HABITATS

OSPAR, 2009a. Background document for Little Shearwater *Puffinus assimilis baroli*. Biodiversity Series, 13p.

OSPAR, 2009b. Background document for Roseate Tern Sterna dougallii. Biodiversity Series. 29p

Ramírez R, F Tuya & RJ Haroun. 2009. Spatial patterns in the population structure of the whelk Stramonita haemastoma (Linnaeus, 1766) (Gastropoda: Muricidae) in the Canarian Archipelago (eastern Atlantic). Scientia Marina 73: 431-437.

Reyes, C. 2017. Abundance estimate, survival and site fidelity patterns of Blainville's (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) and Cuvier's (*Ziphius cavirostris*) beaked whales off El Hierro (Canary Islands). MSc in Biology, University of St Andrews, Scotland.

Riera R., Becerro M.A., Stuart-Smith R.D., Delgado J.D., Edgar G.J., 2014. Out of sight, out of mind: threats to the marine biodiversity of the Canary Islands (NE Atlantic Ocean). Mar Pollut Bull. 86(1-2): 9-18. doi: 10.1016/j.marpolbul.2014.07.014.

Roden, GI. 1986.: Aspects of aeanic Low and thermohaline struc- tw in the vicinity of munounti. In: Uchida, R.N.; Hay4 S.; Boehlert G.W. (edn.), Environment and &a of Seuncuh m the North Pacific. US Dep. Commer. NOM Tech. Re NMFS 43.

Sangil C., Sansón M., Afonso-Carrillo J., Martín-García L., 2010. Extensive off-shore meadows of Penicillus capitatus

Sangil, C., Sansón, M., Afonso-Carrillo, J., 2011. Spatial variation patterns of subtidal seaweed assemblages along a subtropical oceanic archipelago: thermal gradient vs herbivore pressure. Estuarine.Coast.ShelfSci. 94, 322–333.

Sangil, C., Sansón, M., Afonso-Carrillo, J., 2011. Spatial variation patterns of subtidal seaweed assemblages along a subtropical oceanic archipelago: thermal gradient vs herbivore pressure. Estuarine.Coast.ShelfSci. 94, 322–333.

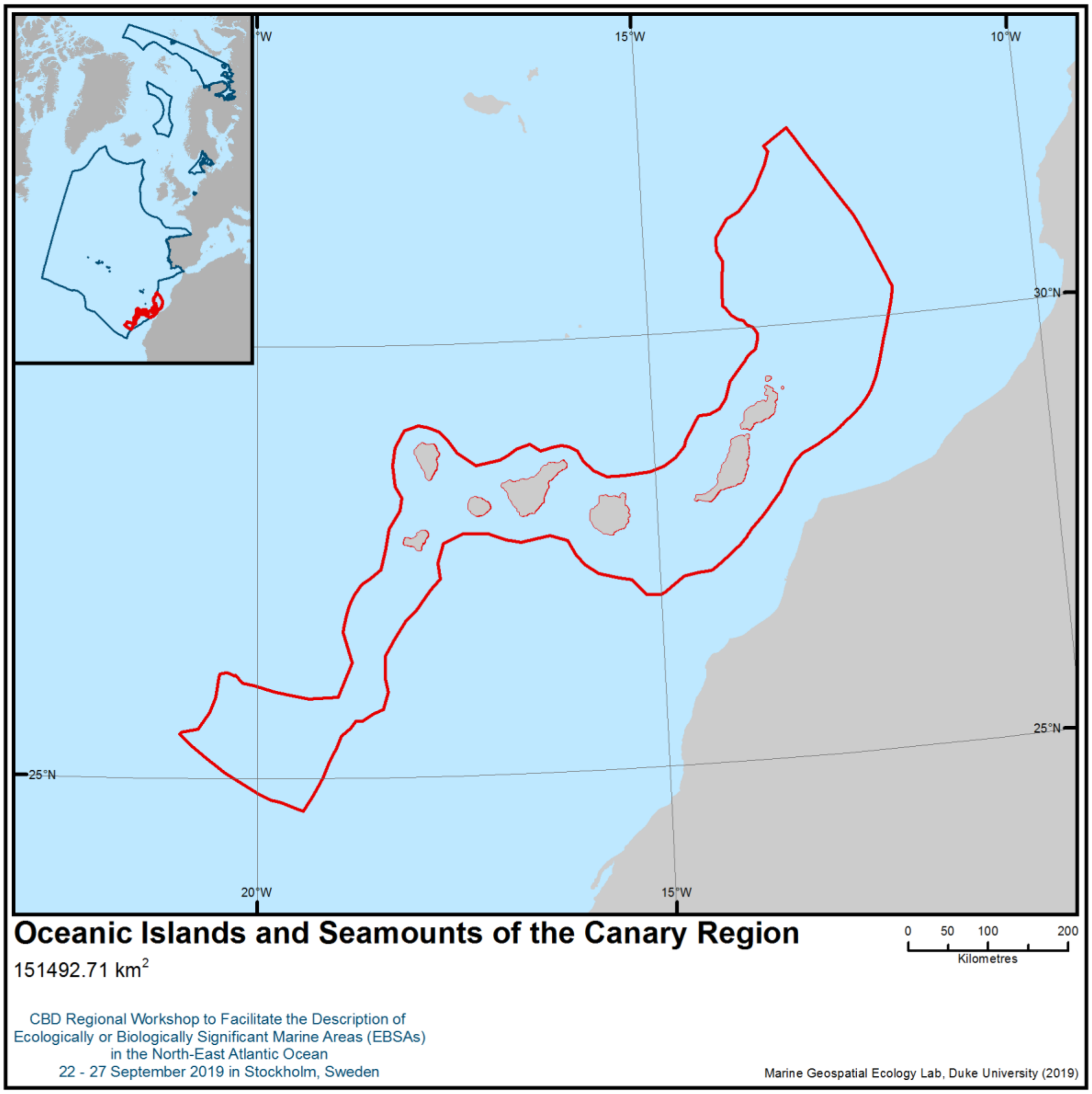
Sansón, M., Reyes, J., Afonso-Carrillo, J., 2001. Flora marina. In: Fernández- Palacios, J. M., Martín Esquivel, J. L. (Eds.), Naturaleza de las Islas Canarias: Ecología y Conservación. Turquesa,Santa Cruz de Tenerife, pp.193–198.

Tuya, F., Boyra, A., Sanchez-Jerez, P., Barberá, C., Haroun, R.J., 2004, Relationships between rocky-reef fish assemblages, the sea urchin Diadema antillarum and macroalgae throughout the Canarian archipelago. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 278, 157–169.

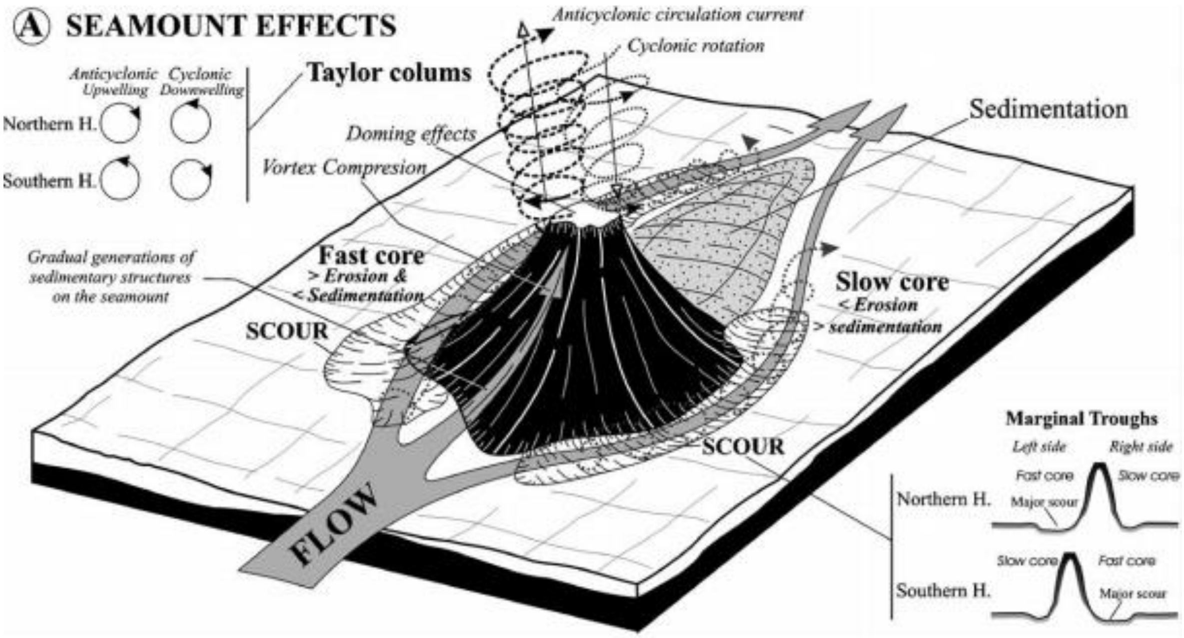
White, M., Bashmachnikov, I., Arístegui, J. & Martins, A. 2007. Physical Processes and Seamount Productivity. Chapter 4 in Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. & Santos, R.S. (eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries and Conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. Pp 65-84.

Wilkens, Horst & Iliffe, Thomas & Oromí, Pedro & Martinez, Alejandro & Tysall, Terrence & Koenemann, Stefan., 2009. The Corona lava tube, Lanzarote: Geology, habitat diversity and biogeography. Marine Biodiversity. 39. 155-167.

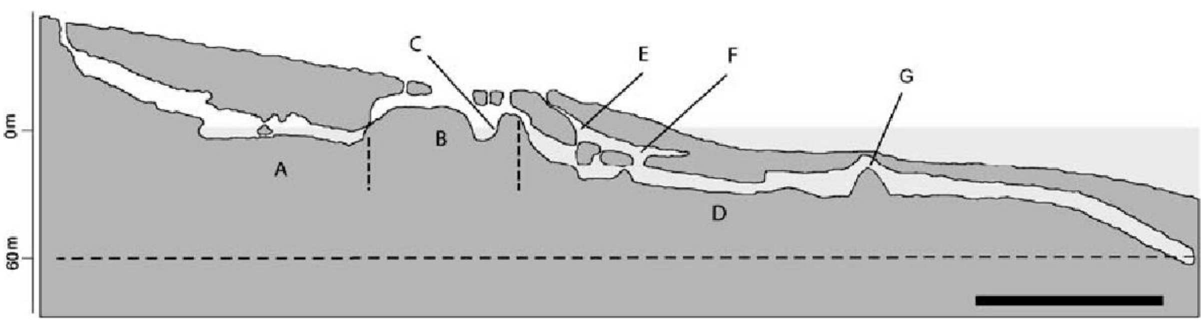
Maps and Figures



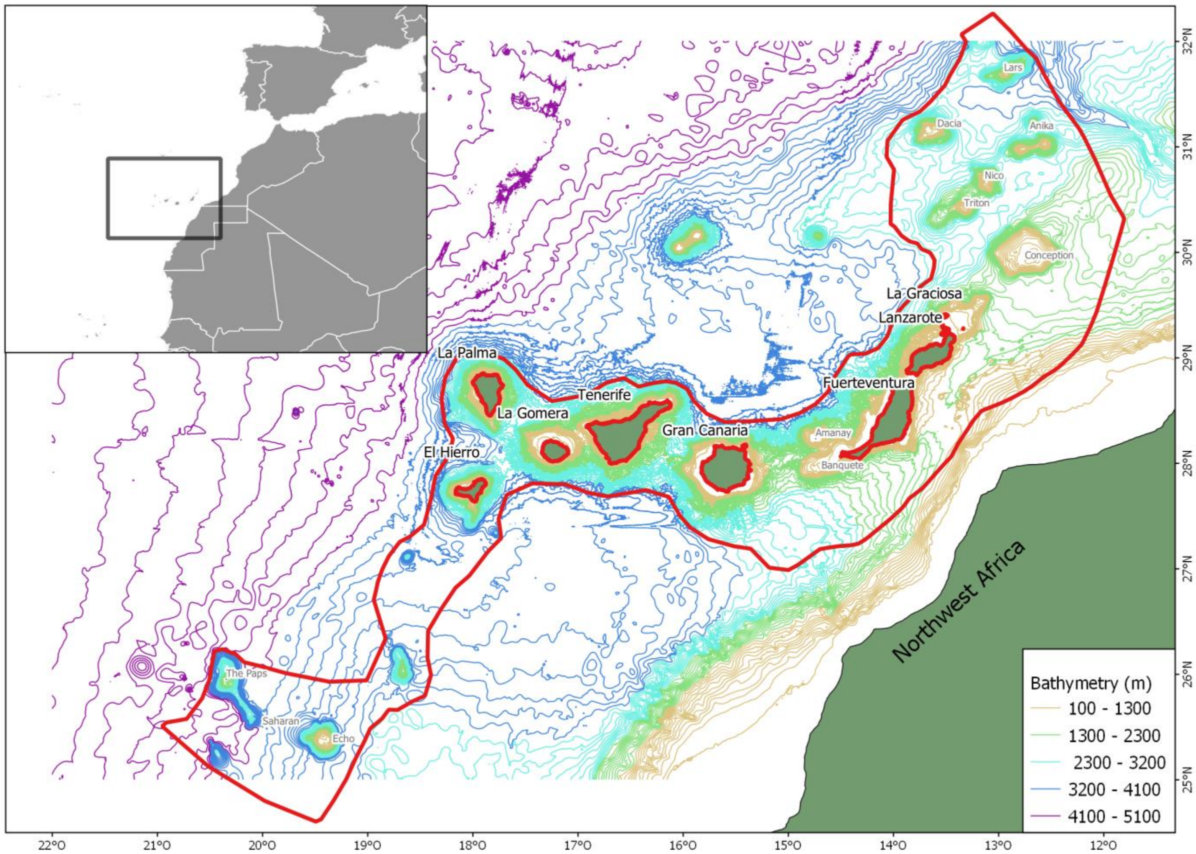
Location of area no. 8: Oceanic Islands and Seamounts of the Canary Region



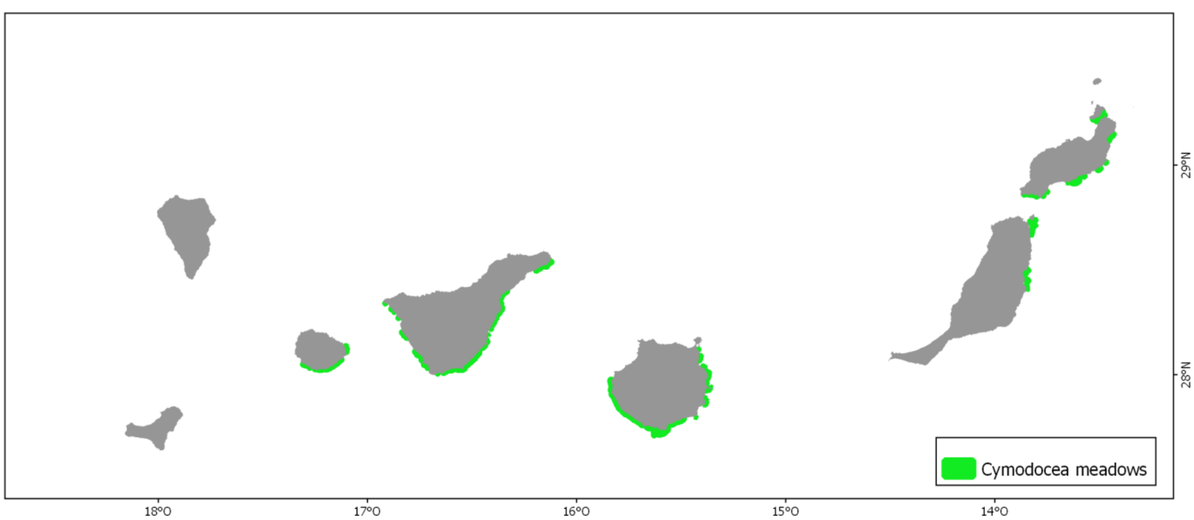
Sketch with the main hydrodynamic features related to an incoming flow with a seamount (summary using data from several authors) (Hernández-Molina *et al*., 2006)



Schematic cross-section of the anchialine portions of the Corona lava tube. A: Cueva de Los Lagos. B: Jameos del Agua lagoon (dotted transversal lines represent the approximated area occupied by the tourist complex). C: Position of the carpet of diatoms in the lagoon. D : Túnel de la Atlántida. E : Lago Escondido. F : Dome room. G: Montaña (Wilkens *et al*., 2009).

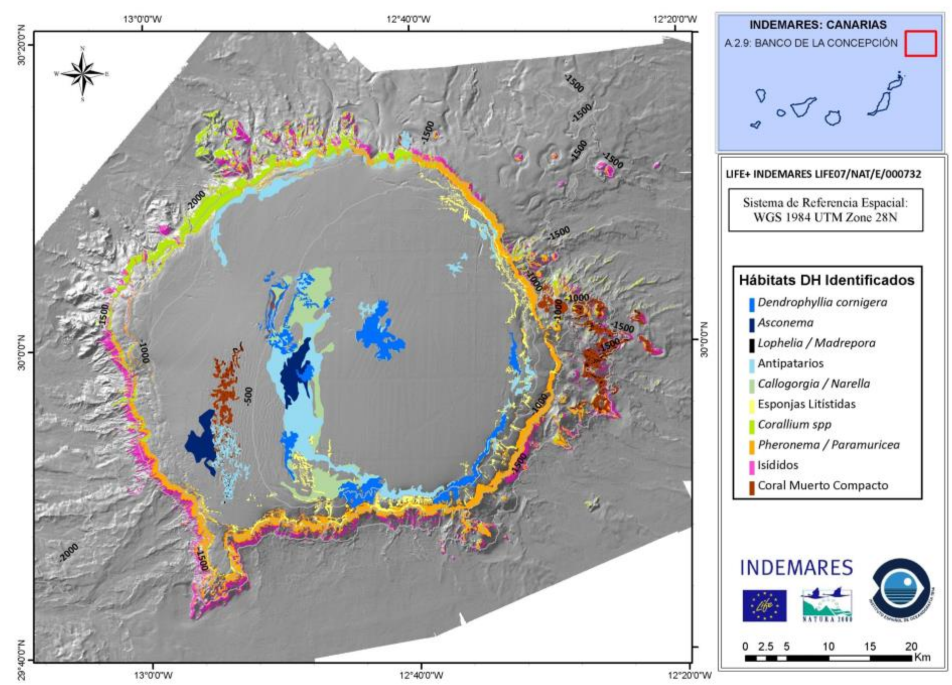


Oceanic Islands and Seamounts of the Canary Region

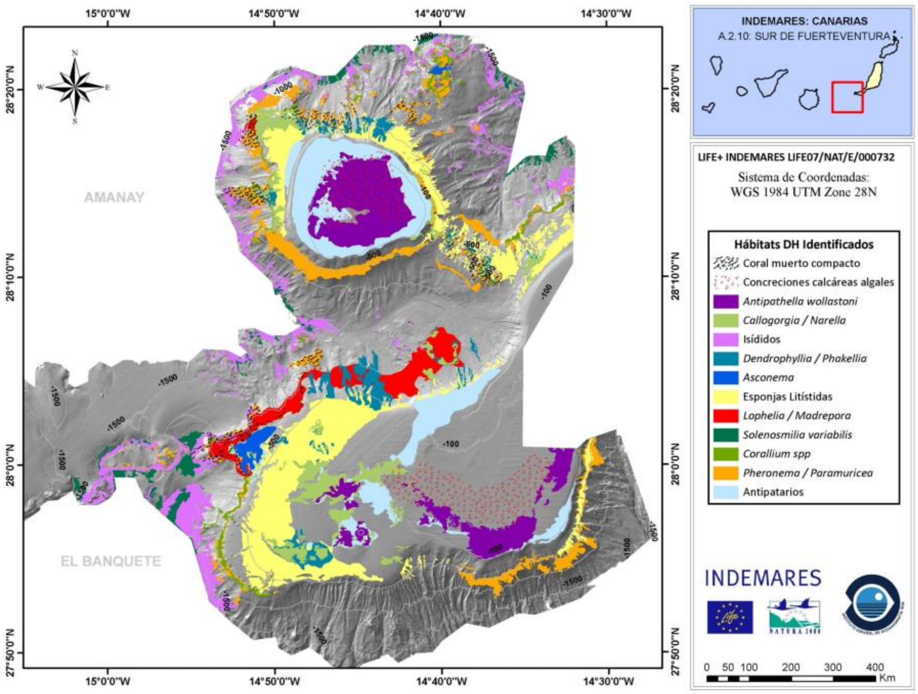


Distribution of Cymodocea seagrasses in the Canary Islands. They appear in the soft bottom of the southeast of the islands, except in La Palma and El Hierro (in the southwest).

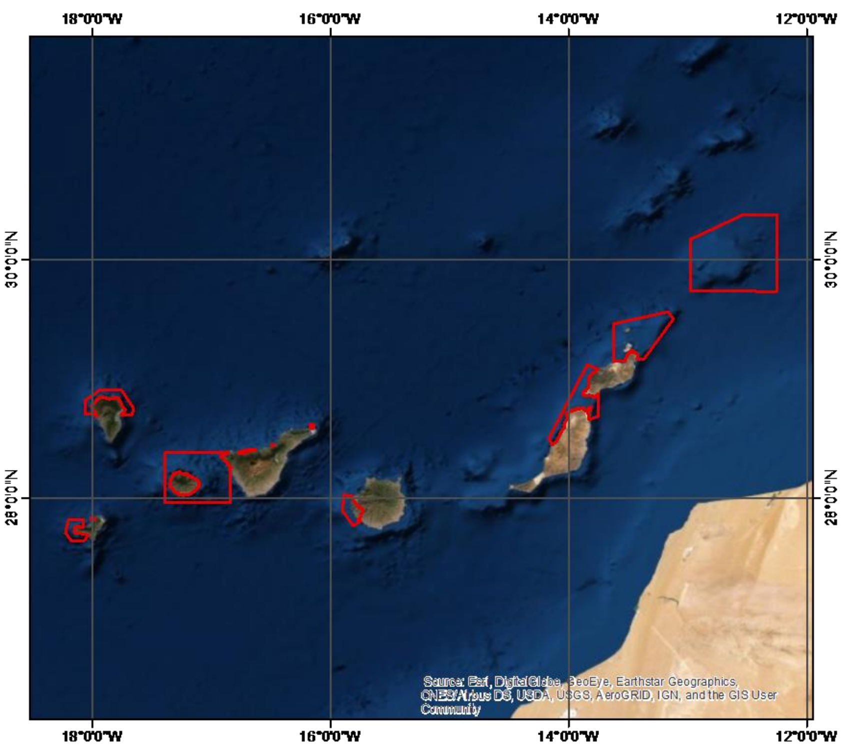
Distribution of algae assemblages in the infralittoral zone of La Palma. All the islands of the archipelago present vast extensions of seaweeds on hard substrate in the infralittoral zone.



Benthic habitats identified in the Concepcion Bank



Benthic habitats identified in the Concepcion Bank, Amanay and Banquete



Location of marine IBAs within the area (source: BirdLife International 2019): Acantilados de Santo Domingo y Roque de Garachico, Aguas de La Gomera – Teno, Aguas y acantilados del Norte de La Palma, Anaga rocky islets, Banco de La Concepcion, Costa y Aguas de Mogán - La Aldea, El Roque coastal cliffs, Estrecho de la Bocaina, Island of Lobos, La Playa islet, Lanzarote islets, Salmor rocky islets and Western coast of El Hierro

Rights and permissions

Area no. 9: Tropic Seamount

Abstract
The Tropic Seamount is home to numerous vulnerable taxa, including high-density octocoral gardens, *Solenosmilia variabilis* patch reefs, xenophyophores, crinoid fields and deep-sea sponge grounds. A recent study offered the first biological insight to ground-truth the occurrence of potential vulnerable ecosystems on the Tropic Seamount, alongside predictive models to increase the spatial coverage beyond surveys conducted by both remotely operated and autonomous underwater vehicles. Predicted habitat for the glass sponge *Poliopogon amadou*, a biogeographically restricted hexactinellid forming extensive near-monospecific grounds, was found to favour the deep seamount flanks of this area within a very narrow oceanographic regime.

Introduction
The Tropic Seamount, located in the North-East Atlantic (23°55’ N, 20°45’ W), is a four-armed, star-shaped guyot dated to 91.1 - 0.2 Ma (van den Bogaard, 2013). With a flat-topped summit (slope of 0.5°–4°) sitting at approximately 1,000 m water depth, and its base rooted at approximately 4,200 m depth, the seamount presents a truncated cone slightly elongated along a north-south axis, measuring about 42 km in length and 37 km in width (Palomino *et al*., 2016). The flanks of the seamount are divided by four ridges 10–13 km in length, with slopes ranging from 5° to 45°. Radiating from the summit, the flanks also exhibit gullies measuring 3–10 km in length (Palomino *et al*., 2016). The seamount is thought to have once been an oceanic island that eroded and subsided to its present depth at 1,000 m (Schmincke and Graf, 2000).

This seamount sits between the seasonally productive waters off the north-western African coast and the more oligotrophic waters of the North Atlantic subtropical gyre (Henderiks, 2001). The surface waters are supplied by the Canary Current (CC), which flows south-westward along the African coast, turning west to join the North Equatorial Current at 20°–25° N. Below the seasonal thermocline and waters influenced by coastal upwelling (<100 m), the North Atlantic Central Water (NACW) and South Atlantic Central Water (SACW) lie above ~700 m. The NACW is characterized by a higher level of dissolved oxygen than the SACW. Intermediate depths, 700–1,600 m, are ventilated by the lower salinity Antarctic Intermediate Water (AAIW). Deeper layers, from ~1,600 m to the seafloor, are defined by the Upper North Atlantic Deep Water (NADW), which is the shallowest deep-water mass influenced by the Mediterranean Water (MW) (Hernández-Guerra *et al*., 2001; Knoll *et al*., 2002; Hernández-Guerra *et al*., 2005; Pastor *et al*., 2012; Bashmachnikov *et al*., 2015; Pastor *et al*., 2015). The influence of the MW decreases southward and seasonally, stretching south in winter (Pastor *et al*., 2012). Phytoplankton-enriched waters from upwelling events extend offshore to the study area (Hernández-Guerra *et al*., 2005). Dissolved oxygen levels at the seamount drop to 2.5–3.5 mg ml^{-1} in the core of the oxygen minimum zone in ~750 m and rise to 5 mg ml^{-1} at 3,000 m (Koschinsky *et al*., 1996).

Location
The Tropic Seamount is located in the North-East Atlantic (23°55’ N, 20°45’ W), along the north-western African continental margin.

Feature description of the area
The field observations summarized below and detailed in Ramiro-Sánchez *et al*. (2019) were collected at sea during RRS *James Cook* research cruise JC142 led by Dr Bramley Murton (National Oceanography Centre, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland).

Remotely operated vehicle images showed high diversity of Vulnerable Marine Ecosystem (VME) indicator taxa on Tropic Seamount (Figure 2). Coral debris was observed in still images mainly on the summit dives but also on some of the ridges to a depth of 1,800 m. Fifteen cold-water coral species were observed, including one scleractinian, 12 octocorals and two black corals (Table 1). The main scleractinian coral identified from the images was *Solenosmilia variabilis* (Duncan, 1873), which was normally present on ledges, forming patches at depths from 1,000 to 1,800 m. Octocoral composition varied with depth, with *Acanella arbuscula* (Johnson, 1862), *Metallogorgia melanotrichos* (Wright and Studer, 1889), *Corallium tricolor* (Johnson, 1899), and species from the genus *Chrysogorgia* (Duchassaing and Michelotti, 1864), *Iridogorgia* (Verrill, 1883), and *Thouarella* (Gray, 1870) generally present at depths of 1,010–3,000 m on rocky substrates. The octocorals *Narella bellissima* (Kükenthal, 1915), *Acanthogorgia armata* (Verrill, 1878) and *cf. Swiftia* (Duchassaing and Michelotti, 1864) were commonly observed at depths up to 3,600 m associated with volcanic substrates. Unidentified black coral species belonging to the genus *Parantipathes* (Brooke, 1889) and *Bathypathes* (Brooke, 1889) were also observed. Extensive coral gardens, another type of animal forest (Rossi *et al*., 2017), dominated by bamboo corals (Familiy Isididae)―tentatively assigned based on branching patterns to the genus *Keratoisis* (Wright, 1869) and *Lepidisis* (Verrill, 1883) based on ROV images ―were recorded at 2,500–3,500 m depth.

Deep-sea squid eggs from an unidentified species were observed laying on bamboo corals on several occasions, indicating a spawning and/or nursery ground. Cold-water coral composition for Tropic Seamount is comparable to that reported for the la Concepción Bank and El Hierro ridge (Northern Seamounts group WSSP) and to the Canary Island slopes, with dominance of octocorals (Brito and Ocanña, 2004; Almón *et al*., 2014; Álvarez *et al*., 2016). Dense assemblages of bamboo corals of the genus *Keratoisis* have also been reported for Cape Verde seamounts between 1,900 and 3,699 m (Hansteen *et al*., 2014).

Besides *Poliopogon amadou*, other sponges seen included the hexactinellid *Pheronema carpenteri* (Thomson, 1869), *Stylocordyla pellita* (Topsent, 1904), *Hertwigia falcifera* (Schmidt, 1880), *Aphrocallistes beatrix* (Gray, 1858), and species from the genus *Euplectella* (Owen, 1841); *Hyalonema* (Gray, 1832); *Caulophacus* (Schulze, 1886); *Asconema* (Kent, 1870); and *Phakellia* (Bowerbank, 1862). Demosponges and other undetermined massive and encrusting sponges were also observed.

Xenophyophore and crinoid fields were also observed (Table 1). Among crinoids, the most common species were fields of stalked *Endoxocrinus (Diplocrinus) wyvillethomsoni* (Thomson, 1872) (Isselicrinidae), and two thalassometrid feather stars: *Koehlermetra porrecta* (Carpenter, 1888), an orange species with 20 or more arms, and a yellow species, perhaps *Thalassometra lusitanica* (Carpenter, 1884). The stalked species, *E. wyvillethomsoni*, is the only member of the order Isocrinida found in the North-east Atlantic occurring along the eastern Atlantic margin from west of Ile d'Ouessant, France (49° N) to south of the Canary Islands off the coast of Morocco (25° N) at depths from 1,246 to 2,070 m (Roux, 1985). *Koehlermetra porrecta* occurs in the eastern Atlantic from George Bligh Bank (north-eastern end of the Rockall Plateau) to Ascension Island, over a depth range of at least 768–1,448 m (possibly 755–1,769 m) (Carpenter, 1888; Bullimore *et al*., 2013; Narayanaswamy *et al*., 2013). Stevenson *et al*. (2017) reported large populations of *K. porrecta* at 778–941 m in the Bay of Biscay. Records of *Thalassometra lusitanica* range from the Canary Islands and Morocco to off Cape Carvoeiro, Portugal, at depths of 1,229–1,716 m (possibly 914–1,912 m), with one record at 2,165 m (Clark, 1950, 1980).

For the depths where *P. amadou* was recorded (1,960 – 3,660 m), the conductivity, temperature, and depth (CTD) casts registered temperatures ranging from 2.5° to 4° C, salinity values between 34.91 and 35.05 psu, and oxygen levels between 6.5 and 6.9 mg/ml^{-1}. The casts showed an inflection point in these parameters at ~2,500 m, where oxygen reached values of 6.8 mg/ml^{-1}, the temperature was ~3.25° C and salinity 34.99 psu. Hydrodynamic modelling revealed a strong influence of tides on surface and bottom currents, with a NE-SW current rotating anticlockwise over the diurnal tidal cycle. The elongated ridges extending outward from the star-shaped seamount cause high current variability. The eastern and western flanks dissipate higher energy, whereas the northern and southern spurs dissipate less energy. The distribution of sediment-covered and sediment-poor areas coincided with this energy distribution, which is observable on the ROV videos and the backscatter intensity. The summit had a variable layer of biogenic silty fine sand forming ripples aligned with the (varying) peak current velocity. Numerical modelling indicates the presence of a weak Taylor Cap on the summit of the seamount (Cooper and Spearman, 2017).

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

The sponge grounds of *P. amadou* were one of the most frequent and extensive vulnerable ecosystems observed on the Tropic Seamount, with different body sizes (from approximately 5 cm up to 55 cm) indicating a stable population with on-going recruitment. The depths of most VME indicator taxa on Tropic Seamount make these seamount habitats de facto refuges from the impacts of bottom fisheries, as supported by a lack of evidence for any contact with bottom-fishing gear from the ROV images and from fishing records across the wider CECAF area (FAO Fiaf/R1184, 2016).

Predicted habitat for *P. amadou* was found to be favourable on the deep flanks of the seamount within a very narrow oceanographic regime. Other vulnerable taxa observed on Tropic Seamount, such as coral gardens and patches of *S. variabilis,* are also likely to provide important ecosystem functions on the seamount—indeed one type of coral garden hosted a nursery ground for deep-sea squid, and here too, predictive species and habitat models could greatly aid in building the evidence base for the occurrence of vulnerable taxa.

Assessment of area no. 9, Tropic Seamount, against CBD EBSA Criteria

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">CBD EBSA Criteria
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</td><td rowspan="2">Description
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</td><td colspan="4">Ranking of criterion relevance
(please mark one column with an X)</td></tr>
<tr><td>No information</td><td>Low</td><td>Medium</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td>Uniqueness or rarity</td><td>Area contains either (i) unique (“the only one of its kind”), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
The Tropic Seamount harbours diverse and near pristine benthic communities that include several vulnerable taxa, such as the reef-building coral Solenosmilia variabilis, several species of octocorals and black corals, sponge grounds and crinoid fields. Of particular note on this seamount are the very rare and unusual occurrences of the sponge Poliopogon amadou forming a diverse animal forest with associated crinoid fields and other vulnerable taxa. This biogeographically unique occurrence appears to be strongly related to the specific oceanographic characteristics and hydrography of the Tropic Seamount (Ramiro-Sánchez et al. 2019).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Special importance for life-history stages of species</td><td>Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.</td><td>X</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
Deep-sea squid eggs from an unidentified species were observed laying on bamboo corals on several occasions, indicating a spawning and/or nursery ground (Ramiro-Sánchez et al. 2019). However, the limited extent of surveys to date preclude our providing a ranking on this criterion.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or</td><td>Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
</table>

habitats					
Explanation for ranking The Tropic Seamount hosts numerous VME indicator taxa (Ramiro-Sánchez *et al*. 2019) that have international conservation and management significance through this designation, and therefore the Seamount is a significant area for the survival of these protected species. These underwater mountains provide hard substrata for VME indicator taxa, such as corals, sponges and other species—like the ones found on Tropic Seamount—to settle and grow (Rogers *et al*., 2007; Samadi *et al*., 2007; Clark *et al*., 2012). Seamounts are often characterised by particular hydrographical conditions that enhance the flow of currents, and ultimately, the availability of food to suspension feeders (Watling and Auster, 2017). High densities of corals and sponges can be found on those features (Genin *et al*., 1986; Rogers *et al*., 2007; Roberts *et al*., 2009; Henry *et al*., 2013; Victorero *et al*., 2018), although benthic assemblages and biomass may vary among seamounts in less productive regions, where substratum is not suitable, or where seamounts are not adjacent to continental slopes (Rowden *et al*., 2010).					
Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				X
Explanation for ranking The Tropic Seamount hosts numerous VME indicator taxa, including reef-building coral species such as *Solenosmilia variabilis*; several species of octocorals, black corals and sponges; extensive grounds of the glass sponge *P. amadou;* crinoids and xenophyophores (Ramiro-Sánchez *et al*. 2019). These taxa are slow-growing, long-lived and late-maturing species, traits that limit their potential for resilience and recovery from human disturbances (reviewed by Roberts *et al*. 2009).					
Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.			X	
Explanation for ranking The Tropic Seamount hosts many vulnerable species, including extensive and dense monospecific sponge grounds of *Poliopogon amadou* of different body sizes (from approximately 5 cm up to 55 cm), large octocoral gardens and reef-building corals (Ramiro-Sánchez *et al*. 2019). The biomass this seamount supports is probably explained by the phytoplankton-enriched waters from the Sahara-upwelling events that can extend offshore, reaching the Tropic Seamount (Hernández-Guerra *et al*., 2005). These waters are fed by the iron-rich dust coming from the Sahara Desert, making the NW waters off Morocco a very productive oceanographic area (Henderiks, 2001). The existence of a weak Taylor Cap on the seamount summit (Cooper and Spearman, 2017) may be affecting the distribution of particulate organic carbon, keeping organic matter suspended and circulated within certain depth ranges (Clark *et al*., 2010) and supporting the extraordinary secondary production, thus justifying a medium ranking of this criterion.					
Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X
Explanation for ranking Video analysis revealed the existence of a diverse set of VME indicator taxa throughout the different depth levels of the seamount (Ramiro-Sánchez *et al*. 2019). Coral debris was observed in still images mainly on the summit dives but also on some of the ridges to a depth of 1,800 m. Fifteen cold-water coral species were observed, including one scleractinian, 12 octocorals and two black corals (Table 1). Glass, massive and encrusting sponges, xenophyophores and crinoid fields were also observed. One of the most distinctive observations was the occurrence of dense aggregations of the hexactinellid sponge *Poliopogon amadou* (Thomson 1877), which formed extensive areas of sponge grounds in the deeper flanks of the seamount. Ensemble modelling suggested high probability of presence across the entire seamount at a					

marked bathymetric between 2,000-3,500 m water depth, but with particularly higher probability of occurrence in the eastern and western spurs of the seamount (Figure 3).					
Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.				X
Explanation for ranking The depths of most VME indicator taxa on Tropic Seamount make these seamount habitats de facto refuges from the impacts of bottom fisheries, as supported by a lack of evidence for any contact with bottom-fishing gear from the ROV images and from fishing records across the wider CECAF area (FAO Fiaf/R1184, 2016).					

References

Almón, B., Arcos, J. M., Martín, V., Pantoja, J., Consuegra, E., Martín Sosa, P., *et al*. (2014). Banco de la Concepción. Áreas de estudio del proyecto LIFE+ INDEMARES. Available at: www.indemares.es

Álvarez, H., Perry, A. L., Blanco, J., and Aguilar, R. (2016). "Expedición 2014 'Atlantic Seamounts'. El Hierro y montañas submarinas". Available at: https://eu.oceana.org/sites/default/files/oceana_el_hierro_y_montanas_submarinas_expedicion_2014.pdf

Bashmachnikov, I., Nascimento, Â., Neves, F., Menezes, T., and Koldunov, N. V (2015). Distribution of intermediate water masses in the subtropical northeast Atlantic. *Ocean Sci* 11, 803–827. doi:10.5194/os-11-803-2015.

Brito, A., and Ocaña, O. (2004). *Corales de las Islas Canarias*. Francisco Lemus Editor. La Laguna. Available at: https://www.casadellibro.com/libro-corales-de-las-islas-canarias/9788487931673/1011260.

Bullimore, R. D., Foster, N. L., and Howell, K. L. (2013). Coral-characterized benthic assemblages of the deep Northeast Atlantic: defining "Coral Gardens" to support future habitat mapping efforts. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 70, 511–522. doi:10.1093/icesjms/fss195.

Clark, A. H. (1950). A Monograph of the Existing Crinoids. 1(4c). 1–383, 32 plates. Available at: https://repository.si.edu/handle/10088/21346

Clark, A. M. (1980). Crinoidea collected by the Meteor and Discovery in the NE Atlantic. Available at: http://biostor.org/reference/110

Clark, M. R., Rowden, A. A., Schlacher, T., Williams, A., Consalvey, M., Stocks, K. I., *et al*. (2010). The Ecology of Seamounts: Structure, Function, and Human Impacts. *Ann. Rev. Mar. Sci.* 2, 253–278. doi:10.1146/annurev-marine-120308-081109.

Clark, M. R., Schlacher, T. A., Rowden, A. A., Stocks, K. I., and Consalvey, M. (2012). Science Priorities for Seamounts: Research Links to Conservation and Management. *PLoS One* 7, e29232. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0029232.

Cooper, A. J., and Spearman, J. (2017). Validation of a TELEMAC - 3D model of a seamount. in *Proceedings of the TELEMAC-MASCARET user Conference, 17-20* 854 *October 2017* (Graz University of Technology, Austria, 29-34). Available at: https://henry.baw.de/bitstream/handle/20.500.11970/104505/03_Cooper_2017.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y.

FAO FIAF/R1184 (2016). FAO / CECAF Technical Workshop on Deep-Sea Fisheries and Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems in the Eastern Central Atlantic.

Genin, A., Dayton, P. K., Lonsdale, P. F., and Spiess, F. N. (1986). Corals on seamount peaks provide evidence of current acceleration over deep-sea topography. *Nature* 322, 59–61. doi:10.1038/322059a0.

Hansteen, T., Kwasnitschka, T., and Klügel, A. (2014). *Cape Verde Seamounts - Cruise No. M80/3 - December 29, 2009 - February 1, 2010 - Dakar (Senegal) - Las Palmas de Gran Canaria (Spain)*. Bremen: DFG-Senatskommission für Ozeanographie. doi:10.2312/cr_m80_3.

Henderiks, J. (2001). Coccolith studies in the Canary Basin: Glacial-Interglacial paleoceanography of the Eastern Boundary Current System. Available at: http://www.academia.edu/28505222/Coccolith_studies_in_the_Canary_Basin.

Henry, L. A., Moreno Navas, J., and Roberts, J. M. (2013). Multi-scale interactions between local hydrography, seabed topography, and community assembly on cold-water coral reefs. *Biogeosciences* 10, 2737–2746. doi:10.5194/bg-10-2737-2013.

Hernández-Guerra, A., López-Laatzen, F., Machín, F., De Armas, D., and Pelegrí, J. L. (2001). Water masses, circulation and transport in the eastern boundary current of the North Atlantic subtropical gyre. *Sci. Mar.* 65, 177–186. Available at: http://digital.csic.es/bitstream/10261/5330/1/gyre.pdf.

Hernández-Guerra, A., Fraile-Nuez, E., López-Laatzen, F., Martínez, A., Parrilla, G., and Vélez-Belchí, P. (2005). Canary Current and North Equatorial Current from an inverse box model. *J. Geophys. Res. Ocean.* 110, 1–16. doi:10.1029/2005JC003032.

Knoll, M., Hernández-Guerra, A., Lenz, B., López Laatzen, F., Machín, F., Müller, T. ., *et al*. (2002). The Eastern Boundary Current system between the Canary Islands and the African Coast. *Deep Sea Res. Part II Top. Stud. Oceanogr.* 49, 3427–3440. doi:10.1016/S0967-0645(02)00105-4.

Koschinsky, A., Halbach, P., Hein, J. R., and Mangini, A. (1996). Ferromanganese crusts as indicators for paleoceanographic events in the NE Atlantic. *Geol. Rundschau* 85, 567–576. doi:10.1007/BF02369011.

Narayanaswamy, B. E., Hughes, D. J., Howell, K. L., Davies, J., and Jacobs, C. (2013). First observations of megafaunal communities inhabiting George Bligh Bank, Northeast Atlantic. *Deep Sea Res. Part II Top. Stud. Oceanogr.* 92, 79–86. doi:10.1016/J.DSR2.2013.03.004

Palomino, D., Vázquez, J.-T., Somoza, L., León, R., López-González, N., Medialdea, T., *et al*. (2016). Geomorphological features in the southern Canary Island Volcanic Province: The importance of volcanic processes and massive slope instabilities associated with seamounts. *Geomorphology* 255, 125–139. doi:10.1016/J.GEOMORPH.2015.12.016.

Pastor, M., Peña-Izquierdo, J., Pelegrí, J., and Marrero-Díaz, Á. (2012). Meridional changes in water mass distributions off NW Africa during November 2007/2008. *Ciencias Mar.* 38, 223–244. Available at: http://www.cienciasmarinas.com.mx/index.php/cmarinas/article/view/1831/1667.

Pastor, M., Vélez-Belchí, P., and Hernández-Guerra, A. (2015). Water Masses in the Canary Current Large Marine Ecosystem. *IOC Tech. Ser.* 115, 733–79. Available at: http://hdl.handle.net/1834/9178.

Ramiro-Sánchez, B., González-Irusta, J.M., Henry, L.-A., Cleland, J., Yeo, I., Xavier, J.R., Carreiro-Silva, M., Sampaio. I., Spearman. J., Victorero. L., Messing, C.G., Kazanidis, G., Roberts, J.M., Murton, B. (2019) Characterization and mapping of a deep-sea sponge ground on the Tropic Seamount (Northeast tropical Atlantic): implications for spatial management in the High Seas. Frontiers in Marine Science 6: 278

Roberts, J. M., Wheeler, A. J., Freiwald, A., and Cairns, S. D. (2009). *Cold-water Corals: The Biology and Geology of Deep-Sea Coral Habitats*. Cambridge University Press. Available at: www.cambridge.org.

Rogers, A. D., Baco, A., Griffiths, H., Hart, T., and Hall-Spencer, J. M. (2007). Corals on Seamounts. *Seamounts Ecol. Fish. Conserv.*, 141–169. doi:10.1002/9780470691953.ch8.

Rowden, A. A., Schlacher, T. A., Williams, A., Clark, M. R., Stewart, R., Althaus, F., *et al*. (2010). A test of the seamount oasis hypothesis: seamounts support higher epibenthic megafaunal biomass than adjacent slopes. *Mar. Ecol.* 31, 95–106. doi:10.1111/j.1439-0485.2010.00369.x.

Samadi, S., Schlacher, T., and de Forges, B. R. (2007). "Seamount Benthos," in *Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation* (Oxford, UK: Blackwell Publishing Ltd), 117–140. doi:10.1002/9780470691953.ch7.

Schmincke, H.-U., and Graf, G. (2000). DECOS / OMEX II, Cruise No. 43, 25 November 1998 - 14 January 1999. Hamburg: Leitstelle METEOR, Institut für Meereskunde der Universität Hamburg doi:10.2312/cr_m43

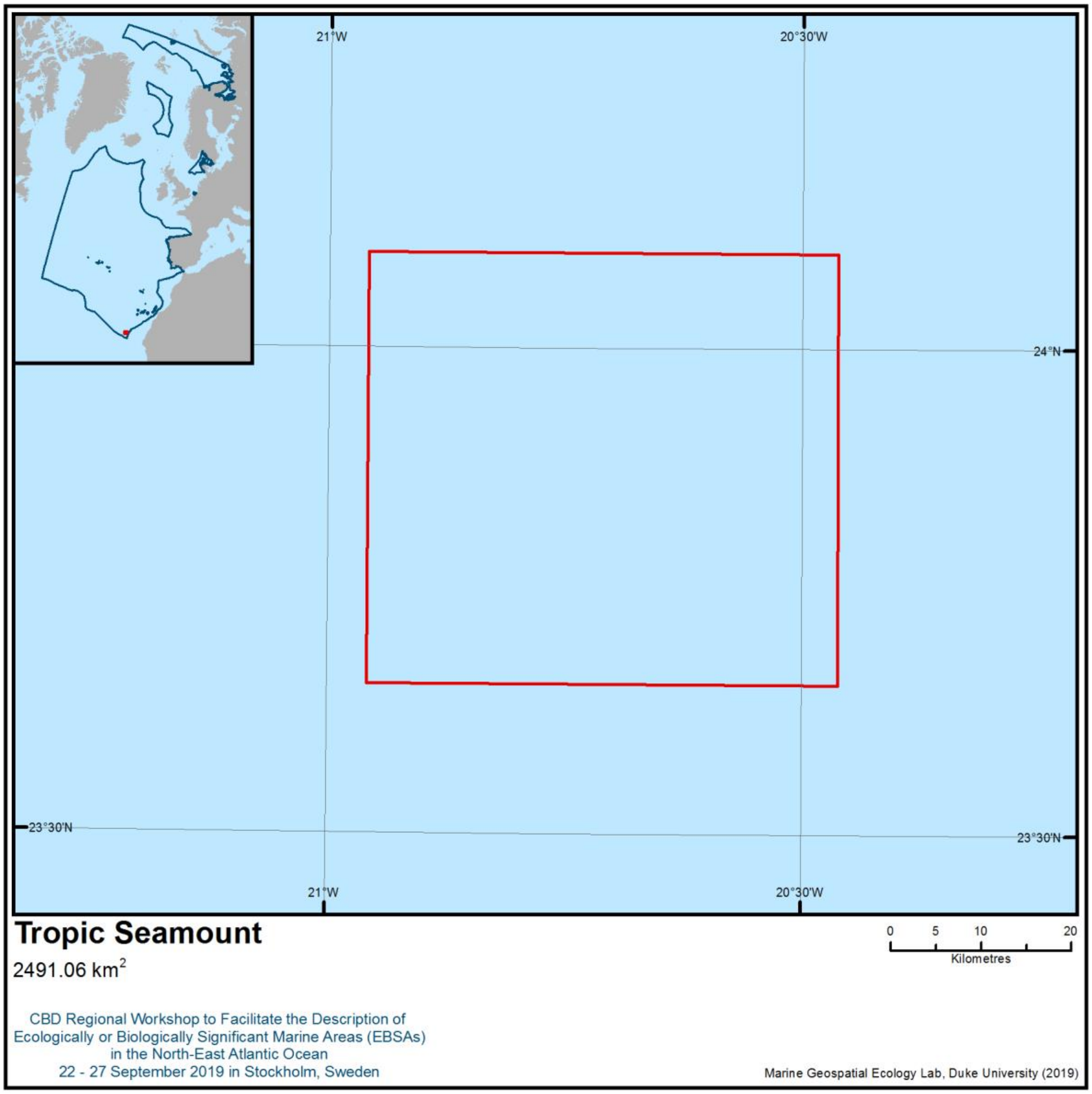
Stevenson, A., Gahn, F. J., Baumiller, T. K., and Sevastopulo, G. D. (2017). Predation on feather stars by regular echinoids as evidenced by laboratory and field observations and its paleobiological implications. *Paleobiology* 43, 274–285. doi:10.1017/pab.2016.39.

van den Bogaard, P. (2013). The origin of the Canary Island Seamount Province - New ages of old seamounts. *Sci. Rep.* 3, 2107. doi:10.1038/srep02107.

Victorero, L., Robert, K., Robinson, L. F., Taylor, M. L., and Huvenne, V. A. I. (2018). Species replacement dominates megabenthos beta diversity in a remote seamount setting. *Sci. Rep.* 8, 4152. doi:10.1038/s41598-018-22296-8.

Watling, L., and Auster, P. J. (2017). Seamounts on the High Seas Should Be Managed as Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems. *Front. Mar. Sci.* 4. doi:10.3389/fmars.2017.00014.

Maps and Figures



Location of area no. 9: Tropic Seamount

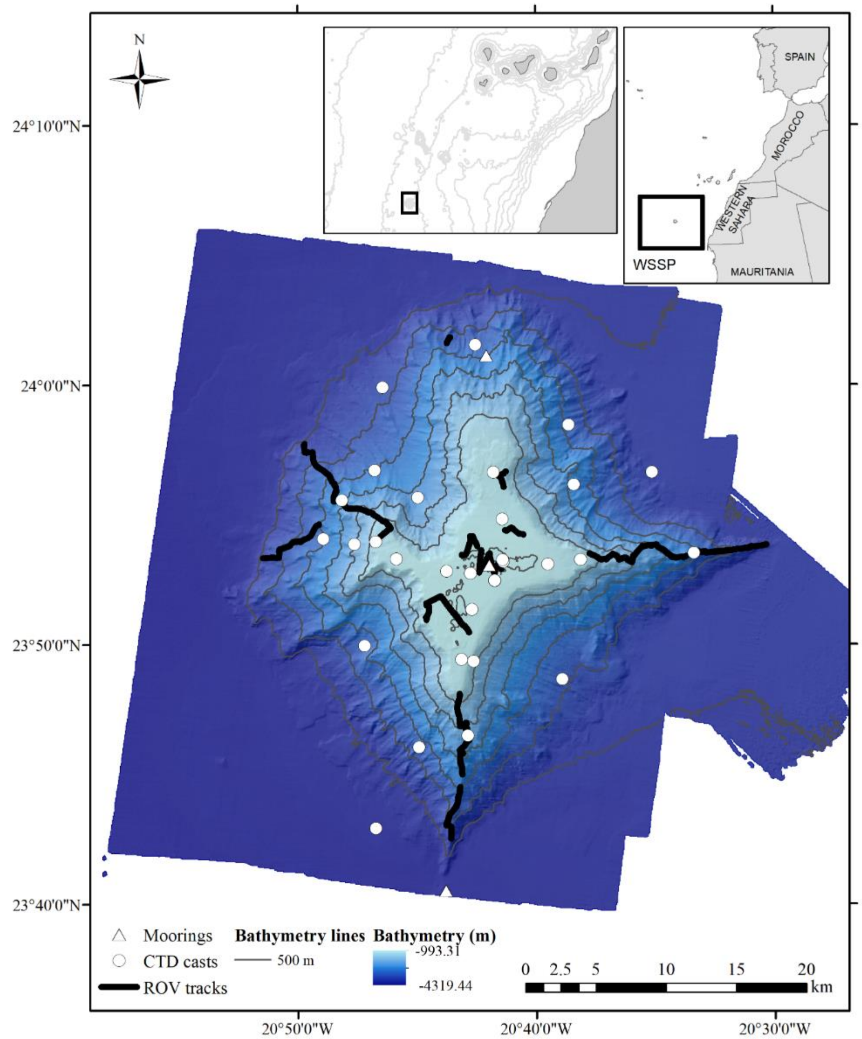


Figure 1. Location of the Tropic Seamount in the North-East tropical Atlantic with the different sampling operations: ROV tracks (thick black lines), CTD casts (white circles) and moorings (white triangles). Inset images show the location of the study area in relation to northwest Africa and the Western Sahara Seamount Province (WSSP).

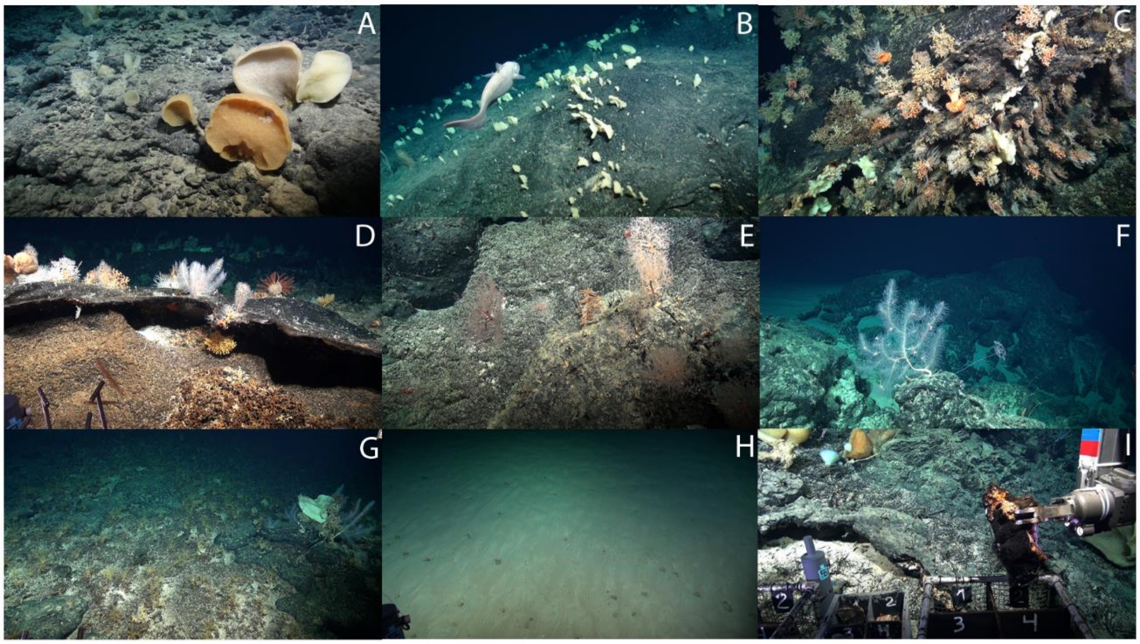


Figure 2. Seabed photographs showing some of the VME indicator taxa observed on the Tropic Seamount. A: Specimens of *Poliopogon amadou*. B: Sponge ground of *Poliopogon amadou*. C: Coral garden on a ledge with diverse octocorals and patches of *Solenosmilia variabilis*. D: Octocoral garden and coral rubble. E: Antipatharian species, *Metallogorgia melanotrichos* and *Chrysogorgia* sp. F: Unidentified black coral. G: A crinoid field of possibly *Thalassometra lusitanica*. H: Field of xenophyophores. I: ROV *Isis* sampling ferromanganese crust.

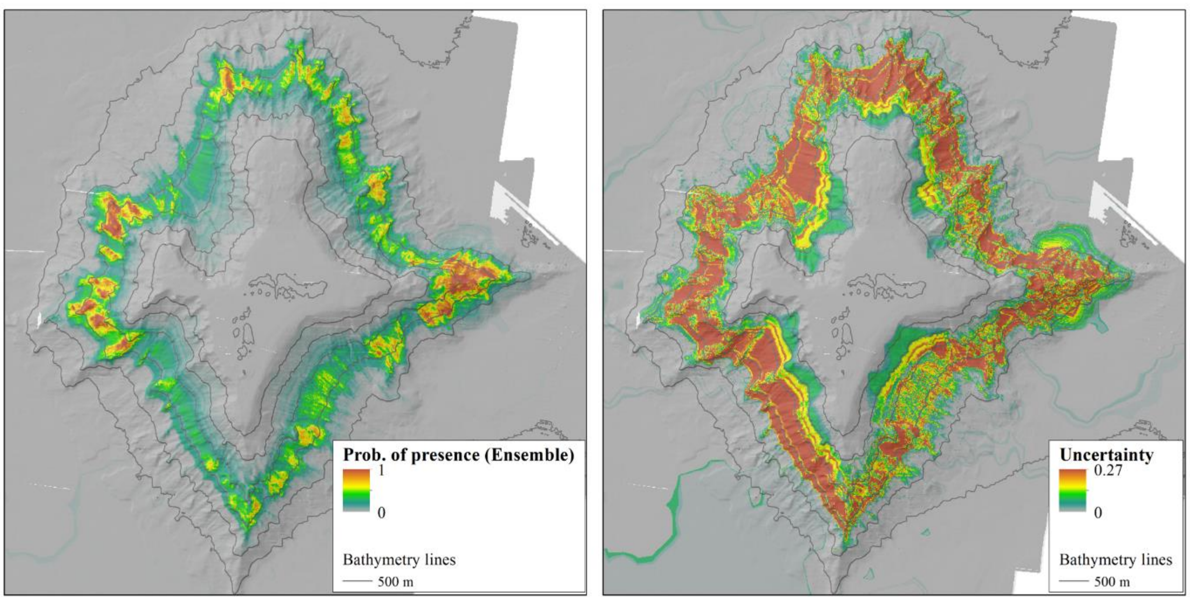


Figure 3. Prediction of *Poliopogon amadou* presence for the ensemble distribution model (A) and (B) uncertainty (CV) for the ensemble distribution model.

Table 1. VME indicator taxa observed on the images analysed from the Tropic Seamount.

Types of VME indicators	Observations
Cold-water coral reefs	
Solenosmilia variabilis Duncan, 1873	Patchily present in ledges, but no large reefs.
Coral gardens	
Acanella arbuscula (Johnson, 1862) *Acanella* sp. *Narella bellissima* (Kükenthal, 1915) *Narella* sp. *Thouarella* sp. *Corallium tricolor* (Johnson, 1899) *Corallium* sp. cf. *Swiftia sp.* *Acanthogorgia armata* Verrill, 1878 *Chrysogorgia* sp. *Metallogorgia melanotrichos* (Wright & Studer, 1889) *Iridogorgia* sp.	Coral gardens of various types included different identified and unidentified octocoral species. A coral garden of the Family Isididae hosted deep-sea squid eggs, indicating a spawning ground.
Black corals	
Parantipathes sp. *Bathypathes* sp. *Leiopathes* sp. cf. *Stichopathes* sp.	Other unidentified antipatharian species were also observed.
Sponges	
Poliopogon amadou Thomson, 1877 *Pheronema carpenteri* (Thomson, 1869) *Stylocordyla pellita* (Topsent, 1904) *Hertwigia falcifera* Schmidt, 1880 *Euplectella* sp. *Aphrocallistes beatrix* Gray, 1858 *Hyalonema* sp. *Caulophacus* sp. *Asconema* sp. *Phakellia* sp.	Sponges recorded during the dives were mainly hexactinellids, but also demosponges (*Phakellia* sp.), and other undetermined and encrusting sponges.
Crinoid fields	
Endoxocrinus (Diplocrinus) wyvillethomsoni (Thomson, 1872) *Koehlermetra porrecta* (Carpenter, 1888)	In addition to the two species contributing to crinoid fields, the thalassometrid *Thalassometra lusitanica* (Carpenter, 1884) was also seen in numbers in some areas. Other species included a small five-armed stalked crinoid, either *Gephyrocrinus grimaldii (*Koehler & Bather, 1902) (Hyocrinidae), or *Porphyrocrinus* sp. (Phrynocrinidae), and possibly *Zenometra columnaris* (Carpenter, 1881) (Zenometridae) (only the second record of this species from the North-East Atlantic).
Other VME indicators	
Xenophyophore beds Brisingids	

Rights and permissions

The field observations summarized here and detailed in Ramiro-Sánchez *et al*. (2019) were collected at sea during RRS *James Cook* research cruise JC142 led by Dr Bramley Murton (National Oceanography Centre, UK).

This submission was prepared through the ATLAS project with funding provided from the European Union's Horizon 2020 Research and Innovation Program under grant agreement no. 678760.

Area no. 10: Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex

Abstract
The Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex comprises 10 seamounts. These seamounts are hotspots of marine life and areas of enhanced productivity, especially when compared with surrounding abyssal areas. This seamount complex has a total area of 134,079 km^2, with depths ranging from 265m (top of Atlantis seamount) to 4,800m (base of Great Meteor seamount). A total of 437 species are present in this area (with 16 per cent of mega- and macrofauna and up to 91 per cent of meiofauna endemic to the seamount group), 3.9 per cent of which are protected under international or regional law.

Introduction
The Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex comprises 10 seamounts: Atlantis, Cruiser, Hyeres, Irving, Pico Sul, Plato, Tyro, Meteor Bank, the latter including Great Meteor, Closs and Small Meteor.

Benthic biological communities on seamounts are highly vulnerable to human activities. Many benthic species are long-lived, slow-growing and vulnerable to human impacts. Seamounts are defined as isolated topographic features of the seabed that have a limited lateral extent and rise more than 1000m from abyssal depths (Menard, 1964). Large seamounts usually originate as volcanoes and are primarily associated with intraplate hotspots and mid-ocean ridges (Staudigel *et al.*, 2010). Generally, seamount topography is responsible for these structures qualifying as high complexity sites. Due to their isolated location, these structures can be an obstacle to the free circulation of the oceans. This gives rise to different kinds of phenomena and disturbances, including an increase in the speed of sea currents, upwellings, turbulence, Taylor cones, eddies and even jets in the zones where the seamounts interact with ocean currents (Richardson *et al.*, 2000; Kunze & Smith, 2004; White *et al.*, 2007; Pakhorukov, 2008).

Seamounts are hotspots of marine life (e.g., Rogers, 1994; Gubbay, 2003; Morato & Pauly, 2004; Pitcher *et al.*, 2007, 2010; Mendonça *et al.*, 2012) and in general are areas of enhanced productivity in comparison with nearby abyssal areas. In most cases, around the seamounts there is an extensive anticyclonic eddy associated with the lifting of nutrients from the rich deep water, giving rise to high concentrations of nitrates and chlorophyll in shallow waters (Coelho & Santos, 2003), which encourages the development of a wealth of flora and fauna on the structures, leading to exposed hard substrates and improved food conditions for epibenthic suspension feeders (e.g., Cartes *et al.*, 2007 a), b); Genin & Dower 2007), such as cold-water corals or deep-water sponges (e.g., Samadi *et al.*, 2007; Sánchez *et al.*, 2008), tunas (e.g., Yasui 1986; Morato *et al.*, 2010, Ressurreição & Giacomello, 2013), marine mammals (e.g., Cañadas *et al.*, 2002; Correia *et al.*, 2015), and other organisms that apparently feed on prey aggregations (e.g., Boehler & Sasaki, 1988; Porteiro & Sutton, 2007; Tabachnick & Menchenina, 2007). Seamounts are biologically distinctive habitats of the open ocean exhibiting unique features (Rogers, 1994; Probert, 1999; Morato & Clark, 2007). These structures can host very distinctive biological communities that are different from the communities on nearby abyssal plains dominated by soft sediment, and these particular places may attract pelagic fish, including larger, commercially valuable species and other marine top predators such as loggerhead sea turtles (*Caretta caretta*) and marine mammals (e.g., Holland & Grubbs, 2007, Kaschner, 2007, Santos *et al*., 2007).

The Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex is part of the Macaronesian region. The area is situated about 1500 km northwest of the African continent and contains 10 banks, which usually have flat summit plateaus, together with a few lesser seamounts. The whole feature is a large volcanic complex in the central North Atlantic Ocean, situated some 700 km south of the Azores (Verhoef, 1984). It is the southernmost of a chain of large seamounts extending south from the Azores Plateau (Figure 1).

The Meteor bank is one of the best explored seamounts in the world, and since an expedition in 1998, detailed information on the meiofauna inhabiting its plateau has been made available. The Great Meteor resembles an isolated "island" in respect to the colonization by meiofauna. More data is included in the descriptions of some seamounts, such as Atlantis, Hyeres, Irving and Plato, than others (see Table 1), due to a greater sampling effort. Most of the older research was focused on geology.

Table 1 – Summary of the EBSA criteria met by each structure of the Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex (Crit 1 (Uniqueness or rarity), 2 (Special importance for life-history stages of species, 3 (Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats), 4 (Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery), 5 (Biological productivity), 6 (Biological diversity) and 7 (Naturalness). Nº sps – total number of species in each structure. Nº refs - total number of references in each structure. n.i. – No information available.

Structures	**Crit 1**	**Crit 2**	**Crit 3**	**Crit 4**	**Crit 5**	**Crit 6**	**Crit 7**	**Nº sps**	**Nº Refs**
Atlantis seamount	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	209	18
Closs seamount	√	√		√	√	√	√	1	1
Cruiser seamount	√		√	√		√	√	29	13
Great Meteor seamount	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	298	49
Hyeres seamount	√	√		√		√	√	117	20
Irving seamount	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	128	25
Pico do Sul seamount	√		√			√	√	n.i.	n.i.
Plato seamount	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	89	14
Small Meteor	√	√		√	√	√	√	n.i.	n.i.
Tyro seamount	√			√		√	√	18	6

In terms of geology the structures of the area have different compositions, locations and ages.

The shallower parts of the Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex are elevated structures and, with the exception of the Atlantis seamount, are oriented roughly parallel to the ridge, implying a lithospheric control for these volcanic constructions (Gente *et al*., 2003). The seamount with the highest proportion of studies recorded in the Atlantic was the Great Meteor seamount (Kvile *et al*., 2014).

The Meteor bank, situated south of the Azores, is one of the largest banks in the North-East Atlantic, with a wide plateau of ~1500 km^2 developed between 400 m and its summit at 275 m water depth. Great Meteor has a volcanic core and is capped by 150-600 m of post-Middle Miocene carbonate and pyroclastic rocks and covered by highly reworked, residual bioclastic sands. During the late Miocene to Pliocene it was levelled by wave truncation (Mironov & Krylova, 2006). Since the Pliocene, the summit plateau subsided, probably isostatically, to its present water depth of 275 m, interrupted by eustatic sea-level fluctuations during the Plistocene. The Great Meteor is also capped by a sedimentary section around 400 m in thickness (Hinz, 1969). In these areas the sediments mainly comprise carbonated biogenic remains, with very low sedimentation rates. For the last 450,000 years, the pelagic sedimentation rate of deep-sea sediments has been calculated to average 0.25–0.6 cm per thousand years (Kuijpers *et al*., 1984; Brandes, 2011). As a tablemount, the bank is covered by reef sediments and the debris thereof on the slopes. Seismic reflection and refraction profiles indicate that the Great Meteor seamount mainly consists of volcanic rock superimposed by a cap of sediments, probably consisting of biogenic limestones and calcareous sands (Hinz, 1969; von Rad, 1974).

Between the geographical coordinates 30°45'N and 32°50'N and around 28°W lies a complex of seamounts comprising the Cruiser, Irving and Hyeres. Southward of the Cruiser plateau, the Irving seamount is one of three major volcanic peaks: the Hyeres seamount in the southwest (crestal depth 300 m), the large, flat-topped guyot Irving seamount in the north-central area (265 m) and the Cruiser seamount in the northeast (735 m). These seamount crests are mostly unsedimented (Tucholke and Smoot, 1990).

The Cruiser seamount is located to the furthest North-East, with a maximum height of 590 m below sea level. The seamount rises to 735 m, and its length is about 70 km. Cruiser seamount contains no flat surface (Verhoef, 1984).

Irving seamount is situated at about 32°N/28°W. It rises to 250 m below sea level and is a tablemount. The general direction of Irving seamount is NW-SE, but due to its oval shape it is difficult to assign a distinct orientation to this seamount. The length of the structure is about 100 km.

Between Irving and Hyeres seamounts, there are several structures that are not as shallow as the other seamounts. The alignment of these structures is the same as for the other seamounts inside the complex. Hyeres seamount is the most southwestern structure (Verhoef, 1984).

The Hyeres seamount has a recorded minimum depth of 330 m at 31°20'N/28°50'W. The seismic profiles over Hyeres seamount show no flat surface. Coming from the northwest, Hyeres rises abruptly from the ocean floor. It then seems to divide in two branches in the south-east. Hyeres seamount has a length of about 100 km (Verhoef, 1984).

Inside the complex formed by Cruiser, Irving and Hyeres seamounts, several sedimentary basins are to be found (e.g., between Cruiser and Irving seamounts). On several profiles, a sedimentary cover on the seamounts has been recorded (e.g., the profiles over the northwestern part of Irving seamount) (Verhoef, 1984).

Plato seamount is aligned in a general E-W direction. It consists of an echelon structure with a WNW-ESE direction. The overall length of Plato seamount is about 110 km, and the recorded minimum depth is 580 m. Plato seamount forms the connection with another complex structure, the Atlantis seamount group (Verhoef, 1984).

The Atlantis seamount complex consists of several elevations, separated by deep saddles and with a common base at about 2400m. Some summits and slopes have composite relief with hills and peaks measuring 100 to 200 m. Therefore, the horizontal dimensions of these two seamounts on the contour charts are only schematic Studies conducted by Heezen *et al*. (1969) concluded that Atlantis seamount was an island within the past 12,000 years.

Tyro seamount is situated at 34°40'N/27°30'W with a minimum depth of 1370 m and roughly defined SE direction (Verhoef, 1984).

Seamounts are locations for a broad range of current-topography interactions and biophysical coupling, with implications for both phyto and zooplankton. Seamounts appear to support relatively large planktonic and higher consumer biomass when compared to surrounding ocean waters, particularly in oligotrophic oceans. It has been a widely held view that *in situ* enhancement of primary production fuels this phenomenon, but this has recently been challenged (Genin & Dower 2007).

Productivity in oceanic settings depends on light and nutrient availability, while overall production is the result of productivity and accumulation of the phytoplankton. At a seamount, either a seamount-generated, vertical nutrient flux must be shallow enough to reach the euphotic zone and the ensuing productivity retained over the seamount long enough to allow transfer to higher trophic levels, or the seamount must rely on allochthonous inputs of organic material to provide a trophic subsidy to resident populations (Clark *et al.,* 2010).

In terms of biology, these structures have not been extensively studied. A total of 437 species have been identified throughout the area (see feature description). Although seamounts are ecologically important and abundant features in the world's oceans (Hillier & Watts, 2007), biological research on some seamounts has been limited (see Table 1) (Consalvey *et al.,* 2010).

The most detailed investigations on biodiversity, composition and distribution of the seamount benthic macrofauna and meiofauna have been carried out in the North Atlantic, particularly at the Great Meteor seamount (Emschermann, 1971; Grasshoff, 1977; Bartsch, 1973, 2003, 2004, 2008; Hartmann-Schröder, 1979; George & Schminke, 2002; George 2004; Gad 2004, 2009; Gad & Schminke, 2004; Piepenburg & Müller, 2004; Mironov & Krylova, 2006).

Location

The area is situated roughly 700 km south of the Azores and about 1500 km northwest of Africa. It has a total area of 134,079 km^2, with depths ranging from 265m (top of Atlantis seamount) to 4800m (bottom of Great Meteor seamount). The area is bounded by the parallels 35º30’0,000’’N and 29º12’0,000’’N, and meridians -27º0’0,000’’W and -31º30’0,000’’W.

The polygon is defined by 19 points (see Table 2). The datum used is World Geodetic System 1984 (WGS84).

Table 2 – Geographic coordinates in two different formats: Decimal degrees and Degrees, Minutes and Seconds, corresponding to the vertices of the polygon that defines the Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex

Vertices	Latitude	Longitude	Latitude	Longitude
1	31,00000000°	-29,00000000°	31° 0' 0,000" N	-29° 0' 0,000" W
2	31,60000000°	-29,30000000°	31° 36' 0,000" N	-29° 18' 0,000" W
3	32,00000000°	-28,60000000°	32° 0' 0,000" N	-28° 36' 0,000" W
4	32,90000000°	-28,60000000°	32° 54' 0,000" N	-28° 36' 0,000" W
5	33,00000000°	-30,50000000°	33° 0' 0,000" N	-30° 30' 0,000" W
6	34,00000000°	-31,40000000°	34° 0' 0,000" N	-31° 24' 0,000" W
7	35,00000000°	-31,50000000°	35° 0' 0,000" N	-31° 30' 0,000" W
8	35,00000000°	-30,30000000°	35° 0' 0,000" N	-30° 18' 0,000" W
9	34,00000000°	-29,50000000°	34° 0' 0,000" N	-29° 30' 0,000" W
10	34,00000000°	-28,70000000°	34° 0' 0,000" N	-28° 42' 0,000" W
11	35,50000000°	-28,50000000°	35° 30' 0,000" N	-28° 30' 0,000" W
12	35,40000000°	-27,00000000°	35° 24' 0,000" N	-27° 0' 0,000" W
13	33,30000000°	-27,60000000°	33° 18' 0,000" N	-27° 36' 0,000" W
14	32,20000000°	-27,00000000°	32° 12' 0,000" N	-27° 0' 0,000" W
15	30,70000000°	-28,20000000°	30° 42' 0,000" N	-28° 12' 0,000" W
16	29,30000000°	-28,00000000°	29° 18' 0,000" N	-28° 0' 0,000" W
17	29,20000000°	-29,30000000°	29° 12' 0,000" N	-29° 18' 0,000" W

The Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex includes 10 seamount structures.

Feature description of the area

Knowledge of the Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex is based on the analysis of 146 scientific articles containing relevant information about the described area. Several of the seamounts are well known, with a great number of geological and biological studies. The total number of 437 species reported was estimated from scattered taxonomical literature, and the species number is probably underestimated. Knowledge of each structure is uneven.

Around of 4 per cent of the 437 species identified in all seamounts on Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex are legally protected or assessed as threatened by CITES, IUCN Red List, European Union Habitats and Birds Directives, Food and Agriculture Organization (VMEs), Bern Convention and OSPAR Convention. For example, OSPAR identified as endangered or declining the deep-water sharks

Centroscymus coeleopsis and *Centrophorus squamosus*. Other examples of species with legal protection (CITES Appendix II) are the corals, *Antipathella subpinnata*, *Leiopathes* spp., *Parantipathes hirondelle*, *Aulocyathus atlanticus*, *Caryophyllia abyssorum*, *Deltocyathus eccentricus*, *Deltocyathus moseleyi*, *Dendrophyllia cornigera*, *Desmophyllum dianthus*, *Flabellum alabastrum*, *Flabellum chuni* and *Lophelia pertusa* among others. For example, the species of sea urchin *Centrostephanus longispinus* is protected by the EU Habitats Directive, and *Ranella olearia* is protected by Annex II of the Bern Convention.

The species studied in the described area belong to several phyla, classes or orders (Figure 3). The Meteor Seamount includes various species of scleractinians and gorgonians. In some seamounts the gorgonian and sponge species were reported to form dense gorgonian coral habitat-forming aggregations of *Callogorgia verticillata* and *Elisella flagellum*, which may represent important feeding and sheltering grounds for seamount fishes and potential shark nurseries (WWF, 2001; Etnoyer & Warrenchuk, 2007; OSPAR, 2011). Cold-water, deep, habitat-forming corals can shelter higher megafauna in association with the corals than other habitats without coral communities (Roberts *et al*, 2006; Mortensen *et al*, 2008, Rogers *et al*, 2008). Seamounts also harbour large aggregations of demersal or benthopelagic fish (Koslow, 1997; Morato & Pauly, 2004; Pitcher *et al.*, 2007; Morato *et al.*, 2009, 2010).

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

Most of the study cruises that have visited the described area focus on Great Meteor bank, with sampling of the demersal vertebrate fauna (fish). Most studies are qualitative and often focus on specific taxonomic groups, such as copepods or gastropods (George & Schminke, 2002; Gofas, 2007; Pitcher *et al*., 2010).

The unique ecosystems of seamounts are highly vulnerable and sensitive to external actions. Most of the fauna found on seamounts are long-lived, slow-growing organisms with low fecundity and natural mortality (Brewin *et al.*, 2007). Fisheries for horse mackerel (*Trachurus trachurus*, Carangidae), mackerel (*Scomber* sp., Scombridae), scabbardfish (family Trichiuridae) and orange roughy (*Hoplostethus atlanticus*) have been operating on the seamounts of the area (Uiblein *et al*., 1999).

Assessment of area no. 10, Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex, against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA Criteria (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Description** (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		No information	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique ("the only one of its kind"), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.				X
Explanation for ranking The fish *Protogrammus sousai* (Callionymidae) is endemic to Great Meteor Seamount (Uiblein *et al*., 1999), as is the antipatharian (*Leiopathes montana)* (Molodstova, 2011). The Atlantis Seamount has strong effects on the composition of the mesopelagic fish community (Pusch *et al*., 2004). The fish fauna are ecologically distinct, with some evidence of morphologic adaption of certain fish populations (e.g., *Phycis phycis*) to the special food-poor conditions at the seamount (Uiblein *et al*., 1999). Meiofaunal groups of copepods and nematodes exhibit pronounced endemism, e.g., 54 of 56 observed species of the copepod Harpacticoida are new to science (George and Schminke, 2002).					
Special	Areas that are required for a population to				X

<table>
<tr><td>importance for life-history stages of species</td><td>survive and thrive.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
Atlantis and Great Meteor Banks are vital stopping points for certain migratory species of whales and cetaceans, including sperm whales (e.g., Physeter microcephalus), fin whales (e.g., Balaenoptera acutorostrata), striped (e.g., Stenella coeruleoalba) and bottlenose dolphins (e.g., Tursiops truncatus).

The seamounts support many species of seabirds that use these places to feed; tracking data reveal the occurrence of at least 11 species using the area during breeding and/or the non- breeding seasons e.g., Calonectris borealis,Puffinus lherminieri baroli – an OSPAR listed species – and the threatened Rissa tridactyla, Pterodroma deserta and Pterodroma madeira(BirdLife International 2019).

There is a blue shark nursery in the Central North Atlantic, roughly delimited by the Azoresarchipelago in the North and the Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex in the South (Vandeperre et al., 2014)

The aggregation of commercially important fish species in this area use this ecosystem for spawning and as nursery grounds (e.g., Aphanopus carbo, Beryx splendens, Zenopsis conchifer) (Uiblein et al., 1999).

There is evidence for mid-latitude foraging in central North Atlantic waters for fin and blue whales migrating to the northern feeding sites. More importantly, these species can suspend their seasonal migration and remain foraging in middle latitude areas for extended periods of time and much later into the summer than generally assumed (Silva et al., 2013).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats</td><td>Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
Around 4 per cent of the species identified in Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex are legally protected or assessed as threatened by CITES (e.g., Antipathes furcata, Leiopathes spp., Parantipathes hirondelle, Desmophyllum dianthus, etc), European Union Habitats (e.g., Centrostephanus longispinus), Bern Convention (e.g., Ranella olearium) orOSPAR Convention (e.g., Centroscymnus coelolepis) (see “feature description of the area”).

Tracks of the loggerhead turtle (Caretta caretta), which is protected by CITES, indicate their use of seamount as habitat (Pitcher et al., 2010).

Atlantis seamount and Meteor Bank are vital stopping points for certain migratory species of whales and cetaceans, including sperm whales (e.g., Physeter microcephalus), fin whales (e.g., Balaenoptera acutorostrata), striped (e.g., Stenella coeruleoalba) and bottlenose dolphins (e.g., Tursiops truncates, Romagosa et al., 2009).

Some globally threatened seabird species are also known to occur in the area, such as Rissa tridactyla (VU), Pterodroma deserta (VU) and Pterodroma madeira (EN), along with the OSPAR listed Puffinus lherminieri baroli (BirdLife International 2019).

Blue shark (Prionace glauca) is on the IUCN Red List as a threatened species. As the seamount complex is confirmed as a nursery, it is of paramount importance to the species (Stevens, 2009).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or</td><td>Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td>slow recovery</td><td>susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
These seamounts host unique marine ecosystems, supporting fragile habitats and vulnerable species like habitat-forming sponges and cold-water corals (e.g., Madrepora oculata). Some of these species exhibit extremely slow recovery, such as the black corals (Leiopathes spp.); the age of some specimens in this part of the Atlantic was approximated to be >2000 yrs (Carreiro-Silva et al., 2012).

In the Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex, at least 35 species of cold-water corals have been reported (e.g., Antipathella subpinnata; Parantipathes hirondelle, Leiopathes montana, Caryophyllia smithii; Dendrophyllia cornigera, Flabellum macandrewi). All these corals are particularly fragile and recover very slowly (Molodtsova, 2006; Rogers et al., 2007; Molodtsova, 2011).

Presence of species with some legal protection with characteristic features particularly attending to biological factors, such as longevity, low fecundity, and slow growth rates (e.g., sharks and rays) (e.g., Clark, 2001; Morato et al. 2008). Twenty-two species of sharks and rays (e.g., Dalatias licha (shark), Raja clavata (ray)) are reported in this area (see Figure 5).

Long-lived and slow-growing orange roughy (Hoplostethus atlanticus), one of the longest-lived fish species known, with an estimated life span of more than 130 years, is reported in deep waters, over steep continental slopes, ocean ridges and seamounts south of Azores, including Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex (Allain & Lorance, 2000).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Biological productivity</td><td>Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.</td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
Productivity of the area in general is characterized as low; however, physical oceanography of seamounts leads to enhanced productivity in seamount areas. A circulation system, in the form of an anticyclonic vortex reported atop the Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex, has the potential to accumulate mesopelagic zooplankton, micronekton, and even fish species with weak swimming capabilities (Boehlert & Mundy, 1993; Dong et al., 2007).

Studies with plankton prove that the Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex (Mouriño et al., 2001; Beckmann & Mohn, 2002; Fock et al., 2002; Martin & Nellen, 2004; Morato et al., 2013) has a relatively high biological productivity.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Biological diversity</td><td>Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
These structures, like other seamounts, have been conceptualized as habitat "islands" in the deep-sea. The Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex structures have high species diversity, with 437 different species registered, some of which are new to science (e.g., George, K. & Schminke, 2002; George, 2004)

The structures also host large aggregations of demersal or benthopelagic fish (see, e.g., Uiblein et al.,1999; Mironov & Krylova, 2006)

In the Atlantis, Hyeres and Irving seamounts, as well as the Meteor banks there is evidence of a great diversity, with records of midwater fish as major predators of zooplankton, such as the highly abundant and very common species, snipefish (Macroramphosus scolopax), seabass (Anthias anthias), boarfishes (Capros aper and Antigonia capros), flatfish (Arnoglossus rueppelli) and aulopid (Aulopus filamentosus). Also, there is presence of corals (e.g., Antipathella subpinnata, Parantipathes hirondelle, Leiopathes spp.), hydroids (e.g., Acryptolaria conferta), echinoderms (e.g., Centrostephanus longispinus), molluscs (e.g., Dermomurex gofasi) and sponges (e.g., Craniella longipilis). These kinds of species often form</td></tr>
</table>

extensive reef-like structures, which themselves provide a diverse habitat for other animals, for example Cephalopoda (e.g., *Ornitoteuthis antillarum*, *Tremoctopus violaceus*) and Elasmobranchii (*Heptranchias perlo*).

Atlantis seamount and those of the Meteor bank are vital stopping points for certain migratory species of whales and cetaceans, including sperm whales (e.g., *Physeter microcephalus*), fin whales (e.g., *Balaenoptera acutorostrata*), striped (e.g., *Stenella coeruleoalba*) and bottlenose dolphins (e.g., *Tursiops truncatus*). The seamounts of Meteor Bank receive many species of seabirds that use these places to feed (e.g., *Calonectris diomedea*, *Oceanodroma castro*, *Puffinus myasthenia*). Loggerhead turtle (*Caretta caretta*) tracks indicate use of seamount as habitat (Pitcher *et al*., 2010).

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.			X	

Explanation for ranking
This is an FAO Fishing Area (No. 27 / No. 34). The fisheries for horse mackerel (*Trachurus trachurus*, Carangidae), mackerel (*Scomber* sp., Scombridae), scabbardfish (family Trichiuridae) and orange roughy (*Hoplostethus atlanticus*) have been operating in the seamounts (Uiblein *et al*., 1999).

References

Allain, V. and P. Lorance, 2000. Age estimation and growth of some deep-sea fish from the northeast Atlantic Ocean. Cybium 24(3) Suppl.:7-16.

Bartsch, I. (1973). Halacaridae (Acari) von der Josephinebank und der Großen Meteorbank aus dem östlichen Nordatlantik. I. Die Halacaridae aus den Schleppnetzproben. *Meteor Forsch-Erg D* 15: 51-78.

Bartsch, I. (2003). Lohmannellinae (Halacaridae: Acari) from the Great Meteor Seamount (Northeastern Atlantic). Description of new species and reflections on the origin of the seamount fauna. *Mitteilungen aus dem hamburgischen zoologischen Museum und Institut* 100: 101-117.

Bartsch, I. (2004). Halacaridae (Acari) from the Great Meteor Seamount (Northeastern Atlantic). Description of Simognathus species. *Mitteilungen aus dem Hamburgischen Zoologischen Museum und Institut* 101: 185-196.

Bartsch, I. (2008). Notes on ophiuroids from the Great Meteor Seamount (Northeastern Atlantic). *Spixiana* 31: 233-239.

Beckmann, A., & Mohn, C. (2002). The upper ocean circulation at Great Meteor Seamount. *Ocean Dynamics* 52(4): 194–204.

BirdLife International (2019). The Seabird Tracking Database. www.seabirdtracking.org

Boehlert, G. & Sasaki, T. (1988) Pelagic biogeography of the armourhead, Pseudopentaceros wheeleri, and recruitment to isolated seamounts in the North Pacific Ocean. Fishery Bulletin US 86: 453-465.

Boehlert, G. W., & Mundy, B. C. (1993). Ichthyoplankton assemblages at seamounts and oceanic islands. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 53(2): 336-361.

Brandes, H. (2011). Geotechnical characteristics of deep-sea sediments from the North Atlantic and North Pacific oceans. *Ocean Engineering* 38(7): 835-848.

Brewin, P., Stocks, K. & Menezes, G. (2007) A History of Seamount Research. Chapter 3. pp 41- 61. In Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. and Santos, R.S. (eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Conservation and Management.* Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK.

Carreiro-Silva, M., Andrews, A. H., Braga-Henriques, A., De Matos, V., Porteiro, F. M., & Santos, R. S. (2013). Variability in growth rates of long-lived black coral Leiopathes sp. from the Azores. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 473*, 189-199.

Cañadas, A., Sagarminaga, R., & Garcıa-Tiscar, S. (2002) Cetacean distribution related with depth and slope in the Mediterranean waters off southern Spain. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 49(11): 2053-2073.

Cartes, J., Huguet, C., Parra, S. & Sanchez, F. (2007 a)) Trophic relationships in deep-water decapods of Le Danois bank (Cantabrian Sea, NE Atlantic): Trends related with depth and seasonal changes in food quality and availability. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* 54: 1091–1110.

Cartes, J., Serrano, A., Velasco, F., Parra, S., & Sanchez, F. (2007 b)) Community structure and dynamics of deep-water decapod assemblagesfrom Le Danois Bank (Cantabrian Sea, NE Atlantic): Influence of environmental variables and food availability, *Progress in Oceanography* 75: 797–816.

Clark, M. (2001) Are deepwater fisheries sustainable? The example of orange roughy. *Fisheries Research* 51: 123–35.

Clark, M., Rowden, A., Schlacher, T., Williams, A., Consalvey, M., Stocks, K., Rogers, A., O’Hara, T., White, M., Shank, T. & Hall-Spencer, J. (2010) The ecology of seamounts: structure, function, and human impacts. *Annual Review of Marine Science* 2: 253-278.

Coelho, H. & Santos, R. (2003) Enhanced primary production over seamounts: a numerical study. *Thalassas* 19: 144-145.

Consalvey, M., Clark, M., Rowden, A. & Stocks K. (2010) Life on seamounts. In: McIntyre AD (ed.), *Life in the world’s oceans*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing. pp 123–138.

Convention on Biological Diversity (2008) Decision IX/20. *Ninth meeting of the Conference of Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity*. Montreal: Convention on Biological Diversity.

Correia, A., Tepsich, M., Rosso P., Caldeira M., & Sousa-Pinto, I. (2015) Cetacean occurrence and spatial distribution: Habitat modelling for offshore waters in the Portuguese EEZ (NE Atlantic). *Journal of Marine Systems* 143: 73– 85.

Dong, C., McWilliams, J. C., & Shchepetkin, A. F. (2007). Island wakes in deep water. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 37(4): 962-981.

Emschermann, P. (1971). Loxomespilon perezi—ein entoproctenfund im mittelatlantik. Überlegungen zur benthosbesiedlung der Großen Meteorbank. *Marine Biology* 9(1): 51-62.

Etnoyer, P. & Warrenchuk, J. (2007) A catshark nursery in a deep gorgonian field in the Mississipi Canyon, Gulf of Mexico. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 81: 553−559.

Fock, H., Matthiessen, B., Zidowitz, H. & Westernhagen, H. (2002). Diel and habitat-dependent resource utilisation by deep-sea fishes at the Great Meteor seamount: Niche overlap and support for the sound scattering layer interception hypothesis. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 244, 219–233.

Gad, G. (2004). The Loricifera fauna of the plateau of the Great Meteor Seamount. *Archive of Fishery and Marine Research* 51(1-3): 9-29.

Gad, G. (2009). Colonisation and speciation on seamounts, evidence from Draconematidae (Nematoda) of the Great Meteor Seamount. *Marine Biodiversity* 39(1): 57-69.

Gad, G., & Schminke, H. K. (2004). How important are seamounts for the dispersal of meiofauna. *Archive of Fishery and Marine Research* 51(1): 3.

Genin, A. & Dower, J. (2007) Seamount plankton dynamics. In: Pitcher, T.J., T. Morato, P.J.B. Hart, M.R. Clark, N. Haggan and R.S. Santos (Eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation.* Fish and Aquatic Resources Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom, pp 85-100.

Gente, P., Dyment, J., Maia, M. & Goslin, J. (2003). Interaction between the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and the Azores hot spot during the last 85 Myr: Emplacement and rifting of the hot spot-derived plateaus. *Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystems* 4(10).

George, K. & Schminke, H. (2002). Harpacticoida (Crustacea, Copepoda) of the Great Meteor Seamount, with first conclusions as to the origin of the plateau fauna. *Marine Biology* 141(5): 887-895.

George, K. H. (2004). Meteorina magnifica gen. et sp. nov., a new Idyanthidae (Copepoda, Harpacticoida) from the plateau of the Great Meteor Seamount (Eastern North Atlantic). *Meiofauna Marina* 13: 95-112.

Gofas, S. (2007). Rissoidae (Mollusca: Gastropoda) from northeast Atlantic seamounts. *Journal of Natural History* 41(13-16): 779-885.

Grasshoff, M. (1977). Die Gorgonarien des östlichen Nordatlantik und des Mittelmeeres. III Die Familie Paramuriceidae (Cnidaria, Anthozoa). Meteor Forsch. *Ergebnisse* 27: 5-76.

Gubbay, S. (2003) *Seamounts of the North-East Atlantic*. WWF Germany, Frankfurtam Main, Germany.

Hartmann-Schröder, G. (1979). Die Polychaeten der “Atlantischen Kuppenfahrt” von FS “Meteor” (Fahrt 9 c, 1967). 1. *Proben aus Schleppgeräten. Meteor Forschungs-Ergebnisse, Reihe D* 31: 63-90.

Heezen, B., Johnson, G. & Hollister, C. (1969). The Northwest Atlantic mid-ocean canyon. *Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences* 6(6): 1441-1453.

Hillier J. & Watts A. (2007) Global distribution of seamounts from ship-track bathymetry data. *Geophysical Research Letters* 34: L13304.

Hinz, K. (1969). The Great Meteor Seamount. Results of seismic reflection measurements with a pneumatic sound source, and their geological interpretation. *Meteor Forsch Ergebn* C(2): 63-77.

Holland, K. & Grubbs, R. (2007) Fish Visitors to Seamounts: Tunas and Billfish at Seamounts. Chapter 10 Section A. in Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. and Santos, R.S. (eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Conservation and Management. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series*, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. pp. 189-201.

Kaschner, K. (2007) Air-breathing visitors to seamounts: Marine Mammals. Chapter 12 Section A. in Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. and Santos, R.S. (eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Conservation and Management. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series*, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. pp. 230-238.

Koslow, J. (1997) Seamounts and the ecology of deep-sea fisheries. *Americam Scientist* 85: 168-176.

Kuijpers, A.; Schüttenhelm, R.T.E.; Verbeek, J.W. (Ed.) (1984). Geological Studies in the Eastern North Atlantic. Mededelingen Rijks Geologische Dienst. *Nieuwe Serie* 38(2)

Kunze, E. & Llewellyn Smith, S. (2004) The role of small-scale topography in turbulent mixing of the global ocean. *Oceanography* 17(1): 55–64.

Kvile, K., Taranto, G., Pitcher, T. & Morato, T. (2014) A global assessment of seamount ecosystems knowledge using an ecosystem evaluation framework. *Biological Conservation* 173: 108-120.

Martin, B. & Nellen, W. (2004). Composition and distribution of zooplankton at the Great Meteor Seamount, subtropical north-east Atlantic. *Archive of Fishery and Marine Research* 51(1-3): 89-100.

Menard, H. (1964) *Marine Geology of the Pacific*, 271 pp., McGraw-Hill, New York.

Mendonça, A., Arístegui, J., Vilas, J., Montero, M., Ojeda, A., Espino, M. & Martins, A. (2012) Is there a seamount effect on microbial community structure and biomass? The case study of Seine and Sedlo Seamounts (Northeast Atlantic). *PLoS ONE* 7(1).

Mironov, A. & Krylova, E. (2006). Origin of the fauna of the Meteor Seamounts, north-eastern Atlantic. *Biogeography of the North Atlantic Seamounts* 22-57.

Molodtsova T.N. 2006. Black corals (Antipatharia: Anthozoa: Cnidaria) of North-East Atlantic. pp. 141-151 In: Mironov A.N., A.V. Gebruk and A.J. Southward (eds.) Biogeography of the North Atlantic seamounts. Moscow. KMK Press 201 p. (Parantipathes hirondelle n.sp.- GMsm)

Molodtsova T.N. 2011. A new species of Leiopathes (Anthozoa: Antipatharia) from the Great Meteor seamount (North Atlantic) Zootaxa 3138: 52–64 (Leiopathes montana n.sp. - GMsm)

Morato, T. & Clark, M. (2007). Seamount fishes: ecology and life histories. Chapter 9 In:Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. & Santos, R.S. (eds) *Seamounts: ecology, fisheries & conservation*. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. pp. 170 -188.

Morato, T. & Pauly, D. (2004). *Seamounts: Biodiversity and fisheries*. Fisheries Centre, University of British Columbia.

Morato, T., Allain, V., Hoyle, S. & Nicol, S. (2009) *Tuna Longline Fishing around West and Central Pacific Seamounts*. Information Paper. Scientific Committee, Fifth Regular Session, 10-21 August 2009, Port Vila, Vanuatu. WCPFC-SC5-2009/EB-IP-04. Western and Central Pacific Fisheries Commission, Palikir, Pohnpei.

Morato, T., Hoyle, S., Allain, V. & Nicol, S. (2010) *Seamounts are hotspots of pelagic biodiversity in the open ocean*. PNAS Early Edition - www.pnas.org/cgi/doi/10.1073/pnas.0910290107.

Morato, T., Hoyle, S., Allain, V., & Nicol, S. (2010) Seamounts are hotspots of pelagic biodiversity in the open ocean. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 107(21): 9707–9711.

Morato, T., Kvile, K., Taranto, G., Tempera, F., Narayanaswamy, B., Hebbeln, D., Menezes, G., Wienberg, C., Santos, R. & Pitcher, T. (2013) Seamount physiography and biology in The North-East Atlantic and Mediterranean Sea. *Biogeosciences* 10(5): 3039–3054.

Morato, T., Varkey, D., Damaso, C., Machete, M., Santos, M. & Pitcher, T. (2008) Evidence of a seamount effect on aggregating visitors. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 357: 23-32.

Mortensen, P., Buhl-Mortensen, L., Gebruk, A. & Krylovab, E. (2008) Occurrence of deep-water corals on the MidAtlantic Ridge based on MAR-ECO data. *Deep-Sea Research II* 55:142–152

Mouriño, B., Fernández, E., Serret, P., Harbour, D., Sinha, B., & Pingree, R. (2001). Variability and seasonality of physical and biological fields at the Great Meteor Tablemount (subtropical NE Atlantic). *Oceanologica Acta* 24(2): 167–185.

OSPAR (2011) *Background Document on the Josephine Seamount Marine Protected Area*. Report prepared by the OSPAR Intersessional Correspondence Group on Marine Protected Areas. Biological Diversity and Ecosystems, 551: 27.

Pakhorukov, N. (2008) Visual observations of fish from seamounts of the Southern Azores Region (the Atlantic Ocean). *Journal of Ichthyology* 48: 114–123.

Piepenburg, D. & Müller, B. (2004). Distribution of epibenthic communities on the Great Meteor Seamount (North-east Atlantic) mirrors pelagic processes. *Archive of Fishery and Marine Research* 51(1-3): 55-70.

Pitcher, T., Clark, M., Morato, T. & Watson, R. (2010) Seamount fisheries: Do they have a future?. *Oceanography* 23: 134–144.

Pitcher, T., Morato, T., Hart, P., Clark, M., Haggan, N. & Santos, R. (2007) *Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries, and Conservation, Blackwell Fisheries and Aquatic Resources* Series, Vol. 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, 527 pp.

Porteiro, F. & Sutton, T. (2007) Midwater fish assemblages and seamounts. In: Pitcher, T.J., T. Morato, P.J.B. Hart, M.R. Clark, N. Haggan and R.S. Santos (Eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources* Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom. pp. 101–16.

Probert P. (1999) Seamounts, sanctuaries and sustainability: moving towards deep-sea conservation. *Aquatic Conservation* 9: 601-605.

Pusch, C., Beckmann, C., Porteiro, F. M., & von Westernhagen, H. (2004). The influence of seamounts on mesopelagic fish communities. *Archive of fishery and marine research* 51(1): 165-186.

Romagosa, M., Lucas, C., Pérez-Jorge, S., Tobeña, M., Lehodey, P., Reis, J., ... & Silva, M. A. Differences in regional oceanography and prey biomass influence the presence of foraging odontocetes at two Atlantic seamounts. Marine Mammal Science.

Ressurreição, A. & Giacomello, E. (2013) Quantifying the direct use value of Condor seamount. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography* 98: 209–217.

Richardson, P., Bower, A. & Zenk, W. (2000) A census of Meddies tracked by floats. *Progress in Oceanography* 45: 209–250.

Roberts, J., Wheeler, A. & Freiwald, A. (2006) Reefs of the deep: The biology and geology of cold-water coral ecosystems. *Science* 213: 543–547.

Rogers, A. (1994) The biology of seamounts. *Advances in marine biology* 30: 305-305.

Rogers, A., Baco, A., Griffiths, H., Hart, T. & Hall-Spencer, J. (2007) Corals on seamounts. In: Pitcher, T., Morato, T., Hart, P., Clark, M., Haggan, N. & Santos, R. eds. *Seamounts: ecology, fisheries, and conservation*. Blackwell Fisheries and Aquatic Resources Series 12. Oxford, UK: Blackwell Publishing. pp 141–169.

Rogers, A., Clark, M., Hall-Spencer, J. & Gjerde, K. (2008) *The Science behind the Guidelines: A Scientific Guide to the FAO Draft International Guidelines* (December 2007) for the Management of Deep-sea Fisheries in the High Seas and Examples of How the Guidelines May Be Practically Implemented. IUCN, Switzerland.

Samadi, S., Schlacher, T. & de Forges, B. (2007) Seamount benthos. In: Pitcher, T.J., T. Morato, P.J.B. Hart, M.R. Clark, N. Haggan and R.S. Santos (Eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources* Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom, pp 119-140.

Sánchez, F., Serrano, A., Parra, S., Ballesteros, M. & Cartes, J. (2008) Habitat characteristics as determinant of the structure and spatial distribution of epibenthic and demersal communities of Le Danois Bank (Cantabrian Sea, N. Spain). *Journal of Marine Systems* 72: 64–86.

Santos, M., Bolten, A., Martins, H., Riewald, B. & Bjorndal, K. (2007) Air-breathing Visitors to Seamounts: Sea Turtles. Chapter 12 Section B. in Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. and Santos, R.S. (eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Conservation and Management. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series*, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. pp. 239-244.

Silva, M.A., Prieto, R., Jonsen, I., Baumgartner, M.F., Santos, R.S. 2013. North Atlantic Blue and Fin Whales Suspend Their Spring Migration to Forage in Middle Latitudes: Building up Energy

Reserves for the Journey? PLoS ONE 8(10): e76507. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0076507

Staudigel, H. & Clague, D. (2010) The geological history of deep-sea volcanoes: Biosphere, hydrosphere, and lithosphere interactions. *Oceanography* 23(1): 58–71.

Stevens, J. 2009. *Prionace glauca*. *The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species* 2009: e.T39381A10222811. http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2009-2.RLTS.T39381A10222811.en.

Tabachnick, K. & Menchenina, L. (2007). Revision of the genus Asconema (Porifera: Hexactinellida:Rossellidae). *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the UK* 87: 1403–1429.

Tucholke, B. & Smoot, N. (1990). Evidence for age and evolution of Corner seamounts and Great Meteor seamount chain from multibeam bathymetry. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 95(B11): 17555–17569.

Uiblein, F., Geldmacher, A., Kˆster, F., Nellen, W., & Kraus, G. (1999). Species composition and depth distribution of fish species collected in the area of the Great Meteor Seamount, Central Eastern Atlantic, during cruise M42/3, with seventeen new records. *Informes Tecnicos del Instituto Canario de Ciencias Marinas* 5: 1-32.

Vandeperre F, Aires-da-Silva A, Fontes J, Santos M, Serrao Santos R, *et al*. (2014) Movements of Blue Sharks (Prionace glauca) across Their Life History. PLoS ONE 9(8): e103538. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0103538

Verhoef, J. (1984). A geophysical study of the Atlantis-Meteor seamount complex. *Geologica ultraiectina* 38, 1-153.

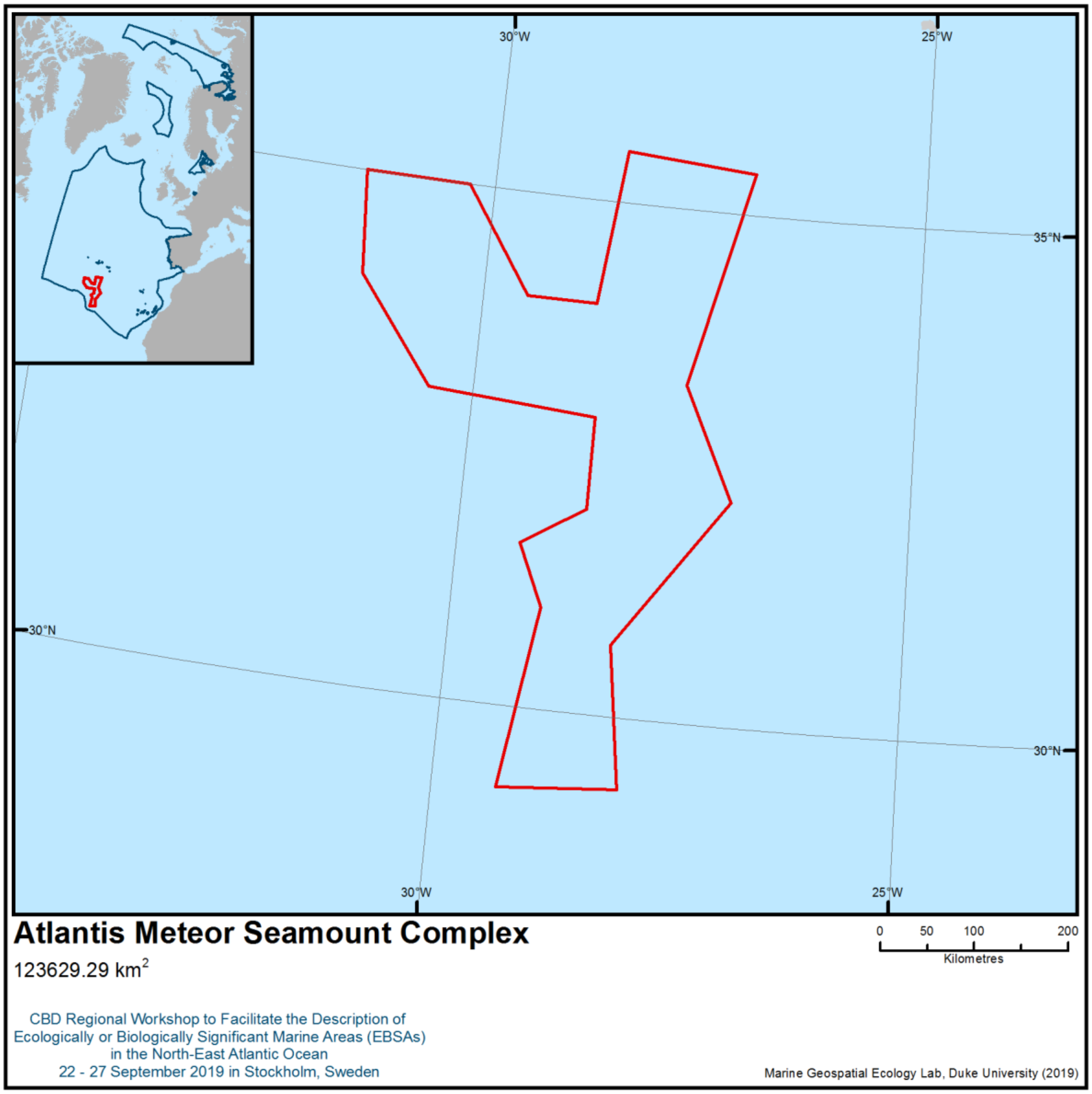
Von Rad, U. (1974). Great Meteor and Josephine seamounts (eastern North Atlantic): composition and origin of bioclastic sands, carbonate and pyroclastic rocks. *Meteor Forschungsergebnisse C* 19: 1-61.

White, M., Bashmachnikov, I., Aristegui, J. & Martins, A. (2007) Physical processes and seamount productivity. In: Pitcher, T., Morato T., Hart, P., Clark, M., Haggan, N. & Santos, R. (Eds) *Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation*. *Fish and Aquatic Resources* Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom, pp 65-84.

WWF (2001) *Implementation of the EU Habitats Directive Offshore: Natura 2000 sites for reefs and submerged seabanks*. Vol. II. Northeast Atlantic and North Sea, 87pp. World Wildlife Fund.

Yasui, M. (1986). *Albacore, Thunnus alalunga, pole-and-line fishery around the Emperor Seamounts. From Environment and Resources of Seamounts in the North Pacific*. R. Uchida, S. Hayashi, and G. Boehlert [eds]. NOAA Technical Report NMFS 43. September 1986. pp 37 – 40.

Maps and Figures



Location of area no. 10: Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex

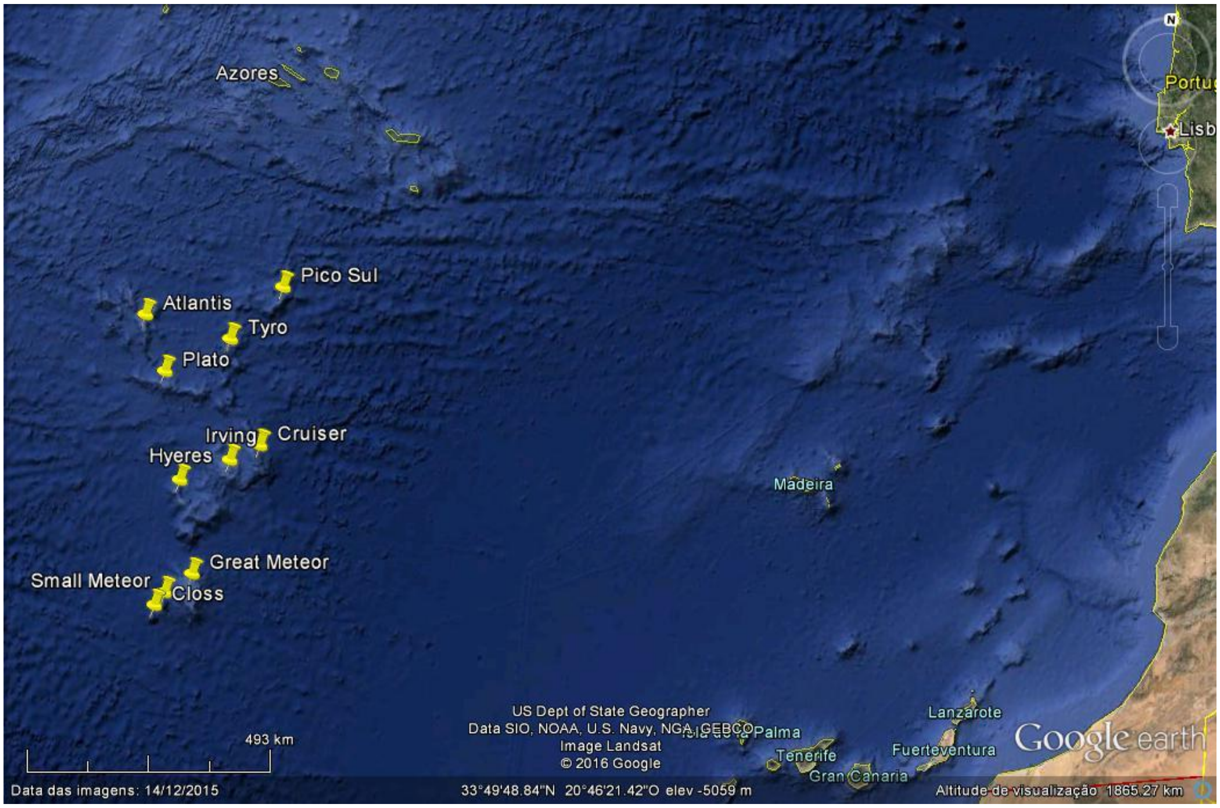


Figure 1. Structures of the Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex

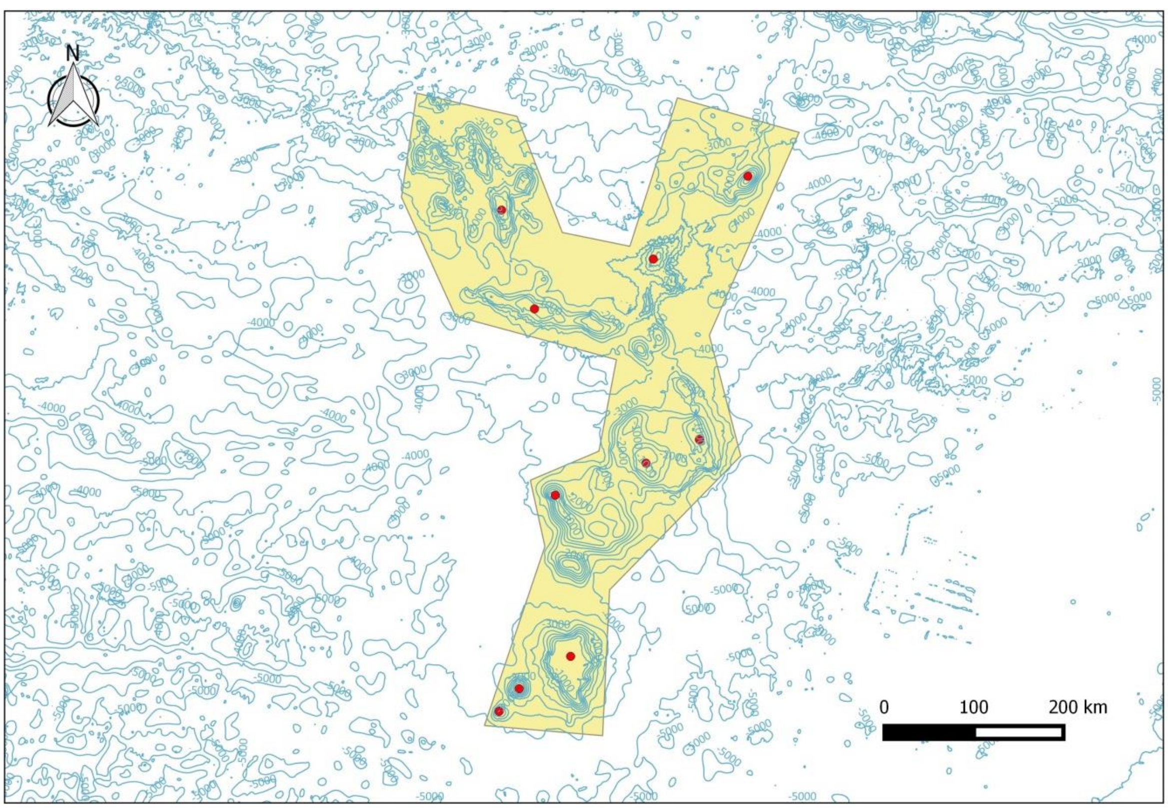


Figure 2. Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex (yellow shading = total area).

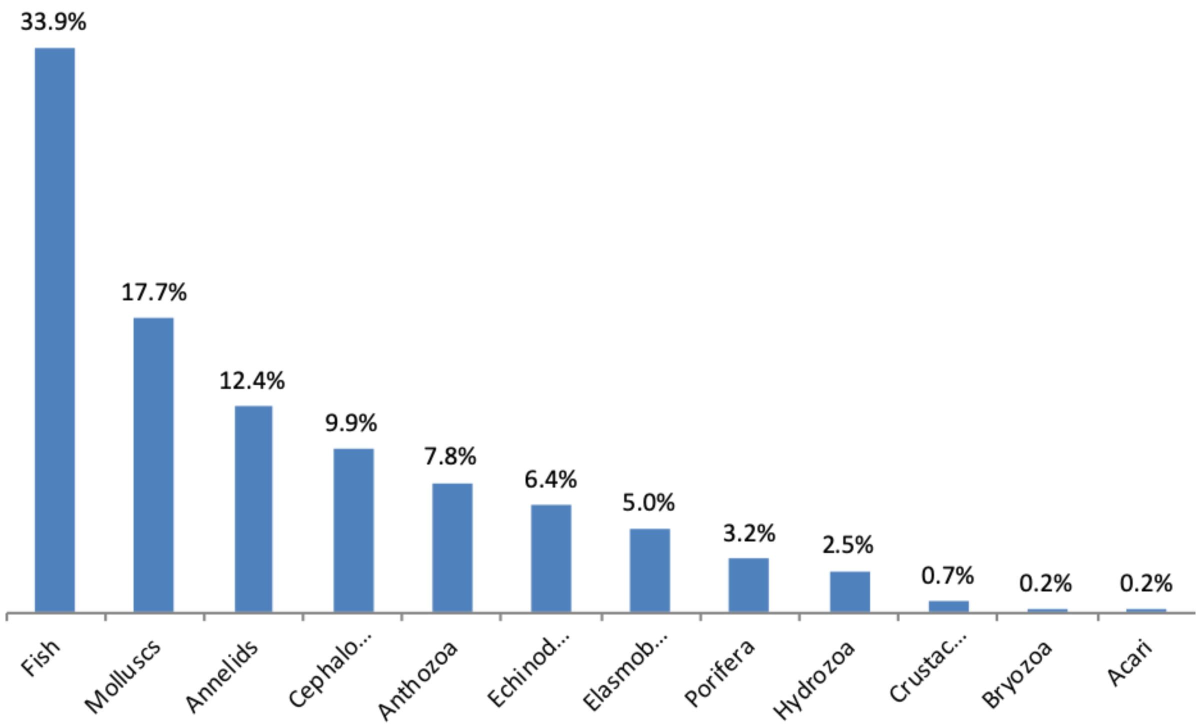


Figure 3. Relative frequency (per cent) of the different phyla/class/order of the species identified in the Atlantis-Meteor Seamount Complex.

Area no. 11: Ridge South of the Azores

Abstract

The Ridge South of the Azores encompasses the axial valley and ridge crests of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge, from the Menez Gwen hydrothermal vent field area to the Haynes fracture zone. At the east ridge crest, the area includes part of the Alberto Monaco Ridge and seamount-like features associated with the western portions of the ridge. The area includes three high-seas marine protected areas (part of the OSPAR Network of Marine Protected Areas) – Lucky Strike, Menez Gwen and Rainbow vent fields. The features in this area are both hotspots of marine life and areas of enhanced productivity when compared with surrounding bathyal and abyssal areas. The hydrothermal temperatures range between 10° C (Menez Hom and Saldanha) and 362° C (Rainbow). The area also includes other seafloor features at the ridge crest that host sponge aggregations, cold-water corals and other charismatic fauna.

Introduction

This area encompasses a part of the Ridge South of the Azores, with different features such as the axial valley, ridge crests and several hydrothermal vent fields, either active or inferred. The area is bordered at the north by the Menez Gwen hydrothermal vent field area and at the south by the Haynes fracture zone. At the east ridge crest, this area incorporates part of the Alberto Monaco Ridge and the seamount-like features associated with the ridge at its west. The area also includes three high-seas marine protected areas (part of the OSPAR Network of Marine Protected Areas) –Lucky Strike, Menez Gwen and Rainbow vent fields. This area has structures at depths ranging from ~~the deepest~~ 3460 m (inferred depth – south Oceanographer FZ), to the mid-range at 2320 m (measured depth – Rainbow), to the shallowest at Albert Monaco Ridge. The hydrothermal temperatures range between 10° C (Menez Hom and Saldanha) and 362° C (Rainbow). The uniqueness of each vent, due to the diversity of hydrothermal settings, the depth range and water mass distribution over oceanic ridge crests, significantly influences biomass production rates in the vicinity of these areas (LeBris *et al*., 2019).

The presence of a mid-ocean ridge with a truncated water column disrupts the general oceanographic circulation, potentially creating regions of high biomass that may arise from topographic influences on water circulation (St Laurent and Thurnherr 2007), upwelling nutrient-rich deep water as well as concentrating biomass over summits, creating mid-ocean regions of high productivity (Priede *et al*, 2013).

Knowledge of the Ridge South of the Azores area is based on the analysis of more than 500 scientific articles. Several of the structures are well known and have been the subject of a great number of geological and biological studies. The total number of hydrothermal vent species reported was estimated from scattered taxonomical literature and online species database. The species total derived, 342, is probably an underestimate.

A large number of species living in the area were discovered or described relatively recently (around 40 per cent of the species in the last 30 years), and a great many of them have their distribution restricted to the hydrothermal vents. The species studied in this area are in the larger majority dependent on the carbon produced at the hydrothermal vents, with the symbiotrophic species living closer to the fluid exits, and then a zonation with decreasing dependence, but always on the sphere of the increased production and chemical balance of the vents (Levin *et al*, 2016). There is no legislation or protection figure for the species, except for the sharks surrounding this area. Of the 342 species, shark species (*Centrophorus squamosus*, *Centroscymnus coelolepis* and *Centrophorus granulosus)* are the only three protected under the OSPAR Convention. Among the benthos, several species are indicators of Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems, namely the cold-water corals *Lophelia pertusa* and *Madrepora oculata* at the Menez Gwen, and several dispersed anthipatharian corals observed on the inactive structures at the outskirts of the vent fields and on the pillow lavas (Colaço pers. obs Tempera *et al*, 2013). At the Ridge crests and associated seamounts, which remain very poorly explored, the global habitat suitability models and distribution maps for the North Atlantic modelled the distribution of seven suborders of Octocorallia (Yesson *et al*. 2012) and five species of framework-forming scleractinian corals (Davies & Guinotte 2011). Both studies revealed the areas as containing important suitable habitats for these taxa.

Location

The Ridge South of the Azores is located in the Atlantic Ocean, south of the Azores. This area has structures at depths ranging from 3460 m (inferred depth – south Oceanographer FZ), to the mid-range at 2320 m (measured depth – Rainbow), to the shallowest at Albert Monaco Ridge. The datum used is World Geodetic System 1984 (WGS84).

Feature description of the area

Cold-water coral reefs, gardens, sponge grounds and massive sponges support and enhance highly diverse benthic communities, comprising faunal biomass that is orders of magnitude above that of the surrounding seafloor (Henry and Roberts, 2007; Roberts *et al.*, 2008; Lindsay *et al.*, 2013). The composition of megafauna also significantly differs between sponge grounds and non-sponge grounds and between different sponge morphologies (Lindsay *et al*., 2013).

Since the discovery of the first hydrothermal vent field in 1977, an increasing number of fields have been found, all with different characteristics. However, there is still very little known about most of the 50,000 km of ocean ridges (Charlou *et al*., 2002; Kelley *et al*., 2002; Hein *et al*., 2013; https://vents-data.interridge.org/).

As tectonic plates separate in the ridge areas, magma migrates in the subsurface and erupts at the seafloor. Due to rock deformation, seawater penetrates to great depth before it is ejected to the seabed, enriched with dissolved material, especially hydrogen sulfide (H_2S), various sulfide minerals, metals, carbon dioxide (CO_2) and methane. Depending on ejection pressure and ambient temperature, crystallization of the sulfide minerals forms chimneys known as “black” or “white smokers” on the basis of the mineral colours precipitated (Ohmoto *et al*., 2006; Gold, 2013).

The species and communities present in this area belong not only to the deep-sea, but also to mid-water upper bathyal systems. The vents are characterized by extreme conditions with unique physical properties (temperature, pressure), chemical toxicity and absence of photosynthesis (Edmond *et al*., 1979; Mottl & Wheat, 1994; Kadko *et al*., 1995; Elderfield & Schultz, 1996; Minic *et al*., 2006). The venting dynamic of hydrothermal fluids back into the ocean is of major importance as it is associated with enhanced cooling of the ocean floor, formation of deep-sea mineral deposits, and unique ecosystems that exist around vent sites in extreme environmental conditions (Lister, 1980; Tufar *et al*., 1986; Haymon *et al*., 1989; Fouquet *et al*., 1995; Cathles *et al*., 1997; Boetius, 2005; Kelley *et al*., 2005; Marques *et al*., 2007).

The active vents are hosted by a range of different rock types, including basalt, peridotite and felsic rocks. The associated hydrothermal fluids exhibit substantial chemical variability, which is largely attributable to compositional differences among the underlying host rocks (Amend *et al*., 2011). Vent circulation accounts for approximately one third of the global geothermal heat flux to the oceans and strongly affects seawater chemical composition (Elderfield & Schultz, 1996). In this area there are many types of hydrothermal sites: high-temperature (250^{o}–365^{o} C) and low pH (<4) sites; metal-rich chimneys (i.e., Bubbylon, Lucky Strike, Menez Gwen and Rainbow); and diffuse and pervasive seepages, with apparently low temperatures (<30^{o} C), and unknown pH (e.g., Menez Hom and Saldanha) (Barriga *et al*., 1998; Charlou *et al*., 2010). The Lucky Strike, Menez Gwen and Bubbylon are magamatic-hosted, while Menez Hom and Saldanha are ultramafic-hosted, and Rainbow presents both types (Charlou *et al*., 2000; Desbruyères *et al*., 2000; Fouquet *et al*, 2010).

In terms of biology, the vent fields also play a primordial role sustaining abundant populations of faunal species in the deep sea through autochthonous chemosynthetic primary production (e.g., Lutz & Kennish, 1993; Bemis *et al*., 2012). This process uses reduced compounds (typically hydrogen sulfide, methane or hydrogen) in vent fluids to fix inorganic carbon (Karl *et al.*, 1980) that can be oxidized by microbes to release energy for the formation of organic carbon from carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide and/or methane (Van Dover *et al.*, 2002). The chemosynthetic organisms may be present in the water column, at the seafloor as microbial mats, within sediments, fractures of crustal rocks or the sub-seabed, or/and in symbiosis with larger multi-cellular organisms (Dubilier *et al.*, 2008).

Initial microbial colonization facilitates the development and maintenance of densely populated ecosystems in which both biomass and faunal abundances are larger than is typical at the deep seafloor (e.g., Lutz & Kennish, 1993; Smith *et al*., 2008).

Hydrothermal communities have been studied worldwide, leading to the description of more than 400 new species (Desbruyères *et al.*, 2006), greatly enhancing our knowledge of marine biodiversity (Van Dover *et al.*, 2002). However, knowledge about these animal communities and the biology and ecology of individual species in these waters remains limited.

This area covers a section of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (MAR) south of the Azorean archipelago. Five major vent fields are described here:

1. Rainbow

The Rainbow vent field was discovered in 1997 (German *et al*., 1996b). It forms a high temperature (365°C) field of black smokers located on the western flank of the Rainbow massif along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (MAR) (German *et al*.,1996a, 1999; Charlou *et al*., 1997; Fouquet *et al*., 1997, 1998). The hydrothermal vents are localized between 2270 - 2320 m depth in international waters where they comprise >30 groups of active small sulphide chimneys over an area of 15 km^2. There are many inactive structures among a large number of rather short-lived active venting sites (German *et al*., 1996b; Charlou *et al*., 1997; Fouquet *et al*., 1997).

Around the site and through the nontransform discontinuity, a relative chronology of normal dip-slip extensional faulting, the conjugate transtensional faulting and Riedel shears are evident. The western border of the vent field is a 25 m high fault scarp where extensive stock work mineralization and replacement of ultramafic rocks by sulfides are observed (Marques *et al*., 2006; 2007).

Local hydrography and flow regimes dictate that the non-buoyant plume, which reaches neutral buoyancy at 2100 m depth, disperses following local topography to flow north-eastward, clockwise, along and around Rainbow ridge and into the adjacent rift valley (German and Parson, 1998; Thurnherr & Richards, 2001; Thurnherr *et al*., 2002).

At many places within the Rainbow vent field, unusual sediment lithification around the active field and near the top of the ridge, together with several places with dead mussels, may be related to diffuse low temperature of methane-rich fluid through the sediment. Similar processes were also proposed at low temperature Saldanha and Menez Hom sites, where large amounts of methane discharge through the sediment cover at the top of the ultramafic ridge (Schroeder *et al*., 2002; Ribeiro da Costa *et al*., 2008).

Together with the Lucky Strike segment and Menez Gwen vent fields, the Rainbow field forms a group of northern bathyal vents fields. The underlying basement and vent fluid compositions differ from those in basalt-hosted systems due in part to serpentinization of the host rocks at Rainbow. Key characteristics of the Rainbow fluids include high chlorinity (750 mM), low pH (2.8), high methane, and extremely high Fe concentrations (24 mM), resulting in a Fe/H_2S molar ratio of 24 (Charlou *et al*., 1997; Douville *et al*., 2002). The high temperature vents occur along the shoulder of a W-facing hanging wall of the tilted ultramafic block and are associated with one of the largest hydrothermal plumes in terms of methane output (Charlou *et al*., 1996a), manganese (Aballea *et al*., 1998), sulfide (Radford-Knoery *et al*., 1998), helium and heat (Jean-Baptiste *et al*., 1998), and particles (German *et al*., 1998).

Since its discovery, Rainbow has been a frequent focus of scientific expeditions and is the only vent field on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge that has been visited by tourist operators. Scientific investigations have included long-term monitoring, manipulative experiments and geological sampling (McCaig *et al*., 2007; Baker *et al*., 2010; Crawford *et al*., 2010).

2. Lucky Strike

The Lucky Strike vent field was discovered in 1993. Since then, this field has been extensively studied, particularly during expeditions DIVA1 and FLORES, 1994; LUSTRE, 1996; MoMARETO and Graviluck, 2006; MoMAR, 2008; Bathyluck, 2009 and MoMARSAT 2010 and 2011. It is also the object of long-term monitoring (e.g., Ballu *et al*., 2009; Colaço *et al*., 2011), including a seafloor observatory (ESONET-EMSO European project) (Ruhl *et al*., 2011).

Lucky Strike is one of the largest hydrothermal areas known to date, with 21 active chimney sites distributed over an area of approximately 150,000 m^2 at depth range of 1620-1730 m. Despite its proximity to the Azores hot spot, the Lucky Strike segment exhibits a morphological and tectonic architecture with many of the characteristics of a slow-spreading ridge. The Lucky Strike segment is characterized by a well-developed 13–20 km wide axial rift valley, whose depth increases from 1550 m at the segment center to 3700 m at the nodal basins near the segment ends.

Beyond the rift walls, the seafloor morphology is dominated by fault-controlled abyssal hills (Detrick *et al*., 1995). The centre of the segment is dominated by the 8 km wide, 15 km long, and 500 m high Lucky Strike volcano, one of the largest central volcanoes along the MAR axis. The crust is 7.5 km thick beneath the volcano and has thinned to less than 5.5 km at 20 km from the segment centre (Crawford *et al*., 2010; Seher *et al*., 2010).

The hydrothermal activity is located on the periphery of the lava lake. Submersible dive programmes documented the presence of high temperature black smoker chimneys, extensive areas of diffuse flow and sulfide deposits distributed around the lava lake margins (Fouquet *et al*., 1994; Langmuir *et al*., 1997; Ondreas *et al*., 2009). The presence of a lava lake at the summit also suggests recent magmatic activity and the potential for an active magma chamber directly beneath the edifice (Singh *et al*., 2006).

The physical/chemical qualities of the vent gases and waters are distinct from other MAR sites due to low sulphur/high methane contents. Vent fluid temperatures range from 330º C in black smokers, to 200-212ºC and even 20ºC in diffuse emissions (Von Damm *et al*., 1998; Charlou *et al*., 2000; Cooper *et al*., 2000). The larger active edifices exhibit small zones of high temperature discharge. Elsewhere in the chimneys, discharge is mostly diffuse, as leakage of transparent fluid, through the mussel-covered outer walls of the chimneys.

The chimneys show clear evidence of oxidation caused by seawater. In the more active chimneys oxidation is restricted to an outer layer of oxides a few millimeters thick, mainly of iron. Once fluid flow ceases, oxidation progresses inwards. Primary sulphides are replaced by secondary sulphides and subsequently by oxides. Chimneys become rapidly friable, fall and break into progressively less recognizable fragments. Nearly half of the area of the Lucky Strike field is covered with deeply oxidized chimney debris, with most of the remaining area composed of exposed “slabs” (Barriga & Santos, 2003).

3. Menez Gwen

Menez Gwen was discovered in 1991, during submersible dives on the ridge segment north of the Lucky Strike segment (Fouquet *et al*., 1994). This segment is characterized by the absence of a central rift and volcano. Circular in shape, it has a diameter of 17 km and height of 700 m, while at its summit there is an axial graben, 6 km long, 2 km wide and 300 m deep. At the graben’s northern end there is a new volcano of 600 m diameter and 120 m height, composed entirely of fresh pillow lavas with no sediment cover.

Menez Gwen is located near the top of this new volcano at the bottom of the graben at 840-870 m depth. Its hydrothermal fluids are characterized by temperatures ranging between 265ºC and 281ºC, and these temperatures mark its characteristic physiochemical diversity and presence of anhydrite and barite. The vent is in a basaltic environment, and methane is produced by outgassing of carbon from the mantle and is related to the carbon-enriched character of basalt (Charlou *et al*., 1997). In addition, the low pH and low Fe and Si concentrations are consistent with the short duration of fluid-rock interaction linked to a shallow circulation system (Douville *et al*., 1999).

This shallow system can be affected by explosive volcanic activity (Fouquet *et al*., 1999) on an area of several square kilometres, as disclosed by the distribution of volcanic ejecta on the bottom (ash, sand and lapilli). According to Fouquet *et al*. (1994), Menez Gwen is, geologically speaking, very young (probably a few decades old); its chimneys are very small, growing directly on fresh pillow lava. Its relatively young age provides an excellent opportunity to monitor the early stages of hydrothermal vent activity and thus yield new knowledge on the development of vents and their associated animal communities (Marcon *et al*., 2013; Sarrazin *et al*., 2014; Konn *et al*., 2015). The vent fluids are the least toxic of the sites along the MAR and make it possible for non-endemic deep-sea species to live here (Desbruyères *et al*., 1997; Tunnicliffe *et al*., 1998; Colaço *et al*., 1998; 2002).

4. Saldanha

The Saldanha hydrothermal field was discovered in 1998 during the Saldanha Cruise (Barriga *et al*., 1998). It is located between the FAMOUS and AMAR second-order segments and consists of a faulted peridotite massif detached from its segment flanks, almost parallel to the ridge segment. It is composed mainly of ultramafic and gabbroic rocks and a strong methane anomaly within the overlying water column (Charlou *et al*. 1997; Dias & Barriga, 2006).

Although no vent chimneys are present, hydrothermal activity is expressed as discharge of clear fluid from several small orifices through sediment over an area of at least 50 m^2, and micro chimneys with silica and sulfides have been observed (Dias, 2001; Dias *et al*., 2002).

The discovery of this diffuse venting confirmed the presence of hydrothermal activity related to serpentinization processes, which had been inferred from the detection of geochemical (intense CH_4) anomalies in the water column (Charlou *et al*., 1997; Bougault *et al*., 1998). During the serpentinization of the ultramafic rock, overlying rocks were pushed upward, generating the observed mélange of talc-rich rocks (steatite) and spilite (Costa, 2001; Costa *et al*., 2002). Diving operations (Fouquet *et al*., 1997, 2000; Barriga *et al*., 1998) revealed intensely altered and locally silicified ultramafic and basaltic rocks consistent with low magma budgets, relatively thin crust and irregular faulting patterns (Gràcia *et al*. 2000) at the top of the massif. Discrete low-temperature diffuse discharge (<6°C) from the sediment was observed near the top of the structure (Biscoito *et al*., 2006).

Studies to date have discovered that the site is hosted in a mélange of folded lithified sediment, relatively fresh to deeply altered basalt, variably deformed ultramafic rocks and some gabbroic rock, in large part covered by sedimentary ooze. The ensemble is interpreted as resulting from active serpentinite protrusion. Sulphide precipitation is taking place within the top of the rock pile, under a blanket of sediment (Dias, 2001; Barriga 2003).

5. Menez Hom

Like the Saldanha, the Menez Hom ultramafic dome is situated at an inside corner position relative to the non-transform offset at the south of the Lucky Strike segment. Diving operations have revealed the general outcrop of ultramafic rocks at the top of the dome. No active vents were seen. However, one small carbonate chimney was sampled and anomalous rapid lithification of the sediment covers was observed at the northern side of the dome, near the limit between the ultramafic rocks and the basalt coverage. This may indicate a preferential discharge of diffuse low-temperature CH_4-rich fluids at the contact between the ultramafic and the basalt cover (Fouquet *et al*., 2010).

There are two attributes in common to the deep-sea hydrothermal systems in the area described: their insularity and their gradient regimes of fluid flow and chemistry suggested *a priori* that measures of community structure and similarity at vents would be especially sensitive to the degree of proximity between sites being compared, to the age of the sites and to within-site heterogeneity (Mullineaux & France, 1995, Marsh *et al*. 2001, Van Dover *et al*. 2001). These different vent characteristics “create” distinct habitats dominated by different chemosynthetic bacterial mats, and endemic and non-endemic species of tubeworms, mussels, gastropods, clams, shrimp and crabs. In turn these habitats support further associated invertebrate and vertebrate species.

The majority of organisms found in this area developed different strategies to adapt to its extreme environments, e.g., biological stabilization of metal (e.g., iron, copper) from hydrothermal vents under dissolved or colloidal organic (Wu *et al*., 2011; Hawkes *et al*., 2013). In the absence of photosynthesis, the food chain is based on primary production of energy and organic molecules by chemolithoautotrophic bacteria. Hydrothermal vent plumes sustain rich microbial communities with potential connections to zooplankton communities and important deep ocean biogeochemical fluxes (Dick *et al*., 2013). These microbial communities extract chemical energy starting from the oxidation of reduced mineral compounds (Minic *et al*., 2006; Boetius & Wenzhöfer, 2013). Studies in community hydrothermal evolution, initial colonization, growth, development and demise, show that colonization at vents is rapid (Lutz *et al*. 1994, Tunnicliffe *et al*. 1997, Shank *et al*. 1998).

The area has an uneven number of studies for its different structures. Nevertheless, there are many studies focused on the communities and species of these structures. To date a total of 342 species have been identified within this area (see "introduction").

Feature condition and future outlook of the area
Since the discovery of this area, most studies have been qualitative and often focus on specific taxonomic groups, such as amphipods (e.g Myers and Cunha, 2004; Bellan-Santini *et al*., 2007), cirripeds (e.g., Young, 1998; 2001), Copepoda (e.g., Ivaneko *and Defaye*., 2004; Komai & Segonzac, 2005; Komai & Chan, 2010), Cumeacea (e.g., LeBris *et al*., 2000; Corbera *et al*., 2008), echinoderms (e.g., Stöhr & Segonzac, 2005), elasmobranchii (e.g., Biscoito *et al*., 2002; Biscoito, 2006; Linz, 2006), mussels (e.g., Colaço *et al*., 2006a; Duperron *et al*., 2006; 2013), polychaeta (e.g., Desbruyères & Hourdez, 2000; Hourdez & Desbruyères, 2003), shrimps (e.g., Shank & Martin, 2003; Nye *et al*., 2012) and tanaidacean (Larsen *et al*., 2006). Most research cruises that have visited the area were focused in the deep-sea hydrothermal vent fields south of the Azores (i.e., Menez Gwen, Lucky strike, Rainbow and Saldanha), that were part of the MoMAR concept ("Monitoring the Mid-Atlantic Ridge"). The OSPAR MPAs (Lucky Strike, Menez Gwen and Rainbow) have a higher number of scientific articles and reports, and consequently are thus far the best studied. The vent fields inside the NAFO/NEAFAC areas were also subject to ICES report of the WGDEC (Working Group on Deep-Water Ecology) (Auster *et al*., 2013). Studies have also focused on the distribution of species (e.g., Cuvelier *et al*, 2011a; Sarrazin *et al*, 2015), temporal evolution (Cuvelier *et al*, 2011b), foodwebs (Colaço *et al*., 2002; 2007, De Busserolles *et al*., 2009, Portail *et al*., 2018), physiology (e.g., Bettencourt *et al*., 2010; Martins *et al*., 2008; Husson *et al*., 2016), reproduction (e.g., Colaço *et al*., 2006a; Dixon *et al*., 2006), ecotoxicological aspects (e.g., Colaço *et al*., 2006b; Martins *et al*., 2009, 2011; Company *et al*., 2008), behaviour (Matabos *et al*., 2015) and microbiology (Crepeau *et al*., 2011 and references therein).

The dissolved constituents of the venting fluids of the hydrothermal vents play an important role in the geochemical mass balance of the oceans (Levin *et al*, 2016 and references therein). The unusual nature of the marine communities that occur around hydrothermal vents makes them particularly important areas in terms of the biodiversity of the deep sea as well as being a focus for deep-sea research. This type of ecosystem is sensitive because of its high percentage of endemic species and the unique nature of many of the species found there (e.g., Vrijenhoek, 2010; Ramirez-Llodra *et al.*, 2011; VanDover *et al.*, 2018).

There is a biological balance in the vents. Well documented examples of biological interactions are predation and competition, based, for instance, on trophic (e.g., access to hydrogen sulfide or other resources) and topographic (optimal positioning on the structure or limitation on available space) grounds (Hessler *et al*., 1985; Fustec *et al*., 1987; Comtet and Desbruyères, 1998; Colaço *et al*., 2002; 2007, Riou *et al.*, 2008, 2010a,b, deBusserolles *et al.*, 2009, Portail *et al.*, 2018, Sarrazin *et al.*, 2015, Cuvelier *et al.*, 2011).

All five (Menez Gwen, Lucky Strike, Menez Hom, Saldanha and Rainbow) hydrothermal vent fields are included in the Azores Marine Park, created in 2007 and expanded in 2016. Lucky Strike, Menez Gwen and Rainbow are included in the OSPAR Network of Marine Protected Areas. Lucky Strike and Menez Gwen have been a part of the Natura 2000 network since 2009. All fields are classified under the reef habitat type of the EU Habitats Directive. Lucky Strike and Menez Gwen (MPAs) are also recognized by WWF as a Gift to the Earth (GttE).

The areas comprising the Azores Marine Park, and all the regional protected areas beyond the territorial sea, are classified under IUCN criteria. Lucky Strike (288 km^2) and Menez Gwen (95 km^2) have zoning plans ranging from "full protection" (Category 1) to "sustainable exploitation" (Category IV and VI), while Rainbow, a smaller vent field, is classified under IUCN Category IV. Lucky Strike has also been selected as a target field for the installation of the long-term seafloor former MoMAR observatory, and now EMSO-Azores (Santos *et al*., 2002; Person *et al*., 2008; Colaço *et al.*, 2012).

The Contracting Parties to OSPAR Convention committed themselves to establish an ecologically coherent network of MPAs in the OSPAR Maritime Area by 2010 (the OSPAR Network of Marine Protected Areas). The regional delivery mechanism is based on Annex V to the OSPAR Convention. The first national MPA designated under the high seas is the Rainbow vent field, located in the High Seas sector of the OSPAR Maritime Area (Santos and Colaço, 2010; Ribeiro, 2010).

Assessment of area no. 11, Ridge South of the Azores, against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA Criteria (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Description** (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		No information	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique ("the only one of its kind"), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.				X

Explanation of ranking
The Ridge South of the Azores has:
1-Deep-sea vents, which represent one of the most physically and chemically unusual biomes on Earth (Takai & Nakamura, 2011).

2-The hydrothermal vents of the North MAR may represent a unique biogeographic region of invertebrate species (Van Dover, 2010). They have relatively high proportions of endemic species (Tunnicliffe & Fowler, 1996; VanDover *et al*, 2018) that cannot live anywhere else, dominated by the blind shrimp *Rimicaris exoculata* and the mussel *Bathymodiolus azoricus* (Desbruyères *et al*., 2001).

3-The uniqueness of each vent, due to the diversity of hydrothermal settings, the depth range and water mass distribution over oceanic ridge crests, significantly influences biodiversity and species composition (VanDover *et al*., 2018). The hydrothermal biota are characterized also by a high level of endemism, with common specific lineages at the family, genus and even species level, as well as the prevalence of symbioses between invertebrates and bacteria (Dubilier *et al*., 2008; Kiel, 2010).

4-In addition to the endemic vent fauna, there are also several topographical elevations associated with the flanks of the MAR, with reported endemic cold-water corals in the region of the Azores (Braga-Henriques *et al*., 2013; de Matos *et al* 2014; Sampaio *et al*., 2019), including a species of black coral (*Heteropathes opreski)*that is known exclusively from the North MAR south of Azores at depths of 1,955–2,738 m at the Oceanographer fracture zone, (de Matos *et al*, 2014, Molodtsova, 2016).

5- The vent communities are unique, and the species living in these areas have specialized adaptations. Such features allow the organisms to exploit vent habitats, endowed with major reorganization of internal tissues and physiologies to house microbial symbionts, biochemical adaptations to cope with sulphide poisoning, behavioral and molecular responses to high temperature, presence of metal-binding proteins and development of specialized sensory organs to locate hot chimneys (Tunnicliffe *et al*., 1998).

Special importance for life-history stages	Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.				X

of species					

Explanation of ranking

1-Most of the organisms colonizing these habitats are invertebrates and have larval stages that are subject to dispersal in an open system, although mechanisms of larval retention are developed to account for the large settlement events observed (Mullineaux & France 1995, Marsh *et al*. 2001, Van Dover *et al*. 2001).

2-The dominant symbiotrophic species span late winter so their planktotrophic larvae can eventually profit from the increased productivity in the marine environment each spring (Colaço *et al*, 2006a; Dixon *et al.* 2006).

3-Connectivity among vent fields is poorly known, with just two or three studies showing that there are genetic exchanges, however without knowledge of the time it takes for the exchanges to take place (Teixeira *et al.*, 2012, Breusing *et al.*, 2016)

4-Blue shark nursery at the Central North Atlantic, roughly delimited by the Azores archipelago in the North, the Atlantis–Great Meteor seamount complex in the South and the Mid-Atlantic Ridge in the South-West (Vandeperre *et al.*, 2014)

5- Several species of seabirds use these areas as foraging grounds during their breeding (e.g., *Calonectris borealis*, *Puffinus lherminieri baroli*, *Pterodroma deserta*, *Pterodroma madeira*, *Bulweria bulwerii*) or non-breeding season (*Calonectris diomedea, Puffinus puffinus, Rissa tridactyla, Catharacta maccormicki*, *Catharacta skua* and *Stercorarius longicaudus*) (BirdLife International 2019).

6-Corals and sponges of topographic highs (e.g., Albert de Monaco Ridge) also serve as important spawning, nursery, breeding and feeding areas for a multitude of fishes and invertebrates (Pham *et al.* 2015, Pereira et al. 2017, Porteiro *et al.*, 2013 Ashford *et al.*, 2019).

Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				X

Explanation of ranking

1- The area contains one threatened and/or declining habitat, contained in the OSPAR List (OSPAR publication 2008/358): Oceanic ridges with hydrothermal vents/fields (OSPAR, 2014).

2-Cold-water coral species of the order Antipatharia (e.g., black corals *Leiopathes* sp, *Bathypathes* sp), Scleractinia (e.g., reef-building corals *Lophelia pertusa*, *Madrepora oculata*) and family Stylasteridae (e.g., *Errina* spp, *Stylaster* spp), are listed under CITES Appendix II (https://www.cites.org/eng/app/appendices.php). Many of these habitats, including the cold-water coral gardens and sponge aggregations, sea-pen and burrowing megafauna communities, as well as oceanic ridges with hydrothermal vents and seamounts are all listed on the OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats (OSPAR 2009; 2010a.,b,c,d).

3- The occurrence of three species under OSPAR legal protection was recorded in the area: *Centrophorus granulosus*, *Centrophorus squamosus* and *Centroscymnus coelolepis*. These three shark species are included in the OSPAR list of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats (BDC/MASH, 2007).

4-Four globally threatened seabird species occur in the area - *Rissa tridactyla* (VU), *Pterodroma deserta* (VU), *Pterodroma madeira* (EN) and the OSPAR listed *Puffinus lherminieri baroli* (BirdLife International 2019).

Vulnerability	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion				X

, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				

Explanation of ranking

1-The Mid-Atlantic Ridge is a slow-spreading ridge, and hydrothermal vents are estimated to be up to thousands of years of age, although possibly not active continually. However, some of the individual vents are only short-lived naturally. In this case, non-consolidated structures that cannot support eukaryote life are formed easily. Therefore, the vent fields in the area described are relatively stationary in position, but dynamic regarding the individual smokers and long-term activity (Hannington *et al*., 1995).

2- Time series studies over 14 years show that these communities are stable over time, and that big changes might disrupt the stability (Copley *et al.*, 2007; Cuvelier *et al.*, 2011). The occurrence of three species under OSPAR legal protection was registered in the area: *Centrophorus granulosus*, *Centrophorus squamosus* and *Centroscymnus coelolepis*. These species have particular features attending to biological factors such as longevity, low fecundity, and slow growth rates characteristic to these shark species (e.g., Clark, 2001; Morato *et al*., 2008).

3-Cold-water corals have life history traits such as slow growth, high longevity, low reproductive potential (Clark *et al* 2016; 2019). Octocorals and black corals, which dominate benthic assemblages in the MAR region, have growth rates of less than 1 cm a year and age spans of hundreds of years (e.g., bamboo coral *Keratoisis* sp. : Watling *et al*., 2011) to thousands of years (black coral *Leiopathes* sp. Roark *et al*., 2009, Carreiro-Silva *et al*., 2013).

5-Although age estimates for sponge species are scarce, they suggest multi-centennial age spans, e.g., 220 and 440 years (Leys and Lauzon, 1998; Fallon *et al*., 2010), whereas some sponge reefs are estimated to be up to 9,000 years old (e.g., Krautter *et al*., 2001).

Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.				X

Explanation of ranking

1- The presence of a mid-ocean ridge with a truncated water column disrupts the general oceanographic circulation, potentially creating regions of high biomass that may arise from topographic influences on water circulation (St Laurent and Thurnherr 2007) upwelling nutrient-rich deep water as well as concentrating biomass over summits creating mid ocean regions of high productivity (Priede *et al.*, 2013).

2-In the vent biotopes, there is local primary production of energy and organic molecules by chemolithoautotrophic bacteria (Synnes, 2007; Le Bris *et al*., 2016).

3-. Hydrothermal vents are involved in the biogeochemical cycling and elemental transformation of carbon, sulfur, and nitrogen (Petersen *et al.*, 2011; Lilley *et al.*, 1995; Sievert and Vetrini, 2012) and contribute to the huge diversity of deep-sea organisms and habitats.

4- This ecosystem enhances trophic and structural complexity relative to the surrounding deep sea and provides the setting for complex trophic interactions (e.g., Colaço *et al.*, 2007; Portail *et al.*, 2017). The chemosynthetic productivity from vents is exchanged with the nearby deep-sea environments, providing labile organic resources to benthic and pelagic ecosystems that otherwise have limited availability of food (Levin *et al*., 2016).

5-Organic matter produced at vent complexes, with metals such as iron or copper released from vents with organic ligands (Bennett *et al*., 2008; Hoffman *et al*., 2018), is spread with the buoyant plume, contributing to the global ocean micronutrient budgets (Tagliabue *et al*., 2010; Resing *et al*., 2015).

6- The hydrothermal fluids are rich in iron (Charlou *et al*,2010 Le Bris *et al*, 2019). Recent assessments of these iron sources indicate their significance for deep-water budgets at oceanic scales and underscore the possibility for fertilizing surface waters through vertical mixing in particular regional settings (Tagliabue *et al*., 2010) and supporting long-range organic carbon transport to abyssal oceanic areas (German *et al*., 2015).

7- Both cold-water coral communities and sponge grounds are important for global biogeochemical cycles and the ocean's benthic pelagic coupling loop, being responsible for nearly 30 per cent of the coupling between organic matter produced at the ocean surface and the seafloor (Cathalot *et al*., 2015). They represent hotspots of ecosystem functioning, processing substantial amounts of organic matter (White *et al*., 2012; Cathalot *et al*., 2015), and release nutrients back into the surrounding water (Van Oevelen *et al*., 2009; Cathalot *et al*., 2015) that become available to associated fauna, thereby potentially increasing overall biodiversity and biological productivity of these habitats.

Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X

Explanation of ranking

1-Fauna associated with vents are characterized by a high degree of specialization and relatively high productivity and species abundances compared with the surrounding deep sea. However, slow-spreading ridges, such as the MAR, that are present in the area, present the highest species diversity found at vent communities (Dubilier *et al*., 2008; Bernardino *et al*., 2012).

2-The adjacent bathyal and abyssal areas are characterized by low biomass and high diversity. During recent years, new exploration led to new discoveries. Around 60 different habitats are identified by the European Nature Information System (EUNIS) (Tempera *et al*., 2013).

3-Cold-water coral reefs, gardens and sponge grounds support and enhance a highly diverse community, comprising faunal biomass that is orders of magnitude above that of the surrounding seafloor (Henry and Roberts, 2007; Roberts *et al*., 2008; Lindsay *et al*, 2013). The composition of megafauna significantly differed between sponge grounds and non-sponge grounds and between different sponge morphologies (Lindsay *et al*., 2013).

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.				X

Overall the naturalness of the described area is classified as high, as it is located in a relatively remote area.

References

Aballea, M., Radford-Knoery, J., Appriou, P., Bougault, H., Charlou, J., Donval, J., Etoubleau, J., German, C. & Miranda, M. (1998). Manganese distribution and behavior in the water column near the Azores Triple Junction along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and in the Azores domain. *Deep-Sea Research*, 45(8): 1319–1338.

Amend, J., McCollom, T., Hentscher, M. & Bach, W. (2011). Catabolic and anabolic energy for chemolithoautotrophs in deep-sea hydrothermal systems hosted in different rock types. *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*, 75(19): 5736–5748.

Ashford, O. S., Kenny, A. J., Barrio Froján, C. R., Downie, A., Horton, T., & Rogers, A. D. (2019). On the influence of Vulnerable Marine Ecosystem habitats on peracarid crustacean assemblages in the Northwest Atlantic Fisheries Organisation Regulatory Area. *Frontiers in Marine Science, 6,* 401. DOI - 10.3389/fmars.2019.00401

Auster, P.J.; Bergstad, O.A.; Brock, R.; Colaco, A.; Duran Munoz, P.; Ellwood, H.; Golding, N.; Grehan, A.; Hall-Spencer, J.; Howell, K.; Ingels, J.; Kenchington, E.; McIntyre, F.; Monot, L.; Mortensen, P.B.; Neat, F.; Nieto-Conde, F.; Pinto, C.; Ross, S.; Vinnichenko, V.; Watling, L. (2013) Report of the ICES\ NAFO Joint Working Group on Deep-water Ecology (WGDEC), 11–15 March 2013, Floedevigen, Norway.

Baker, E. & German, R. (2004). On the global distribution of hydrothermal vent fields, in Mid-Ocean Ridges: Hydrothermal Interactions between the Lithosphere and Oceans. *Geophysical Monograph*, 148: 245–266.

Baker, M., Ramirez-Llodra, E., Tyler, P., German, C., Boetius, A., Cordes, E., Dubilier, N., Fisher, C., Levin, L., Metaxas, A., Rowden, A., Santos, R., Shank, T., Van Dover, C., Young, C. & Warén, A. (2010). *Biogeography, Ecology, and Vulnerability of Chemosynthetic Ecosystems in the Deep Sea*, in: McIntyre, A. (Ed.), Life in the World's Oceans. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford, UK, pp. 161–182.

Ballu, V., Ammann, J., Pot, O., De Viron, O., Sasagawa, G., Reverdin, G., Bouin, M., Cannat, M., Deplus, C., Deroussi, S., Maia, M. & Diament, M. (2009). A seafloor experiment to monitor vertical deformation at the Lucky Strike volcano, Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Journal of Geodesy*, 83(2): 147-159.

Barriga, F. & Santos, R. (2003). The MOMAR area: A prime candidate for development of a seafloor observatory. *SSC 2003 - 3rd International Workshop on Scientific Use of Submarine Cables and Related Technologies*, 259–262.

Barriga, F. (2003). Hydrothermal activity at the Mid-Atlantic Ridge in the Azores Region: Lessons concerning old massive sulphide deposits. *Vulcanica*, I:1–16.

Barriga, F., Fouquet, Y., Almeida, A., Biscoito, M., Charlou, J., Costa, R., Dias, A., Marques, A., Olu, K., Queiroz, M. & Porteiro, F. (1998). Discovery of the Saldanha hydrothermal field on the FAMOUS segment of the MAR (36º 30′ N). *Eos, Transactions, American Geophysical Union*, 79: 67.

Bellan-Santini, D. (2007). New amphipods of hydrothermal vent environments on the Mid- Atlantic Ridge, Azores Triple junction zone. *Journal of Natural History*, 41(9-12): 567-596.

Bemis, K., Lowell, R. & Farough, A. (2012). Diffuse Flow On and Around Hydrothermal Vents at Mid-Ocean Ridges. *Oceanography*, 25(1): 182–191.

Bennett, S., Achterberg, E., Connely, D., Statham, P., Fones, G. & German, C. (2008). The distribution and stabilization of dissolved Fe in deep-sea hydrothermal plumes. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 270: 157–167.

Bernardino, A., Levin, L., Thurber, A. & Smith, C. (2012). Comparative composition, diversity and trophic ecology of sediment macrofauna at vents, seeps and organic falls. *PLoS ONE*, 7(4): e33515.

Bettencourt, R.; Costa, V.; Laranjo, M.; Rosa, D.; Pires, L.; Colaço, A.; Lopes, H,; Serrão Santos, R. (2010) Out of the Deep-sea into a land-based aquarium environment: Investigating physiological adaptations in the hydrothermal vent mussel Bathymodiolus azoricus. ICES Journal of Marine Science 68 (2):357-364.

BirdLife International (2019). The Seabird Tracking Database. www.seabirdtracking.org

Biscoito, M. (2006). *Chordata, Chondrichthyes & Osteichthyes*. Handbook of deep-sea hydrothermal vent fauna. Denisia, pp 489-490.

Biscoito, M., Almeida, A. & Segonzac, M. (2006). Preliminary biological characterization of the Saldanha hydrothermal field at the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (36 degrees 34'N, 32 degrees 26'W, 2200 m). *Cahiers de biologie marine*, 47(4): 421-427.

Biscoito, M., Segonzac, M., Almeida, A., Desbruyeres, D., Geistdoerfer, P., Turnipseed, M. & Van Dover, C. (2002). Fishes from the hydrothermal vents and cold seeps - An update. *Cahiers de Biologie Marine*, 43(3-4): 359-362.

Boetius, A. & Wenzhöfer, F. (2013). Seafloor oxygen consumption fuelled by methane from cold seeps. *Nature Geoscience*, 6: 725–734.

Boetius, A. (2005), Lost city life. *Science*, 307(5714): 1420–1422.

Bougault, H., Aballéa, M., Radford-Kronery, Charlou, J., Jean Baptiste, J., APPRIOU, P., Needham, H., German, C. & Miranda, M. (1998) - FAMOUS and AMAR segments on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge:

ubiquitous hydrothermal Mn, CH4, δ3He signal along the valley walls and rift offsets. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 161: 1-17.

Braga-Henriques, A., Porteiro, F. M., Ribeiro, P. A., Matos, V. D., Sampaio, Í., Ocaña, O., & Santos, R. S. (2013). Diversity, distribution and spatial structure of the cold-water coral fauna of the Azores (NE Atlantic). *Biogeosciences*, *10*(6), 4009-4036.

Breusing C., Biastoch, A., Drews, A., Metaxas, A., Jollivet, D., Vrijenhoek, R.C., Bayer, T., Melzner, F., Sayavedra, L., Petersen, J.M., Dubilier, N., Schilhabel, M.B., Rosenstiel, P, Reusch, T.B.H, 2016. Biophysical and population genetic models predict presence of "phantom" stepping stones connecting Mid-Atlantic Ridge vent ecosystems. Current Biology 26, 2257-2267. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.cub.2016.06.062

Canales, J. P., R. A. Dunn, R. Arai, and R. A. Sohn (2017), Seismic imaging of magma sills beneath an ultramafic-hosted hydrothermal system, *Geology*, *45*, 447-450, doi:10.1130/G38795.1.

Cathalot, C. C., Van Oevelen, D., Cox, T. J. S., Kutti, T., Lavaleye, M. S. S., Duineveld, G. C. A., *et al*. (2015). Cold-water coral reefs and adjacent sponge grounds: hotspots of benthic respiration and organic carbon cycling in the deep sea. Frontiers in Marine Science 2, 1–12. doi:10.3389/fmars.2015.00037.

Cathles, L., Erendi, A. & Barrie, T. (1997). How long can a hydrothermal system be sustained by a single intrusive event?. *Economic Geology and the Bulletin of the Society of Economic Geologists*, 92(7–8): 766–771.

Charlou, J., Bougault, H., Fouquet, Y., Donval, J., Douville, E., Radford-Knoery, J., Aballea, M., Needham, H., Jean-Baptiste, P., Rona, P., Langmuir, C. & German, C. (1996a) Methane degassing, hydrothermal activity and serpentinization between the Fifteen Twenty fracture zone area and the Azores Triple Junction area (Mid-Atlantic Ridge). *Joint Meeting Abstracts*, 1(2): 771–772.

Charlou, J., Donval J., Douville, E., Knoery, J., Fouquet, Y., Bougault, H., Jean-Baptiste, P., Stievenard, M. & Michel, S. (1997). High methane flux between 15° N and the Azores Triple Junction, Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Eos, Transactions, American Geophysical Union*, 78(46): F831.

Charlou, J., Donval, J., Douville, E., Jean-Baptiste, P., Radford-Knoery, J., Fouquet, Y., Dapoigny, A. & Stievenard, M. (2000). Compared geochemical signatures and the evolution of Menez Gwen (37° 50′ N) and Lucky Strike (37° 17′ N) hydrothermal fluids, south of the Azores Triple Junction on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Chemical geology*, 171(1): 49-75.

Charlou, J., Donval, J., Fouquet, Y., Jean-Baptiste, P. & Holm, N. (2002). Geochemistry of high H_2 and CH_4 vent fluids issuing from ultramafic rocks at the Rainbow hydrothermal field (36°14'N,MAR). *Chemical Geology*, 191(4): 345–359.

Charlou, J., Donval, J., Jean-Baptiste P. & Dapoigny A. (1996). Gases and helium isotopes in high temperature solutions sampled before and after ODP Leg 158 drilling at TAG hydrothermal field (26° N, MAR). *Geophysical Research Letters*, 23(23): 3491–3494.

Charlou, J., Donval, J., Konn, C., Ondreas, H., Fouquet, Y., Jean-Baptiste, P. & Fourre, E. (2010), High production and fluxes of H2 and CH4 and evidence of abiotic hydrocarbon synthesis by serpentinization in ultramafic-hosted hydrothermal systems on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge, in Diversity of Hydrothermal Systems on Slow Spreading Ocean Ridges. *Geophysical Monograph*, 188: 321–367.

Clark MR, Bowden DA Rowden AA and Stewart R (2019) Little Evidence of Benthic Community Resilience to Bottom Trawling on Seamounts After 15 Years. Front. Mar. Sci. 6:63. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2019.00063

Clark, M. & Bowden, D. (2015). Seamount biodiversity: high variability both within and between seamounts in the Ross Sea region of Antarctica. *Hydrobiologia*, 761(1): 161-180.

Clark, M. R., Althaus, F., Schlacher, T. A., Williams, A., Bowden, D. A., and Rowden, A. A. (2016). The impacts of deep-sea fisheries on benthic communities: a review. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 73, i51–i69. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0022588

Colaço A.; Bustamante, P.; Fouquet Y.; Sarradin, P.-M.; Serrão Santos, R. (2006) Bioaccumulation of Cu, Zn, and Hg in the Azores Triple Junction hydrothermal vent fields food chains. Chemosphere, 65: 2260-2267

Colaço, A., Blandin, J., Cannat, M., Carval, T., Chavagnac, V., Connelly, D., Fabian, M., Ghiron, S., Goslin, J., Miranda, J. M., Reverdin, G., Sarrazin, J., Waldmann, C. & Sarradin, M. (2011). MoMAR-D: a technological challenge to monitor the dynamics of the Lucky Strike vent ecosystem. *ICES Journal of Marine Science*, 68: 416–424.

Colaço, A., Desbruyères, D. & Dehairs, F. (2002). Nutritional relations of deep-sea hydrothermal fields at the Mid-Atlantic Ridge: a stable isotope approach. Deep-Sea Research, 49: 395–412.

Colaço, A., Desbruyeres, D., Comtet, T. & Alayse, A. (1998). Ecology of the Menez Gwen hydrothermal vent field (Mid-Atlantic Ridge/Azores Triple Junction). *Cahiers de Biologie Marines*, 39: 237-240.

Colaço, A., Martins, I., Laranjo, M., Pires, L., Leal, C., Prieto, C., Costa, V., Lopes, H., Rosa, D., Dando, P. & Serrão-Santos, R. (2006). Annual spawning of the hydrothermal vent mussel, *Bathymodiolus azoricus*, under controlled aquarium, conditions at atmospheric pressure. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, 333(2): 166-171.

Colaço, A.; Dehairs, F.; Desbruyères, D.; Le Bris, N.; Sarradin, P.-M. (2002) The relative availability of sulphide and methane to mussel symbionts rules the d13C signature of hydrothermal mussels. Cahiers de Biologie Marine, 43(3-4): 259-262

Colaço, A.; Desbruyères, D.; Guezennec, J. (2007). The use of polar lipid fatty acids to determinetrophic links in chemosynthetic communities. Marine Ecology, 28(1): 15-24.

Company R.; Serafim, A.; Cosson, R.; Fiala-Médioni, A.; Camus, L.; Colaço, A.; Serrão Santos, R.; Bebianno, M.J. (2008) Metal antioxidant biochemical responses to long-term copper exposure in Bathymodiolus azoricus from Menez-Gwen hydrothermal vent. Science of Total Environment, 389(2-3): 407-417.

Comtet, T. & Desbruyères, D. (1998). Population structure and recruitment in mytilid bivalves from the Lucky Strike and Menez Gwen hydrothermal vent fields (37°17´N and 37°50´N on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge). *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 163: 165–177.

Cooper, M., Elderfield, H. & Schultz, A. (2000). Diffuse hydrothermal fluids from Lucky Strike hydrothermal vent field: Evidence for a shallow conductively heated system. J*ournal of Geophysical Research: Solid Earth*, 105(B8): 19369-19375.

Copley, J., Jorgensen, P. & Sohn, R. (2007). Assessment of decadal-scale ecological change at a deep Mid-Atlantic hydrothermal vent and reproductive time-series in the shrimp *Rimicaris exoculata*. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom*, 87: 859-867.

Corbera, J., Segonzac, M. & Cunha, M. (2008). A new deep-sea genus of Nannastacidae (Crustacea, Cumacea) from the Lucky Strike hydrothermal vent field (Azores Triple Junction, Mid-Atlantic Ridge). *Marine Biology Research*, 4(3): 180–192.

Costa, R. (2001). *Estudo mineralógico e geoquímico da alteração hidrotermal das rochas vulcânicas e ultramáficas serpentinizadas do monte Saldanha (RMA, Segmento Famous/Amar)*. Dissertação de Mestrado thesis, 143 pp., Universidade de Lisboa.

Costa, R., Barriga, F. & Fouquet, Y. (2002). *Evidence for a late steatization process at the Saldanha massif (MAR 36°33'50"N–36°26'W).* Thermal Regime of Ocean Ridges and Dynamics of Hydrothermal Circulation Exploratory Workshop, Italy.

Crawford, W., Singh, S., Seher, T., Combier, V., Dusunur, D. & Cannat M. (2010). Crustal structure, magma chamber and faulting beneath the Lucky Strike hydrothermal vent field, in Diversity of Hydrothermal Systems on Slow Spreading Ocean Ridges. *Geophysical Monograph*, 188: 113–132.

Crepeau, V., Bonavita, M.A.C., Lesongeur, F., Randrianalivelo, H., Sarradin, P.M., Sarrazin, J., Godfroy, A., 2011. Diversity and function in microbial mats from the Lucky Strike hydrothermal vent field. FEMS Microbiology Ecology 76 (3), 524-540.

Cuvelier, D.; Sarradin, P.M.; Sarrazin, J., Colaço, A.; Copley, J.; Desbruyères, D.; Glover, A.; Serrão Santos, R.; Tyler, P. (2011) Hydrothermal faunal assemblages and habitat characterisation at the Atlantic Eiffel Tower edifice (Lucky Strike vent field). Marine Ecology, 32: 243-255.

Cuvelier, D.; Sarrazin, J.; Colaço, A.; Copley, J.; Glover, A.; Tyler, P.; Serrão Santos, R.; Desbruyères, D. (2011) Community dynamics over 14 years at the Eiffel Tower hydrothermal edifice on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Limnology and Oceanography, 56: 1624-1640.

Davies, A. J., & Guinotte, J. M. (2011). Global habitat suitability for framework-forming cold-water corals. *PloS one*, *6*(4), e18483.

De Busserolles, F., Sarrazin, J., Gauthier, O., Gélinas, Y., Fabri, M.C., Sarradin, P.M., Desbruyères, D., 2009. Are spatial variations in the diets of hydrothermal fauna linked to local environmental conditions? Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 56 (19-20), 1649-1664

de Matos V, Braga-Henriques A, Santos RS, Ribeiro PA (2014) New species of *Heteropathes* (Anthozoa: Antipatharia) expands genus distribution to the NE Atlantic. Zootaxa 3827:293–300

Desbruyères, D. & Houdez, S. (2000). A new species of scale-worm (Polychaeta: Polynoidae), Lepidonotopodium jouinae sp. nov., from the Azores triple junctionon the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Cahiers de Biologie Marine*, 41(4): 399–405.

Desbruyères, D. & Segonzac, M. (Eds.). (1997). *Handbook of deep-sea hydrothermal vent fauna*. Editions Quae.

Desbruyères, D., Biscoito, M., Caprais, J. C., Colaco, A., Comtet, T., Crassous, P., Fouquet, Y., Khripounoff, A., Le Bris, N., Olu, K., Riso, R., Sarradin, P. M., Segonzac, M. & Vangriesheim, A. (2001). Variations in deep-sea hydrothermal vent communities on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge near the Azores plateau. *Deep-Sea Research*, I48: 1325–1346.

Desbruyères, D., Hashimoto, J. & Fabri, M. C. (2006). Composition and biogeography of hydrothermal vent communities in Western Pacific back-arc basins. *Back-arc spreading systems: geological, biological, chemical, and physical interactions*, 215-234.

Detrick, R., Needham, H. & Renard, V. (1995). Gravity anomalies and crustal thickness variation along Mid-Atlantic Ridge between 33°N and 40°N. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 100: 3767-3787.

Dias, A. & Barriga, F. (2006). Mineralogy and geochemistry of hydrothermal sediments from the serpentinite-hosted Saldanha hydrothermal field (36°34'N; 33°26'W) at MAR. *Marine Geology*, 255: 157-175.

Dias, A. (2001). *Sedimentos hidrotermais do Monte Saldanha (crista Médio-Atlântica, Famous/Amar)*, Dissertação de Mestrado thesis, 115 pp., Universidade de Lisboa.

Dias, A., Barriga, F. & Fouquet, Y. (2002). *Hydrothermal sediments from Saldanha Mount (MAR-Famous-Amar)*. Thermal Regime of Ocean Ridges and Dynamics of Hydrothermal Circulation Exploratory Workshop, Italy.

Dick, G., Anantharaman, K., Baker, B., Li, M., Reed, D. & Sheik, C. (2013). The microbiology of deep-sea hydrothermal vent plumes: ecological and biogeographic linkages to seafloor and water column habitats. *Frontiers in microbiology*, 4: 124.

Dixon, D.; Lowe, D.; Miller, P.; Villemin, G.; Colaço, A.; Serrão-Santos, R.; Dixon, L. (2006) Evidence for seasonal reproduction in the Atlantic vent mussel Bathymodiolus azoricus, and an apparent link to the timing of photosynthetic primary production. Journal of Marine Biological Association of United Kingdom, 86(6): 1363-1371

Douville, E., Bienvenu, P., Chartou, J., Donvan, J., Fouquet, Y., Appriou, P. & Gamo, T. (1999). Yttrium and rare earth elements in fluids from various deep-sea hydrothermal systems. *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*, 63(5): 627-643.

Douville, E., Charlou, J., Oelkers, E., Bienvenu, P., Jove Colon, C., Donval, J., Fouquet, Y., Prieur, D. & Appriou, P. (2002). The rainbow vent fluids (36°40'N, MAR): the influence of ultramafic rocks and phase separation on trace metal content in Mid-Atlantic Ridge hydrothermal fluids. *Chemical Geology*, 184: 37–48.

Dubilier, N., Bergin, C. & Lott, C. (2008). Symbiotic diversity in marine animals: the art of harnessing chemosynthesis. *Nature Reviews Microbiology*, 6: 725–740.

Duperron, S., Bergin, C., Zielinski, F., Blazejak, A., Pernthaler, A., McKiness, Z. P., DeChaine, E., Cavanaugh, C. & Dubilier, N. (2006). A dual symbiosis shared by two mussel species, *Bathymodiolus azoricus* and *Bathymodiolus puteoserpentis* (Bivalvia: Mytilidae), from hydrothermal vents along the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Environmental Microbiology*, 8(8): 1441–1447.

Duperron, S., Gaudron, S., Rodrigues, C., Cunha, M., Decker, C. & Olu, K. (2013). An overview of chemosynthetic symbioses in bivalves from the North Atlantic and Mediterranean Sea. *Biogeosciences*, 10(5): 3241–3267.

Edmond, J., Measures, C., McDuff, R., Chan, L., Collier, R., Grant, B., Gordon, L. & Corliss, J. (1979). Ridge crest hydrothermal activity and the balances of the major and minor elements in the ocean: the Galapagos data. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 46(1): 1-18.

Elderfield, H. & Schultz, A., 1996. Mid-Ocean ridges hydrothermal fluxes and the chemical composition of the ocean. *Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences*, 24: 191-224.

Fallon, S.J., James, K., Norman, R., Kelly, M. & Ellwood, M.J. 2010. A simple radiocarbon dating method for determining the age and growth rate of deep-sea sponges. Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research, Section B: Beam Interactions with Materials and Atoms. 268(7–8): 1241–1243.

Fouquet, Y., Barriga, F., Charlou, J.., Elderfield, H., German, C., Ondreas, H., Parson, L., Radford-Knoery, J., Relvas, J., Ribeiro, A., Schultz, A., Apprioual, R., Cambon, P., Costa, I., Donval, J., Douville, E., Landure, J., Normand, A., Pelle, H., Ponsevera, E., Riches, S., Santana, H. & Stephen M. (1998) FLORES diving cruise with the Nautile near the Azores—First dives on the Rainbow field: hydrothermal seawater/mantle interaction. *InterRidge News*, 7: 24–28.

Fouquet, Y., Cambon, P., Etoubleau, J., Charlou, J., Ondréas, H., Barriga, F., Cherkashov, G., Semkova, T., Poroshina, I., Bohn, M., Donval, J., Henry, K., Murphy, P. & Rouxel, O. (2010). Geodiversity of Hydrothermal Processes Along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and Ultramafic-Hosted Mineralization: a New Type Of Oceanic Cu-Zn-Co-Au Volcanogenic Massive Sulfide Deposit. *Diversity of hydrothermal systems on slow spreading ocean ridges*, 188: 321-367.

Fouquet, Y., Charlou, J., Costa, I., Donval, J., Radford Knoery, J., Pelle, H., Ondreas, H., Lourenço, N., Segonzac, M. & Tivey, M. (1994). A detailed study of the Lucky Strike Hydrothermal site and discovery of a new hydrothermal site: Menez Gwen; preliminary results of the Diva 1 Cruise (5-29 May, 1994). *InterRidge News*, 3(2): 14-17.

Fouquet, Y., Charlou, J., Ondreas, H., Knoery, J., Donval, J., Douville, E., Apprioual, R., Cambon, P., Pelle, H., Landure, J., Normand, A., Ponsevera, E., German, C., Parson, L., Barriga, F., Costa, I., Relvas, J. & Ribeiro, A. (1997) Discovery and first submersible investigations on the Rainbow hydrothermal field on the MAR (36^{o}14’N). *Eos, Transactions, American Geophysical Union*, 78: 832.

Fouquet, Y., Charlou, J., Onréas, H., Radford-Knoery, J., Cambon, P., Barriga, F., Costa, I., Relvas, J., Ribeiro, A., German, C. & Parson, L. (2000). Hydrothermal processes in oceanic ultramafic environments: the Rainbow hydrothermal sulfide deposit. *31st International Geological Congress*, Rio de Janeiro.

Fouquet, Y., Eissen, J., Ondréas, H., Barriga, F., Batiza, R. & Danyushevsky, L. (1999). Extensive volcanoclastic deposits at the Mid-Atlantic Ridge axis: results of deep-water basaltic explosive volcanic activity? *Terra Nova*, 10: 280–286

Fouquet, Y., Ondreas, H., Charlou, J., Donval, J., Radford-Knoery, J., Lourenco, N. & Tivey, M. (1995). Atlantic Lava Lakes and Hot Vents. *Nature*. 377: 201.

Fustec, A., Desbruyères, D. & Juniper, S. (1987). Deep-sea hydrothermal vent communities at 13^o N on the East Pacific Rise: microdistribution and temporal variations. *Biological Oceanography*, 4: 121–164.

German, C. & Parson, L. (1998). Distributions of hydrothermal activity along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge interplay of magmatic and tectonic controls. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 160: 327-341.

German, C., Klinkhamme, G. & Rudnicki, M. (1996a). The Rainbow hydrothermal plume, 36° 15’N. *MAR Geophysical Research Letters*, 23: 2979-2982.

German, C., Legendre, L., Sander, S., Niquil, N., Luther, G., Bharati, L., Han, X. & Le Bris, N. (2015). Hydrothermal Fe cycling and deep ocean organic carbon scavenging: Model-based evidence for significant POC supply to seafloor sediments. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 419: 143–153.

German, C., Parson, L., Bougault, H., Coller, D., Critchley, M., Dapoigny, A., Day, C., Eardley, D., Fearn, A., Flewellen, C., Kirk, R., Klinkhammer, G., Landure, J., Ludford, E., Miranda, M., Needham, H., Patching, J., Pearce, R., Pelle, H., Radford-Knoery, J., Rouse, I., Scott, J., Stoffregen, P., Taylor, P., Teare, D. & Wynar, J. (1996b) Hydrothermal exploration near the Azores Triple-Junction: Tectonic control of venting at slow-spreading ridges? *Earth and Planetary Science Letters* 138(1-4): 93-104.

German, C., Richards, K., Rudnicki, M., Lam, M., Charlou, J. & Party, F. (1998). Topographic control of a dispersing hydrothermal plume. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 156(3-4): 267-273.

German, C., Rudnicki, M. & Klinkhammer, G. (1999). A segment-scale survey of the Broken Spur hydrothermal plume. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*, 46(4): 701-714.

Gold, T. (2013). *The deep hot biosphere: the myth of fossil fuels*. Springer Science & Business Media.

Gràcia, E., Charlou, J., Radford-Knoery, J. & Parson, L. (2000). Non-transform offs*et al*ong the Mid-Atlantic ridge south of the Azores (38° N–34° N): Ultramafic exposures and hosting of hydrothermal vents. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 177: 89–103.

Hannington, M., Jonasson, I., Herzig, P. & Petersen, S. (1995) *Physical and chemical processes of seafloor mineralization at mid-ocean ridges*. In: Humphris SE, Zierenberg RA, Mullineaux LS, Thomson RE, eds. Seafloor hydrothermal systems: physical, chemical, biological, and geological Interactions. Geophysical Monograph 91: 115–157.

Hawkes, J., Connelly, D., Gledhill, M. & Achterberg, E. (2013). The stabilization and transportation of dissolved iron from high temperature hydrothermal vent systems. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 375: 280–290.

Haymon, R., Koski R. & Abrams M. (1989). Hydrothermal discharge zones beneath massive sulfide deposits mapped in the Oman ophiolite. *Geology*, 17(6): 531–535.

Hein, J., Mizell, K., Koschinsky, A. & Conrad, T. (2013). Deep-ocean mineral deposits as a source of critical metals for high- and green-technology applications: Comparison with land-based resources. *Ore Geology Reviews*, 51: 1-14.

Henry, L. A., & Roberts, J. M. (2007). Biodiversity and ecological composition of macrobenthos on cold-water coral mounds and adjacent off-mound habitat in the bathyal Porcupine Seabight, NE Atlantic. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*, *54*(4), 654-672.

Henry, L. A., & Roberts, J. M. (2007). Biodiversity and ecological composition of macrobenthos on cold-water coral mounds and adjacent off-mound habitat in the bathyal Porcupine Seabight, NE Atlantic. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*, *54*(4), 654-672.

Hessler, R., Smithey, W. & Keller, C. (1985) *Spatial and temporal variation of giant clams, tubeworms and mussels at deep-sea hydrothermal vents*. In: Jones ML (ed) The hydrothermal vents of the eastern Pacific: an overview. Bulletin of the Biological Society of Washington, 6: 411–428.

Hoffman, C. L., Nicholas, S. L., Ohnemus, D. C., Fitzsimmons, J. N., Sherrell, R. M., German, C. R., ... & Toner, B. M. (2018). Near-field iron and carbon chemistry of non-buoyant hydrothermal plume particles, Southern East Pacific Rise 15° S. *Marine Chemistry*, *201*, 183-197. doi: 10.1016/j.marchem.2018.01.011

Hourdez, S. & Desbruyeres, D. (2003). A new species of scale-worm (Polychaeta: Polynoidae), Levensteiniella iris sp nov., from the Rainbow and Lucky Strike vent fields (Mid-Atlantic Ridge). *Cahiers de Biologie Marine*, 44(1): 13-21.

Husson, B., Sarradin, P.-M., Zeppilli, D., Sarrazin, J., 2016. Picturing thermal niches and biomass of hydrothermal vent species. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography.

Ivanenko, V. & Defaye, D. (2004). A new and primitive genus and species of deep-sea Tegastidae (Crustacea, Copepoda, Harpacticoida) from the Mid-Atlantic Ridge, 37° N (Azores Triple Junction, Lucky Strike). *Cahiers de Biologie Marine*, 45(3): 255–268.

Jean-Baptiste, P., Bougault, H., Vangriesheim, A., Charlou, J., Radford-Knoery, J., Fouquet, Y., Needham, D. & German, C. (1998). Mantle ^{3}He in hydrothermal vents and plume of the Lucky Strike site (MAR 37°17'N) and associated geothermal heat flux. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 157: 69– 77.

Kadko, D., Baross, J. & Alt, J.C. (1995). The Magnitude and Global Implications of Hydrothermal Flux. *American Geophysical Union*, 91: 446-466.

Karl, D., Wirsen, C. & Jannasch, H. (1980), Deep-sea primary production at the Galapagos hydrothermal vents. *Science* 207: 1345–1347.

Kelley, D., Baross, J. & Delaney, J. (2002). Volcanoes, Fluids, and Life at Mid-Ocean Ridge Spreading Centers. *Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences*, 30(1): 385–491.

Kelley, D., Karson, J., Früh-Green, G., Yoerger, D., Shank, T., Butterfield, D., Hayes, J., Schrenk, M., Olson, E., Proskurowski, G., Jakuba, M., Bradley, A., Larson, B., Ludwig, K., Glickson, D., Buckman, K., Bradley, A., Brazelton, W., Roe, K., Elend, M., Delacour, A., Bernasconi, S., Lilley, M., Baross, J., Summons, R. & Sylva, S. (2005). A serpentinite-hosted ecosystem: the Lost City hydrothermal field. *Science*, 307(5714): 1428-1434.

Komai, T. & Chan, T. (2010). A new genus and two new species of alvinocaridid shrimps (Crustacea: Decapoda: Caridea) from a hydrothermal vent field off northeastern Taiwan. *Zootaxa*, 2372: 15–32.

Komai, T. & Segonzac, M. (2005). A revision of the genus *Alvinocaris Williams* and *Chace* (Crustacea: Decapoda: Caridea: Alvinocarididae), with descriptions of a new genus and a new species of Alvinocaris. *Journal of Natural History*, 39(778384750): 1111–1175.

Konn, C., Charlou, J., Holm, N. & Mousis, O. (2015). The production of methane, hydrogen, and organic compounds in ultramafic-hosted hydrothermal vents of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Astrobiology*, 15(5): 381-399.

Krautter, M., Conway, K. W., Barrie, J. V., & Neuweiler, M. (2001). Discovery of a "living dinosaur": globally unique modern hexactinellid sponge reefs off British Columbia, Canada. *Facies*, *44*(1), 265-282.

Langmuir, C., Humphris, S., Fornari, D., Van Dover, C., Von Damm, K., Tivey, M., Colodner, D., Charlou, J., Desonie, D., Wilson, C., Fouquet, Y., Klinkhammer, G. & Bougault, H. (1997). Hydrothermal vents near a mantle hot spot: the Lucky Strike vent field at 37° N on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 148(1-2): 69-91.

Larsen, K., Błaźewicz-Paszkowycz, M. & Cunha, M. (2006). Tanaidacean (Crustacea: Peracarida) fauna from chemically reduced habitats - The Lucky Strike hydrothermal vent system, Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Zootaxa*, 36(1187): 1–36.

Le Bris, N., Arnaud-Haond, S., Beaulieu, S., Cordes, E., Hilario, A., Rogers, A. & Watanabe, H. (2016). *Hydrothermal Vents and Cold Seeps*. UN Eds. First Global Integrated Marine Assessment, 18.

Le Bris, N., Sarradin, P., Birot, D. & Alayse-Danet, A. (2000). A new chemical analyzer for in situ measurement of nitrate and total sulfide over hydrothermal vent biological communities. *Marine Chemistry*, 72(1): 1–15.

Le Bris, N., Yücel, M., Das, A., Sievert, S. M., LokaBharathi, P., & Girguis, P. R. (2019). Hydrothermal Energy Transfer and Organic Carbon Production at the Deep Seafloor. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, *5*. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2018.00531

Levin LA, Baco AR, Bowden DA, Colaco A, Cordes EE, Cunha MR, Demopoulos AWJ, Gobin J, Grupe BM, Le J, Metaxas A, Netburn AN, Rouse GW, Thurber AR, Tunnicliffe V, Van Dover CL, Vanreusel A and Watling L (2016) Hydrothermal Vents and Methane Seeps: Rethinking the Sphere of Influence. Front. Mar. Sci. 3:72.

Leys, S. P., & Lauzon, N. R. (1998). Hexactinellid sponge ecology: growth rates and seasonality in deep water sponges. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, *230*(1), 111-129.

Lilley, M., Feely, R. & Trefry, J. (1995). *Chemical and biochemical transformations in hydrothermal systems*. In: Humpris, S.E., *et al*., (Eds.), Seafloor Hydrothermal Systems: Physical, Chemical, Biological and Geological Interactions. American Geophysical Union.

Lindsay I. Beazley, Ellen L. Kenchington, Francisco Javier Murillo, María del Mar Sacau, Deep-sea sponge grounds enhance diversity and abundance of epibenthic megafauna in the Northwest Atlantic, ICES Journal of Marine Science, Volume 70, Issue 7, November 2013, Pages 1471–1490, https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst124

Linz, B. (2006). Chordata, Chondrichthyes & Osteichthyes. *Atlantic*, 18: 489–490.

Lister, C. (1980), Heat-flow and hydrothermal circulation. *Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences*, 8, 95–117.

Lutz, R. A., & Kennish, M. J. (1993). Ecology of deep-sea hydrothermal vent communities: A review. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 31(3): 211-242.

Lutz, R. A., Shank, T. M., Fornari, D. J., Haymon, R. M., Lilley, M. D., Vondamm, K. L., & Desbruyeres, D. (1994). Rapid growth at deep-sea vents. *Nature*, 371(6499): 663-664.

Marcon, Y., Sahling, H., Borowski, C., dos Santos Ferreira, C., Thal, J. & Bohrmann, G. (2013). Megafaunal distribution and assessment of total methane and sulfide consumption by mussel beds at Menez Gwen hydrothermal vent, based on geo-referenced photomosaics. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*, 75: 93-109.

Marques, A., Barriga, F. & Scott S. (2007). Sulfide mineralization in an ultramafic-rock hosted seafloor hydrothermal system: From serpentinization to the formation of Cu-Zn-(Co)-rich massive sulfides. *Marine Geology*, 245: 20–39.

Marques, A., Barriga, F., Chavagnac, V. & Fouquet, Y. (2006). Mineralogy, geochemistry, and Nd isotope composition of the Rainbow hydrothermal field, Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Mineralium Deposita*, 41(1): 52–67.

Marsh A., Mullineaux L., Young C. & Manahan D. (2001) Larval dispersal potential of the tubeworm Riftia pachyptila at deep-sea hydrothermal vents. *Nature*, 411: 77–80.

Martins, I.; Colaço, A.; Dando, P.R.; Martins, I.; Desbruyères, D.; Sarradin, P.M.; Marques, J.C.; Serrão Santos, R. (2008) Size-dependent variations on the nutritional pathway of Bathymodiolus azoricus evidenced by a C-flux model. Ecological Modelling, 217(1-2): 59-71.

Martins, I.; Colaço, A.; Serrão Santos, R.; Lesongeur, F.; Godfroy, A.; Sarradin, P.-M.; Cosson, R.P. (2009) Relationship between the occurrence of filamentous bacteria on Bathymodiolus azoricus shell and the physiological and toxicological status of the vent mussel. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 376: 1-6.

Martins, I.; Cosson, R.P.; Riou, V.; Sarradin, P-M.; Sarrazin, J.; Santos, R.S.; Colaço, A. (2011) Relationship between the chemical characteristics of Bathymodiolus azoricus microhabitat and its metal load at Eiffel Tower (MAR, Lucky Strike). Deep-Sea Research I, 58(3): 306-315.

Matabos, M., Cuvelier, D., Brouard, J., Shillito, B., Ravaux, J., Zbinden, M., Barthelemy, D., Sarradin, P.M., Sarrazin, J., 2015. Behavioural study of two hydrothermal crustacean decapods: Mirocaris fortunata and Segonzacia mesatlantica, from the Lucky Strike vent field (Mid-Atlantic Ridge). Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 121, 146- 158.

McCaig, A., Cliff, R., Escartin, J., Fallick, A. & MacLeod, C. (2007). Oceanic detachment faults focus very large volumes of black smoker fluids. *Geology*, 35(10): 935-938.

McClain, C. & Hardy, S. (2010). The dynamics of biogeographic ranges in the deep sea. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B: Biological Sciences*, 277(1700): 3533-3546.

Minic, Z., Serre, V. & Hervé, G. (2006). Adaptation des organismes aux conditions extremes des sources hydrothermales marines profondes. *Comptes Rendus - Biologies*, 329(7): 527–540.

Molodtsova, T. N. (2016). New records of Heteropathes Opresko, 2011 (Anthozoa: Antipatharia) from the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Marine Biodiversity,* 47: 179–186

Morato, T., Machete, M., Kitchingman, A., Tempera, F., Lai, S., Menezes, G. & Santos, R. (2008). Abundance and distribution of seamounts in the Azores. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 357: 17-21.

Mottl, M. & Wheat, C. (1994). Hydrothermal circulation through mid-ocean ridge flanks. *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*, 58: 2225-2237.

Mullineaux, L. & France, S. (1995). Dispersal Mechanisms of Deep-Sea Hydrothermal Vent Fauna. *Seafloor Hydrothermal Systems: Physical, Chemical, Biological, and Geological Interactions*, 408-424.

Myers, A. & Cunha, M. (2004). New and little known corophiidean amphipods from the "Lucky Strike" hydrothermal vent, Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the UK*, 84(5): 1019–1025.

Nye, V., Copley, J. & Plouviez, S. (2012). A new species of *Rimicaris* (Crustacea: Decapoda: Caridea: Alvinocarididae) from hydrothermal vent fields on the Mid-Cayman Spreading Centre, Caribbean. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom*, 1(1): 1–16.

Ohmoto, H., Watanabe, Y., Yamaguchi, K. E., Naraoka, H., Haruna, M., Kakegawa, T., Hayashi K. & Kato, Y. (2006). Chemical and biological evolution of early Earth: constraints from banded iron formations. *Geological Society of America Memoirs*, 198: 291-331.

Ondreas, H., Cannat, M., Fouquet, Y. & Normand, A. (2012). Geological context and vents morphology of the ultramafic-hosted Ashadze hydrothermal areas (Mid-Atlantic Ridge 13ºN). Geochemistry Geophysics Geosystems, 13: Q0AG14.

OSPAR (2009) Background document on Lophelia pertusa reefs Biodiversity Series, Publication No 423/2009 Available at https://www.ospar.org/work-areas/bdc/species-habitats/list-of-threatened-declining-species-habitats.

OSPAR (2010d) Background Document for Deep-sea sponge aggregations. Biodiversity Series Available at: https://www.ospar.org/work-areas/bdc/species-habitats/list-of-threatened-declining-species-habitats

OSPAR (2014). *OSPAR 14/21/1 Annex 16*. OSPAR Recommendation 2014/11 on furthering the protection and conservation of hydrothermal vents/fields occurring on oceanic ridges in Region V of the OSPAR maritime area. 6pp. OSPAR Commission.

OSPAR 2010a), Background Document for Seamounts. Biodiversity Series, Publication No. 492/2010.

OSPAR 2010b), Background Document for Oceanic ridges with hydrothermal vents/fields. Biodiversity Series, Publication No. 490/2010 Available at https://www.ospar.org/work-areas/bdc/species-habitats/list-of-threatened-declining-species-habitats.

OSPAR 2010c). Background document for coral gardens. Biodiversity Series, Publication Number: 486/2010 Available at: https://www.ospar.org/work-areas/bdc/species-habitats/list-of-threatened-declining-species-habitats.

Pereira J.N., Carmo V., Catarino D., Jakobsen J., Alvarez H., Aguilar R., Hart J., Giacomello E., Menezes G., Stefanni S., Colaço A., Morato T., Santos R.S., Tempera F., Porteiro F., 2017. Cold-water corals and large hydrozoans provide essential fish habitat for Lappanella fasciata and Benthocometes robustus Deep-Sea Research Part II, 145: 33-48.

Person, R., Beranzoli, L., Berndt, C., Danobitia, J. J., Diepenbroecke, M., Favali, P., Gillooly, M., Lykousis, V., Miranda, J., Mienert, J., Priede, I., Serrão Santos, R., Thomsen, L., Van Weering, T. & Waldman, C. (2008). *ESONET: An European sea observatory initiative*. In OCEANS 2008-MTS/IEEE Kobe Techno-Ocean (pp. 1-6). IEEE.

Petersen, J. M., Zielinski, F. U., Pape, T., Seifert, R., Moraru, C., Amann, R., ... & Pelletier, E. (2011). Hydrogen is an energy source for hydrothermal vent symbioses. *Nature*, *476*(7359), 176. doi: 10.1038/nature10325

Pham, C. K., Vandeperre, F., Menezes, G., Porteiro, F., Isidro, E., & Morato, T. (2015). The importance of deep-sea vulnerable marine ecosystems for demersal fish in the Azores. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*, *96*, 80-88.

Portail M.; Brandily C.; Cathalot C.; Colaço A.; Gélinas Y, Husson B.; Sarradin P-M; Sarrazin J., 2018. Food-web complexity across hydrothermal vents on the Azores triple junction. Deep-sea research I; 131: 101-120

Porteiro, F. M., Gomes-Pereira, J. N., Pham, C. K., Tempera, F., & Santos, R. S. (2013). Distribution and habitat association of benthic fish on the Condor seamount (NE Atlantic, Azores) from in situ observations. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*, *98*, 114-128.

Priede I.G., O.A. Bergstad, P.I. Miller, M. Vecchione, A. Gebruk, *et al*. 2013. Does presence of a mid-ocean ridge enhance biomass and biodiversity? PLoS ONE 8(5): e61550. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0061550

Priede, I. G., Bergstad, O. A., Miller, P. I., Vecchione, M., Gebruk, A., Falkenhaug, T., ... & Lorance, P. (2013). Does presence of a mid-ocean ridge enhance biomass and biodiversity?. *PloS one*, *8*(5), e61550. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0061550.

Radford-Knoery, J., Charlou, J., Donval, J., Aballea, M., Fouquet, Y. & Ondreas, H. (1998). Distribution of sulfide, methane and manganese near the seafloor at the Lucky Strike (37°17'N) and Menez Gwen (37°50'N) hydrothermal vent sites on the mid- Atlantic Ridge. *Deep-Sea Research*, 45(3): 367– 386.

Ramirez-Llodra, E., Tyler, P., Baker, M., Bergstad, O., Clark, M., Escobar, E., Levin, L., Menot, L., Rowden, A., Smith, C. & Van Dover, C. (2011). Man and the last great wilderness: human impact on the deep sea. *PLoS One*, 6(8): e22588.

Resing, J. A., Sedwick, P. N., German, C. R., Jenkins, W. J., Moffett, J. W., Sohst, B. M., & Tagliabue, A. (2015). Basin-scale transport of hydrothermal dissolved metals across the South Pacific Ocean. *Nature*, *523*(7559), 200. doi: 10.1038/nature14577

Ribeiro da Costa, I., Barriga, F. & Taylor R. (2008). Late seafloor carbonate precipitation in serpentinites from the Rainbow and Saldanha sites (Mid-Atlantic Ridge). *European Journal of Mineralogy*, 20(2): 173–181.

Ribeiro, M. (2010). The “Rainbow”: The First National Marine Protected Area Proposed Under the High Seas. *International Journal of Marine and Coastal Law*, 25: 183–207.

Riou, V.; Bouillon, S.; Serrão Santos, R.; Dehairs, F.; Colaço, A. (2010b) Tracing carbon assimilation in endosymbiotic deep-sea hydrothermal vent Mytilid fatty acids by 13Cfingerprinting. Biogeosciences, 7: 3453–3475.

Riou, V.; Colaço, A.; Bouillon, S.; Khripounoff, A.; Dando, P.; Mangion P.; Chevalier, E.; Korntheuer, M.; Serrão Santos, R.; Dehairs, F. (2010a) The mixotrophic side of the deep sea hydrothermal, dual endosymbiotic, mytilid Bathymodiolus azoricus: assimilation of dissolved and particulate organic matter. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 405: 187-201.

Riou, V.; Halary, S.; Duperron, S.; Bouillon, S.; Elskens, M.; Bettencourt, R.; Santos, R.; Dehairs, F.; Colaço, A. (2008) Influence of CH4 and H2S availability on symbiont distribution, carbon assimilation and transfer in the dual symbiotic vent mussel Bathymodiolus azoricus. Journal of Geophysical Research – Biogeosciences, 5: 1681-1691.

Roark, E. B., Guilderson, T. P., Dunbar, R. B., Fallon, S. J., & Mucciarone, D. A. (2009). Extreme longevity in proteinaceous deep-sea corals. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, *106*(13), 5204-5208.

Roberts, J. M., Henry, L. A., Long, D., & Hartley, J. P. (2008). Cold-water coral reef frameworks, megafaunal communities and evidence for coral carbonate mounds on the Hatton Bank, north east Atlantic. *Facies*, *54*(3), 297-316.

Roberts, J. M., Henry, L. A., Long, D., & Hartley, J. P. (2008). Cold-water coral reef frameworks, megafaunal communities and evidence for coral carbonate mounds on the Hatton Bank, north east Atlantic. *Facies*, *54*(3), 297-316.

Ruhl, H. A., André, M., Beranzoli, L., Çağatay, M. N., Colaço, A., Cannat, M., Dañobeitia, J., Favali, P., Géli, L., Gillooly, M., Greinert, J., hall, P., Huber, R., Karstensen, J., Lampitt, R., Larkin, K., Lykousis, V., Mienert, J., Miranda, J., Person, R., Priede, I., Thomsen, L. & Waldmann, C. (2011). Societal need for improved understanding of climate change, anthropogenic impacts, and geo-hazard warning drive development of ocean observatories in European Seas. *Progress in Oceanography*, 91(1): 1-33.

Sampaio, Í., Freiwald, A., Porteiro, F. M., Menezes, G., & Carreiro-Silva, M. (2019). Census of Octocorallia (Cnidaria: Anthozoa) of the Azores (NE Atlantic): a nomenclature update. *Zootaxa*, 4550 (4), 451–498. http://dx.doi.org/10.11646/zootaxa.4550.4.1.

Santos, R. & Colaço, A. (2010). *Background Document for Oceanic ridges with hydrothermal vents/fields, Biodiversity Series*, OSPAR Commission, 17pp.

Santos, R., Escartin, J., Colaço, A. & Adamczewska, A. (2002). *Towards planning of seafloor observatory programs for the MAR region (Proceedings of the II MoMAR Workshop)*. Arquipélago–Life and Marine Sciences, University of the Azores, Ponta Delgada, (ISBN: 972-8612-11-7) Supplement 3: xii + 64pp.

Sarrazin, J., Cuvelier, D., Peton, L., Legendre, P. & Sarradin, P. (2014). High-resolution dynamics of a deep-sea hydrothermal mussel assemblage monitored by the EMSO-Açores MoMAR observatory. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*, 90: 62-75.

Sarrazin, J., Legendre, P., De Busserolles, F., Fabri, M.-C., Guilini, K., Ivanenko, V.N., Morineaux, M., Vanreusel, A., Sarradin, P.-M., 2015. Biodiversity patterns, environmental drivers and indicator species on a High-temperature Hydrothermal edifice, mid-Atlantic ridge. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 121, 177-192.

Schroeder, T., John, B. & Frost, B. (2002). Geologic implications of seawater circulation through peridotite exposed at slow-spreading mid-ocean ridges. *Geology*, 30: 367–370.

Seher, T., Crawford, W., Singh, S., Cannat, M., Combier V. & Dusunur, D. (2010). Crustal velocity structure of the Lucky Strike segment of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge at 37°N from seismic refraction measurements. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 115: B03103.

Shank T., Fornari D., Von Damm K., Lilley M., Haymon R. & Lutz R. (1998). Temporal and spatial patterns of biological community development at nascent deep-sea hydrothermal vents (9° N, East Pacific Rise). *Deep-Sea Research Part II*, 45: 465–516

Shank, T. & Martin, J. (2003). A new caridean shrimp of the family Alvinocarididae from thermal vents at Menez Gwen on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Proceedings Biological Society of Washington*, 116(1): 158-167.

Sievert, S. M., & Vetriani, C. (2012). Chemoautotrophy at deep-sea vents: past, present, and future. *Oceanography*, *25*(1), 218-233. Retrieved from http://www.jstor.org/stable/24861161

Silva, M.A., Prieto, R., Jonsen, I., Baumgartner, M.F., Santos, R.S. 2013. North Atlantic Blue and Fin Whales Suspend Their Spring Migration to Forage in Middle Latitudes: Building up Energy Reserves for the Journey? PLoS ONE 8(10): e76507. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0076507

Singh, S., Crawford, W., Carton, H., Seher, T., Combier, V., Cannat, M., Canales, J., Dusunur, D., Escartín, J. & Miranda, J. (2006). Discovery of a magma chamber and faults beneath a Mid-Atlantic Ridge hydrothermal field. *Nature*, 442: 1029–1032.

Smith, J., Campbell, B., Hanson, T., Zhang, C. & Cary, S. (2008). *Nautilia profundicola* sp. nov., a thermophilic, sulfur-reducing epsilonproteobacterium from deep-sea hydrothermal vents. *International journal of systematic and evolutionary microbiology*, 58(7): 1598-1602.

St Laurent, L. C., & Thurnherr, A. M. (2007). Intense mixing of lower thermocline water on the crest of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Nature*, *448*(7154), 680–683.

Stöhr, S. & Segonzac, M. (2005). Deep-sea ophiuroids (Echinodermata) from reducing and non-reducing environments in the North Atlantic Ocean. J*ournal of the Marine Biological Association of the UK*, 85(2): 383–402.

Synnes, M. (2007). Bioprospecting of organisms from the deep sea: scientific and environmental aspects. *Clean Technologies and Environmental Policy*, 9(1): 53-59.

Tagliabue, A., Bopp, L., Dutay, J., Bowie, A., Chever, F., Jean-Baptiste, P., Bucciarelli, E., Lannuzel, D., Remenyi, T., Sarthou, G., Aumont, O., Gehlen, M. & Jeandel, C. (2010). Hydrothermal contribution to the oceanic dissolved iron inventory. *Nature Geoscience*, 3: 252–256.

Takai, K. & Nakamura, K. (2010). *Compositional, Physiological and Metabolic Variability in Microbial Communities Associated with Geochemically Diverse, Deep-Sea Hydrothermal Vent Fluids*, in: Barton, L., Mandl, M., Loy, A. (Eds.), Geomicrobiology: Molecular and Environmental Perspective. Springer Netherlands, Dordrecht, pp. 251–283.

Teixeira S, Serrão EA, Arnaud-Haond S (2012) Panmixia in a Fragmented and Unstable Environment: The Hydrothermal Shrimp *Rimicaris exoculata* Disperses Extensively along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. PLoS ONE 7(6): e38521. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0038521

Tempera, F., Atchoi, E., Amorim, J. Gomes-Pereira & J. Gonçalves (2013). Atlantic Area Marine Habitats. Adding new Macaronesian habitat types from the Azores to the EUNIS Habitat Classification. Technical Report No. 4/2013 - MeshAtlantic, IMAR/DOP-UAç, Horta, 126pp.

Thurnherr A. & Richards K. (2001) Hydrography and high temperature heat flux of the Rainbow hydrothermal site (36 degrees 14' N, Mid-Atlantic Ridge). *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 106: 9411–9426.

Thurnherr, A., Richards, K., German, C., Lane-Serff, G. & Speer, K. (2002). Flow and mixing in the rift valley of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 132: 1763– 1778.

Tufar, W., Tufar, E. & Lange J. (1986). Ore paragenesis of recent hydrothermal deposits at the Cocos-Nazca plate boundary (Galapagos Rift) at 85‡51′ and 85‡55′W: Complex massive sulfide mineralizations, non-sulfidic mineralizations and mineralized basalts. *Geologische Rundschau*, 75(3): 829–861.

Tunnicliffe, V. & Fowler, C. (1996). Influence of sea-floor spreading on the global hydrothermal vent fauna. *Nature*, 379(6565): 531.

Tunnicliffe, V., Embley, R., Holden, J., Butterfield, D., Massoth, G. & Juniper, S. (1997). Biological colonization of new hydrothermal vents following an eruption on Juan de Fuca Ridge. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*, 44(9): 1627-1644.

Tunnicliffe, V., McArthur, A. & McHugh, D. (1998). A Biogeographical Perspective of the Deep- Sea hydrothermal vent fauna. *Advances in Marine Biology*, 34: 353-442.

Van Dover, C., German, C., Speer, K., Parson, L. & Vrijenhoek, R. (2002). Evolution and biogeography of deep-sea vent and seep invertebrates. *Science*, 295(5558): 1253–1257.

Van Dover, C., Jenkins, C. & Turnipseed, M. (2001) Corralling of larvae in the deep sea. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom*, 81: 823–826.

Van Dover, C.L. Arnaud-Haond, S. Gianni, M. Helmreich S., Huber J.A., Jaeckel A.L., Metaxas A., Pendleton L.H., Petersen S., Ramirez-Llodra E., Steinberg P.E., Tunnicliffe V., Yamamoto H.,2018. Scientific rationale and international obligations for protection of active hydrothermal vent ecosystems from deep-sea mining,Marine Policy, 90: 20-28

Van Oevelen, D. V., Duineveld, G., Lavaleye, M., Mienis, F., Soetaert, K., & Heip, C. H. (2009). The cold-water coral community as hotspot of carbon cycling on continental margins: A food-web analysis from Rockall Bank (northeast Atlantic). Limnology and Oceanography, 54(6), 1829-1844.

Vandeperre F, Aires-da-Silva A, Fontes J, Santos M, Serrao Santos R, *et al*. (2014) Movements of Blue Sharks (Prionace glauca) across Their Life History. PLoS ONE 9(8): e103538. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0103538

Von Damm, K., Bray, A., Buttermore, L. & Oosting, S. (1998). The geochemical controls on vent fluids from the Lucky Strike vent field, Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 160: 521–536.

Vrijenhoek, R. (2010). Genetic diversity and connectivity of deep-sea hydrothermal vent metapopulations. *Molecular ecology*, 19(20): 4391-4411.

Watling, L., Haedrich, R.L., Devine, J., Drazen, J., Dunn, M.R., Gianni, M., Baker, K., Cailliet, G., Figueiredo, I., Kyne, P.M., Menezes, G., Neat, F., Orlov, A., Duran, P., Perez, J.A., Ardron, J.A., Bezaury, J., Revenga, C. & Nouvian, C. (2011). *Can ecosystem-based deep-sea fishing be sustained? Report of a workshop held 31 August-3 September 2010. Walpole*, ME: University of Maine, Darling Marine Center. Darling Marine Center Special Publication 11-1. 84p.

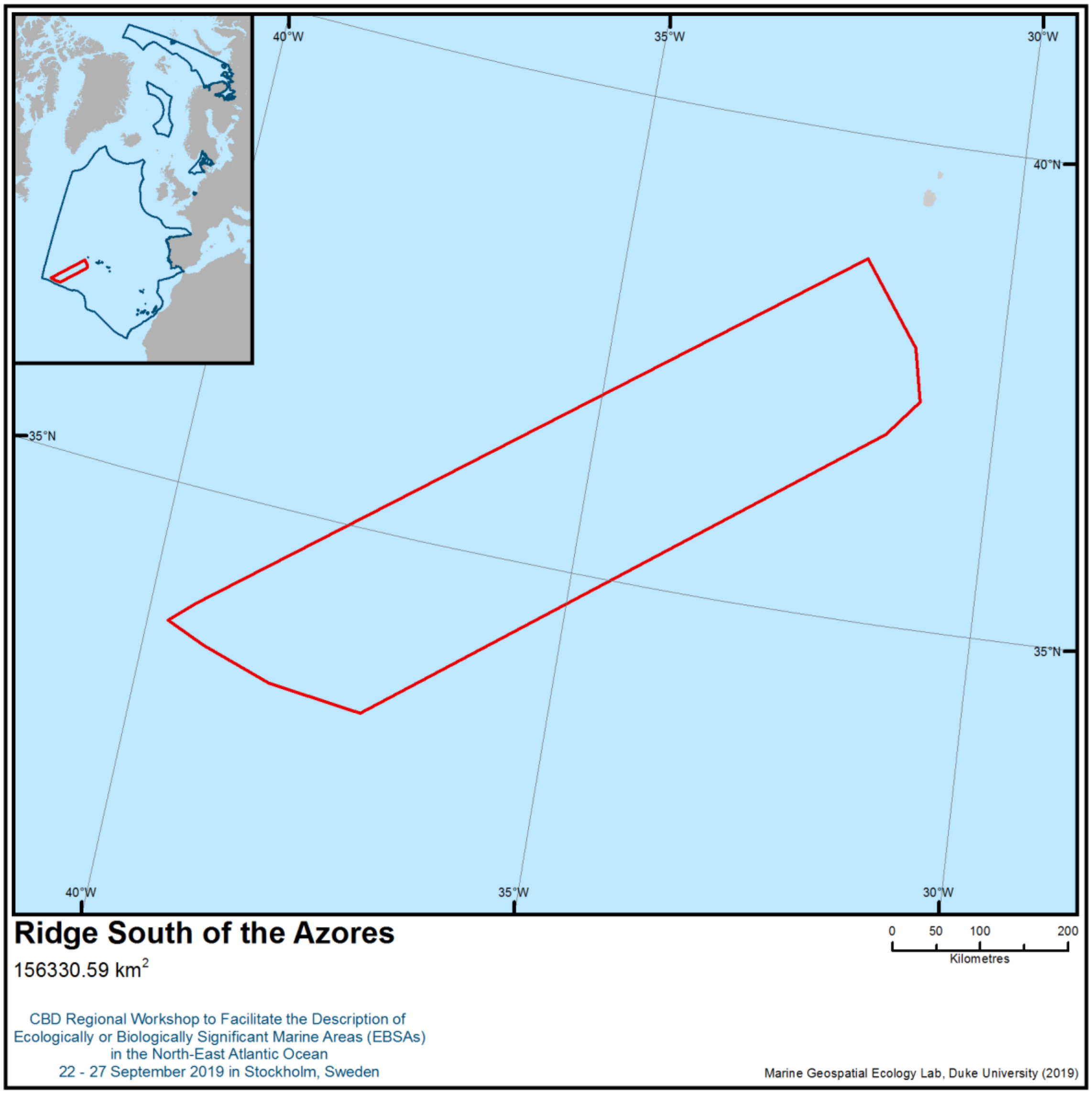
White, M., Wolff, G. A., Lundälv, T., Guihen, D., Kiriakoulakis, K., Lavaleye, M. S. S., *et al*. (2012). Cold-water coral ecosystem (Tisler Reef, Norwegian shelf) may be a hotspot for carbon cycling. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 465, 11–23.

Wu, J., Wells, M. & Rember, R. (2011). Dissolved iron anomaly in the deep tropical–subtropical Pacific: Evidence for long-range transport of hydrothermal iron. *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta* 75: 460–468.

Yesson, C., Taylor, M. L., Tittensor, D. P., Davies, A. J., Guinotte, J., Baco, A., ... & Rogers, A. D. (2012). Global habitat suitability of cold-water octocorals. *Journal of Biogeography*, *39*(7), 1278-1292.

Young, P. (1998). Cirripeds (Crustacea) from the Mid-Atlantic Ridge collected by the submersible Nautile. *Cahiers de Biologie Marine*, 39(2): 109–119.
Young, P. (2001). Deep-sea Cirripedia Thoracica (Crustacea) from the northeastern Atlantic collected by French expeditions. *Zoosystema*, 23(4):5–756.

Maps and Figures



Location of area no. 11: Ridge South of the Azores

Area no. 12: Graciosa

Abstract

Graciosa is a key area for the only breeding population of the vulnerable and endemic Monteiro's storm-petrel (*Hydrobates monteiroi)* and is also important for the breeding population of the Audubon's shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli),* which is listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species. Many other seabirds occur in these waters, such as band-rumped storm-petrel (*Hydrobates castro)*, Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris borealis),* common tern (*Sterna hirundo)* and roseate tern (*Sterna dougallii)*. All these species have low recovery rates and are highly sensitive to environmental degradation or depletion by human activity.

Introduction

The area includes the water column and surface, which are used by seabirds for foraging and resting. The depth of these waters ranges between 0 and 1207 metres (https://www.gebco.net/). The most relevant feature supporting the description of the area is the assemblage of seabird species that breeds in the nearby islands that use the area to forage, rest or commute (Monteiro & Furness 1998, Monteiro *et al*. 1999, Bolton *et al*. 2008, Magalhães *et al*. 2008). Of particular importance is the endemic population of Monteiro's storm-petrel (*Hydrobates monteiroi*, classified as vulnerable in the Red List; BirdLife International 2018), as well as the breeding population of the Audubon's shearwater (*Puffinus lherminieri baroli)* – listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species (OSPAR 2009a).

Location

This area encompasses the surrounding waters of Graciosa Island and two smaller islands: Baixo and Praia islets. It has an area of 277 km^2 and is the northernmost island of the Azores, Portugal (39.05N/-27.99W).

Feature description of the area

Graciosa is a globally important site for the vulnerable and endemic Monteiro's storm-petrel (*Hydrobates monteiroi)* (Monteiro & Furness 1998, Bolton *et al*. 2008), with 330 to 380 breeding pairs (Oliveira 2016; BirdLife International 2019a). It also contains globally important multi-species assemblages (Monteiro *et al*. 1999), including a breeding population of the Audubon's shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli),* listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species (OSPAR 2009a); a population of >25,000 individuals of Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris borealis)* (BirdLife *et al*. 2019b)*;* and the largest colony on the Azores of roseate terns (*Sterna dougallii),* also listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species (OSPAR 2009b). The site has been classified as an Important Bird and Biodiversity Area by BirdLife International (BirdLife International 2019b).

This area completely surrounds Graciosa Island, as there are populations of common tern and roseate tern that feed in waters around the island almost exclusively (BirdLife International 2019b). Around the main island there are smaller islands, two of which are classified as Special Protection Areas: Baixo and Praia islets, the only known breeding site in the world of the "hot-season" Monteiro's storm-petrel (*Hydrobates monteiroi)* (Monteiro & Furness 1998). Seven species of seabird breed on Baixo islet, , in what is one of the most important multi-specific colonies in the archipelago, while on Praia islet the largest breeding colonies of common tern and band-rumped storm-petrel are to be found, as well as an important roseate tern colony (BirdLife *et al*. 2019b).

The Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris borealis)* is the most abundant species using the area, with a population estimated at over 25,000 individuals (BirdLife *et al*. 2019b). Individual tagging work indicates that Cory's shearwaters use the area to forage and to rest before returning to the colony (Magalhães *et al*. 2008). The little shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli)* population breeding on Baixo and Praia islands also occurs in the area (Monteiro & Furness 1998). The waters are also used by the band-rumped storm-petrel (*Hydrobates castro)* breeding in Praia and Baixo islets, corresponding to around two-thirds of the breeding population of the species in the Azores (Monteiro & Furness 1998; Bolton *et al*. 2004). A population of 320 pairs of yellow-legged gull (*Larus cachinnans)* nesting in Baixo islet also uses these waters (Neves *et al.* 2006), along with roseate tern (*Sterna dougallii);* the largest colony of this species breeds in nearby Praia islet, with a recorded maximum of 467 breeding pairs in 2006 (BirdLife *et al*. 2019b), as do common tern (*Sterna hirundo)* (a yearly monitoring survey carried out in 2007 estimated a total population in the area of the proposed IBA of 304 couples; Neves 2007). Great shearwater (*Ardenna gravis)* and Bulwer's petrel (*Bulweria bulwerii)* are also regularly seen in this area (BirdLife *et al*. 2019b).

The area is also known to be used by 12 species of cetaceans: sperm whale (*Physeter microcephalus)*, Cuvier’s beaked whale (*Ziphius cavirostris)*, northern bottlenose whale (*Hyperodon ampulatus)*, beaked whale species (*Mesoplodon spp*.), bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncates)*, Atlantic spotted dolphin (*Stenella frontalis)*, striped dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba)*, Risso’s dolphin (*Grampus griseus)*, common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis)*, false killer whale (*Psuedorca crassidens)*, pilot whale (*Globicephala spp*.) and sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis)* (Silva *et al*. 2014)

Feature condition and future outlook of the area
The seabird community using the area has been the subject of several scientific studies (e.g., Monteiro *et al*. 1999; Bolton *et al*. 2008; Magalhães *et al*. 2008; Silva *et al*. 2016), some of them ongoing and mainly led by University of the Azores. The conditions are supposedly stable, although the recreational diving in this area is apparently increasing (Meirinho *et al*. 2003; BirdLife International 2019b); fishing in the area is not very extensive and mostly uses traditional approaches (Meirinho *et al*. 2003).

Assessment of area no. 12, Graciosa, against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA Criteria (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Description** (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		No information	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique (“the only one of its kind”), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.				X
Explanation for ranking The area holds the only breeding population in the region (and in the world) of the Monteiro’s storm-petrel (*Hydrobates monteiroi)* (Bolton *et al*. 2008). Around 350 breeding pairs of this species breed in the nearby islands and use the area for foraging and resting (Oliveira 2016).					
Special importance for life-history stages of species	Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.				X
Explanation for ranking Graciosa is a regionally and globally important area for the breeding population of the endemic Monteiro’s storm-petrel (*Hydrobates monteiroi)* (Monteiro & Furness 1998). It is also used by globally important multi-species assemblages, including the breeding populations of Audubon’s shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli)*, roseate tern (*Sterna dougallii)* (both listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining Species; OSPAR 2009a,b), Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris borealis)*, band-rumped storm-petrel (*Hydrobates castro)*, yellow-legged gull (*Larus cachinnans)*, roseate tern (*Sterna dougallii)*, common tern (*Sterna hirundo)* and Bulwer's petrel (*Bulweria bulwerii)* (BirdLife International 2019). The area is also used by the non-breeding population of great shearwater (*Ardenna gravis)* (a migratory species traveling from the South Atlantic to spend the winter in the North Atlantic; Meirinho *et al*. 2014).					
Importance	Area containing habitat for the survival and				X

for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				
Explanation for ranking Graciosa is a globally important site for the vulnerable and endemic Monteiro's storm-petrel (*Hydrobates monteiroi)* (Monteiro & Furness 1998; Bolton *et al*. 2008), with some 350 breeding pairs (Oliveira 2016). It also contains globally important multi-species assemblages (BirdLife International 2019), including: breeding population of the little shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli)* and roseate tern (*Sterna dougallii),* both of which are listed by OSPAR as threatened and/or declining species (OSPAR 2009a, b).					
Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				X
Explanation for ranking The Monteiro's storm-petrel (*Hydrobates monteiroi)* is listed as vulnerable because it has a very small population, which is restricted to breeding on a few small islets. It is therefore highly susceptible to stochastic events and remains at risk of mammalian introductions, avian and reptile predators and light pollution (Dias *et al*. 2019, Rodríguez *et al*. 2019, BirdLife International 2019a). The little shearwater *(Puffinus lherminieri baroli),* listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species, has a small population size and is considered rare. Much of the suitable breeding habitat for this species has been rendered unsuitable due to the introduction of rats and cats, putting it at risk of further declines (OSPAR 2009a). Roseate terns (*Sterna dougallii),* listed by OSPAR as a threatened and/or declining species, have comparatively low adult survival rates (Green, 1995) and therefore need to maintain exceptionally high productivity to achieve population stability (Newton, 2004). They are threatened by predation and disturbance at the breeding colonies, in particular (OSPAR 2009b, Dias *et al*. 2019).					
Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.	X			
Explanation for ranking					
Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.	X			
Explanation for ranking					
Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.	X			
Explanation for ranking					

Sharing experiences and information applying other criteria

Other Criteria	**Description**	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		Don't Know	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
IBA criteria	The site is known or thought regularly to hold significant numbers of a globally threatened species (Donald *et al*. 2018) The site is known or thought to hold congregations of ≥1 per cent of the global population of one or more species on a regular or predictable basis (Donald *et al*. 2018)				X
The area fulfills the criteria to be classified as an Important Bird and Biodiversity Area (IBA) by BirdLife International (Donald *et al*. 2018, BirdLife International 2019b), the criteria for which are very closely aligned with the EBSA criteria (Waliczky *et al*. 2018).					

References

BirdLife International (2019a). Species factsheet: *Hydrobates monteiroi*. Downloaded from http://www.birdlife.org on 28/08/2019.

BirdLife International (2019b). Important Bird Areas factsheet: Graciosa. Downloaded from http://www.birdlife.org on 28/08/2019.

BirdLife International (2018). *Hydrobates monteiroi*. *The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species* 2018: e.T22735624A132665118. http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T22735624A132665118.en. Downloaded on 25 September 2019.

Bolton, M., Medeiros, R., Hothersall, B., Campos, A., (2004). The use of artificial breeding chambers as a conservation measure for cavity-nesting procellariiform seabirds: a case study of the Madeiran storm petrel (*Oceanodroma castro*). Biological Conservation 116, 73–80. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-3207(03)00178-2

Bolton, M.; Smith, A. L.; Gómez-Díaz, E.; Friesen, V. L.; Medeiros, R.; Bried, J.; Roscales, J. L.; Furness, R. W. (2008). Monteiro's Storm Petrel *Oceanodroma monteiroi*: a new species from the Azores. Ibis 150(4): 717-727.

Donald, P.F., Fishpool, L.D.C., Ajagbe, A., Bennun, L.A., Bunting, G., Burfield, I.J., Butchart, S.H.M., Capellan, S., Crosby, M.J., Dias, M.P., Diaz, D., Evans, M.I., Grimmett, R., Heath, M., Jones, V.R., Lascelles, B.G., Merriman, J.C., O'brien, M., Ramírez, I., Waliczky, Z., Wege, D.C., (2018). Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs): the development and characteristics of a global inventory of key sites for biodiversity. Bird Conservation International 1–22. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0959270918000102

Dias, M.P., Martin, R., Pearmain, E.J., Burfield, I.J., Small, C., Phillips, R.A., Yates, O., Lascelles, B., Borboroglu, P.G., Croxall, J.P., (2019). Threats to seabirds: A global assessment. Biological Conservation in press. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2019.06.033

Green, R.E., (1995). Demography of Roseate Terns in Britain and Ireland. Pp 8-11 in: Ratcliffe, N. (ed) Proceedings of the 6th Roseate Tern Workshop. RSBP: Sandy, UK.

Magalhães, M.C., Santos, R.S., Hamer, K.C., (2008). Dual-foraging of Cory's shearwaters in the Azores: feeding locations, behaviour at sea and implications for food provisioning of chicks. Marine Ecology Progress Series 359, 283–293. https://doi.org/10.3354/meps07340

Meirinho, A., Pitta Groz, M., Silva, A.G. (2003). Proposta de Plano de Gestão da Zona de Protecção Especial Ilhéu da Praia. Departamento de Oceanografia e Pescas da Universidade dos Açores, Horta

Meirinho, A., Barros, N., Oliveira, N., Catry, P., Lecoq, M., Paiva, V., Geraldes, P., Granadeiro, J.P., Ramírez, I., Andrade, J., (2014). Atlas das Aves Marinhas de Portugal. Sociedade Portuguesa para o Estudo das Aves. Lisboa

Monteiro, L.R., Furness, R.W., (1998). Speciation through temporal segregation of Madeiran storm petrel (*Oceanodroma castro*) populations in the Azores? Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London B 353: 945-953

Monteiro, L.R., Ramos, J.A., Pereira, J.C., Monteiro, P.R., Feio, R.S., Thompson, D.R., Bearhop, S., Furness, R.W., Laranjo, M., Hilton, G., Neves, V.C., Groz, M.P., Thompson, K.R., (1999). Status and Distribution of Fea's Petrel, Bulwer's Petrel, Manx Shearwater, Little Shearwater and Band-Rumped Storm-Petrel in the Azores Archipelago. Waterbirds: The International Journal of Waterbird Biology 22, 358–366. https://doi.org/10.2307/1522111

Neves, V.C., (2007). Azores 2007 Tern Census. Arquivos do DOP, Séries Estudos 4/2007, 21pp

Neves, V.C., Murdoch, N., Furness, R.W., (2006). Population status and diet of the Yellow-legged Gull in the Azores. Life and Marine Sciences. 23A: 59-73.

Newton, S.F.m (2004). Roseate Tern *Sterna dougallii* pp 302-314 in*:* Mitchell, P.L., Newton, S.F., Ratcliffe, N. and Dunn, T.C. (eds.) Seabird Populations of Britain and Ireland T & AD Poyser, London.

Oliveira, N., (compiler). (2016). Status Report for Monteiro's Storm-petrel *Hydrobates monteiroi*. Report of the Action A10, Project LIFE EuroSAP. Sociedade Portuguesa para o Estudo das Aves, Lisboa.

OSPAR (2009a). Background document for Little Shearwater *Puffinus assimilis baroli.* Biodiversity Series, 13p.

OSPAR (2009b). Background document for Roseate Tern *Sterna dougallii.* Biodiversity Series. 29p

Rodríguez, A., Arcos, J.M., Bretagnolle, V., Dias, M.P., Holmes, N.D., Louzao, M., Provencher, J., Raine, A.F., Ramírez, F., Rodríguez, B., Ronconi, R.A., Taylor, R.S., Bonnaud, E., Borrelle, S.B., Cortés, V., Descamps, S., Friesen, V.L., Genovart, M., Hedd, A., Hodum, P., Humphries, G.R.W., Le Corre, M., Lebarbenchon, C., Martin, R., Melvin, E.F., Montevecchi, W.A., Pinet, P., Pollet, I.L., Ramos, R., Russell, J.C., Ryan, P.G., Sanz-Aguilar, A., Spatz, D.R., Travers, M., Votier, S.C., Wanless, R.M., Woehler, E., Chiaradia, A., (2019). Future Directions in Conservation Research on Petrels and Shearwaters. Front. Mar. Sci. 6. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmars.2019.00094

Silva, M., Prieto, R., Cascão, I., Seabra, M., Machete, M., Baumgartner, M., Santos, R., (2014). Spatial and temporal distribution of cetaceans in the mid-Atlantic waters around the Azores. Marine Biology Research. 10. 123-137. 10.1080/17451000.2013.793814.

Silva, M.F., Smith, A.L., Friesen, V.L., Bried, J., Hasegawa, O., Coelho, M.M., Silva, M.C., (2016). Mechanisms of global diversification in the marine species Madeiran Storm-petrel *Oceanodroma castro* and Monteiro's Storm-petrel *O. monteiroi*: Insights from a multi-locus approach. Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution 98, 314–323. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ympev.2016.02.014

Waliczky, Z., Fishpool, L.D.C., Butchart, S.H.M., Thomas, D., Heath, M.F., Hazin, C., Donald, P.F., Kowalska, A., Dias, M.P., Allinson, T.S.M., (2018). Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs): their impact on conservation policy, advocacy and action. Bird Conservation International 1–17. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0959270918000175

Maps and Figures

Location of area no. 12: Graciosa

Area no. 13: North Azores Plateau

Abstract

This area is composed of several seamounts, one hydrothermal vent field, an undersea trough and a large portion of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge north of the Azores Plateau. The structures in this area are hotspots of marine life and, in general, areas of enhanced productivity, especially when compared with surrounding abyssal areas. The Moytirra is the first known deep-sea hydrothermal vent field on the slow-spreading Mid-Atlantic Ridge north of the Azores, making this area highly unique. A total of 536 species have been observed in this area, 6 per cent of which are protected under international or regional law.

Introduction

The area includes several seamounts (Altair, Antialtair, Chaucer, Cherkis, Crumb, Lukin- Lebedev and Sedlo), one hydrothermal vent field (Moytirra), Kings Trough and a large portion of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (MAR) north of the Azores Plateau.

Rising from bathyal and abyssal depths, the MAR dominates the seafloor topography in the high seas of the OSPAR region. The topography is highly differentiated with depths ranging from 4500 m in the deepest channel to only 700-800m on top of adjacent seamounts (Dinter, 2001). The MAR plays an important role in the circulation of the water masses in the North Atlantic (Rossby, 1999; Bower *et al*., 2002; Heger *et al*., 2008; Søiland *et al*., 2008). The complex hydrographic setting around the MAR in general, and the presence of the ridge itself, leads to enhanced vertical mixing and turbulence that results in areas of increased productivity over the MAR (Falkowski *et al*., 1998; Heger *et al*., 2008). Despite generally limited surface production, there is evidence of enhanced near-ridge demersal fish biomass above the MAR (Fock *et al*., 2002; Bergstad *et al*., 2008). There is also evidence that the mid-ocean ridges are ecologically important for higher trophic levels relative to the surrounding abyssal plains and the open ocean (e.g., blue ling and roundnose grenadier spawning aggregations on the northern MAR) (Magnusson & Magnusson 1995, Vinnichenko & Khlivnoy 2004).

Most of the structures are classified as seamounts, ridges, or ridge-associated seamounts. These structures can be an obstacle to the free circulation of the oceans, thereby leading to different kinds of phenomena and disturbances, including an increase in the speed of ocean currents, upwellings, turbulence, Taylor cones, eddies, and even jets in the zones where the seamounts interact with ocean currents (Richardson *et al.,* 2000; Kunze & Smith, 2004; White *et al.,* 2007; Pakhorukov, 2008).

The area shelters the only deep-sea hydrothermal vent field known to date on the MAR north of the Azores. Since most of the seamounts and other structures in the area remain unexplored, the presence of more vent communities and more seamounts cannot be excluded with full confidence.

The hydrothermal vent fields play a pivotal role in sustaining abundant populations of deep-sea species through the chemosynthetic primary production (Van Dover *et al.,* 2002).

The Sedlo seamount shows a high diversity of sessile megabenthos, which may form dense aggregations (mainly coral Hexacorallia – *Madrepora oculata* – and sponges) on the predominantly rocky surface of its summit (OASIS, 2006). Investigations of the demersal fish community were also performed and recorded large reproductive aggregations of both alfonsino (*Beryx splendens*) and black cardinal fish (*Epigonus telescopus*) (Menezes *et al*., 2009) two species recognized as typical seamount aggregating deep-sea fish (Koslow, 1996; Morato *et al.,* 2006). These observations make Sedlo seamount the only known reproductive area for alfonsino and black cardinal fish in the Azores (Santos *et al.,* 2009). Several threatened deep-sea shark species were also recorded in these structures, such as the leafscale gulper shark (*Centrophorus squamosus*) and the Portuguese dogfish (*Centroscymnus coelolepis*) (Melo & Menezes, 2002; Menezes *et al*., 2009), both considered vulnerable and near threatened, respectively, in the IUCN (2011) Red List. The endangered fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*) and sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*) (IUCN, 2011) have been observed in the vicinity of the seamount (Santos *et al*., 2009).

Another important feature in the area is a section of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge North of the Azores High Seas MPA (MARNA), part of the OSPAR Network of Marine Protected Areas. The ridge is a peculiar topographic feature of the Atlantic Ocean stretching from north of Iceland to the Southern Ocean, representing the spreading zone between the Eurasian and American continental plates. Although mid-ocean ridges have an extensive distribution and cover 22 per cent of the Earth's surface (Garrison, 2005) these remote areas are largely unexplored (Bergstad *et al.*, 2010). Knowledge of the animal communities and biology and ecology of individual species in these waters remains limited. The rugged terrain and great depths make the ridges particularly challenging study areas (Bergstad *et al.*, 2008).

There is a considerable volume of information on Altair and Antialtair seamounts, as both structures are also components of the OSPAR Network of Marine Protected Areas.

Information about Moytirra is relatively scarce because this hydrothermal vent was only recently discovered (in 2011). This is the first known deep-sea hydrothermal vent field on the slow-spreading Mid-Atlantic Ridge north of the Azores and as a result has only been subject to a few studies, most of which describe its genesis and geological data but provide little biological information (Wheeler *et al*. 2013).

The area comprises multiple types of structures (hydrothermal vent field, MARNA MPA, and seamounts) that are very distinct in terms of biology and geology, showing different compositions, locations and ages.

Wheller described the Moytirra vent field (named after the Irish mythological "plain of the pillars") in 2013. This vent is the only fully described high temperature hydrothermal vent known between the Azores and Iceland, making it a unique geophysical structure in the high seas of the North Atlantic and within the MAR. The structure is located at a depth of 2095 m and is situated at 45°N on the 300 m high fault scarp of the eastern axial wall of the MAR, 3.5 km from the axial volcanic ridge crest (Wheeler *et al.* 2013). The portion of the MAR contained within the area, which includes the MARNA MPA, is characterized by rough bottom topography comprising underwater peaks (minimum 660 and maximum depth 3700 m), a central rift valley, recent volcanic terrain and fracture zones and has the highest concentration of seamount features on the MAR (Epp & Smoot, 1989; Gebruk *et al*, 2010). It occupies an area of 93,415 km^2. The MPA contains a section of the axis of the volcanic ridge, generally NNE-SSE, which runs through the Azores Platform. The central part of this ridge is occupied by an overall steering valley NNE-SSW with a width typically within 7 km and 9 km, which extends over the whole area and the base of which lies typically between 3000 and 3500 m deep (Dias *et al.*, 2007; Silveira *et al.*, 2010). The flank of the central valley can rise to depths below 1000 m, although the crests are typically between 1000 m and 1500 m deep. The surface of the crest flank diverging from the central valley is rough but essentially inclines towards deeper areas between 3400 m in the east and 3700 m in the west. This area contains many seamounts that have not been studied or named (Bergstad *et al.*, 2012). In the area seven known seamounts are present (there is evidence that there are more), three of them belonging to MPAs – Altair, Antialtair and Sedlo.

An area of 4,384 km^2 of the Altair Seamount High Seas MPA (OSPAR Network) is included in the area described (OSPAR, 2013). The seabed of most of this area is located at a depth between 3500 m and 3700 m. The rupture of the slope in the transition to the relief circumscribed by the isobaths of 3200 m is more pronounced in the north and southwest quadrants than in the eastern sectors. The Altair seamount extends from northwest to southeast, and its dimensions at the 3300 m isobath are 73x46 km. Altair seamount is an isolated volcanic uplift on the eastern slope of the Newfoundland Basin and the North American-Canary abyssal plain. The middle and upper crusts of the seamount, at depths of 1600-2500 m, are marked by the widespread development of ferromanganese crusts. Stations at the summit and slope are often rocky, with cobbles and boulders in places, but also patches of coarse, biogenic sediment (Matthews *et al.*, 1969; Varentsov *et al.*, 1988; O'Leary *et al.*, 2012).

The structures of the Altair seamount rise within the western and eastern sectors of the Central Adantic region belonging, according to Zolotarev (1984), to the volcanic-uplift association, developed on the slopes of the MAR. The Altair seamount consists of two clearly merging conical piles: the summit of the western pile lies at a water depth of 1545 m, and the two summits of the double-peaked eastern cones at 1350 and 935 m.

The Antialtair Seamount High Seas MPA, which occupies an area of 2807 km^2, is part of a volcanic ridge with a NW-SE general direction, and the top is about 1000 m deep. The flanks of this structure are asymmetrical and reach the flattened seabed at 4500 m deep (North) and about 3000 m deep in the South (Druel, 2011; O'Leary *et al.,* 2012). Few studies have been conducted on this seamount. However, its geology reveals a rugged relief bottom with steep slopes of rocky nature (Muñoz *et al.,* 2000).

The most studied structure in this area is the Sedlo seamount. The seamount is located at the North of the Azores. Sedlo's odd bathymetry can be described as a three-summit seamount, with the summit peaks becoming shallower towards the southeast (Machín *et al.,* 2009). It would therefore be classified as an intermediate depth seamount, i.e. one whose summit depth is significantly below the euphotic zone but reaches the permanent thermocline (Mohn *et al.,* 2009; Santos *et al.,* 2009). The shallowest part of summit has a depth of ~660 m. The seamount is elongated, multi-peaked, orientated NW–SE, close to the end of a spur. The basin descends to 5000-6000 m and is bounded by the MAR to the west and the European and African continents to the east (Arístegui *et al.,* 2009; Mohn *et al.,* 2009; Santos *et al.,* 2009; Morato *et al.,* 2012).

The Sedlo structure is located within the North Atlantic sub-tropical gyre. The seamount is influenced by eastern and western Atlantic central waters, and west of the Iberian Peninsula, in the path of the Mediterranean outflow. At mid-latitudes, most of the upper ocean consists of subducted water that recirculates along the upper thermocline (Harvey and Arhan, 1988; Rios *et al.,* 1992; Pollard *et al.*, 1996, Machín, 2009). In the western North Atlantic the upper-thermocline layers are influenced by relatively fresh waters of southern origin reaching the western boundary through the equatorial region. These waters are transported north by the Gulf Stream, and later northeast via the North Atlantic Current and east via the Azores Current, as they rise towards the sea surface with the out-cropping isopycnals (McCartney, 1992; Weaver *et al.*, 1999; Brix & Gerdes, 2003). They constitute the Western North Atlantic Central Water (WNAW) and, west of the MAR, occupy the whole permanent thermocline. In the eastern North Atlantic the winter mixed layer gets quite deep, up to some 500 m, so that high-salinity surface waters reach the upper thermocline and give rise to the Eastern North Atlantic Central Water (ENAW) (de Boyer Montégut *et al.*, 2007). ENAW has been further divided between those of subpolar and subtropical origin by Rios *et al.* (1992), according to their latitude of formation and their posterior propagation (Machín *et al.,* 2009).

In terms of biology, some of the structures have been relatively well studied (see Table 1). A total of 536 species have been observed in the area (see feature description of the area).

The area includes threatened and/or declining ecosystems, for example aggregations of deep-sea sponges, coral gardens and *Lophelia pertusa* reefs (OSPAR, 2010). In the Altair seamount the benthic epifaunal community is dominated in most places by sessile megabenthos, chiefly anemones and true corals (Hexacorallia) and sponges. The diversity of corals and sponges is particularly high in the saddle and gully (Henry *et al.,* 2014). Between the two eastern peaks of Sedlo, dense aggregations of soft corals are present, sea whips (gorgonians) are especially abundant on the southwest side of the seamount, and brittle stars (Ophiuroids) are also present. The base of the seamount is almost exclusively covered with fine sediments like the surrounding abyssal plains. These sediment habitats are very low in epifaunal abundance when compared to other sites on the seamount (e.g., Christiansen & Wolff, 2009; Menezes *et al.,* 2012; Henry *et al.,* 2014).

Hareide & Garnes (2001) studied the summit fishes of seamounts along the MAR and they found that the dominant deep-water fish species changed with latitude. Sub-tropical species such as golden-eye perch (*Beryx splendens*) and cardinal fish (*Epigonus telescopus*) dominated the seamount summits.

The seamounts in this area support epipelagic fishes, which in turn support migratory species such as tuna (*Thunnus thynnus* and *Thunnus albacares*). It provides habitats that are associated with epipelagic fish species spawning and recruitment (species belonging to the Serranidae, and Carangidae families), as well as benthopelagic species and respective communities, including fish species captured for commercial purposes, such as orange roughy (Morato & Clark, 2007; OSPAR, 2010). Among these habitats are some endangered and/or declining species, such as whales (*Balaenoptera musculus*), turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea* and *Caretta caretta*) (protected under the Habitats Directive, the Bern Convention, Bonn Convention, CITES and OSPAR Convention), and elasmobranchs (*Centroscymnus coelolepis*, *Centrophorus granulosus* and *Centrophorus squamosus*) (protected under the OSPAR Convention) (Morato *et al.,* 2008; Santos *et al.,* 2008).

Studies that demonstrated the ecological and biological importance of the seamounts have been conducted by Santos *et al.* (2008). Turtle biotelemetry studies suggest that the turtles exhibit different movement behaviours near seamounts, remaining in these places for prolonged periods. This provides further evidence that these topographic features can be hotspots for adult and juvenile loggerheads.

The seamounts are also an important area for birds; Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris borealis*) breeds in the Azores and has been shown to forage over the region of the MAR (Magalhães *et al.*, 2008). This species performs a dual-foraging strategy that combines short and long foraging trips. Most short trips have been found to be confined to the MAR just north of the Azores (within about 300 km) (Magalhães *et al.*, 2008; Xavier *et al.,* 2011).

Location
The area is spread over a wide part of the Atlantic Ocean, north of the Azores. The area is home to multiple types of structures (i.e., hydrothermal vent field, Mid-Atlantic Ridge North of the Azores , seamounts), which are very distinct in terms of biology and geology, and which have different compositions, locations and ages.

Feature description of the area
Knowledge of this area is based on the analysis of 110 scientific articles containing relevant information. Several of the structures are well known with a great number of geological and biological studies. The total number of 536 species reported was estimated from scattered taxonomic literature, and the species number is probably underestimated. Knowledge of each structure is uneven.

Around 6 per cent of the 536 species identified in all seamounts in this area are legally protected or recognized as threatened by CITES, IUCN Red List, European Union Habitats and Birds Directives, VMEs, Bern Convention or OSPAR Convention. In this area OSPAR identified as endangered or declining the deepwater sharks *Centroscymus coeleopsis*, *Centrophorus squamosus* and *Dipturus batis*, the commercial fish *Hoplostethus atlanticus* and the two species of corals *Lophelia pertusa* and *Madrepora oculata*. Other examples of species with legal protection (CITES Appendix I) are the cetaceans *Balaenoptera borealis, Balaenoptera musculus, Balaenoptera physalus, Megaptera novaeangliae*, *Physeter macrocephalus*, *Tursiops truncatus,* the turtles *Caretta caretta*, *Dermochelys coriacea*, (CITES Appendix II) and the corals *Antipathella subpinnata*, *Aulocyathus atlanticus*, *Caryophyllia ambrosia*, *Desmophyllum dianthus*, *Flabellum alabastrum*, *Flabellum angulare*, *Fungiacyathus fragilis*, *Lophelia pertusa*, *Madrepora oculata*, *Schizopathes affinis*, *Solenosmilia variabilis*, *Stauropathes arctica* and *Stephanocyathus moseleyanus*. The species of whales *Balaenoptera physalus*, *Balaenoptera musculus, Balaenoptera borealis*, *Megaptera novaeangliae,* the sperm whale (*Physeter macrocephalus),* the dolphins *Delphinus delphis* and *Tursiops truncatus* and the sea urchin *Centrostephanus longispinus* are protected by the EU Habitats Directive. The whales *Balaenoptera physalus*, *Balaenoptera musculus*, *Balaenoptera borealis*, *Megaptera novaeangliae,* the sperm whale *Physeter macrocephalus* and the turtles *Caretta caretta* and *Dermochelys coriacea* are protected by Annex II of the Bern Convention. Also present are 11 species listed on the IUCN Red List as near threatened/ vulnerable/endangered/critically endangered (*Balaenoptera physalus*, *Balaenoptera musculus*, *Balaenoptera borealis*, *Caretta caretta*, *Dermochelys coriacea*, *Dipturus batis*, *Hippoglossus hippoglossus*, *Physeter macrocephalus*, *Prionace glauca*, *Thunnus albacares*, *Thunnus thynnus)*. There are also two species of birds (*Calonectris borealis* and *Sterna dougallii)* belonging to the Birds Directive Annex I.

The species studied in the area belong to several phyla, classes or orders. The area includes various species of scleractinians and gorgonians. In some seamounts the gorgonian and sponge species were reported to form dense gorgonian coral habitat-forming aggregations which may represent important feeding and sheltering grounds for seamount fishes as well as potential shark nurseries (WWF, 2001; Etnoyer & Warrenchuk, 2007; OSPAR, 2011). Cold-water, deep, habitat-forming corals can shelter higher megafauna in association with the corals (Roberts *et al.*, 2006; Mortensen *et al.*, 2008, Rogers *et al.*, 2008). Seamounts also harbour large aggregations of demersal or benthopelagic fish (Koslow, 1997; Morato & Pauly, 2004; Pitcher *et al.*, 2007; Morato *et al.*, 2009, 2010). Seamounts are recognized in many different fora as being vulnerable to the effects of fishing pressure (e.g., UN, OSPAR, FAO, NEAFC, NAFO, UNEP).

Deep-sea hydrothermal vents are among the most extreme and dynamic environments on Earth. However, islands of highly dense and biologically diverse communities exist in the immediate vicinity of hydrothermal vent flows, in stark contrast to the surrounding bare seafloor (Thornburgn *et al.*, 2010). Unique communities are formed around vents, attracting unusual creatures such as red-plumed giant tube worms and massive clams, which cluster around the dark chimneys where vent fluids emerge.

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

Most available studies are qualitative and often focus on specific taxonomic groups, such as Fish, Echinoderms, Anthozoa and Elasmobranchii (e.g., Mortensen *et al.*, 2008; Gebruk *et al.*, 2010; Menezes *et al.*, 2012). Most study cruises that have visited the area were focused in Sedlo bank with sampling of the demersal vertebrate fauna (fish). The OSPAR High Seas MPAs (Altair, Antialtair and MARNA) have a small number of scientific articles and reports focused on them.

At the Moytirra hydrothermal vent the dissolved constituents of the venting fluids play, as do the other vents, an important role in the geochemical mass balance of the oceans (Edmond *et al*., 1979). The high concentrations of valuable minerals make these kind of structures targets for deep-ocean mining (Hoagland *et al*., 2010; Van Dover, 2011), which carries a high risk of damage to these fragile ecosystems. This type of ecosystem is sensitive because of its high percentage of endemic species and the unique nature of many of the species found there (e.g., Vrijenhoek, 2010; Ramirez-Llodra *et al*., 2011). One of the “recent” potential threats to these ecosystems is bioprospecting activities for possible sources of biotechnology (e.g., bacteria on hydrothermal vents) (Gubbay, 2003; Synnes, 2007).

Seamount ecosystems are also highly vulnerable and sensitive to external actions. Most of the fauna found on seamounts are long-lived and slow-growing organisms with low fecundity and natural mortality, so called K-selected species (Brewin *et al.*, 2007). Recruitment events of long-lived seamount fauna seem to be episodic and rare (Brewin *et al.*, 2007). The type of gear (usually rock-hopper trawls) used to fish over the rough and rocky substrata on seamounts is particularly destructive of benthic habitat, destroying the very long-lived and slow-growing sessile suspension-feeding organisms that dominate these habitats (Brewin *et al.*, 2007). Benthic seamount communities are highly vulnerable to the impacts of fishing because of their limited habitat, the extreme longevity of many species, apparently limited recruitment between seamounts and the highly localized distribution of many species (de Forges *et al.*, 2000; Samadi *et al.*, 2006, 2007).

In a few decades, industrial fishing attention has been drawn to the abundance of commercially valuable fish species at many seamounts (Koslow, 1997). The reasons for the fish aggregations can be explained by the hypotheses that seamount areas can be “meeting points” of usually dispersed fish stocks, for example to aggregate for spawning, or that an enhanced food supply caused by special current conditions is the basis for locally maintaining large fish stocks. The importance of seamounts for fisheries is very well documented (Boehlert & Sasaki, 1988, Koslow, 1997, Morato *et al.*, 2006). The fishing effort in the area described focuses primarily on commercially valuable species such as horse mackerel (*Trachurus trachurus*, Carangidae), mackerel (*Scomber sp*., Scombridae), scabbardfish (family Trichiuridae) and orange roughy (*Hoplostethus atlanticus*). Starting in the early 1970s with Soviet/Russian trawlers, stocks of roundnose grenadier (*Coryphaenoides rupestris*), orange roughy (*Hoplostethus atlanticus*) and alfonsino (*Beryx splendens*) associated with the area were exploited (Clark *et al*. 2007, ICES 2007). It can be assumed that most hills along the ridge were at least explored (usually by midwater trawls operating close to the seafloor). There are some other types of fishing techniques operating at the seamounts of the area that can trawl corals out of the ocean. The age of fished corals was estimated at 300 – 500 years (Tracey *et al.*, 2003; Samadi *et al.*, 2007).

Structural deep-sea sponge habitat is also vulnerable to bottom fishing and has been shown to suffer immediate declines in populations through the physical removal of sponges, which then reduces the reproductive potential of the population, thereby reducing recovery capacity or even causing further declines (Freese, 2001). Experimental trawling over sponge communities in Alaska showed that one year after the experiment, individuals within the community showed no sign of repair or growth, and there was no indication of the recovery of the community (Freese *et al.*, 1999).

In 2004 VMS data showed that fishing vessels moving at bottom trawling speed were present over Antialtair seamount (ICES, 2007). Following the establishment of the NEAFC fishing closures in 2005, bottom-fishing effort increased over Antialtair seamount, showing a clear targeting of this area by fishing vessels (ICES, 2007). This indicates that the area may have already been impacted by fishing activity and that the NEAFC closures are not entirely effective.

In 2007, Sedlo was proposed by Portugal for the OSPAR (the current legal instrument guiding international cooperation on the protection of the marine environment of the North-East Atlantic) Network of Marine Protected Areas and was accepted by the OSPAR Parties in 2008. In 2010 the Ministerial Meeting of the OSPAR Commission adopted the Decision 2010/4 to establish a High Seas Marine Protected Area in the water column above the Antialtair Seamount in an area of approximately 2208 km^2. At the same time the Decision 2010/3 established the Altair Seamount High Seas Marine Protected Area (4,384 km^2). In this same year the OSPAR Decision 2010/6 established the Mid-Atlantic Ridge North of the Azores as a High Seas MPA accompanied by Recommendation 2010/17 on the management of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge North of the Azores High Seas MPA.

Assessment of area no. 13, North of the Azores Plateau, against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA Criteria (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Description** (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		No information	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique ("the only one of its kind"), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.				X

Explanation for ranking

1- The Mid-Atlantic Ridge due to its geological nature, presents several distinct habitats, from the abyssal to the upper bathyal. It also features sediment terraces between rocky ridges, in areas where the slope is less than 30 per cent, which can, in certain areas, represent 95 per cent of the area (Priede *et al.*, 2013).

2- The high geomorphological relief of the area promotes strong near-bed currents and enhanced food supply, providing ideal conditions for the colonization of deep-sea suspension-feeding fauna such as cold-water corals and sponges (Mortensen *et al.* 2008; Moldstova *et al.* 2013; Lopes & Tabachnik 2013; Tabachnik & Menshenina 2013).

3-Due to the remote location, there are several reported endemic cold-water corals in the seamounts of the Azores region associated with the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (Braga-Henriques *et al.* 2013; de Matos *et al.* 2014; Moldstova *et al.* 2016; Sampaio *et al.* 2019).

4- The Moytirra vent field is the only known high-temperature hydrothermal vent between the Azores and Iceland, making it a unique geophysical structure in the high seas of the North Atlantic and within the MAR (Van Dover *et al.*, 1996). The hydrothermal vents of the North MAR may represent a unique biogeographic region of invertebrate species (Van Dover, 2010).

5-The different seamounts include in the area also have unique features. For example, the isolated Altair Seamount, lying to the west of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge is considered a potentially near-pristine example of an oceanic seamount ecosystem (OSPAR, 2011).

6-The MAR is also home to species, or species associations, that are not present elsewhere. This is the case of the occurrence of a unique "living-fossil community" formed by a long-lived, deep-sea oyster and a cyrtocrinid (Wisshak *et al*., 2009) and coral reefs formed by the azooxanthellate scleractinian *Eguchipsammia* c.f. *cornucopia* Cairns, 1994 (Dendrophylliidae) (Tempera *et al*., 2015).

7- Waters around the North MAR, particularly the Azores, also host a number of rare deep-water shark species. An extreme example is the Azores dogfish (*Scymnodalatias garricki)*, a species so rare that it is known only from two specimens caught in the Azores area in 1977 and 2001 at 300 m and 580 m depth, respectively (Kukuev & Konovalenko, 1988; Kukuev, 2006). The North MAR is also a preferred habitat for the sailfin roughshark (*Oxynotus paradoxus)*, a very rare species of deep-water sharks, endemic to the Eastern Atlantic (Ebert & Stehmann, 2013), and the frilled shark (*Chlamydoselachus anguineus)* that could use the MAR as an aggregation or mating area (Kukuev & Pavlov, 2008).

Special importance for life-history stages of species	Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.				X

Explanation for ranking

Several tracking and telemetry studies on marine mammals, particularly for baleen whale species, have indicated the presence of known migratory pathways transiting through the region. Such cetaceans tracked to move through the region include the endangered Sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis)* that migrate through the area from the Azores, likely longitudinally from waters on the Eastern Atlantic, to highly productive foraging areas in the Labrador Sea as well as Greenlandic and Icelandic waters (Olsen *et al*. 2009, Prieto *et al*. 2014). Other tracking studies of endangered fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) and blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus)* have described long migratory movements of whales between the area of the Azores northward towards key foraging areas in the region of eastern Greenland and western Iceland (Silva *et al*. 2013). Furthermore, fin and blue whales remained at middle latitudes along their migration in the area for prolonged periods, exhibiting area-restricted search (ARS) behaviour, indicative of foraging activity. Behavioural differences have been noted along the observed migratory pathway of fin whales tracked to higher latitudes: ARS occurred only in the Azores and north of 56°N, whereas in between these areas whales travelled at higher overall speeds while maintaining a nearly direct trajectory. This suggests fin whales in the area may alternate periods of active migration with periods of extended use of specific habitats along the migratory route (Silva *et al*. 2013).

1-The Sedlo seamount is the only known reproductive area for alfonsino and black cardinal fish in the area near the Azores (Santos *et al*., 2009).

2-Tracked turtles move towards seamounts and increased their residence times once in their vicinity (Santos *et al*., 2007). In all the seamounts sampled Altair had the highest residence time, indicating that it may be a hotspot for these juvenile turtles (Santos *et al.*, 2006; Santos *et al.*, 2007; Morato *et al.*, 2008).

3-Endemic chemosynthetic fauna associated with the hydrothermal vent have metabolic adaptations that depend on the physical-chemical conditions of such vents and therefore cannot survive elsewhere (Van Dover, 2000).

4-The diverse benthic communities at North MAR, comprising cold-water coral reefs, gardens, sponge grounds and massif sponges, provide complex three-dimensional structural habitat that provide refuge, feeding opportunities, and spawning and nursery areas for a wide range of associated sessile and vagile species, including commercially important fish and crustacean species (Buhl-Mortensen *et al*., 2010; Beazley *et al*., 2013; Pham *et al*., 2015; Gomes-Pereira *et al*., 2017). For example, deep-water sharks were found to lay eggs among cold-water corals (Henry *et al*., 2013).

5-There is also evidence that the North MAR may be a potential aggregation/mating site for the rare and vulnerable shark *Chlamydoselachus anguineus* (Kukuev & Pavlov, 2008) and a spawning area for roundnose grenadier (*Coryphaenoides rupestris*; Danke *et al*., 1987) and the Bigelow's ray (*Rajella bigelowi)* (Orlov *et al*., 2006).

6-The hydrographic conditions and high morphological relief of the MAR also provide the necessary conditions for the recruitment and settlement of coral and sponge larvae with low dispersal potential and recruitment success (Hilário *et al*., 2015; Girard *et al*., 2016).

7- the North MAR may also become an important connectivity pathway even for the larvae of the reef-building coral *Lophelia pertusa* with high dispersal potential in a scenario of climate change. Connectivity modelling studies conducted within the framework of ATLAS suggest that the North MAR may be an important connectivity pathway from the Azores to the North Atlantic for L. pertusa larvae under a scenario of reduced suitable habitat caused by projected changes in climate (Fox *et al*., H2020 ATLAS 2018).

8- shallower areas of the MAR may act as refugia for cold-water corals and other benthic calcifying species from ocean acidification as they lie in shallower waters with a higher aragonite saturation horizon, as suggested for seamount summits (Tittensor *et al*., 2010; Rowden *et al*., 2010).

9- At the ridge crests and associated seamounts, which remain very poorly explored, the global habitat suitability models and distribution maps for the North Atlantic modelled the distribution of seven suborders of Octocorallia (Yesson *et al*. 2012) and five species of framework-forming scleractinian corals (Davies & Guinotte 2011). Both studies revealed that the areas contain important suitable habitats for these taxa.

10-Among birds, Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris borealis*) breeding in the Azores has been shown to forage over this region of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (Magalhães *et al*, 2008). This species performs a dual-foraging strategy that combines short and long foraging trips. Most short trips were confined to the Mid-Atlantic Ridge just north of the Azores (within about 300 km) (Magalhães *et al*, 2008). Tracking data collected for other species also reveal the presence of several species that occur during their breeding or non-breeding period: *Sterna paradisea, Fratercula arctica, Calonectris diomedea, Puffinus lherminieri baroli, Puffinus puffinus, Pterodroma deserta, Pterodroma madeira, Bulweria bulwerii, Rissa tridactyla, Catharacta maccormicki, Catharacta skua, Stercorarius longicaudus* (BirdLife International 2019)

11-There is also evidence that the mid-ocean ridges are ecologically important for higher trophic levels relative to the surrounding abyssal plains and the open ocean (e.g., blue ling and roundnose grenadier spawning aggregations on the northern MAR (Magnusson & Magnusson 1995, Vinnichenko & Khlivnoy 2004).

Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				X

Explanation for ranking

1-Oceanic ridges with hydrothermal vents and seamounts are all listed on the OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats (OSPAR 2009; 2010a.,b,c,d).

2-The seamount and potentially cold-water coral and sponge reef habitats also qualify as Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems in relation to high seas fisheriesR according to criteria developed by FAO (FAO, 2007; Rogers *et al.*, 2008).

3-Records of many other vulnerable species, for example the lantern shark (*Etmopterus princeps*) (Durán Muñoz *et al.*, 2000), which has been classified by ICES as vulnerable to fishing pressure due to its relatively long recovery time (ICES, 2005; 2008).

4-Overall around 6 per cent of the species identified in this area are listed as threatened by the OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats (OSPAR 2009; 2010a.,b,c,d) (e.g., *Centroscymus coeleopsis*, *Hoplostethus atlanticus*), CITES Appendix I (e.g., *Balaenoptera borealis*, *Dermochelys coriacea*), CITES Appendix II (Order Antipatharia (e.g., black corals Leiopathes sp, Bathypathes sp), Scleractinia (e.g., reef-building corals *Lophelia pertusa*, *Madrepora oculata*) and family Stylasteridae (e.g., *Errina spp, Stylaster spp*)), EU Habitats Directive (e.g., *Megaptera novaeangliae*, *Physeter macrocephalus*), Annex II of the Bern Convention (e.g., *Balaenoptera physalus*, *Caretta caretta*), IUCN Red List (e.g., *Hippoglossus hippoglossus*, *Thunnus albacares*), Birds Directive Annex I (e.g., *Calonectris borealis*, *Sterna dougallii*) (see "feature description of the area"). Some globally threatened seabird species are also known to occur in the area: *Pterodroma madeira* (EN), *Rissa tridactyla* (VU), *Pterodroma deserta* (VU), along with the OSPAR listed *Puffinus lherminieri baroli* (BirdLife International 2019).

5-Deep-water sharks have limited productivity and limited ability to sustain high levels of fishing pressure and are unlikely to recover from serious overfishing (Kyne & Simpfendorfer, 2007). Out of the 25 species of deep-water sharks occurring in the North MAR around the Azores, nearly half are listed under the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species, as critically endangered (n=1), endangered (n=4), or near threatened (n=2), or as data-deficient (n=7); two have not even been assessed (IUCN Europe 2018).

6-*Centrophorus squamosus* and *Centroscymnus coelolepis* (Fossen *et al*. 2008), along with *Centrophorus granulosus* are included on the OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats (BDC/MASH, 2007), along with *Dipturus batis, Raja clavata* and *Hoplostethus atlanticus*. The North MAR is also home to the charismatic and endangered Greenland shark (*Somniosus microcephalus*).

Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				X

Explanation for ranking

1-This area harbours different types of habitats classified by OSPAR as threatened and/or declining, and a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) and slow to recover (Van den Hove & Moreau, 2007).

2- Vent ecosystems, however, have relatively high proportions of endemic species (Tunnicliffe *et al.*, 1996). The associated vent fauna is primarily composed of a small set of large organisms relying on symbioses with chemoautotrophic bacteria, able to withstand extreme conditions.

-3- The unique characteristics of hydrothermal vent fields and stochastic ecological succession of vent communities means that if destroyed, there is very little potential for recovery. Active hydrothermal vent ecosystems are vulnerable and at risk of serious harm (Van Dover *et al.*, 2018).

4-Most benthic communities occurring in the MAR, such as hydrothermal vent fields, cold-water reefs and gardens and sponge aggregations are considered vulnerable marine ecosystems (VMEs), by the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO, 2009). These organisms have life history

traits, such as slow growth, high longevity and low reproductive potential, that make their recovery from human impacts very slow (Clark *et al* 2016; 2019). 5- Cold-water corals form reefs that can live for 8,000 years, with L. pertusa colonies growing linearly at 6–35mm year (Roberts *et al*., 2009). 6-Octocorals and black corals, which dominate benthic assemblages in the North MAR region, have growth rates of less than 1 cm a year and age spans of hundreds (e.g., bamboo coral; Keratoisis sp.: Watling *et al*., 2011) to thousands of years (black coral Leiopathes sp.; Roark *et al*., 2009; Carreiro-Silva *et al*., 2013). This means that if removed from the seabed, these species and the communities they form can take centuries to millennia to recover. Although age estimates for sponge species are scarce, studies suggest multi-centennial age spans, e.g., 220 and 440 years (Leys & Lauzon, 1998; Fallon *et al*., 2010), whereas some sponge reefs are estimated to be up to 9,000 years old (e.g., Krautter *et al*., 2001). 7-As described above, the North MAR region is also home to the Greenland shark, which has an estimated growth of only about 1 centimetre a year and may live more than 400 years, making it the longest lived vertebrate (Nielsen *et al*., 2016). Its maturity would only be reached by around 150 years (Nielsen *et al*., 2016).					
Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.			X	
Explanation for ranking 1-The complex hydrographic setting around the North MAR and the presence of the ridge itself leads to enhanced vertical mixing and turbulence that results in areas of increased productivity (Falkowski *et al*., 1998; Heger *et al*., 2008). 2-The high geomorphological relief also promotes strong near-bed currents and enhanced food supply, providing ideal conditions for the colonization of deep-sea suspension-feeding fauna such as cold-water corals and sponges (Mortensen *et al* 2008; Moldstova *et al* 2013; Lopes & Tabachnik 2013; Tabachnik & Menshenina 2013). 3-The Mid-Atlantic Ridge plays a pivotal role in circulation of water masses within the OSPAR Maritime Area and the whole North Atlantic (Rossby, 1999; Bower *et al*., 2002; Heger *et al*., 2008; Søiland *et al*., 2008). The complex hydrographic setting around the Mid-Atlantic Ridge in general and the presence of the ridge itself lead to enhanced vertical mixing and turbulence that result in areas of increased productivity over the Ridge (Falkowski *et al*., 1998; Heger *et al*., 2008). 4- The chemosynthetic productivity from vents is therefore exchanged with the nearby deep-sea environments, providing labile organic resources to benthic and pelagic ecosystems that are otherwise food limited (Levin *et al*., 2016). Vent-derived organic carbon flux supplements the metazoan food web beyond the areas where hydrothermal venting occurs (Bell *et al*., 2017). 5- Both cold-water coral communities and sponge grounds are important for global biogeochemical cycles and the ocean's benthic pelagic coupling loop, being responsible for nearly 30 per cent of the coupling between organic matter produced at the ocean surface and the seafloor (Cathalot *et al*., 2015). They represent hotspots of ecosystem functioning, processing substantial amounts of organic matter (White *et al*., 2012; Cathalot *et al*., 2015,) and release nutrients back into the surrounding water (Van Oevelen *et al*., 2009; Cathalot *et al*., 2015) that become available to associated fauna, potentially increasing overall biodiversity and biological productivity of these habitats.					
Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X
Explanation for ranking 1-The North MAR region is considered a cold-water coral hotspot, with about 200 species (Braga-					

Henriques *et al*., 2013; Sampaio *et al*., 2019) and more than 20 different types of coral gardens (Tempera *et al*., 2013) identified to date. A large proportion of cold-water corals belong to the subclass Octocorallia, with 98 species identified (Sampaio *et al*., 2019), representing the highest octocoral diversity given for European waters (75 per cent of Octocorallia recorded in European Register of Marine Species; Costello *et al*., 2001). Among these there are several examples of fauna endemic to the North MAR with the occurrence of species associations and habitats that do not exist elsewhere else in the Atlantic. 2- The faunal assemblage at the Moytirra vent field shows some high-level taxonomic similarities to assemblages at other known Mid-Atlantic Ridge vent fields, but also some differences in assemblage structure.					
Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.			X	
Naturalness was ranked at medium level as it does not remain totally natural due to fishing activities, despite a fishing closure banning bottom-trawling to protect vulnerable marine ecosystems in the Altair and Antialtair seamounts along the Northern Ridge of the Azores (ICES, 2007). *et al.*					

References

Arístegui, J., Mendonça, A., Vilas, J., Espino, M., Polo, I., Montero, M. & Martins, A. (2009) Plankton metabolic balance at two North Atlantic seamounts. Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 56(25): 2646–2655.

ATLAS (2018) Deliverable 1.6 Biologically realistic Lagrangian dispersal and connectivity. 62pp.

Beazley, L. I., Kenchington, E. L., Murillo, F. J., & Sacau, M. D. M. (2013). Deep-sea sponge grounds enhance diversity and abundance of epibenthic megafauna in the Northwest Atlantic. *ICES Journal of Marine Science*, *70*(7), 1471-1490. https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst124

Bell, J. B., Woulds, C., & van Oevelen, D. (2017). Hydrothermal activity, functional diversity and chemoautotrophy are major drivers of seafloor carbon cycling. *Scientific reports*, *7*(1), 12025. doi: 10.1038/s41598-017-12291-w

Bergstad, O. A., Falkenhaug, T., Astthorsson, O. S., Byrkjedal, I., Gebruk, A. V., Piatkowski, U., Priede I., Santos R., Vecchione M., Lorance P. & Gordon J. (2008). Towards improved understanding of the diversity and abundance patterns of the mid-ocean ridge macro-and megafauna. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 55(1): 1-5.

Bergstad, O., Gjelsvik, G., Schander, C., & Høines, Å. (2010). Feeding ecology of Coryphaenoides rupestris from the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. PloS one 5(5): e10453.

Bergstad, O., Menezes, G., Høines, Å., Gordon, J. & Galbraith, J. (2012). Patterns of distribution of deepwater demersal fishes of the North Atlantic mid-ocean ridge, continental slopes, islands and seamounts. Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 61: 74-83.

BirdLife International (2019). The Seabird Tracking Database. www.seabirdtracking.org

Boehlert, G. & Sasaki, T. (1988) Pelagic biogeography of the armourhead, Pseudopentaceros wheeleri, and recruitment to isolated seamounts in the North Pacific Ocean. Fishery Bulletin US 86: 453-465.

Bower, A., Le Cann, B., Rossby, T., Zenk, W., Gould, J., Speer, K., Richardson, P., Prater, M. & Zhang, H. (2002) Directly measured mid-depth circulation in the northeastern North Atlantic Ocean. Nature 419: 603 – 607.

Braga-Henriques, A., Porteiro, F. M., Ribeiro, P. A., Matos, V. D., Sampaio, Í., Ocaña, O., & Santos, R. S. (2013). Diversity, distribution and spatial structure of the cold-water coral fauna of the Azores (NE Atlantic). *Biogeosciences, 10*(6), 4009-4036.

Brewin, P., Stocks, K. & Menezes, G. (2007) A History of Seamount Research. Chapter 3. pp 41- 61. In Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. and Santos, R.S. (eds) Seamounts:

Ecology, Conservation and Management. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK.

Brix, H. & Gerdes, R. (2003) North Atlantic Deep Water and Antarctic Bottom Water: Their interaction and influence on the variability of the global ocean circulation. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 108(C2).

Buhl-Mortensen, L., Vanreusel, A., Gooday, A. J., Levin, L. A., Priede, I. G., Buhl-Mortensen, P., ... & Raes, M. (2010). Biological structures as a source of habitat heterogeneity and biodiversity on the deep ocean margins. *Marine Ecology*, *31*(1), 21-50.

Carreiro-Silva, M., Braga-Henriques, A., Sampaio, I., Matos, V., Porteiro, F., & Ocaña, O. (2011). Isozoanthus primnoidus, a new zoanthid species (Anthozoa: Hexacorallia) associated with the gorgonian Callogorgia verticillata (Anthozoa: Octocorallia) in the Azores. *ICES J. Mar. Sci, 68*, 408-415.

Carreiro-Silva, M., Ocaña, O. V., Stanković, D., Sampaio, I., Porteiro,, F., Fabri M-C., & Stefanni, S. (2017). Zoanthids associated with cold-water corals in the Azores Region: hidden diversity in the deep-sea in the deep-sea. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 4, 88.

Cathalot, C. C., Van Oevelen, D., Cox, T. J. S., Kutti, T., Lavaleye, M. S. S., Duineveld, G. C. A., *et al*. (2015). Cold-water coral reefs and adjacent sponge grounds: hotspots of benthic respiration and organic carbon cycling in the deep sea. Frontiers in Marine Science 2, 1–12. doi:10.3389/fmars.2015.00037.

Christiansen, B. & Wolff, G. (2009) The oceanography, biogeochemistry and ecology of two NE Atlantic seamounts: The OASIS project. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 56(25): 2579-2581.

Clark, M. R., Althaus, F., Schlacher, T. A., Williams, A., Bowden, D. A., & Rowden, A. A. (2015). The impacts of deep-sea fisheries on benthic communities: a review. *ICES Journal of Marine Science*, *73*(suppl_1), i51-i69.

Clark, M. R., Bowden, D. A., Rowden, A. A., & Stewart, R. (2019). Little evidence of benthic community resilience to bottom trawling on seamounts after 15 years. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, *6*, 63.

Clark, M., Vinnichenko, V., Gordon, J., Beck-Bulat, G., Kukharev, N. & Kakora, A. (2007) Large-scale distant-water trawl fisheries on seamounts. In: Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N., Santos, R.S. (Eds.), Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation. Blackwell, Oxford, pp. 361-399.

Costello, M. (2001). *European register of marine species: a check-list of the marine species in Europe and a bibliography of guides to their identification*. Paris: Muséum national d'histoire naturelle.

Danke, L. (1987). Some particularities of roundnose grenadier (Coryphaenoides rupestris Gunn.) in the North Mid-Atlantic Ridge region. *NAFO Scient. Counc. Res. Doc*, *87*(78), 10.

Davies, A. J., & Guinotte, J. M. (2011). Global habitat suitability for framework-forming cold-water corals. *PloS one*, *6*(4), e18483.

de Forges de, B., Koslow, J. & Poore, G. (2000) Diversity and endemism of the benthic seamount fauna in the south-west Pacific. Nature 405: 944–47.

de Matos V., Braga-Henriques A, Santos RS, Ribeiro PA (2014) New species of *Heteropathes* (Anthozoa: Antipatharia) expands genus distribution to the NE Atlantic. Zootaxa 3827:293–300

Dias, N., Matias, L., Lourenço, N., Madeira, J., Carrilho, F. & Gaspar, J. (2007) Crustal seismic velocity structure near Faial and Pico Islands (AZORES), from local earthquake tomography. Tectonophysics 445(3): 301-317.

Dinter W. (2001) Biogeography of the OSPAR Maritime Area. A synopsis and synthesis of biogeographical distribution patterns described for the North-East Atlantic. Federal Agency for Nature Conservation, Bundesamt für Naturschutz, Bonn. Germany. 167 pp.

Ebert, D. A., & Stehmann, M. F. (2013). *Sharks, batoids and chimaeras of the North Atlantic*. FAO, Roma (Italia).

Edmond, J., Measures, C., McDuff, R., Chan, L., Collier, R. & Grant, B. (1979). Ridge crest hydrothermal activity and the balances of the major and minor elements in the ocean; the Galapagos data. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 46(1): 1-18.

Epp, D. & Smoot, N. (1989) Distribution of seamounts in the North Atlantic. Nature 337: 254-257.

Etnoyer, P. & Warrenchuk, J. (2007) A catshark nursery in a deep gorgonian field in the Mississipi Canyon, Gulf of Mexico. Bulletin of Marine Science 81: 553−559.

Falkowski, P., Barber, R. & Smetacek, V. (1998) Biogeochemical controls and feedbacks on ocean primary production. Science 281: 200 – 206.

Fallon, S.J., James, K., Norman, R., Kelly, M. & Ellwood, M.J. 2010. A simple radiocarbon dating method for determining the age and growth rate of deep-sea sponges. Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research, Section B: Beam Interactions with Materials and Atoms. 268(7–8): 1241–1243.

FAO (2007) State of the World's Forests 2007. Rome. www.fao.org/docrep/009/a0773e/a0773e00.htm.

FAO, 2009. Report of the Technical Consultation on International Guidelines for the Management of Deep-sea Fisheries in the High Seas, Rome. 4–8 February and 25–29 August 2008, FAO Fisheries and Aquaculture Report, 881. 86 pp.

Fossen, I., Cotton, C. F., Bergstad, O. A., & Dyb, J. E. (2008). Species composition and distribution patterns of fishes captured by longlines on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*, *55*(1-2), 203-217.

Freese, J. (2001) Trawl-induced damage to sponges observed from a research submersible. Marine Fisheries Review 63: 38–42.

Freese, L., Auster, P., Heifetz, J. & Wing, B. (1999) Effects of trawling on seafloor habitat and associated invertebrate taxa in the Gulf of Alaska. Marine Ecology Progress Series 182: 119 –126.

Garrison, T. 2005. Oceanography: An Invitation to Marine Science. 5thed. Belmont, California: Brooks/Cole-Thomson Learning. 522 pp.

Gebruk, A., Budaeva, N. & King, N. (2010) Bathyal benthic fauna of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge between the Azores and the Reykjanes Ridge. Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom 90(01): 1-14.

Girard, F., Lacharité, M., & Metaxas, A. (2016). Colonization of benthic invertebrates in a submarine canyon in the NW Atlantic. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, *544*, 53-64.

Gomes-Pereira, J. N., Carmo, V., Catarino, D., Jakobsen, J., Alvarez, H., Aguilar, R., ... & Colaço, A. (2017). Cold-water corals and large hydrozoans provide essential fish habitat for Lappanella fasciata and Benthocometes robustus. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*, *145*, 33-48.

Gubbay, S. (2003) Seamounts of the North-East Atlantic. WWF Germany, Frankfurtam Main, Germany.

Hareide, N. & Garnes, G. (2001) The distribution and catch rates of deep water fish along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge from 43 to 61 N. Fisheries research 51(2): 297-310.

Harvey, J., & Arhan, M. (1988) The water masses of the central North Atlantic in 1983-84. Journal of Physical Oceanography 18(12): 1855-1875.

Heger, A., Ieno, E., King, N., Morris, K., Bagley, P. & Priede, I. (2008). Deep-sea pelagic bioluminescence over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 55(1): 126-136.

Henry, L. A., Navas, J. M., Hennige, S. J., Wicks, L. C., Vad, J., & Roberts, J. M. (2013). Cold-water coral reef habitats benefit recreationally valuable sharks. *Biological Conservation*, *161*, 67-70.

Henry, L., Vad, J., Findlay, H., Murillo, J., Milligan, R. & Roberts, J. (2014). Environmental variability and biodiversity of megabenthos on the Hebrides Terrace Seamount (Northeast Atlantic). Scientific reports 4: 5589.

Hilário, A., Metaxas, A., Gaudron, S.M., Howell, K.L, Mercier, A., Mestre, N.C., Ross, R.E., Thurnherr, A.M. & Young, C.Y. (2015). Estimating Dispersal Distance in the Deep Sea: Challenges and Applications to Marine Reserves. *Frontiers in Marine Science* 2. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmars.2015.00006.

Hoagland, P., Beaulieu, S., Tivey, M., Eggert, R., German, C., Glowka, L. & Lin, J. (2010) Deep-sea mining of seafloor massive sulfides. Marine Policy 34(3): 728-732.

ICES (2005) Report of the Working Group on Deep-water Ecology (WGDEC), 8-11 March 2005, ICES Headquarters, Copenhagen. ICES CM 2005/ACE:02. 76 pp.

ICES (2007) Report of the Working Group on Deep-water Ecology (WGDEC), 26-28 February 2007, . ICES CM 2007/ACE:01 Ref. LRC. 61 pp.

ICES (2008) Report of the Workshop on Methods to Evaluate and Estimate the Accuracy of Fisheries Data used for Assessment (WKACCU), 27–30 October 2008, Bergen, Norway. ICES CM 2008\ACOM:32. 41 pp.

IUCN (2011) IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. Version 2011.2. Available: http://www.iucnredlist.org.

Koslow, J. (1996) Energetic and life-history patterns of deep-sea benthic, benthopelagic and seamount associated fish. Journal of Fish Biology 49(Suppl A): 54–74.

Koslow, J. (1997) Seamounts and the ecology of deep-sea fisheries. Americam Scientist 85: 168-176.

Krautter, M., Conway, K. W., Barrie, J. V., & Neuweiler, M. (2001). Discovery of a “living dinosaur”: globally unique modern hexactinellid sponge reefs off British Columbia, Canada. *Facies*, *44*(1), 265-282.

Kukuev, E. I. (2006). The second capture of a rare shark Scymnodalatias garricki (Dalatiidae) on a rise of the South Azores Complex and additional data on the distribution of S. albicauda. *Journal of Ichthyology*, *46*(9), 811-814.

Kukuev, E. I., & Pavlov, V. P. (2008). The first case of mass catch of a rare frill shark Chlamydoselachus anguineus over a seamount of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Journal of Ichthyology*, *48*(8), 676-678.

Kukuyev, E. I. (1988). Two new species of sharks of the genus Scymnodalatias (Dalatiidae) from the North Atlantic and southeastern Pacific oceans. *Voprosy ikhtiologii*, *2*, 315-319.

Kunze, E. & Llewellyn Smith, S. (2004) The role of small-scale topography in turbulent mixing of the global ocean. Oceanography 17(1): 55–64.

Kyne, P. M., & Simpfendorfer, C. A. (2007). A collation and summarization of available data on deepwater Chondrichthyans: biodiversity, life history and fisheries. IUCN Shark Specialist Group. *Available at ht tp://www. flmnh. ufl. edu/fish/organizations/ssg/deepchondreport. pdf*.

Levin, L. A., Baco, A. R., Bowden, D. A., Colaco, A., Cordes, E. E., Cunha, M. R., ... & Metaxas, A. (2016). Hydrothermal vents and methane seeps: rethinking the sphere of influence. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, *3*, 72. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2016.00072

Leys, S. P., & Lauzon, N. R. (1998). Hexactinellid sponge ecology: growth rates and seasonality in deep water sponges. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, *230*(1), 111-129.

Lopes, D. A., & Tabachnick, K. R. (2013). New data on glass sponges (Porifera, Hexactinellida) of the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Part 1. Farreidae. *Marine Biology Research*, *9*(5-6), 462-468.

Machín, F., Pelegrí, J., Emelianov, M., Isern-Fontanet, J., White, M., Bashmachnikov, I. & Mohn, C. (2009) Mass and nutrient fluxes around Sedlo Seamount. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 56(25): 2606-2617.

Magalhães, M., Santos, R. & Hamer, K. (2008) Dual-foraging of Cory’s shearwaters in the Azores: feeding locations, behaviour at sea and implications for food provisioning of chicks. Marine Ecology Progress Series 359: 283-293.

Matthews, D., Laughton, A., Pugh, D., Sunderland, J., Taliin, M., & Bacon, M. (1969). Crustal Structure and Origin of Peake and Freen Deeps, NE Atlantic. Geophysical Journal of the Royal Astronomical Society 18: 517–542.

McCartney, M. (1992) Recirculating components to the deep boundary current of the northern North Atlantic. Progress in Oceanography 29(4): 283-383.

Melo, O. & Menezes, G. (2002) Exploratory fishing of the orange roughy (Hoplostethus atlanticus) in some seamounts of the Azores archipelago. ICES CM 2002/M:26.

Menezes G., Rosa, A., Melo, O. & Pinho M. (2009) Demersal fish assemblages off the Seine and Sedlo seamounts (northeast Atlantic). Deep sea research II 56: 2683–2704.

Menezes, G., Rosa, A., Melo, O. & Porteiro, F. (2012) Annotated list of demersal fishes occurring at Sedlo Seamount, Azores north-east central Atlantic Ocean. Journal of Fish Biology 81(3): 1003-1018.

Mohn, C., White, M., Bashmachnikov, I., Jose, F. & Pelegrí, J. (2009) Dynamics at an elongated, intermediate depth seamount in the North Atlantic (Sedlo Seamount, 40°20′N, 26°40′W). Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 56(25): 2582–2592.

Molodtsova, T. N. (2013). Deep-sea mushroom soft corals (Octocorallia: Alcyonacea: Alcyoniidae) of the northern mid-Atlantic ridge. *Marine Biology Research*, *9*(5-6), 488-515.

Molodtsova, T. N. (2016). New records of Heteropathes Opresko, 2011 (Anthozoa: Antipatharia) from the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Marine Biodiversity*, 47: 179–186

Morato, T. & Clark, M. (2007). Seamount fishes: ecology and life histories. Chapter 9 In:Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. & Santos, R.S. (eds) Seamounts: ecology, fisheries & conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. pp. 170 - 188.

Morato, T. & Pauly, D. (2004). Seamounts: Biodiversity and fisheries. Fisheries Centre, University of British Columbia.

Morato, T., Allain, V., Hoyle, S. & Nicol, S. (2009) Tuna Longline Fishing around West and Central Pacific Seamounts. Information Paper. Scientific Committee, Fifth Regular Session, 10-21 August 2009, Port Vila, Vanuatu. WCPFC-SC5-2009/EB-IP-04. Western and Central Pacific Fisheries Commission, Palikir, Pohnpei.

Morato, T., Cheung, W. & Pitcher, T. (2006) Vulnerability of seamount fish to fishing: fuzzy analysis of life history attributes. Journal of Fish Biology 68: 209–221.

Morato, T., Hoyle, S., Allain, V., & Nicol, S. (2010) Seamounts are hotspots of pelagic biodiversity in the open ocean. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America 107(21): 9707–9711.

Morato, T., Kvile, K., Taranto, G., Tempera, F., Narayanaswamy, B., Hebbeln, D., Menezes, G., Wienberg, C., Santos, R. & Pitcher, T. J. (2012). Seamount physiography and biology in North-East Atlantic and Mediterranean Sea. Biogeosciences Discussions 9(12): 18951-18992.

Morato, T., Varkey, D., Damaso, C., Machete, M., Santos, M., Prieto, R., Santos, R. & Pitcher, T. (2008) Evidence of a seamount effect on aggregating visitors. Marine Ecology Progress Series 357: 23-32.

Mortensen, P., Buhl-Mortensen, L., Gebruk, A. & Krylova, E. (2008) Occurrence of deep-water corals on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge based on MAR-ECO data. Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 55(1-2): 142–152.

Muñoz, P. D., Román, E., González, F., & Apartado, C. O. D. V. (2000). Results of a deep-water experimental fishing in the North Atlantic: an example of cooperative research with the fishing industry. ICES CM. 2000/W:04 p. 1-15

Nielsen, J., Hedeholm, R. B., Heinemeier, J., Bushnell, P. G., Christiansen, J. S., Olsen, J., ... & Steffensen, J. F. (2016). Eye lens radiocarbon reveals centuries of longevity in the Greenland shark (Somniosus microcephalus). *Science*, *353*(6300), 702-704.

OASIS (2006) Final Scientific and Technical Report for the period 01.12.2002-30.11.2005. Oceanic Seamounts: an Integrated Study, contract number EVK3-CT-2002-00073-OASIS. 52 pp.

O'Leary, B., Brown, R., Johnson, D., Von Nordheim, H., Ardron, J., Packeiser, T., & Roberts, M. (2012). The first network of marine protected areas (MPAs) in the high seas: the process, the challenges and where next. Marine Policy 36(3): 598-605.

Opdal, A. F., Godø, O. R., Bergstad, O. A., & Fiksen, Ø. (2008). Distribution, identity, and possible processes sustaining meso-and bathypelagic scattering layers on the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*, *55*(1-2), 45-58.

Orlov, A., Cottom, C. & Byrkjedal, I. (2006) Deepwater skates (Rajidae) collected during the 2004 cruises of R.V. “G.O. Sars” and M.S. “Loran” in the Mid-Atlantic Ridge area. Cybium 30(4): 35 – 48.

OSPAR (2009) Background document on Lophelia pertusa reefs Biodiversity Series, Publication No 423/2009 Available at https://www.ospar.org/work-areas/bdc/species-habitats/list-of-threatened-declining-species-habitats.

OSPAR (2010) Quality Status Report 2010. OSPAR Commission. London. 176 pp.

OSPAR (2010d) Background Document for Deep-sea sponge aggregations. Biodiversity Series Available at: https://www.ospar.org/work-areas/bdc/species-habitats/list-of-threatened-declining-species-habitats

OSPAR (2011) OSPAR Convention for the Protection of the Marine Environment of the North-East Atlantic Meeting of the OSPAR Commission (OSPAR) London: 20-24 June 2011.

OSPAR (2013) OSPAR Decision 2010/3 on the Establishment of the Altair Seamount High Seas Marine Protected Area, OSPAR 10/23/1-E, Annex 38 .

OSPAR 2010a), Background Document for Seamounts. Biodiversity Series, Publication No. 492/2010.

OSPAR 2010b), Background Document for Oceanic ridges with hydrothermal vents/fields. Biodiversity Series, Publication No. 490/2010 Available at https://www.ospar.org/work-areas/bdc/species-habitats/list-of-threatened-declining-species-habitats.

OSPAR 2010c). Background document for coral gardens. Biodiversity Series, Publication Number: 486/2010 Available at: https://www.ospar.org/work-areas/bdc/species-habitats/list-of-threatened-declining-species-habitats.

Pakhorukov, N. (2008) Visual observations of fish from seamounts of the Southern Azores Region (the Atlantic Ocean). Journal of Ichthyology 48: 114–123.

Pham, C. K., Vandeperre, F., Menezes, G., Porteiro, F., Isidro, E., & Morato, T. (2015). The importance of deep-sea vulnerable marine ecosystems for demersal fish in the Azores. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*, *96*, 80-88.

Pitcher, T., Morato, T., Hart, P., Clark, M., Haggan, N. & Santos, R. (2007) Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries, and Conservation, Blackwell Fisheries and Aquatic Resources Series, Vol. 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, 527 pp.

Pollard, R., Griffiths, M., Cunningham, S., Read, J., Pérez, F. & Ríos, A. (1996). Vivaldi 1991—A study of the formation, circulation and ventilation of eastern North Atlantic Central Water. Progress in Oceanography 37: 167–192.

Priede, I. G., Bergstad, O. A., Miller, P. I., Vecchione, M., Gebruk, A., Falkenhaug, T., ... & Lorance, P. (2013). Does presence of a mid-ocean ridge enhance biomass and biodiversity?. *PloS one*, *8*(5), e61550. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0061550.

Ramirez-Llodra, E., Tyler, P., Baker, M., Bergstad, O., Clark, M., Escobar, E., Levin, L., Menot, L., Rowden, A., Craig, S. & Van Dover, C. L. (2011). Man and the last great wilderness: human impact on the deep sea PLoS One 6(8): e22588.

Richardson, P., Bower, A. & Zenk, W. (2000) A census of Meddies tracked by floats. Progress in Oceanography 45: 209–250.

Roark, E., Guilderson, T., Dunbar, R. & Ingram, B. (2006) Radiocarbon-based ages and growth rates of Hawaiian deep-sea corals. Marine Ecology Progress Series 327: 1–14.

Roberts, J. M., Wheeler, A., Freiwald, A., & Cairns, S. (2009). *Cold-water corals: the biology and geology of deep-sea coral habitats*. Cambridge University Press.

Roberts, J., Wheeler, A. & Freiwald, A. (2006) Reefs of the deep: The biology and geology of cold-water coral ecosystems. Science 213: 543–547.

Rogers, A., Clark, M., Hall-Spencer, J. & Gjerde, K. (2008) The Science behind the Guidelines: A Scientific Guide to the FAO Draft International Guidelines (December 2007) for the Management of Deep-sea Fisheries in the High Seas and Examples of How the Guidelines May Be Practically Implemented. IUCN, Switzerland.

Rossby, T. (1999). On gyre interactions. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 46(1): 139-164.

Rowden, A. A., Dower, J. F., Schlacher, T. A., Consalvey, M., & Clark, M. R. (2010). Paradigms in seamount ecology: fact, fiction and future. *Marine Ecology*, *31*, 226-241.

Samadi, S., Bottan, L., Macpherson, E., Richer de Forges, B. & Boisselier, M. (2006) Seamount endemism questioned by the geographical distribution and population genetic structure of marine invertebrates. Marine Biology 149: 1463–75.

Samadi, S., Schlacher, T. & de Forges, B. (2007) Seamount benthos. In: Pitcher, T.J., T. Morato, P.J.B. Hart, M.R. Clark, N. Haggan and R.S. Santos (Eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom, pp 119-140.

Sampaio, Í., Freiwald, A., Porteiro, F. M., Menezes, G., & Carreiro-Silva, M. (2019). Census of Octocorallia (Cnidaria: Anthozoa) of the Azores (NE Atlantic): a nomenclature update. *Zootaxa*, 4550 (4), 451–498. http://dx.doi.org/10.11646/zootaxa.4550.4.1.

Santos, M. A., Bolten, A. B., Martins, H. R., Riewald, B., & Bjorndal, K. A. (2008). Air-Breathing Visitors to Seamounts: Sea Turtles. Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation, 239-244.

Santos, M., Bolten, A., Martins, H., Riewald, B. & Bjorndal, K. (2007) Air-breathing Visitors to Seamounts: Sea Turtles. Chapter 12 Section B. in Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N. and Santos, R.S. (eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Conservation and Management. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series, Blackwell, Oxford, UK. pp. 239-244.

Santos, R. S., Christiansen, S., Christiansen, B., & Gubbay, S. (2009). Toward the conservation and management of Sedlo Seamount: A case study. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 56(25), 2720-2730.

Silveira, G., Vinnik, L., Stutzmann, E., Farra, V., Kiselev, S. & Morais, I. (2010) Stratification of the Earth beneath the Azores from P and S receiver functions. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 299(1): 91-103.

Smith, J., Campbell, B., Hanson, T., Zhang, C. & Cary, S. (2008) Nautilia profundicola sp. nov., a thermophilic, sulfur-reducing epsilonproteobacterium from deep-sea hydrothermal vents. International journal of systematic and evolutionary microbiology 58(7): 1598-1602

Søiland, H., Budgell, W. & Knutsen, Ø. (2008) The physical oceanographic conditions along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge north of the Azores in June-July 2004. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 29 – 44.

Staudigel, H. & Clague, D. (2010) The geological history of deep-sea volcanoes: Biosphere, hydrosphere, and lithosphere interactions. Oceanography 23(1): 58–71.

Synnes, M. (2007) Bioprospecting of organisms from the deep-sea: scientific and environmental aspects. Clean Technologies and Environmental Policy 9(1): 53 – 59.

Tabachnick, K. & Menchenina, L. (2007). Revision of the genus Asconema (Porifera: Hexactinellida:Rossellidae). Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the UK 87: 1403–1429.

Tabachnick, K. & Menchenina, L. (2007). Revision of the genus Asconema (Porifera: Hexactinellida:Rossellidae). Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the UK 87: 1403–1429.

Tabachnick, K. R., & Menshenina, L. L. (2013). New data on glass sponges (Porifera, Hexactinellida) of the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Part 2. Aphrocallistidae, Euretidae, Euplectellidae and Rossellidae (with descriptions of two new species of Sympagella). *Marine Biology Research*, *9*(5-6), 469-487.

Tempera, F., Carreiro-Silva, M., Jakobsen, K., Porteiro, F. M., Braga-Henriques, A., & Jakobsen, J. (2015). An Eguchipsammia (Dendrophylliidae) topping on the cone. *Marine Biodiversity*, *45*(1), 3-4.

Thornburg, C., Zabriskie, T., & McPhail, K. (2010) Deep-Sea Hydrothermal Vents: Potential Hot Spots for Natural Products Discovery? Journal of natural products 73(3): 489-499.

Tittensor, D. P., Baco, A. R., Hall-Spencer, J. M., Orr, J. C., & Rogers, A. D. (2010). Seamounts as refugia from ocean acidification for cold-water stony corals. *Marine Ecology*, *31*, 212-225.

Tracey, D., Neil, H., Gordon, D. & O'Shea, S. (2003) Chronicles of the deep: ageing deep-sea corals in New Zealand waters. Water and Atmosphere 11: 22 –24.

Tunnicliffe, V., Fowler, C. & Mcarthur, A. (1996). Plate tectonic history and hot vent biogeography. Geological Society, London, Special Publications 118(1): 225-238.

Van den Hove, S. & Moreau, V. (2007) Ecosystems and Biodiversity in Deep Waters and High Seas: A scoping report on their socio-economy, management and governance. Switzerland: UNEP-WCMC. 84 pp.

Van Dover, C. (2011) Tighten regulations on deep-sea mining. Nature 470(7332): 31-33.

Van Dover, C. (2000). *The ecology of deep-sea hydrothermal vents*. Princeton University Press.

Van Dover, C. (2000). *The ecology of deep-sea hydrothermal vents*. Princeton University Press.

Van Dover, C. L., Arnaud-Haond, S., Gianni, M., Helmreich, S., Huber, J. A., Jaeckel, A. L., ... & Steinberg, P. E. (2018). Scientific rationale and international obligations for protection of active hydrothermal vent ecosystems from deep-sea mining. Marine Policy, 90, 20-28.

Van Dover, C., Desbruyères, D., Segonzac, M., Comtet, T., Saldanha, L., Fiala-Medioni, A., & Langmuir, C. (1996) Biology of the Lucky Strike hydrothermal field. Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 43(9), 1509-1529.

Van Dover, C., German, C., Speer, K., Parson, L. & Vrijenhoek, R. (2002) Evolution and biogeography of deep-sea vent and seep invertebrates. Science 295(5558): 1253-1257.

Van Oevelen, D. V., Duineveld, G., Lavaleye, M., Mienis, F., Soetaert, K., & Heip, C. H. (2009). The cold-water coral community as hotspot of carbon cycling on continental margins: A food-web analysis from Rockall Bank (northeast Atlantic). Limnology and Oceanography, 54(6), 1829-1844.

Varentsov, I., Gevork'yan, V. & Serebrennikova, N. (1988). the Geochemistry of Ferromanganese of Altair Seamount, Atlantic Ocean. International Geology Review 30(11): 1246–1256.

Vrijenhoek, R. (2010). Genetic diversity and connectivity of deep-sea hydrothermal vent metapopulations Molecular Ecology 19(20): 4391-4411.

Watling, L., Haedrich, R.L., Devine, J., Drazen, J., Dunn, M.R., Gianni, M., Baker, K., Cailliet, G., Figueiredo, I., Kyne, P.M., Menezes, G., Neat, F., Orlov, A., Duran, P., Perez, J.A., Ardron, J.A., Bezaury, J., Revenga, C. & Nouvian, C. (2011). *Can ecosystem-based deep-sea fishing be sustained? Report of a workshop held 31 August-3 September 2010. Walpole*, ME: University of Maine, Darling Marine Center. Darling Marine Center Special Publication 11-1. 84p.

Weaver, A., Bitz, C., Fanning, A. & Holland, M. (1999) Thermohaline circulation: High-latitude phenomena and the difference between the Pacific and Atlantic. Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences 27(1): 231-285.

Webb, T., Vanden Berghe, E. & O'Dor, R. (2010) Biodiversity's big wet secret: the global distribution of marine biological records reveals chronic underexploration of the deep pelagic ocean. PLoS ONE 5(8): e10223.

Wheeler, A. J., Murton, B., Copley, J., Lim, A., Carlsson, J., Collins, P., Dorsche,l B., Green, D., Judge, M., Nye, V., Benzie, J., Antoniacomi, A., Coughlan, M. & Morris, K. (2013). Moytirra: Discovery of the first known deep-sea hydrothermal vent field on the slow-spreading Mid-Atlantic Ridge north of the Azores. Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystems 14(10): 4170-4184.

White, M., Bashmachnikov, I., Aristegui, J. & Martins, A. (2007) Physical processes and seamount productivity. In: Pitcher, T., Morato T., Hart, P., Clark, M., Haggan, N. & Santos, R. (Eds) Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation. Fish and Aquatic Resources Series 12, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom, pp 65-84.

White, M., Wolff, G. A., Lundälv, T., Guihen, D., Kiriakoulakis, K., Lavaleye, M. S. S., *et al*. (2012). Cold-water coral ecosystem (Tisler Reef, Norwegian shelf) may be a hotspot for carbon cycling. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 465, 11–23.

Wisshak, M., Neumann, C., Jakobsen, J. and Freiwald, A. (2009) The 'living-fossil community'of the cyrtocrinid Cyathidium foresti and the deep-sea oyster Neopycnodonte zibrowii (Azores Archipelago). Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology, 271(1-2), pp.77-83.

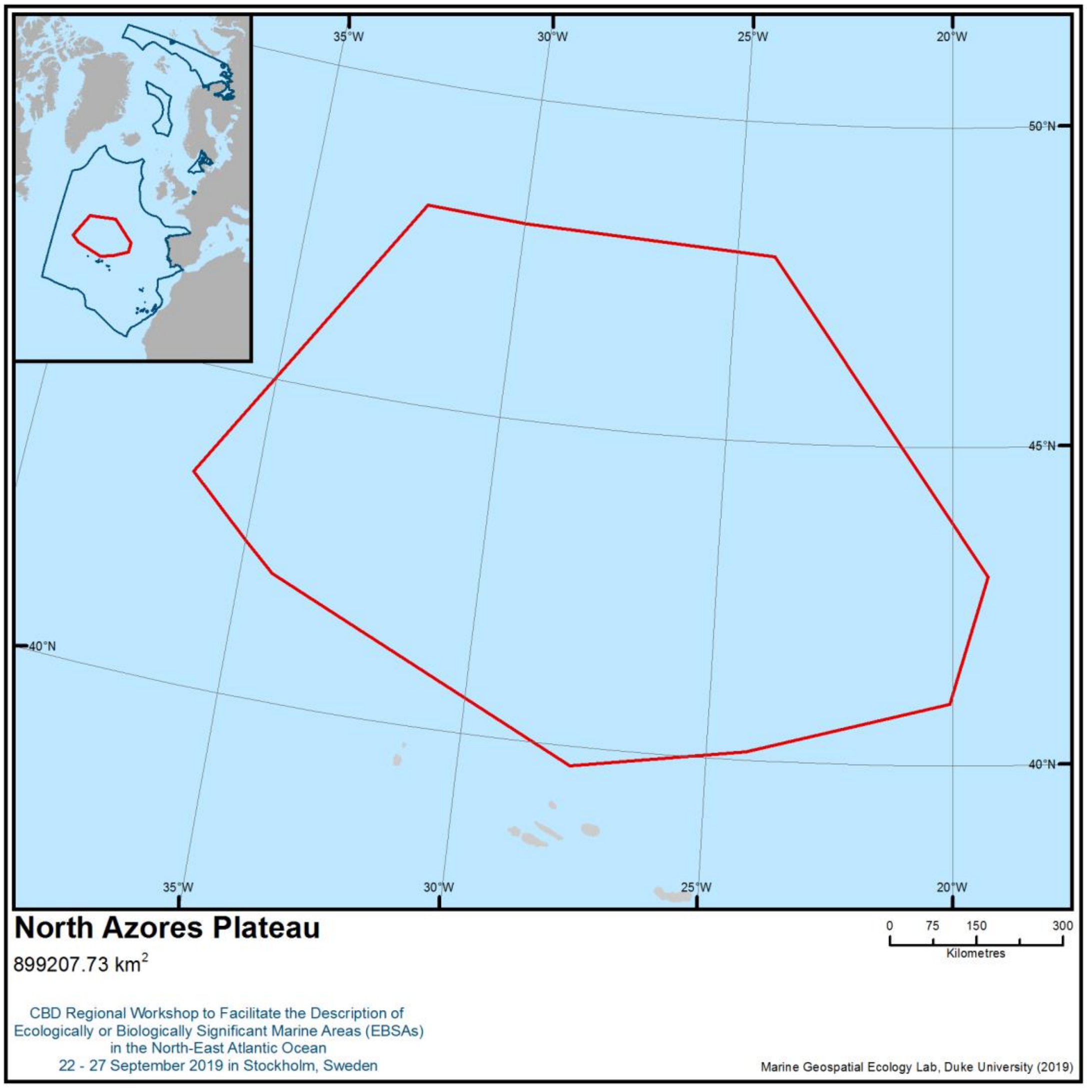
WWF (2001) Implementation of the EU Habitats Directive Offshore: Natura 2000 sites for reefs and submerged seabanks. Vol. II. Northeast Atlantic and North Sea, 87pp. World Wildlife Fund.

Xavier, J., Magalhães, M., Mendonça, A., Antunes, M., Carvalho, N., Machete, M., Santos, R., Paiva, V. & Hamer, K. (2011) Changes in diet of Cory's Shearwaters Calonectris diomedea breeding in the Azores. Marine Ornithology 39: 129-134.

Yesson, C., Taylor, M. L., Tittensor, D. P., Davies, A. J., Guinotte, J., Baco, A., ... & Rogers, A. D. (2012). Global habitat suitability of cold-water octocorals. *Journal of Biogeography*, *39*(7), 1278-1292.

Zolotarev, B. (1984). Volcanic Formations of the Second Layer of the Oceanic Crust. Trudy 27 Mezhdunarodnogo geologicheskogo kongressa 6(part1): 138-147.

Maps and Figures



Location of area no. 13: North Azores Plateau

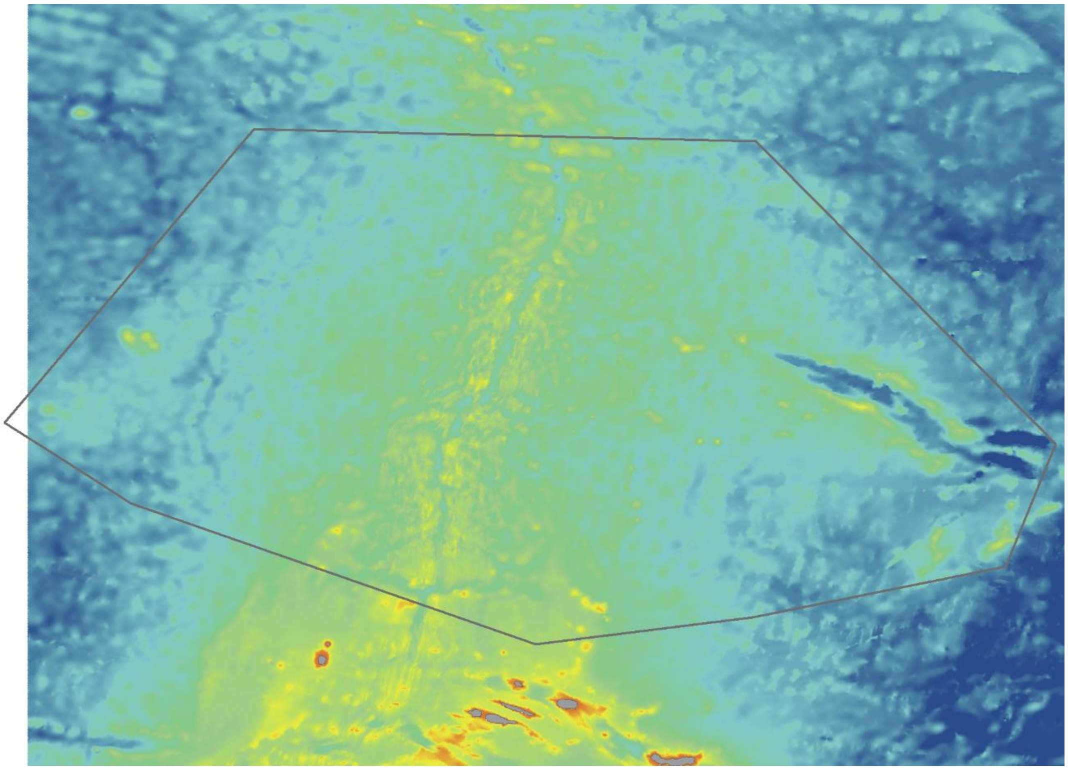


Figure 1. Structures included in North Azores Plateau area

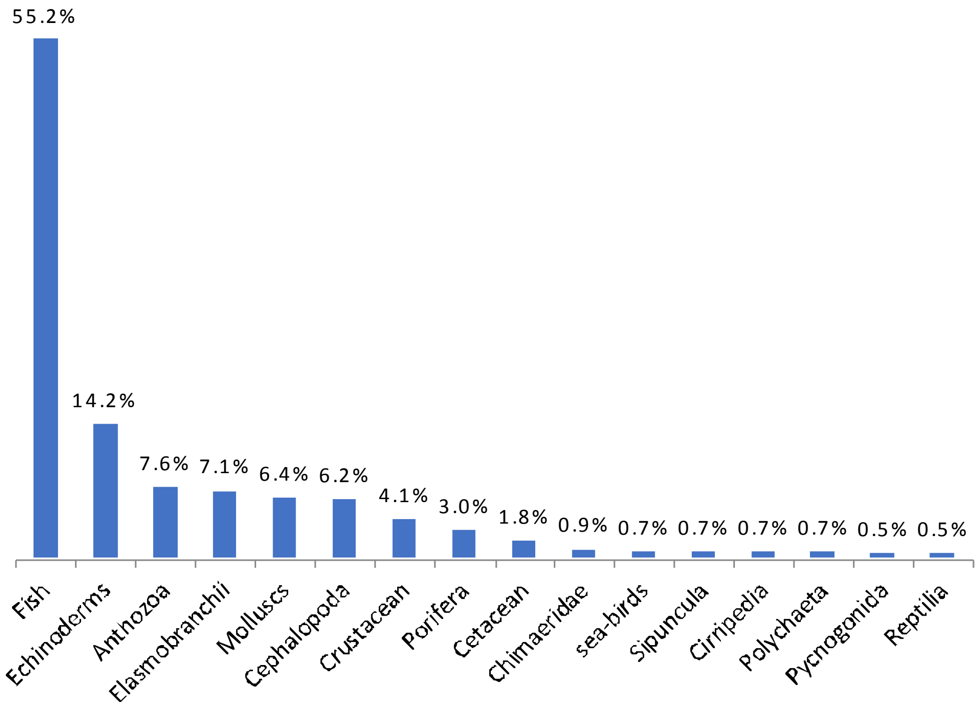


Figure 2. Relative frequency (per cent) of the different phylum/class/order of the species identified in the North Azores Plateau area.

Rights and permissions

Only processed and analysed information is included here, and the results from these analyses are publicly available.

Area no. 14:
Mid-North-Atlantic Frontal System

Abstract

The Mid-North-Atlantic Frontal System is a remote area of intense mesoscale activity with near-stationary eddies and numerous thermal fronts aligned in zonal bands. These fronts and eddies enhance primary productivity and retain and concentrate secondary productivity both vertically and horizontally. The combination of localised high-intensity mixing in the eddies results in patchy, high surface, productivity at fine scales. Tracking data collected for seabirds, whales, sea-turtles, tunas and sharks (several of which are globally threatened) confirm that this is an area of high productivity, with a high intensity of foraging activity, suggesting that productivity cascades to higher trophic levels.

Introduction

The North-Atlantic Current (NAC) is the main northward branch of the Gulf Stream (Krauss 1986, Rossby 1996), transporting warm water towards higher latitudes. After splitting from the Gulf Stream near the Tail of the Grand Banks of Newfoundland and extending north into the Labrador Sea, the NAC turns east at the so-called Northwest Corner and flows eastward. The front associated with the NAC is called the Subpolar (or Subarctic) Front (Belkin & Levitus 1996). The Subpolar Front is a relatively wide region that separates the subtropical gyre from the subpolar gyre and where the main thermocline shoals to the surface (Rossby 1996). The NAC is different from surrounding areas and can be visualised through satellite altimetry and NEMO (Nucleus for European Modelling of the Ocean) ocean models (e.g., Miller *et al*. 2013; Marzocchi *et al*. 2015) and oceanographic sections (Belkin & Levitus 1996) (see also Figures 1-2). The NAC pathways are not randomly located but remain between a number of preferred latitudes, with surface thermal fronts appearing in a banded structure, aligned west to east in the area south of the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone (CGFZ), and aligned roughly SW to NE in the north; this alignment follows the direction of the NAC (Miller *et al*. 2013). The NAC is a transition zone and has a wide banded structure with distinct water types that get progressively cooler and fresher from south to north separated by the three branches and their density fronts. The fronts are associated with vigorous vertical velocities (bringing nutrients to the surface) and some horizontal exchange, especially southward from the subpolar region (Dutkiewicz *et al*. 2001; Figures 1-2). Density contrasts across the fronts lead to instability and the development of eddies (Volkov 2005). These eddies enhance and concentrate primary production and represent an important habitat for oceanic higher predators, including seabirds, as evident from studies on seabirds, turtles, whales, sharks and tunas (e.g., Hays *et al*. 2004, Walli *et al*. 2009, Egevang *et al*. 2010, Dias *et al*. 2011, 2012, Gilg *et al*. 2013; Queiroz *et al*. 2016), which frequently target areas of higher prey availability. A large quantity of seabird tracking data confirms this is an area of high productivity, with a high intensity of foraging activity in the area (BirdLife International 2019a, Figure 3a). Seabird tracking data shows 21 species of seabird foraging in the area including endangered Zino's petrel (*Pterodroma madeira),* endangered Bermuda petrel (*Pterodroma cahow),* vulnerable Atlantic puffin (*Fratercula arctica),* and vulnerable black-legged kittiwake (*Rissa tridactyla).*

This site is identified from in situ and remote sensing (or satellite) data and validated with biological data (tracking data collected for seabirds and other marine megafauna).

Location

This area has a well-defined western boundary (front), defined by the maritime boundary of the OSPAR Commission. It extends north along the east flank of the Grand Banks, where it forms a loop called the Northwest Corner and continues to the east. The northern boundary is defined by the northern extent of the Subpolar Front at 54°N. The North Subarctic Front is topographically fixed at the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone (Belkin & Levitus 1996), at 30°W. It is known that the North Atlantic Current and frontal branches vary strongly, with latitudinal shifts up to 250-300 km (Belkin & Levitus 1996). Thus, maps of annual means have been used to ensure the full temporal variability has been captured (Marzocchi *et al.* 2015; Figure 2).

Feature description of the area

The area includes the water column and surface used by seabirds and other marine top predators as foraging areas throughout the year, as revealed by recent telemetry studies (see Figures 3-5; e.g., Dias *et al*. 2011, 2012; Egevang *et al*. 2010; Frederiksen *et al*. 2016; Frederiksen *et al*. 2012; Gilg *et al*. 2013; Hedd *et al*. 2012; Kopp *et al*. 2011; Queiroz *et al*. 2016;). Some seabird species travel to this area during the breeding season, mostly from colonies located in the Azores (e.g., Magalhães *et al*. 2008) and Madeira (Silva *et al*. 2019, Figure 3). The area is also very important as a stopover site during the migration of Arctic species such as the Arctic tern (*Sterna paradisea)* and the long-tailed jaeger (*Stercorarius longicaudus)* (Egevang *et al*. 2010, Gilg *et al*. 2013), and as a wintering ground for species both from the North and the South Atlantic (e.g., Atlantic Puffin–*Fratercula arctica*, black-legged kittiwake–*Rissa tridactyla*, Cory's shearwater–*Calonectris diomedea*, great shearwater–*Ardenna gravis*, sooty shearwater– *Ardenna grisea* and South Polar skua–*Catharacta maccormicki*; Dias *et al*. 2011, 2012, Kopp *et al*. 2011, Hedd *et al*. 2012; Figure 3). Twenty-one species of seabirds are known to use the area on a regular basis, including the OSPAR-listed Audubon's shearwater (*Puffinus lherminieri baroli)* and thick-billed murre (*Uria lomvia*) and several globally threatened species as Atlantic puffin (*Fratercula arctica)*, black-legged kittiwake (*Rissa tridactyla)*, Desertas petrel (*Pterodroma deserta)*, Zino's petrel (*Pterodroma madeira)* and Bermuda petrel (*Pterodroma cahow*). A scientific expedition to the area carried out in 2018 confirmed the enhanced abundance and diversity of seabird species in the area in comparison with adjacent waters (Wakefield 2018), and provided further evidence of the use of the area by other seabird species for which tracking data are not available, such as Leach's storm petrel (*Hydrobates leucorhous)*, Wilson's storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus)*, great black-backed gull (*Larus marinus)*, Arctic jaegar (*Stercorarius parasiticus)*, pomarine jaegar (*Stercorarius pomarinus)* and northern gannet (*Morus bassanus)* (Wakefield 2018).

Other marine megafauna occur in the area, such as marine mammals, sea turtles and sharks (Hays *et al*. 2004, Olsen *et al*. 2009, Walli *et al*. 2009, Silva *et al*. 2013, Prieto *et al*. 2014, Queiroz *et al*. 2016). A number of tracking and telemetry studies on marine mammals, particularly for baleen whale species, have indicated the presence of known migratory pathways transiting through the region. Such cetaceans include the endangered sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis)*, which migrate through the area from the Azores, likely longitudinally from waters on the Eastern Atlantic, to highly productive foraging areas in the Labrador Sea (Figure 4) as well as Greenlandic and Icelandic waters (Olsen *et al*. 2009, Prieto *et al*. 2014). Other tracking studies of endangered fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) and blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus)* have described long migratory movements between the area of the Azores northward towards key foraging areas in the region of eastern Greenland and western Iceland (Figure 4; Silva *et al*. 2013). Furthermore, fin and blue whales remained at middle latitudes along their migration in the area for prolonged periods, exhibiting area-restricted search (ARS) behaviour, indicative of foraging activity. Satellite tracking studies of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) tagged in Norwegian waters as part of the Arctic University of Norway's Whaletrack project has further recorded the use of the area by migrating animals (Whaletrack 2019; Figure 4). Observations carried out during scientific expeditions (e.g., 2004 Mid-Atlantic Ridge (MAR)-ECO expedition on the R.V. G.O. Sars; Skov *et al*. 2008) also provided evidence of the use of the area by sei whale, blue whale, fin whale and sperm whale, as well as long and Short-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala melas*, *G. macrorhynchus)*, humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae)*, killer whale (*Orcinus orca)*, beaked whales (*Mesoplodon sp*.) and Atlantic white-sided dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus acutus)* (Waring *et al*. 2009; Figure 4). Analysis of the data collected from the same expedition revealed that modelled aggregations of sperm whales and sei whales along the MAR are primarily associated with fine-scale frontal processes interacting with the topography in the upper 100 m of the water column just north of the Sub-Polar Front (SPF) and the CGFZ, as well as moderate and high habitat suitability estimated only for areas downstream from the SPF (Skov *et al*. 2008; Figure 4).

Tracking studies on the leatherback turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea)* have indicated that the area is also used by this species during the summer and autumn for months at a time (Hays *et al*. 2004). The Atlantic bluefin tuna, listed by OSPAR as a Threatened and Declining Species, is known to use the area during all seasons (Walli *et al*. 2009). Tracking studies have indicated that the area is also used by basking sharks (*Cetorhinus maximus)* (Gore *et al*. 2008) (Figure 5).

The high abundance and diversity of megafaunais likely linked to the presence of multiple frontal zones and persistent eddies, which are known to aggregate primary productivity and zooplankton, providing a temporally and spatially reliable foraging zone for higher trophic level predators (Scales *et al*. 2014). Prey availability can be further enhanced when these features occur over seamounts, as zooplankton can become entrained over the abrupt topography (the topographic blockage), and are then further restricted in their vertical migrations, thereby rendering them more accessible for mesopelagic fish and other top predators (Dias *et al*. 2016; Morato *et al*. 2016; Sweetman *et al*. 2013). Broad-scale and remotely sensed studies of the region have demonstrated that the frontal zone is subject to large-scale phytoplankton blooms during spring and summer (Taylor and Ferrari 2011) with much higher chlorophyll concentrations than the adjacent waters (Gaard *et al*. 2008; Pelegrí *et al*. 2006; Vecchione *et al*. 2015).

In relation to zooplankton communities, the available evidence suggests a high abundance of copepods, gelatinous zooplankton and euphausiids (Gaard *et al*. 2008; Letessier *et al*. 2011; Vecchione *et al*. 2015). Copepods are important prey for gelatinous zooplankton, mesopelagic fish, and some seabird species and are often associated with high seabird numbers in the North Atlantic as indicators of abundant food (Frederiksen *et al*. 2013; Karnovsky *et al*. 2008). Euphausiids are also abundant across the region and are important prey for mesopelagic fish, cetaceans and seabirds, including thick-billed murre, little auk and black-legged kittiwake (Mehlum and Gabrielsen 1993).

Mesopelagic fish are a major source of biomass in the oceans and important prey for higher trophic predators, including seabirds (Gjøsaeter and Kawaguchi 1980; Harris *et al*. 2015; Paredes *et al*. 2014; Waap *et al*. 2017). Mesopelagic fish prey on gelatinous zooplankton, and they in turn are preyed on by larger fish, cetaceans and seabirds (Granadeiro *et al*. 1998; Granadeiro *et al*. 2002; Waap *et al*. 2017). These small fish are particularly associated with fronts and eddies, such as those occurring within the area (Paredes *et al*. 2014). Within the areas investigated by MARECO/ECOMAR (Vecchione et al. 2015, mesopelagic species such as the goiter blacksmelt (*Bathylagus euryops*) and lanternfish (Myctophids) were found in the highest abundance at the Subpolar Front and the CGFZ and with a tendency to be distributed in the upper surface layers (Sweetman *et al*. 2013).

Cephalopods are also potentially concentrated within the boundary and broader region of the area, with studies from the MARECO/ECOMAR programme indicating the highest diversity and abundance occurring south of the CGFZ (Vecchione *et al*. 2015). The importance of cephalopods in the diet of some Atlantic seabirds is well documented, for example in Audubon's shearwater (*Puffinus lherminieri)*, Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris borealis)*, Manx shearwater (*Puffinus puffinus)* and Bulwer's petrel (*Bulweria bulwerii)* (Den Hartog & Clarke 1996; Neves *et al*. 2012; Petry *et al*. 2008; Waap *et al*. 2017); other species such as Desertas petrel (*Pterodroma deserta)* and Atlantic puffin (*Fratercula arctica)* are also known to prey on squid (Harris *et al*. 2015; Ramos *et al*. 2016).

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

Due to the remoteness of the area and lack of long-term studies, there is no information to determine the trends of the conditions. Satellite information and other databases suggest that the area is less commercially important for fishing than adjacent areas, and that no other major activities occur in the area, apart from shipping (major shipping lines between Canada, USA and Europe pass through the area; GFW 2019, PASTA MARE 2019). There is an ongoing project, led by University of Glasgow, to study the community of seabirds, cetaceans and turtles in the area (Wakefield *et al*. 2018). There is also a proposal to designate part of the area as a marine protected area under the OSPAR Convention.

Assessment of area no. 14, Mid-North-Atlantic Frontal System, against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA Criteria (Annex I to	**Description** (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		No	**Low**	**Medi**	**High**

decision IX/20)		**informat ion**		**um**	
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique ("the only one of its kind"), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.	X			
Explanation for ranking					
Special importance for life-history stages of species	Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.				X
Explanation for ranking The area is a globally important migratory seabird foraging area, primarily used during the non-breeding or winter season (e.g., Guilford *et al*. 2009, Egevang *et al*. 2010; Dias *et al*. 2011, 2012, Hedd *et al*. 2012). Tracking shows 21 species foraging in the area (Figure 3). Birds travel to the area from colonies located both in the North and South Atlantic to spend the winter foraging in these productive waters (e.g., Guilford *et al*. 2009; Dias *et al*. 2011, Kopp *et al*. 2011; Hedd *et al*. 2012). The site is important for species such as the black-legged kittiwake (*Rissa tridactyla)*, thick-billed murre (*Uria lomvia)* and Audubon's shearwater (*Puffinus lherminieri)* (OSPAR listed threatened and/or declining species) (OSPAR 2009a-c). Breeding populations of species from Azores and Madeiran archipelagos also use the area during the incubation period (Magalhães *et al*. 2008, Silva *et al*. 2019), commuting in some cases more than 3,000 km from their colonies to forage here (Figure 3). The site is also important for migratory humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae)* between foraging areas in Norway, Svalbard, and Iceland and their southern breeding areas within the Caribbean (Whaletrack 2019). (Figure 4).					
Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.			X	
Explanation for ranking Seabird tracking data shows that some species of seabirds classified as threatened at the global level (BirdLife International 2019b) forage in the area, including endangered Zino's petrel (*Pterodroma madeira)*, endangered Bermuda petrel (*Pterodroma cahow)*, vulnerable Atlantic puffin (*Fratercula arctica)*, and vulnerable black-legged kittiwake (*Rissa tridactyla)* (BirdLife International 2019a). Thick-billed murre (*Uria lomvia)* and Audubon's shearwater (*Puffinus lherminieri)*, listed by OSPAR as threatened and/or declining species (OSPAR 2009a-c), also use the area (BirdLife International 2019a). Other globally threatened species known to occur in the area are the endangered blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus)*, endangered fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus)*, endangered sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis)*, endangered Atlantic bluefin tuna (*Thunnus thynnus)*, vulnerable sperm whale (*Physeter macrocephalus)*, vulnerable leatherback turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea)*, vulnerable basking shark (*Cetorhinus maximus)* and vulnerable shortfin mako shark (*Isurus oxyrinchus)* (Hays *et al*. 2004, Olsen *et al*. 2009, Walli *et al*. 2009, Silva *et al*. 2013, Prieto *et al*. 2014, Queiroz *et al*. 2016). The blue whales, leatherback turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea)*, basking shark and Atlantic bluefin tuna are also listed by OSPAR as threatened and/or declining species.					

Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				X

Explanation for ranking
The area is of high importance to numerous globally threatened species that have suffered significant population declines – including Eedangered Zino's petrel (*Pterodroma madeira),* endangered Bermuda petrel (*Pterodroma cahow),* vulnerable Atlantic puffin (*Fratercula arctica),* and vulnerable black-legged kittiwake (*Rissa tridactyla)*. In addition, the area is used by thick-billed murre (*Uria lomvia)* and Audubon’s shearwater (*Puffinus lherminieri),* which are listed by OSPAR as threatened and/or declining species. Black-legged kittiwake is listed as vulnerable because of population declines due to the depletion of food resources (e.g., through over-fishing) (Frederiksen *et al*. 2004, Nikolaeva *et al*. 2006), marine oil spills (Nikolaeva *et al*. 2006) and chronic oil pollution (Nikolaeva *et al*. 2006). All these species are long-lived seabirds with a low reproduction rate and thus with slow recovery. The whales occurring in the area are also species of low reproduction rate and vulnerable to multiple anthropogenic pressures (Melcón *et al*. 2012).

Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.				X

Explanation for ranking
Both satellite altimetry and numerous thermal fronts show this is an area of high mesoscale activity with near-stationary eddies and thermal fronts aligned in zonal bands (Read *et al*. 2010; Figure 2). The fronts retain and concentrate productivity both vertically and horizontally, and the combination of localised high intensity mixing in the eddies results in patchy but high surface productivity at fine scales (Vecchione *et al*. 2015). Seabird tracking data confirms this is an area of high productivity, with a high intensity of foraging activity in the area (BirdLife International 2019a).

Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X

Explanation for ranking
This area comprises a transition from the subtropical ocean to the subpolar (subarctic) ocean. As such, this area features several well-defined water masses separated by well-defined fronts (Figure 2). Each water mass contains a distinct ecosystem, while fronts act as ecotones, ensuring the high diversity of ecosystems and habitats in this area (Read *et al*. 2010; Miller *et al*. 2013).
Analyses of tracking data from over 2,000 individual seabirds indicate that the area is intensively used by 21 species (compiled by BirdLife International, 2019a; see also Figure 3):

- Arctic Tern *Sterna paradisaea* (LC)
- Atlantic Puffin *Fratercula arctica* (VU)
- Audubon’s Shearwater *Puffinus lherminieri* (LC)
- Bermuda Petrel *Pterodroma cahow* (EN)
- Black-legged Kittiwake *Rissa tridactyla* (VU)
- Bulwer’s Petrel *Bulweria bulwerii* (LC)
- Common Murre *Uria aalge* (LC)
- Cory’s Shearwater *Calonectris borealis* (LC)
- Desertas Petrel *Pterodroma deserta* (VU)
- Great Shearwater *Ardenna gravis* (LC)
- Great Skua *Catharacta skua* (LC)
- Little Auk *Alle alle* (LC)
- Long-tailed Jaeger *Stercorarius longicaudus* (LC)
- Manx Shearwater *Puffinus puffinus* (LC)

- Northern Fulmar *Fulmarus glacialis* (LC)
- Razorbill *Alca torda* (NT)
- Sabine's Gull *Xema sabini* (LC)
- Sooty Shearwater *Ardenna grisea* (NT)
- South Polar Skua *Catharacta maccormicki* (LC)
- Thick-billed Murre *Uria lomvia* (LC)
- Zino's Petrel *Pterodroma madeira* (EN)

At-sea surveys confirmed the use of the area by five additional species (Wakefield *et al*. 2018):

- Great Black-backed Gull, *Larus marinus* (LC)
- Leach's Storm Petrel, *Hydrobates leucorhous* (VU)
- Northern Gannet, *Morus bassanus* (LC)
- Pomarine Jaegar, *Stercorarius pomarinus* (LC)
- Wilson's storm petrel, *Oceanites oceanicus* (LC)

There is also evidence of the use of the area by other species of marine megafauna (Waring *et al*. 2009; Olsen *et al*. 2009, Silva *et al*. 2013; Prieto *et al*. 2014; Wakefield *et al*. 2018):

- Blue Whale, *Balaenoptera musculus* (EN)
- Fin Whale, *Balaenoptera physalus* (EN)
- Sei Whale, *Balaenoptera borealis* (EN)
- Humpback Whale, *Megaptera novaeangliae* (LC)
- Sperm Whale, *Physeter macrocephalus* (VU)
- Pilot Whales, *Globicephala spp* (DD)
- Killer Whale, Orcinus orca (DD)
- Short-beaked Common Dolphin, *Delphinus delphis* (LC)
- Risso's Dolphin, *Grampus griseus* (LC)
- White-sided Dolphin, *Lagenorhynchus acutus* (LC)
- Beaked Whales *Mesoplodon spp*
- Striped Dolphin, *Stenella coeruleoalba* (LC)
- Leatherback Turtle, *Dermochelys coriacea* (VU)
- Basking Shark, *Cetorhinus maximus* (VU)
- Atlantic Bluefin Tuna, *Thunnus thynnus* (EN)
- Blue Shark, *Prionace glauca* (NT)
- Shortfin Mako Shark, *Isurus oxyrinchus* (VU)

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.				X

Explanation for ranking

Due to its remote location in very deep, open ocean, the area is not easily accessible. The waters within the area are therefore only exposed to a very limited range of human uses at present (e.g., PASTA MARE 2019, GFW 2019).

Sharing experiences and information applying other criteria

Other Criteria	**Description**	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		Don't Know	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
IBA criteria	The site is known or thought to hold regularly significant numbers of a globally threatened species (Donald *et al*. 2018)				X

	The site is known or thought to hold congregations of ≥1 per cent of the global population of one or more species on a regular or predictable basis (Donald *et al*. 2018)				
The area meets the criteria to be classified as an Important Bird and Biodiversity Area (IBA) by BirdLife International (Donald *et al*. 2018, BirdLife International 2019c), which are very closely aligned with the EBSA criteria (Waliczky *et al*. 2018).					

References

Belkin, I. M. & Levitus, S. (1996) Temporal variability of the subarctic front near the Charlie-Gibbs fracture zone. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 101(C12): 28317-28324.

BirdLife International (2019a). The Seabird Tracking Database. www.seabirdtracking.org

BirdLife International (2019b) IUCN Red List for birds. Downloaded from http://www.birdlife.org on 30/08/2019.

BirdLife International (2019c) Marine IBA e-Atlas. Available at https://maps.birdlife.org/marineIBAs/default.html

Cayula J.-F., P. Cornillon (1992), Edge Detection Algorithm for SST Images, Journal of Atmospheric and Oceanic Technology 9, 67–80.

Chassignet, E. *et al*. (2009). US GODAE: Global Ocean Prediction with the HYbrid Coordinate Ocean Model (HYCOM). - Oceanog. 22: 64–75.

Den Hartog J., Clarke M. (1996) A study of stomach contents of Cory's Shearwater, *Calonectris diomedea borealis* (Cory, 1881)(Aves: Procellariidae), from the Macaronesian Islands. Zoologische Mededeelingen 70, 117-133.

Dias M.P., Granadeiro J.P., Phillips R.A., Alonso H., Catry P. (2011) Breaking the routine: individual Cory's shearwaters shift winter destinations between hemispheres and across ocean basins. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B: Biological Sciences 278, 1786-1793.

Dias M., Granadeiro J., Catry P. (2012a) Do Seabirds Differ from Other Migrants in Their Travel Arrangements? On Route Strategies of Cory's Shearwater during Its Trans-Equatorial Journey. PLOS ONE 7, e49376.

Dias M.P., Romero J., Granadeiro J.P., Catry T., Pollet I.L., Catry P. (2016) Distribution and at-sea activity of a nocturnal seabird, the Bulwer's petrel *Bulweria bulwerii*, during the incubation period. Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 113, 49-56.

Donald, P.F., Fishpool, L.D.C., Ajagbe, A., Bennun, L.A., Bunting, G., Burfield, I.J., Butchart, S.H.M., Capellan, S., Crosby, M.J., Dias, M.P., Diaz, D., Evans, M.I., Grimmett, R., Heath, M., Jones, V.R., Lascelles, B.G., Merriman, J.C., O'brien, M., Ramírez, I., Waliczky, Z., Wege, D.C., (2018). Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs): the development and characteristics of a global inventory of key sites for biodiversity. Bird Conservation International 1–22. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0959270918000102

Dutkiewicz, S., Rothstein, L. & Rossby, T. (2001) Pathways of cross-frontal exchange in the North Atlantic Current. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 106(C11): 26917-26928.

Egevang C., Stenhouse I.J., Phillips R.A., Petersen A., Fox J.W., Silk J.R. (2010) Tracking of Arctic terns Sterna paradisaea reveals longest animal migration. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 107, 2078-2081.

Frederiksen M., Anker-Nilssen T., Beaugrand G., Wanless S. (2013) Climate, copepods and seabirds in the boreal Northeast Atlantic–current state and future outlook. Global Change Biology 19, 364-372.

Frederiksen M., Moe B., Daunt F. *et al*. (2012) Multicolony tracking reveals the winter distribution of a pelagic seabird on an ocean basin scale. Diversity and Distributions 18, 530-542.

Frederiksen, M., Wanless, S., Harris, M. P., Rothery, P., Wilson, L. J. (2004). The role of industrial fisheries and oceanographic change in the decline of North Sea black-legged kittiwakes. Journal of Applied Ecology 41: 1129-1139.

Gaard E., Gislason A., Falkenhaug T. *et al*. (2008) Horizontal and vertical copepod distribution and abundance on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge in June 2004. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 55, 59-71.

GFW (2019). Global Fishing Watch dataase. Accessed on 26/09/2019.

Gilg O., Moe B., Hanssen S.A. *et al*. (2013) Trans-equatorial migration routes, staging sites and wintering areas of a high-arctic avian predator: the long-tailed skua (*Stercorarius longicaudus*). PloS one 8, e64614.

Gjøsaeter J., Kawaguchi K. (1980) A review of the world resources of mesopelagic fish. pp. 193-199. FAO Fisheries Technical Paper 193 Food & Agriculture Organisation, Rome, Italy.

Gore M.A., Rowat D., Hall J., Gell F.R., Ormond R.F. (2008) Transatlantic migration and deep mid-ocean diving by basking shark. Biology letters 4, 395-398.

Granadeiro J.P., Monteiro L.R., Furness R.W. (1998) Diet and feeding ecology of Cory's shearwater *Calonectris diomedea* in the Azores, north-east Atlantic. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 267-276.

Granadeiro J.P., Monteiro L.R., Silva M.C., Furness R.W. (2002) Diet of common terns in the Azores, Northeast Atlantic. Waterbirds 25, 149-155.

Guilford T., Meade J., Willis J. *et al*. (2009) Migration and stopover in a small pelagic seabird, the Manx shearwater *Puffinus puffinus*: insights from machine learning. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B: Biological Sciences, rspb. 2008.1577.

Harris M.P., Leopold M.F., Jensen J.K., Meesters E.H., Wanless S. (2015) The winter diet of the Atlantic Puffin *Fratercula arctica* around the Faroe Islands. Ibis 157, 468-479.

Hays, G.C., Houghton, J.D.R., Myers, A.E., (2004). Pan-Atlantic leatherback turtle movements. Nature 429, 522–522. https://doi.org/10.1038/429522a

Hedd A., Montevecchi W.A., Otley H., Phillips R.A., Fifield D.A. (2012) Trans-equatorial migration and habitat use by sooty shearwaters *Puffinus griseus* from the South Atlantic during the nonbreeding season. Marine Ecology Progress Series 449, 277-290.

Karnovsky N.J., Hobson K.A., Iverson S., Hunt Jr G.L. (2008) Seasonal changes in diets of seabirds in the North Water Polynya: a multiple-indicator approach. Marine Ecology Progress Series 357, 291-299.

Kopp M., Peter H.-U., Mustafa O. *et al*. (2011) South polar skuas from a single breeding population overwinter in different oceans though show similar migration patterns. Marine Ecology Progress Series 435, 263-267.

Krauss, W. (1986) The north Atlantic current. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 91(C4): 5061-5074.

Letessier T., Pond D.W., McGill R.A., Reid W.D., Brierley A.S. (2012) Trophic interaction of invertebrate zooplankton on either side of the a Fracture Zone/Subpolar Front of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Journal of marine systems 94, 174-184.

Magalhães, M.C., Santos, R.S., Hamer, K.C., (2008). Dual-foraging of Cory’s shearwaters in the Azores: feeding locations, behaviour at sea and implications for food provisioning of chicks. Marine Ecology Progress Series 359, 283–293. https://doi.org/10.3354/meps07340

Marzocchi, A., Hirschi, J. J. M., Holliday, N. P., Cunningham, S. A., Blaker, A. T. & Coward, A. C. (2015) The North Atlantic subpolar circulation in an eddy-resolving global ocean model. Journal of Marine Systems 142: 126-143.

Mehlum F., Gabrielsen G. (1993) The diet of high-arctic seabirds in coastal and ice-covered, pelagic areas near the Svalbard archipelago. Polar research 12, 1-20.

Melcón, M.L., Cummins, A.J., Kerosky, S.M., Roche, L.K., Wiggins, S.M., Hildebrand, J.A., (2012). Blue Whales Respond to Anthropogenic Noise. PLOS ONE 7, e32681. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0032681

Miller, P. I., Read, J. F. & Dale, A. C. (2013) Thermal front variability along the North Atlantic Current observed using microwave and infrared satellite data. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 98: 244-256.

Morato T., Miller P.I., Dunn D.C., Nicol S.J., Bowcott J., Halpin P.N. (2016) A perspective on the importance of oceanic fronts in promoting aggregation of visitors to seamounts. Fish and Fisheries 17, 1227-1233.

Neves V.C., Bried J., González-Solís J., Roscales J.L., Clarke M.R. (2012) Feeding ecology and movements of the Barolo shearwater *Puffinus baroli baroli* in the Azores, NE Atlantic. Marine Ecology Progress Series 452, 269-285.

Nikolaeva, N.G.; Spiridonov, V.A.; Krasnov, Y.V. (2006). Existing and proposed marine protected areas and their relevance for seabird conservation: a case study in the Barents Sea region. In: G. Boere, C. Galbraith and D. Stroud (eds), Waterbirds around the world, pp. 743-749. The Stationery Office, Edinburgh, UK.

Olsen, E., Budgell P., Head E., Kleivane L., Nottestad L., Prieto R., Silva M., Skov H., Vikingsson G., Waring G., Oien N. 2009. First satellite-tracked long-distance movement of a Sei Whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*) in the North Atlantic. Aquatic Mammals, 35(3): 313-318

OSPAR (2009a). Background document for Black-legged Kittiwake *Rissa tridactyla*. Biodiversity Series.

OSPAR (2009b). Background document for Audubon’s Shearwater *Puffinus lherminieri*. Biodiversity Series.

OSPAR (2009c). Background document for Thick-billed Murre *Uria lomvia*. Biodiversity Series

Paredes R., Orben R.A., Suryan R.M. *et al*. (2014) Foraging responses of black-legged kittiwakes to prolonged food-shortages around colonies on the Bering Sea shelf. PloS one 9, e92520.

PASTA MARE (2019). Maritime traffic density. Available at https://octopus.zoo.ox.ac.uk/beta/data

Pelegrí J., Marrero-Díaz A., Ratsimandresy A. (2006) Nutrient irrigation of the North Atlantic. Progress in Oceanography 70, 366-406.

Petry M.V., da Silva Fonseca V.S., Krüger-Garcia L., da Cruz Piuco R., Brummelhaus J. (2008) Shearwater diet during migration along the coast of Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil. Marine Biology 154, 613-621.

Prieto, R., Silva, M.A., Waring, G. & Gonçalves, J. (2014). Sei whale movements and behavior in the North Atlantic inferred from satellite telemetry. Endangered Species Research. 26. 103-113. DOI: https://doi.org/10.3354/esr00630

Queiroz, N., Humphries, N.E., Mucientes, G., Hammerschlag, N., Lima, F.P., Scales, K.L., Miller, P.I., Sousa, L.L., Seabra, R., Sims, D.W., (2016). Ocean-wide tracking of pelagic sharks reveals extent of overlap with longline fishing hotspots. PNAS 113, 1582–1587. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1510090113

Ramos R., Ramírez I., Paiva V.H. *et al*. (2016) Global spatial ecology of three closely-related gadfly petrels. Scientific reports 6.

Read, J., Pollard, R., Miller, P. & Dale, A. (2010) Circulation and variability of the North Atlantic Current in the vicinity of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 57(3): 307-318.

Roberts, J.J., B.D. Best, D.C. Dunn, E.A. Treml, and P.N. Halpin (2010). Marine Geospatial Ecology Tools: An integrated framework for ecological geoprocessing with ArcGIS, Python,R, MATLAB, and C++. Environmental Modelling & Software 25: 1197-1207.

Rossby, T. (1996) The North Atlantic Current and surrounding waters: At the crossroads. Reviews of Geophysics 34(4): 463-481.

Scales K.L., Miller P.I., Hawkes L.A., Ingram S.N., Sims D.W., Votier S.C. (2014) On the Front Line: frontal zones as priority at-sea conservation areas for mobile marine vertebrates. Journal of Applied Ecology 51, 1575-1583.

Silva, M., Catry, P., Menezes, D., Zino, F., Viveiros, C., Camara, J., Gouveia, P., Gomes, J., Catry, T., Granadeiro, J.P. (2019). Mechanisms of breeding asynchrony in sympatric Portuguese seabirds, the endangered Zino’s Petrel (*Pterodroma madeira*) and Deserta´s Petrel (*Pterodroma deserta*). in SPEA (2019) (Eds). Livro de Resumos do X Congresso de Ornitologia da SPEA – 1.ª edição. Sociedade Portuguesa para o Estudo das Aves, Lisboa

Silva, M.A., Prieto, R., Jonsen, I., Baumgartner, M.F., Santos, R.S. (2013). North Atlantic Blue and Fin Whales Suspend Their Spring Migration to Forage in Middle Latitudes: Building up Energy Reserves for the Journey? PLoS ONE 8(10): e76507. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0076507

Skov, H., Gunnlaugsson, T., Budgell, W. P., Horne, J., Nøttestad, L., Olsen, E.V., Søilandc, H. Víkingsson, G. and Waring, G. (2008) Small-scale spatial variability of sperm and sei whales in relation to oceanographic and topographic features along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep Sea Research Part II Topical Studies in Oceanography. 55. 254-268. 10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.09.020.

Sweetman C.J., Sutton T., Vecchione M., Latour R.J. (2013) Distribution of the biomass-dominant pelagic fish, Bathylagus euryops (Argentiniformes: Microstomatidae), along the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 78, 16-23.

Taylor J.R., Ferrari R. (2011) Ocean fronts trigger high latitude phytoplankton blooms. Geophysical Research Letters 38.

Vecchione M., Falkenhaug T., Sutton T. *et al*. (2015) The effect of the North Atlantic Subpolar Front as a boundary in pelagic biogeography decreases with increasing depth and organism size. Progress in Oceanography 138, 105-115.

Volkov, D. L. (2005) Interannual variability of the altimetry-derived eddy field and surface circulation in the extratropical North Atlantic Ocean in 1993–2001. Journal of Physical Oceanography 35(4): 405-426.

Waap S., Symondson W.O., Granadeiro J.P. *et al*. (2017) The diet of a nocturnal pelagic predator, the Bulwer's petrel, across the lunar cycle. Scientific Reports 7.

Wakefield, E.D. (2018) Transatlantic surveys of seabirds, cetaceans and turtles, July 2013 and July 2018, University of Glasgow, UK, 34p.

Waliczky, Z., Fishpool, L.D.C., Butchart, S.H.M., Thomas, D., Heath, M.F., Hazin, C., Donald, P.F., Kowalska, A., Dias, M.P., Allinson, T.S.M., (2018). Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs): their impact on conservation policy, advocacy and action. Bird Conservation International 1–17. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0959270918000175

Walli A., Teo S.L., Boustany A. *et al*. (2009) Seasonal movements, aggregations and diving behavior of Atlantic bluefin tuna (Thunnus thynnus) revealed with archival tags. PLoS One 4, e6151.

Waring, G., Nøttestad, L., Olsen, E., Skov, H. & Víkingsson, G (2009) Distribution and density estimates of cetaceans along the mid- Atlantic Ridge during summer 2004. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management. 10. 137-146.

Whaletrack (2019) UiT- The Arctic University of Norway - https://en.uit.no/prosjekter/prosjekt?p_document_id=505966

Maps and Figures

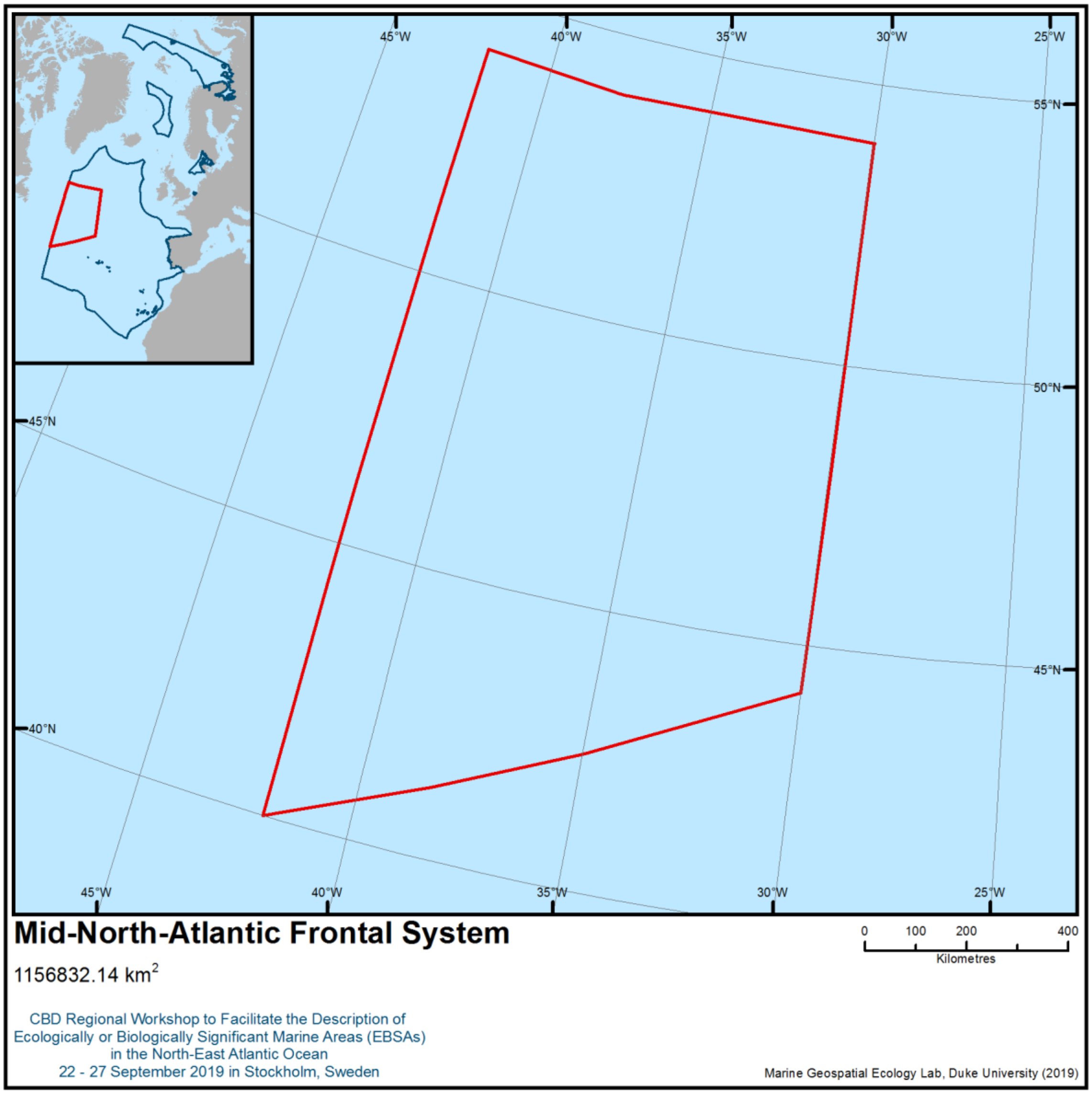


Figure 1. Location of area no. 14: Mid-North-Atlantic Frontal System

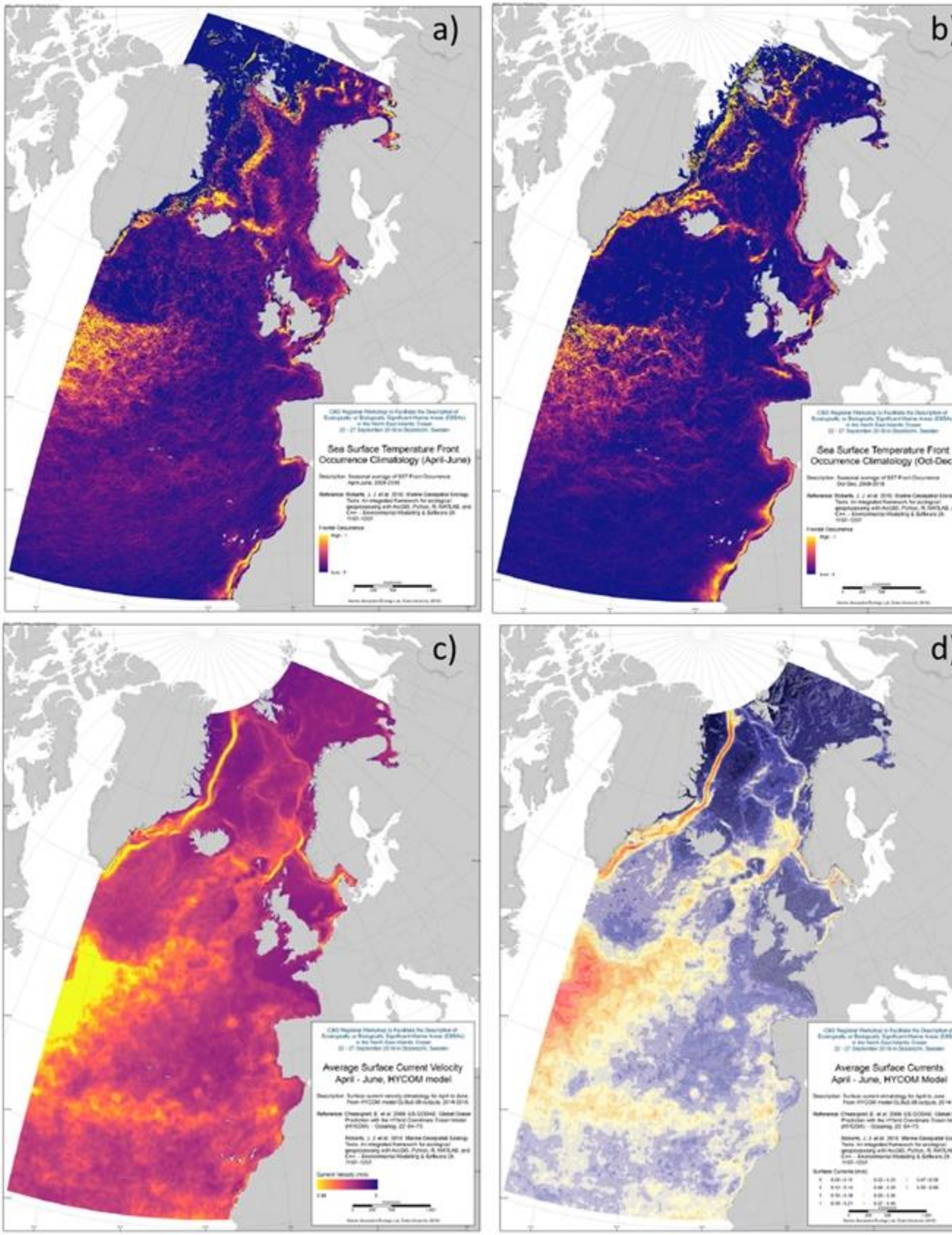

a)
Sea Surface Temperature Front
Occurrence Climatology (April-June)
b)
Sea Surface Temperature Front
Occurrence Climatology (Oct-Dec)
c)
Average Surface Current Velocity
April - June, HYCOM model
d)
Average Surface Currents
April - June, HYCOM Model

Figure 2. Oceanographic conditions in the Mid-North Atlantic Frontal System. a-b) Sea Surface Temperature Front Climatology for April-June and Oct-Dec, respectively (from the Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer (MODIS); Roberts et al. 2010, Cayula & Cornillon 1992); c-d) Average Surface Current Velocity and Average Surface Currents, respectively, for April-June (from the HYCOM consortium; Chassignet et al. 2009).

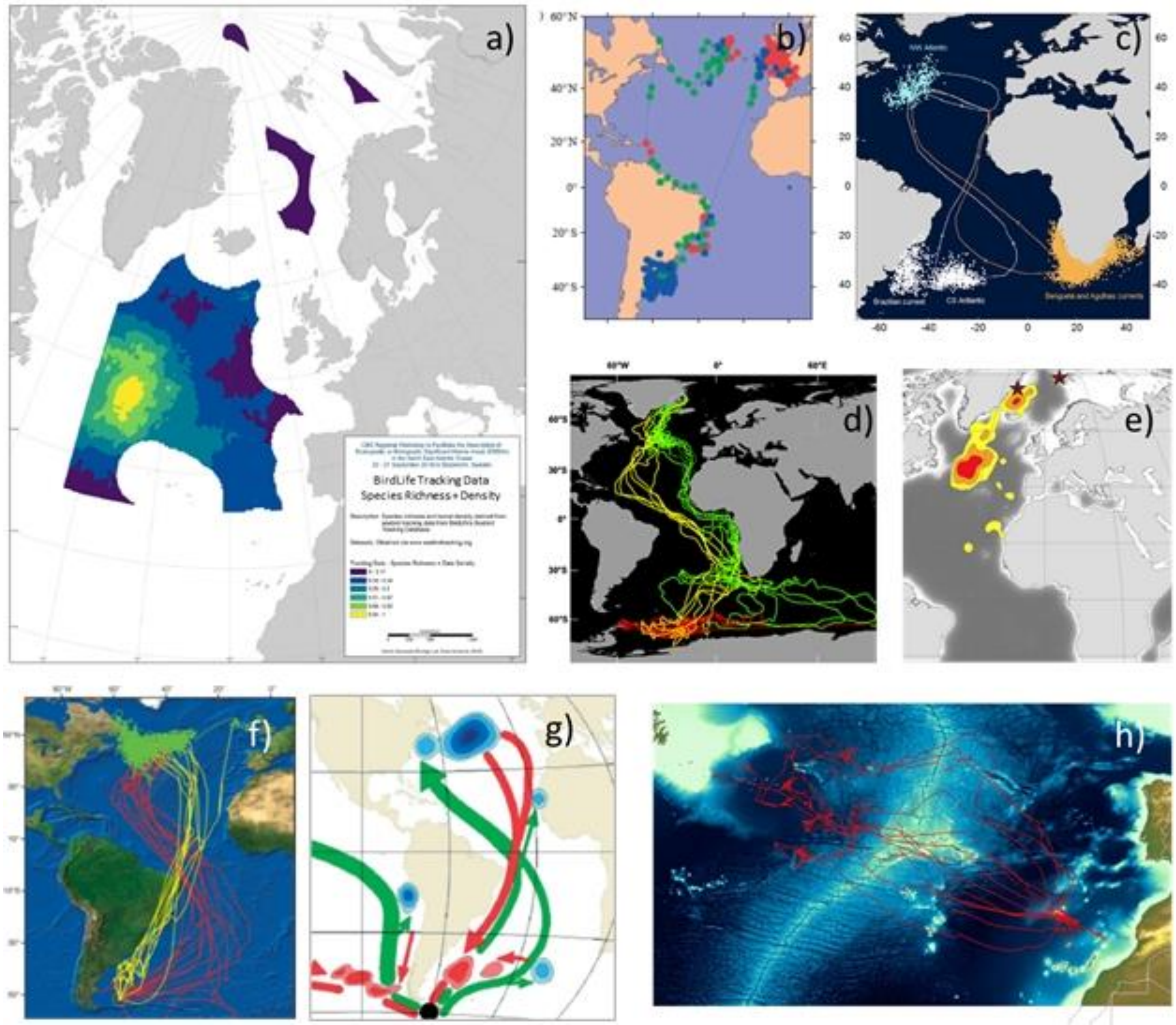


Figure 3. Use of the Mid-North Atlantic Frontal System by seabird species. a) Density and richness of seabirds based on tracking data for 21 species (BirdLife International 2019a). b) tracking data of Manx Shearwater (*Puffinus puffinus)* showing the use of the area as a stopover during migration (from Guilford et al. 2009). c) tracking data of Cory's shearwater (*Calonectris borealis)* showing the use of the area as a stopover during migration and as a wintering area (Dias et al. 2012). d) tracking data of Arctic tern (*Sterna paradisea)* showing the use of the area as a stopover during migration (from Egevang et al. 2010); e) tracking data of long-tailed jaeger (*Stercorarius longicaudus)* showing the use of the area as a stopover during migration (from Gilg et al. 2013); f) tracking data of sooty shearwater (*Ardenna grisea)* (tracked from a colony in the South Atlantic) showing the use of the area during the wintering period (from Hedd et al. 2012); g) tracking data of south polar skua (*Catharacta maccormicki)* (tracked from a colony in the Antarctica) showing the use of the area during the wintering period (from Kopp et al. 2011); h) tracking data of Desertas petrel (*Pteerodroma deserta)* (tracked from Deserta, Madeira) showing the use of the area during the incubation period (Granadeiro & Catry unpublished data; Silva et al. 2019)

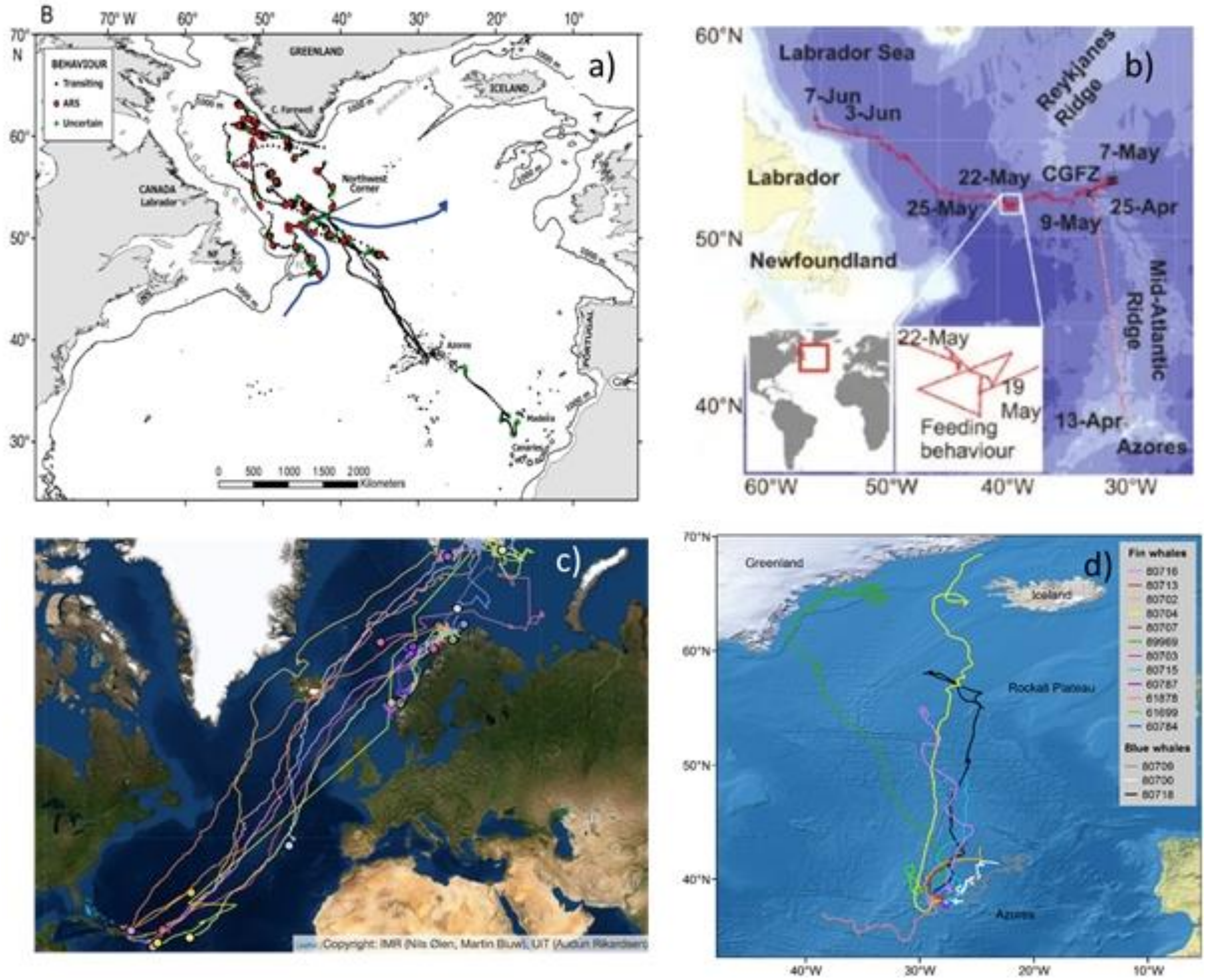


Figure 4. Use of the Mid-North Atlantic Frontal System by whales. a-b) movements of sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*) obtained by satellite tracking (Prieto et al. 2014, Olsen et al. 2009); c) tracks of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) tagged in Norway (UiT and Institute of Marine Research – IMR https://en.uit.no/prosjekter/prosjekt?p_document_id=505966); d) hierarchical switching state-space model derived tracks of 12 fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) and three blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus)* (reproduced from Silva et al. 2013).

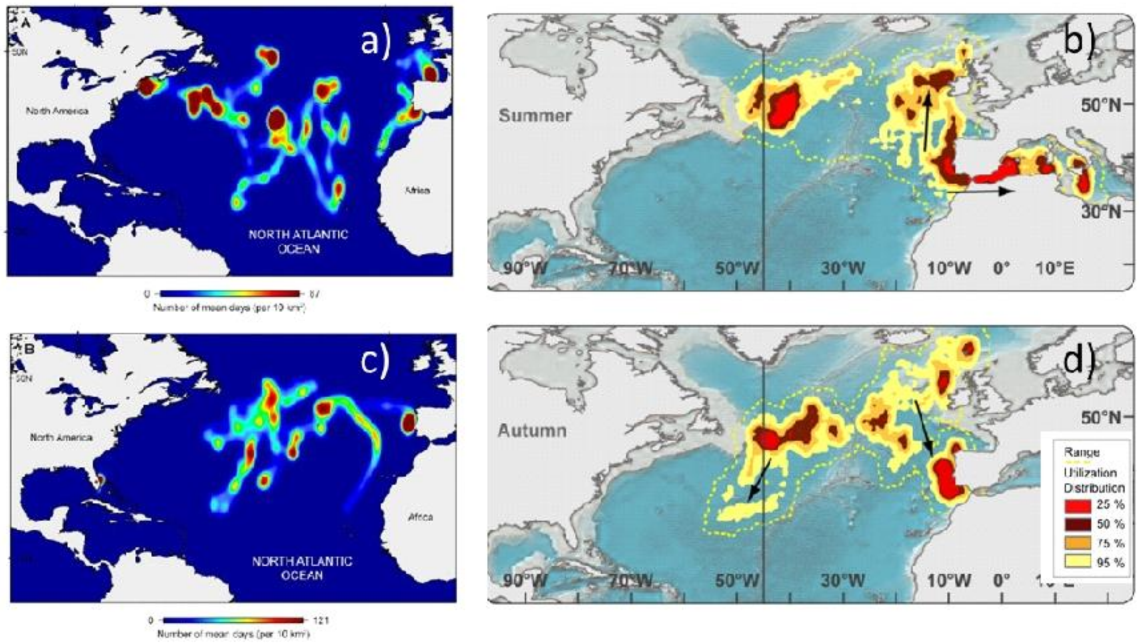


Figure 5. Use of the Mid-North Atlantic Frontal System by sharks and tunas. a, d) high species-specific space-use areas calculated for blue shark (*Prionace glauca)* and shortfin mako shark (*Isurus oxyrinchus)*, respectively (adapted from Queiroz et al. 2016); c,d) Atlantic bluefin tuna (*Thunnus thynnus)* foraging area hotspot analysis in summer and autumn (adapted from Walli et al. 2009).

Area no. 15: Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone

Abstract

Fracture zones are common topographic features of the ocean that arise through plate tectonics. The Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone is an unusual left lateral strike-slip double transform fault in the North Atlantic Ocean, along which the rift valley of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge is offset by 350 km near 52º30′N. It opens the deepest connection between the northwest and northeast Atlantic (maximum depth of approximately 4500 m) and is approximately 2000 km in length, extending from about 25°W to 45°W. It is the most prominent interruption of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge between the Azores and Iceland and the only fracture zone between Europe and North America that has an offset of this size. Two named seamounts are associated with the transform faults: Minia and Hecate. The area is a unique geomorphological feature in the North Atlantic. Further, it captures the Earth's geological history, including significant ongoing geological processes. The sub-polar front is also representative of a pelagic frontal system. The area is described based on its importance as a section of the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge and is a biogeographically representative section of the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. There is evidence of both deep-sea sponge aggregations and cold-water corals in this area. In addition, the Mid-Atlantic Ridge is the only extensive hard substrate available for propagation of benthic suspension feeders off the continental shelves and isolated seamounts in the region.

Introduction

Fracture zones are common topographic features of the global oceans that arise through plate tectonics. They are characterized by two strongly contrasting types of topography. Seismically active transform faults form near mid-ocean ridges where the continental plates move in opposing directions at their junction. Seismically inactive fracture zones, where the plate segments move in the same direction, extend beyond the transform faults often for 100s of kilometres. Their atypical crust thickness that can be as little as 2 km (Mutter *et al*. 1984, Cormier *et al*. 1984, Calvert and Whitmarsh 1986) allowing direct seismic investigations of the internal structure and composition of oceanic crusts used to model processes of seafloor spreading. In the Atlantic Ocean most fracture zones originate from the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (MAR) and are nearly perfectly west - east oriented. There are about 300 fracture zones occurring on average every 55 km along the ridge, with the offsets created by transform faults ranging from 9 to 400 km in length (Müller and Roest 1992).

The Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone (CGFZ) is an unusual left lateral strike-slip double transform fault in the North Atlantic Ocean along which the rift valley of the MAR is offset by 350 km near 52º30′N (Figure 1). It opens the deepest connection between the northwest and northeast Atlantic (maximum depth of approximately 4500 m; Fleming *et al*. 1970) and is approximately 2000 km in length extending from about 25°W to 45°W. It is the most prominent interruption of the MAR between the Azores and Iceland and the only fracture zone between Europe and North America that has an offset of this size[16]. Knowledge of its geomorphology is considered essential to the understanding of the plate tectonic history of the Atlantic north of the Azores (Olivet *et al*. 1974). For these reasons it is a unique geomorphological feature in the North Atlantic; further, it captures the Earth's geological history, including significant on-going geological processes.

The CGFZ comprises two narrow parallel fracture zones (Fleming *et al*. 1970), which form deep trenches located at 30ºW (Charlie-Gibbs South Transform Fault) and 35º15′W (Charlie-Gibbs North Transform Fault) and separated by a short (40 km) north-south seismically active (Bergman and Solomon 1988) spreading centre (median transverse ridge) at 31º45'W (Figure 2; Searle 1981; Fleming *et al*. 1970, Olivet *et al*. 1974). The southern fault displaces the MAR, coming from the Azores, to the west over 120 km. It is at most 30 km wide (Searle 1981). The northern fault displaces the spreading ridge over another 230 km to the west before it connects to the northern part of the MAR going to Iceland. Both transform faults continue eastward and westward as inactive fracture zones (Figure 2).

[16] The Spitzbergen and Jan Mayen fracture zones, of comparable offset (145 and 211 km respectively), lie between Greenland and Europe.

The CGFZ is characterized by rough morphology, and the walls of the fracture valleys and the ridge in between them are broken and irregular, with slopes of up to 29° (Fleming *et al.* 1970). The height of the ridge between the faults is at least 1000 m below the surface and as shallow as 636 m in parts (Fleming *et al.* 1970). Rock samples show the walls of the fracture zone to be both basaltic and ultramafic while the median transverse ridge contains gabbro (Hekinian and Aumento 1973). Earthquake epicentres are associated with the transform faults (Kanamori and Stewart 1976, Bergman and Solomon 1988), and an almost continuous belt of epicentres follows the southern end of the Reykjanes Ridge, along the northern transform valley, the central median valley and the southern transform valley to the north end of the MAR (Lilwall and Kirk 1985). Two named seamounts are associated with the transform faults: Minia Seamount (53°01′N 34°58′W), located near the junction of the Reykjanes Ridge and the northern transform fault, and Hecate Seamount (52°17′N 31°00′W), located on the northern wall of the southern transform fault east of the short median transverse ridge.

Ridges and troughs along the CGFZ are mostly covered with muddy sediments (Fleming *et al*. 1970), although outcrops of sedimentary rock and boulder fields are exposed by recent faulting and current scour (Shor *et al*. 1980, Searle 1981), and the southern transform near 30°30′W has no sediment cover (Searle 1981). Thick layers of sediment are deposited in the northern transform valley from the Iceland-Scotland Overflow Water (ISOW), which carries a significant load of suspended sediment (25 $\mu g\ l^{-1}$) as it passes through (Shor *et al*. 1980). Transverse ridges prevent the sediment from reaching the southern valley (Searle 1981), which has less sediment cover, although it is still considered a depositional environment (Shor *et al*. 1980).

The topography of the CGFZ has a major influence on deep-water oceanographic circulation (Harvey and Theodorou 1986). A large component of the North Atlantic Deep Water originates in the Norwegian Sea and flows south over the sills between Scotland and Iceland (ISOW). It meets the CGFZ near the intersection of the transform faults and the spreading centre (Shor *et al*. 1980). There is then a westward movement of deep water passing through the fracture zone from east to west through to the Irminger Sea occurring from the core depth of the ISOW at about 2500 m to the sea floor (Garner 1972, Shor *et al*. 1980, Saunders 1994). Most of this water is carried through the northern transform fault where the overflow water first encounters the fracture zone.

The topography of the CGFZ also is thought to have some influence on the circulation of surface waters, although they are not locked to the bottom features to the same extent as the ISOW (Rossby 1999, Bower *et al*. 2002). The northern branch of the North Atlantic Current defines the location of the sub-polar front between colder Sub Arctic Intermediate Water to the north and warmer North Atlantic Intermediate Water to the south (Søiland *et al*. 2008). The sub-polar front meanders between 48-53°N, and surface flow is predominantly eastward. The CGFZ is therefore not only a topographic discontinuity in the MAR but the area also constitutes an oceanographic transition zone between waters of different temperatures and flow regimes (Priede *et al*. 2013).

This proposal concentrates on an area that is an especially complex section of the MAR (Søiland *et al*., 2008), including sections of the MAR to the north and south of the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone, and as such is expected to be home to diverse and interesting deep-sea fauna (Tabachnick & Collins, 2008). From the north, the Reykjanes Ridge stretches southwestwards from Iceland to approximately 52ºN, where the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone (Felley *et al*., 2008; Heger *et al*., 2008) offsets the ridge by 5º to the east and opens the deepest (maximum depth 4500 m) connection between the northwest and northeast Atlantic (Felley *et al*., 2008; Heger *et al*., 2008; Mortensen *et al*., 2008; Søiland *et al*., 2008). South of the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture zone, two pronounced deep rift valleys at 32.25ºW and 31.75ºW (Opdal *et al*., 2008) and two further fracture zones (Faraday and Maxwell Fracture Zones, at 50ºN and 48ºN respectively) create topographic complexity that likely also creates associated diversity in ecological communities, although the latter remain poorly characterised.The MAR within the OSPAR maritime area is considered to have three different biogeographic regions. The MAR-ECO project studied these areas in their fieldwork, by targeting three clear areas in the northern, southern and Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Areas regions. The on-going ATLAS project is completing a revision of North Atlantic biogeography, including work to understand the implications of changing ocean conditions (ATLAS 2019).

The general circulation in the epipelagic zone (0-200 m) is well understood as the warm North Atlantic current flowing north-eastwards from the subtropical gyre in the southwest Atlantic towards the European shelf with two to four branches crossing the MAR between 45° and 52° N, approximately coinciding with the three fracture zones (Sy *et al*. 1992, Søiland *et al*., 2008). The sub-polar front is created where the warm, saline North Atlantic water meets the cold, less saline water of the sub-polar gyre from the Labrador and Irminger Seas and is a permanent feature. The meandering of the sub-polar front between 48-53°N coincides with temporal variation in the character and spatial distribution of the water masses and frontal features (Søiland *et al*. 2008). This front is one of the major oceanic features in the OSPAR region, being an area of elevated abundance and diversity of many taxa, including an elevated standing stock of phytoplankton (Clark *et al*., 2001; Gallienne *et al*., 2001; Gaard *et al*., 2008; Opdal *et al*., 2008; Sutton *et al*., 2008).

Location

This area extends from 48°N and 55°188′N along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge, and the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone occurs at 52º30′N. The area extends from about 25°W to 45°W, with the transform faults occurring between 30°W and 35°W (Olivet *et al.* 1974). The eastern boundary of the Charlie- Gibbs Fracture Zone is detectable beyond 42°W. The southern ridge continues uninterrupted to 45°W (Olivet *et al.* 1974). This area encompasses the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone, the meandering Sub-polar Frontal Zone and the benthic communities of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge in this area, including individual seamounts.

Feature description of the area

The MAR is a benthic feature and has important benthic habitats associated with it. However, as mentioned in the introductory section, the MAR plays a fundamental role in circulation patterns of the area and so can also be considered a water column feature. The Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone (CGFZ) is a unique geomorphological feature to the North Atlantic Ocean and to the high-seas areas of NEAFC and OSPAR. Owing to its remoteness, the fauna associated with the CGFZ are poorly studied, and it is premature to speculate on whether any species are endemic based on first descriptions. For example, Gebruk (2008) described two species of holothurians and believed them to be endemic to the MAR but they subsequently were found on the European continental margin in the Whittard Canyon (Masson 2009).

As part of the MAR-ECO project (Priede *et al.* 2013) manned submersibles were deployed on the axis (52°47′N) and the northern slopes (52°58′N) of the Charlie–Gibbs North transform fault and surveyed macroplankton (Vinogradov 2005), demersal nekton (Felley *et al.* 2008) and invertebrate megafauna (Gebruk and Krylova 2013). Pelagic shrimps, chaetognaths and gelatinous animals were numerically dominant in the plankton, with peak densities corresponding to the main pycnocline. Mucous houses of appendicularians were abundant at 150 m above the seabed, although this is common throughout the central Atlantic and not associated with specific bottom topography (Vinogradov 2005). Nekton included large and small macrourids (*Coryphaenoides* spp.), shrimp (infraorder Penaeidea), *Halosauropsis macrochir*, *Aldrovandia* sp., *Antimora rostrata*, and alepocephalids (Felley *et al.* 2008).

Glass sponges were common between 1700 and 2500 m while the deeper parts of the fracture wall and the sea floor were dominated by isidid corals, other anthozoans, squat lobsters and echinoderms, especially holothurians. The elpidiid holothurian, *Kolga nana*, occurred at high density in the abyssal depression (Gebruk and Krylova 2013). Rogacheva *et al.* (2013) recorded 32 holothurian species from the CGFZ area through the ECOMAR project (http://www.oceanlab.abdn.ac.uk/ecomar/), including three elasipodid holothurian species new to science.

In general, none of the fauna documented from the CGFZ showed distributions atypical of similar habitats in the broader North Atlantic, although Gebruk and Krylova (2013) discuss the known distribution of the holothurian *Peniagone longipaillata* and remark on the differences in relative abundance observed between the occurrence of this species, where it is common in the lower bathyal of the CGFZ, and the continental slopes in the Porcupine Seabight and Abyssal Plain areas and Whittard Canyon, where it is less common. There is weak evidence that the CGFZ may be important for juvenile zoarcids based on a high percentage of those observed with baited cameras being <100 mm in length (Kemp *et al.* 2013).

General knowledge of seafloor benthos suggests that where the geo-morphological processes of the fracture zone have created steep walls along the fractures, the greater three-dimensional topographic complexity, combined with the strong water flows through the fractures, creates habitat that is likely to be more productive and support greater concentrations of fragile taxa such as deep-water corals and sponges than adjacent habitats (Miller *et al.* 2012). The sampling done along the fracture zone supports these inferences but the differences from other habitats in similar depths and latitudes have not been quantified yet. The CGFZ was mapped for the first time in 2015 on the RV Celtic Explorer as one of the key projects launched by the Atlantic Ocean Research Alliance, following the signing of the Galway Statement on Atlantic Ocean Cooperation between Canada, the EU and the US in May 2013, discovering sponge gardens and a skate nursery at 2000m.

For the benthic fauna, the Mid-Atlantic Ridge can serve as a barrier for east-west dispersal (see e.g., Mironov & Gebruk 2002, 2006) although the degree to which east and west communities differ varies along the ridge (Alt *et al*., 2019). Gebruk *et al*. (2006) noted that particularly in the area south of the CGFZ, 48 per cent of the 150 identified species occurred only to the west of the ridge, whereas 19 per cent of the species were restricted to the eastern Atlantic. Likewise, the CGFZ acts as a barrier in north-south direction: the areas south and north of the CGFZ share only 27 per cent of the species (of the groups used as indicators), and recent studies suggest that the CGFZ may serve as a major biogeographic barrier for deep-sea demosponges (Cárdenas and Rapp, 2015). Due to the transition of water masses at 800-1000 m depth there is also a vertical zonation of the bathyal fauna.

Video inspections in the areas south and north of the CGFZ found cold water corals at all sites, at depths of 772-2355m, most commonly between 800 and 1400 m. Twenty-seven of the 40 coral taxa were octocorals, among which the Gorgonacea were the most diverse (Mortensen *et al*., 2008). Molodtsova *et al*. (2008) found very little overlap in species composition of the coral fauna in the sampling areas north, near and south of the CGFZ. The number of megafaunal species was higher in areas where corals dominated, compared to areas without coral. Typical taxa that co-occurred with *Lophelia* were crinoids, certain sponges, the bivalve *Acesta excavata*, and squat lobster (Mortensen *et al*. 2008). In addition, further surveys have also observed sponge aggregations. Bell *et al*., (2016) observed areas dominated by both demosponges and glass sponges on steep slopes between 2095 and 2601 m depth. Alt *et al*. (2019) also reported sponge aggregations on flat areas and sedimented slopes at around 2500m depth.

The biogeography of the seamount-related fish fauna of the North Atlantic, caught mainly as bycatch in roundnose grenadier (*Coryphaenoides rupestris*) and alfonsino (*Beryx splendens*) trawls down to 1500 m depth in over 20 years of commercial exploitation by Russian fisheries, is described by Kukuev (2004). He accounts for 68 species of mainly mesobenthopelagic bathyal fishes associated with the seamounts of the northern MAR (45-55°N, i.e. within the described area), including 44 species of deepwater sharks, such as Chlamydoselachidae, Pseudotriakidae, Scyliorinidae and Squalidae, including leafscale gulper shark (*Centrophorus squamosus*), gulper shark (*C. granulosus*) and Portuguese dogfish (*Centroscymnus coelepis*).

The ecosystem associated with the MAR seems to be of particular importance to sei (*Balaenoptera borealis*) and sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*). The highest aggregations of baleen whales and especially sei whales were observed north of and in relation to the CGFZ, which overlaps with earlier observations of Sigurjónsson *et al*. (1991) (in Skov *et al*. 2008). *Balaenoptera borealis* in particular was most abundant over the slopes of steep seamounts and water depths between 1500 and 3000 m, whereas *P. macrocephalus* were most common in waters shallower than 2000 m and often seen above high rising seamounts where they presumably found the best feeding conditions, i.e. the highest squid density (Nøttestad *et al*. 2005). Tracking studies of sei, fin and blue whale have described the migration of these species through the area from the Azores to foraging areas in the Labrador Sea as well as Greenlandic and

Icelandic waters (Olsen *et al*. 2009, Silva *et al*., 2013; Prieto *et al*., 2014), Furthermore, fin and blue whales remained at middle latitudes along their migration in the area for prolonged periods in the areas of the CGFZ and Reykjanes Ridge, exhibiting area-restricted search (ARS) behaviour, indicative of foraging activity. The 2004 MAR-ECO expedition, which provided the opportunity to model the oceanic distributions of cetaceans across the CGFZ and Reykjanes Ridge for sperm whales, suggests that these species are associated with fine-scale frontal processes interacting with the topography in the upper 100m of the water column just north of the Sub-Polar Front (SPF), CGFZ and Faraday Seamount (Skov *et al*., 2008).

The MAR-ECO cruise provided a snapshot of seabird distribution along the MAR in summer 2004: 22 species of seabirds were identified, however only the northern fulmar (*Fulmarus glacialis*), great shearwater (*Puffinus gravis*) and Cory´s shearwater (*Calonectris diomedea*) were observed by the hundreds. The distribution of these species reflects the broad characters of water masses in the area (from Mar-Eco cruise report, Nøttestad *et al*., 2004) and in particular the boundary effect of the frontal zone and the limited nesting sites available only on the Azores and Iceland (Skov *et al*. 1994). *F. glacialis* were distributed along most of the study transect north of 47° N, and they were by far the most common species of seabird along the central and northern parts of the MAR. Densities were generally below 1 bird per km^2, and no large-scale concentrations were noted. However, discrete elevations in densities were recorded both in the Reykjanes and the CGFZ regions. *P. gravis* were observed only in the vicinity of the Subpolar front just north of the CGFZ. Most of the birds recorded were found in the area of the Subpolar front, where concentrations of both sitting and flying birds were observed. The largest flock seen was of 160 birds, but flock sizes were generally between three and 10 birds. Outside the frontal area *P. gravis* were mainly seen in singles. *C. diomedea* on the other hand is found only south of the *P. gravis* distribution area – usually not in flocks except for an area where warm Gulf Stream water surfaced. *C. diomedea* were commonly observed with cetaceans, most notably dolphins, but also with other species, e.g., sperm whales. More recent at-sea surveys confirm the importance of the area for species richness, abundance and over-wintering aggregations (Bennison and Jessopp, 2015; Boertmann, 2011) as well as for breeding birds from the Azores (i.e., birds travelling there during the incubation period) (Magalhaes *et al*., 2008).

There is only anecdotal evidence on the observation of sea turtles over the MAR, in particular, enhanced abundances over the CGFZ and SPF regions. The leatherback turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea*) can be found foraging at oceanic fronts during their long trans-Atlantic migrations (Eckert, 2006). It occurs within the described region and feeds primarily on gelatinous zooplankton (Hays *et al*., 2006; Doyle, 2007, Doyle *et al*, 2008), high concentrations of which have been recorded several times around the CGFZ and SPF (Fock *et al*., 2004; Youngbluth *et al*., 2008). One study has tracked individuals to the SPF area of the North-East Atlantic, presumably to feed in this plankton rich environment (Ferraroli *et al*., 2004; Hays *et al*., 2004). It is probable therefore, that this species of turtle visits the described area to feed. Loggerhead turtle *(Caretta caretta*) is the most common sea turtle in the North-East Atlantic (Revelles *et al*., 2007). No direct observations of this species have been made near the CGFZ . However, it is known to make trans-Atlantic migrations between nesting and foraging sites (Encalada *et al*., 1998). It is possible that animals may stop to feed in the CGFZ during these migrations as noted for individual *D. coriacea*.

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

Given the geophysical nature, location and size of the CGFZ, it is unlikely that it will be affected by human activities, although there is potential for mining of the rare minerals associated with the transform faults. In 2010 the Environmental Ministers of the OSPAR countries officially designated a marine protected area of 145,420 km^2 in the southern part of the CGFZ (Figure 3) and adopted "significant and innovative measures to establish and manage the southern part of the originally proposed Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone MPA – 'Charlie-Gibbs South MPA'-, for which the seabed and super adjacent waters are situated in areas beyond national jurisdiction" (OSPAR Commission 2010). That same year (2010) the OSPAR Commission and the International Seabed Authority signed a memorandum of understanding in order to conciliate the development of mineral resources with comprehensive protection of the marine environment. In this MOU, the CGFZ is highlighted as an area where consultation between the two had been initiated. In 2012 OSPAR countries designated “Charlie-Gibbs North High Seas Marine Protected Area”, an area of high seas of approximately 177,700 km^2 (OSPAR Commission 2012), complementing the Charlie-Gibbs South MPA established previously (Figure 3).

The scale of the impact that fishing and other human activities have had on the fauna of the CGFZ is at present unquantified and likely to be minor, although fishing has been reported on the Hectate Seamount (ICES 2007). In 2009 NEAFC closed more than 330,000 km^2 to bottom fisheries on the MAR, including a large section of the CGFZ, which includes the transform faults and median transverse ridge (http://www.neafc.org/page/closures) (Figure 3).

Assessment of area no. 15: Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone, against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA Criteria (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Description** (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		No information	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique (“the only one of its kind”), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.				X
Explanation for ranking The Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone (CGFZ) is a unique geomorphological feature in the high-sea between the Azores and Iceland. It is the only fracture zone with an offset of its size (350 km) between Europe and North America and opens the deepest connection between the northwest and northeast Atlantic. The fact that it is a double transform fault is an unusual feature (Fleming *et al.* 1970).					
Special importance for life-history stages of species	Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.	X			
Explanation for ranking Data deficient. Not enough information is known about this area to rank this criterion. Although the northern MAR is considered to be a major reproduction area of roundnose grenadier (*Coryphaenoides rupestris*, see e.g., Vinnichenco & Khlivnoy 2004), and may be crucial for the reproduction of bathypelagic fish (Sutton *et al*. 2008). In addition, recent unpublished observations have been made of a possible a skate nursery at 2000m.					
Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				X
Explanation for ranking There is evidence for the presence of several species/habitats that are considered to be ‘Threatened and/or declining’ by OSPAR. These include: Orange roughy (*H. atlanticus*); deep sea sponge aggregations (Alt *et al*., 2019); *Lophelia pertusa* reefs (Mortensen *et al*., 2008); seamount communities, although more specific data is needed for the Fracture Zone proper. The area is also very important for combined					

<table>
<tr><td colspan="6">aggregations of seabirds (Boertmann, 2011).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery</td><td>Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
This section of the MAR, through its associated substrate, current and feeding conditions, provides habitat to some particularly sensitive/vulnerable species and communities both on soft and hard substrate and in the water column. In particular, deep-water species such as orange roughy (H. atlanticus), and biogenic habitats such as formed by cold-water corals and sponges are considered vulnerable, as often fragile, and slow (if at all) to recover due to slow growth, delayed maturity, irregular reproduction and high generation length, as well as community characteristics of high diversity at low biomass. This is an adaptation to stable, low food environments. Propagation and dispersal of larvae are largely unknown and therefore little can be said about a possible recovery of neither invertebrates nor fishes.

Glass sponges were observed on hard substrates on the fault wall at depths between 1700 and 2500 m (Gebruk and Krylova 2013). These taxa are fragile and slow to recover and highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activities, including contact with bottom-fishing gear (longlines, pots, trawls). Inferring from the frequently documented presence of such species and communities in structurally complex deep-sea habitats elsewhere, further sampling is likely to document additional presence of sensitive habitats, biotopes, or species in the CGFZ fractures.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Biological productivity</td><td>Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.</td><td>X</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
There is no evidence that the CGFZ contains comparatively higher natural productivity. The strong current flows through the fractures and complex three-dimensional habitats create conditions that may enhance productivity, but at present there are insufficient data to rank this criterion. The deep-pelagic ecosystem over the MAR is different from “typical” open ocean regimes, at least in respect to fishes, in that there is a dramatic increase in fish biomass in the benthic boundary layer (0-200 m above the seafloor) not seen in other areas (Sutton et al., 2008). The reason for this difference is thought to be the enlarged bathypelagic food sources that are available in the shallower depths of the Ridge as compared to the abyssal plains (Sutton et al., 2008).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Biological diversity</td><td>Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
The MAR-ECO and ECOMAR expeditions have reported a diverse and extensive range of taxonomic information regarding the benthos of the MAR in general (Bergstad & Gebruk, 2008; Bell et al., 2016; Alt et al., 2019). In these expeditions, taxa have been found that are new to science and new to the geographic region and others that have contributed to taxonomic re-descriptions and revisions of known species (Gebruk et al., 2008). For example, the hexactinellid fauna of the northern MAR has been poorly investigated in the past. Recent work has shown that it is relatively rich, with 14 new species described in one report and similarities being found between the fauna in the CGFZ and the fauna of the Indian Ocean and Indo-Pacific (Tabachnick & Collins, 2008).

Increased diversity was also seen in the gelatinous zooplankton of the MAR. Visual observations of what appeared to be undescribed species were made in submersible dives along its entire length (Youngbluth et</td></tr>
</table>

al., 2008).

In comparison to adjacent abyssal plains and other studies from the North Atlantic, Sutton *et al*. (2008) found that the deep-pelagic fish assemblage along the entire MAR is taxonomically diverse, with 205 species from 52 families. Between 70 and 80 deep-water benthopelagic fish species were caught by Bergstad *et al*. (2008) during experimental trawls over the MAR. This sample was described by the authors as being a substantial subset of the demersal fish species listed by both Haedrich & Merrett (1988) and Kukuev (2004) for the North Atlantic deep sea. Bergstad *et al*. (2008) were unable to statistically compare the sites that they sampled along the MAR due to a lack of replication. The diversity is extensive within the area, but a full account is not yet available. Whether the area has particularly high diversity is unclear. The diversity of the MARe in general has been understudied, both in terms of the pelagic ecosystem (Youngbluth *et al*., 2008) and the benthos (Tabachnick & Collins, 2008). The findings of the MAR-ECO expedition have allowed glimpses into the structure and patterns of fauna there (Mortensen *et al*., 2008; Opdal *et al*., 2008) and have furthered our understanding of this important region (Gebruk *et al*., 2008).

There is evidence that the CGFZ may form a biogeographic barrier for some species, including planktonic, pelagic or benthic organisms, (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006; Gebruk *et al*., 2010; Vecchione *et al*., 2010; Alt *et al*., 2013). Recently the CGFZ area has been suggested as a major biogeographic barrier for deep-sea demosponges (Cárdenas and Rapp, 2015). There are differences in fauna north and south of the CGFZ (Bell *et al*., 2016).

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.			X	

Explanation for ranking

There is only limited information available on the extent of human activities in the CGFZ. In nearby areas of the MAR the physical impact of fishing activities has been reported (reviewed by OSPAR 2010) including visual evidence of damage to cold-water corals and the presence of lost nets. In addition, there is evidence of litter in this region, but litter levels are low compared with banks, seamounts and the continental slope (Pham *et al*., 2015)

References

ATLAS (2019) Deliverable 3.3 Biodiversity, biogeography and GOODS classification system under current climate conditions and future IPCC scenarios.

Bennison A & Jessopp M (2015) At-sea surveys confirm a North Atlantic biodiversity hotspot, Bird Study, 62:2, 262-266, DOI: 10.1080/00063657.2015.1011601

Bergman, E.A. and S.C. Solomon. 1988. Transform fault earthquakes in the North Atlantic: Source mechanisms and depth of faulting. Journal of Geophysical Research 93:9027-9057.

Bergstad, O.A. & Gebruk, A.V. (2008) Approach and methods for sampling of benthic fauna on the 2004 MAR-ECO expedition to the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Marine Biology Research 4: 160 – 163.

Boertmann D. 2011. Seabirds in the central North Atlantic, September 2006: Further evidence for an oceanic seabird aggregation area. Marine Ornithology 39(2):183-188

Bower, A.S., Le Cann, B., Rossby, T., Zenk, W., Gould, J., Speer, K., Richardson, P.L., Prater, M.D. and H.-M. Zhang. 2002. Directly measured mid-depth circulation in the northeastern North Atlantic Ocean. Nature 419: 603- 607

Calvert, A.J. and R.B. Whitmarsh. 1986. The structure of the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone. Journal of the Geological Society 1433: 819-821.

Cormier, M.-H., Detrick, R. S. and G. M. Purdy. 1984. Anomalously thin crust in oceanic fracture zones: New seismic constraints from the Kane Fracture Zone. Journal of Geophysical Research 89:249–266.

Doyle, T.K. (2007) Leatherback sea turtles (Dermochelys coriacea) in Irish waters. Irish Wildlife Manuals, No. 32. National Parks and Wildlife Service, Department of the Environment, Heritage and Local Government, Dublin, Ireland.

Doyle, T.K., Houghton, J.D.R., O'Súilleabháin, P.F., Hobson, V.J., Marnell, F., Davenport, J. & Hays, G.C. (2008) Leatherback turtles satellite-tagged in European waters. Endangered Species Research 4: 23 – 31

Encalada, S.E., Bjorndal, K.A., Bolten, A.B., Zurita, J.C., Schroeder, B., Possardt, E., Sears, C.J. & Bowen, B.W. (1998) Population structure of loggerhead turtle (Caretta caretta) nesting colonies in the Atlantic and Mediterranean as inferred from mitochondrial DNA control region sequences. Marine Biology 130: 567 – 575.

Felley, J.D., Vecchione, M. And R.R. Wilson Jr. 2008. Small-scale distribution of deep-sea demersal nekton and other megafauna in the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep Sea Research II 55: 153-160.

Ferraroli, S., Georges, J-Y., Gasparll, P. & Le Maho, Y. (2004) Where leatherback turtles meet fisheries: conservation efforts should focus on hotspots frequented by these ancient reptiles. Nature 429: 521.

Fleming, H.S., Cherkis, N.Z. and J.R. Heirtzler. 1970. The Gibbs Fracture Zone: A double fracture zone at 52°30′N in the Atlantic Ocean. Marine Geophysical Researches 1:37-45.

Fock, H., Pusch, C. & Ehrich, S. (2004) Structure of deep-pelagic fish assemblages in relation to the Mid Atlantic Ridge (45o – 50oN). Deep-Sea Research I 51: 953

Garner, D.M. 1972. Flow through the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone, Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences 9: 116-121.

Gebruk A.V. 2008. Holothurians (Holothuroidea, Echinodermata) of the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge collected by the G.O. Sars MAR-ECO expedition with descriptions of four new species. Marine Biology Research 4, 48–60.

Gebruk, A.V. and E.M. Krylova. 2013. Megafauna of the Charlie–Gibbs Fracture Zone (northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge) based on video observations. Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom 93: 1143-1150. doi:10.1017/S0025315412001890.

Haedrich, R.L. & Merrett, N.R. (1988) Summary atlas of deep-living fishes in the North Atlantic. Journal of Natural History 22: 1325 – 1362.

Harvey, J.G. and A. Theodorou. 1986. The circulation of Norwegian Sea overflow water in the eastern North Atlantic. Oceanologica Acta 9: 393-402.

Hays, G.C., Hobson, V.J., Metcalfe, J.D., Righton, D. & Sims, D.W. (2006) Flexible foraging movements of leatherback turtles across the north Atlantic Ocean. Ecology 87(10): 2647 – 2656.

Hays, G.C., Houghton, J.D.R. & Myers, A.E. (2004) Pan-Atlantic leatherback turtle movements. Nature 429: 522.

Heger, A., Ieno, E.N., King, N.J., Morris, K.J., Bagley, P.M. & Priede, I.G. (2008) Deep-sea pelagic bioluminescence over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 126 – 136.

Hekinian, R. and F. Aumento. 1973. Rocks from the Gibbs Fracture Zone and the Minia Seamount near 53°N in the Atlantic Ocean. Marine Geology 14: 47-72.

ICES. 2007. Report of the Working Group on Deep-water Ecology (WGDEC), 26 – 28th February. ICES CM 2007/ACE:01 Ref. LRC. 61pp.

Kanamori, H. and G.S. Stewart. 1976. Mode of the strain release along the Gibbs Fracture Zone, Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Physcis of the Earth and Planetary Interiors 11: 312-332.

Kukuev, E.I. (2004) 20 years of ichthyofauna research on seamounts of the North Atlantic Ridge and adjacent areas. A review. Archive of Fishery Marine Research 51(1-3): 215 -232.

Lilwall, R.C. and R.E. Kirk. 1985. Ocean-bottom seismograph observations on the Charlie-Gibbs fracture zone. Geophysical Journal of the Royal Astronomical Society 80: 195-208.

Magalhães, M., Santos, R. & Hamer, K. 2008. Dual-foraging of Cory's shearwaters in the Azores: feeding locations, behaviour at sea and implications for food provisioning of chicks. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 359: 283–293.

Masson, D.G. 2009. The Geobiology of Whittard Submarine Canyon. RRS James Cook Cruise 36, 19 June–28 July 2009. National Oceanography Centre, Southampton, 53 pp. http://www.eprints.soton.ac.uk/69504/1/nocscr041.pdf.

Miller, R.J., Hocevar, J., Stone, R.P. and D.V. Fedorov. 2012. Structure-forming corals and sponges and their use as fish habitat in Bering Sea submarine canyons. PLoS ONE 7(3): e33885. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0033885

Molodtsova, T.N., Sanamyan, N.P.& Keller, N.B.(2008) Anthozoa from the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge and the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone. Marine Biology Research 4: 112 -130.

Mortensen, P.B., Buhl-Mortensen, L., Gebruk., A.V. and Krylova, E.M. (2008) Occurrence of deep-water corals on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge based on MAR-ECO data. Deep-Sea Research II 55:142-152.

Müller, R.D. and W.R. Roest. 1992. Fracture zones in the North Atlantic from combined Geosat and Seasta data. Journal of Geophysical Research 97: 3337-3350.

Mutter, J.C., Detrick, R.S. and North Atlantic Transect Study Group. 1984. Multichannel seismic evidence for anomalously thin crust at Blake Spur fracture zone. Geology 12: 534-537.

Nøttestad, L., Olsen, E., 2004. Whales and seals: top predators in the ecosystem. In: The Norwegian Sea Ecosystem. Skjoldal, H.R. (Ed.)Tapir Academic Press, Trondheim, Norway pp. 395-434.

Olivet, J.-L., Le Pichon, Xl, Monti, S. and B. Sichler. 1974. Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone. Journal of Geophysical Research 79: 2059-2072.

Olsen, E., Budgell P., Head E., Kleivane L., Nottestad L., Prieto R., Silva M., Skov H., Vikingsson G., Waring G., Oien N. 2009. First satellite-tracked long-distance movement of a Sei Whale (Balaenoptera borealis) in the North Atlantic. Aquatic Mammals, 35(3): 313-318

Opdal, A.F., Godø, O.R., Bergstad, O.A. & Fiksen, Ø. (2008) Distribution, identity, and possible processes sustaining meso-bathypelagic scattering layers on the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 45 – 58.

OSPAR Commission. 2010. OSPAR Convention for the Protection of the Marine Environment of the North-East Atlantic. Meeting of the OSPAR Commission Bergen: 20-24 September 2010. Annex 49 (Ref. M6.2). http://www.ospar.org/content/content.asp?menu=01441000000000_000000_000000

OSPAR Commission. 2012. OSPAR Convention for the Protection of the Marine Environment of the North-East Atlantic. Meeting of the OSPAR Commission Bonn: 25-29 June 2012. Annex 6 (Ref. §5.19a). OSPAR Decision 2012/01.

Priede, I.G., Billett, D.S.M., Brierley, A.S., Hoelzel, A.R., Inall, M., Miller, P.I., Cousins, N.J., Shields, M.A. and T. Fujii. 2013. The ecosystem of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge at the sub-polar front and Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone; ECO-MAR project strategy and description of the sampling programme 2007-2010. Deep-Sea Research II http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.06.012i.

Prieto, R., Silva, M.A., Waring, G. & Gonçalves, J. 2014. Sei whale movements and behavior in the North Atlantic inferred from satellite telemetry. Endangered Species Research. 26. 103-113. DOI: https://doi.org/10.3354/esr00630

Revelles, M., Cardona, L., Aguilar, A. & Fernández, G. (2007) The diet of pelagic loggerhead sea turtles (Caretta caretta) off the Balearic archipelago (western Mediterranean): relevance of long-line baits. Journal of the Marine Biological Associationn of the United Kingdom 87: 805 – 813.

Rogacheva A, Gebruk A. and C.Alt. 2013. Deep-sea holothurians of the Charlie Gibbs Fracture Zone area, northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Marine Biology Research 9:587_623.

Rossby, T. 1999. On gyre interactions. Deep-Sea Research II 46: 139-164.

Saunders, P.M. 1994.The flux of overflow water through the Charlie–Gibbs Fracture Zone. Journal of Geophysical Research 99:12343–12355.

Searle, R. 1981. The active part of the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone: A study using sonar and other geophysical techniques. Journal of Geophysical Research 86: 243-262.

Shor, A., Lonsdale, P., Hollister, C.D. and D. Spencer. 1980. Charlie-Gibbs fracture zone: bottom-water transport and its geological effects. Deep-Sea Research 27A: 325-245.

Silva, M.A., Prieto, R., Jonsen, I., Baumgartner, M.F., Santos, R.S. 2013. North Atlantic Blue and Fin Whales Suspend Their Spring Migration to Forage in Middle Latitudes: Building up Energy Reserves for the Journey? PLoS ONE 8(10): e76507. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0076507

Skov, H., Gunnlaugsson, T., Budgell, W.P., Horne, J., Nøttestad, L., Olsen, E., Søiland, H., Víkingsson, G. & Waring, G. (2008) Small-scale spatial variability of sperm and sei whales in relation to oceanographic and topographic features along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 254 – 268.

Søiland, H., Budgell, W.P. and Ø Knutsen. 2008. The physical oceanographic conditions along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge north of the Azores in June-July 2004. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 29- 44.

Sutton, T., Porteiro, F.M., Heino, M., Byrkjedal, I., Langhelle, G., Anderson, C.I.H., Horne, J.P., Søiland, H., Falkenhaug, T., Godø, O.R. & Bergstad, O.A. (2008) Vertical structure, biomass and topographic association of deep-pelagic fishes in relation to a mid-ocean ridge system. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 161 – 184.

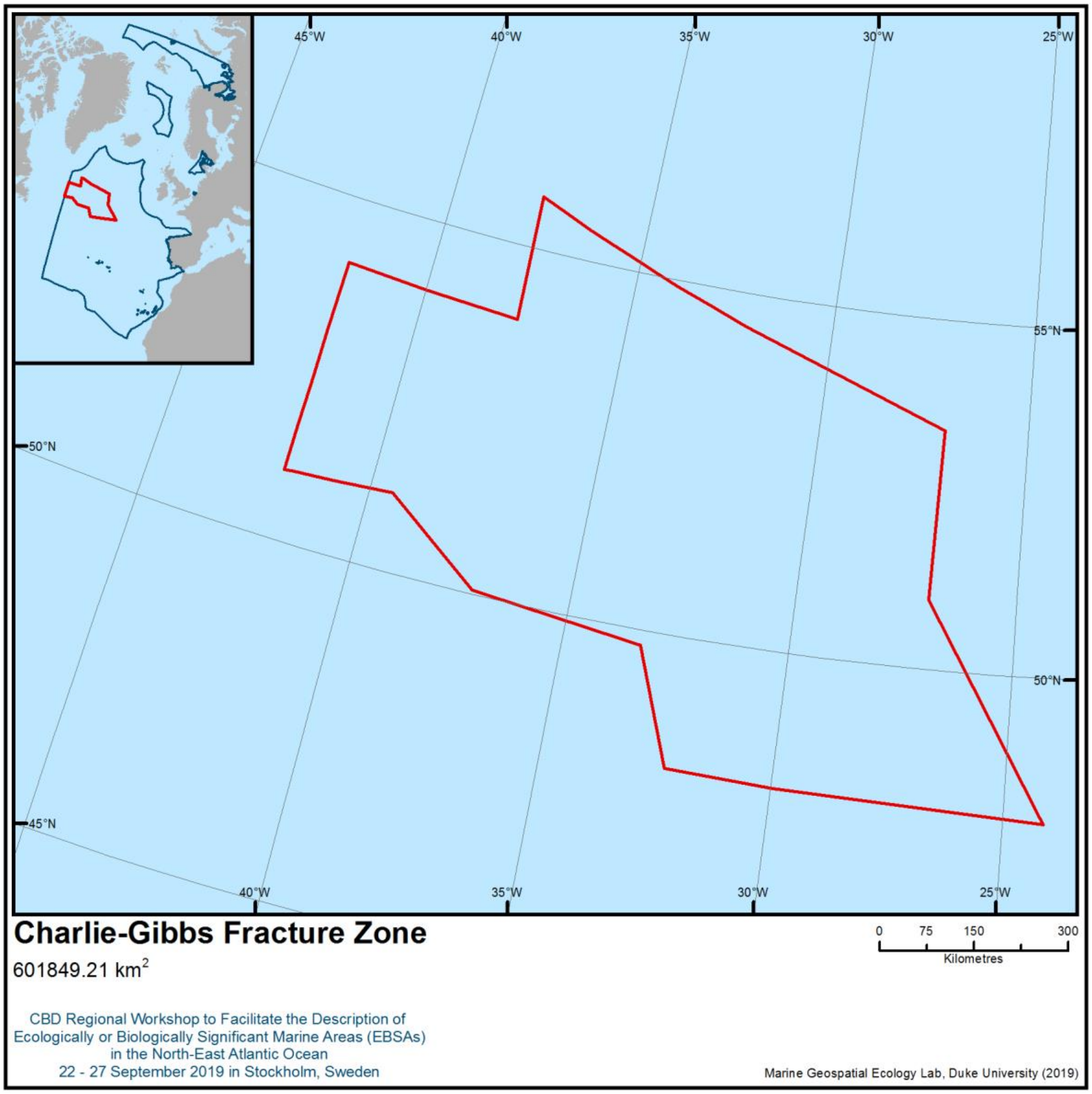
Tabachnick, K.R. & Collins, A.G. (2008) Glass sponges (Porifera, Hexactinellidae) of the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Marine Biology Research 4: 25 – 47.

Vinnichenko, V. I. & Khlivnoy V. N. (2004) Distribution and biological characteristics of young roundnose grenadier (Coryphaenoides rupestris) in the northeast Atlantic (by data of Russian investigations in 2003). ICES Working Group on the Biology and Assessment of Deep-Sea Fisheries Resources Working Document, 2004

Vinogradov, G.M. 2005. Vertical distribution of macroplankton at the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone (North Atlantic), as observed from the manned submersible “Mir-1”. Marine Biology 146: 325-331.

Youngbluth, M., Sørnes, T., Hosia, A. & Stemmann, L. (2008) Vertical distribution and relative abundance of gelatinous zooplankton, in situ observations near the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 119 – 125.

Maps and Figures



Location of area no. 15: Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone

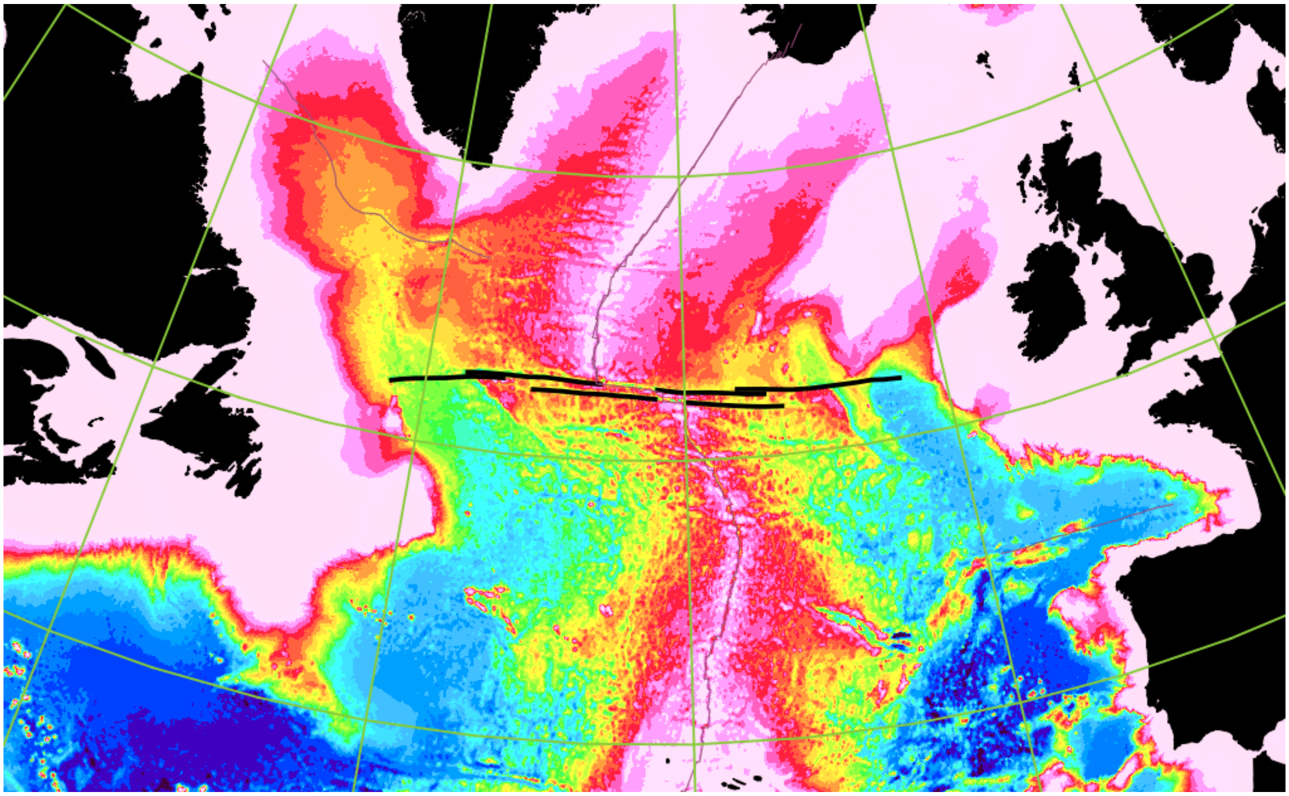


Figure 1 Location of the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone (black lines) in the North Atlantic. The Mid-Atlantic Ridge runs through the centre of the Atlantic Ocean, and its left lateral displacement can be clearly seen. Image downloaded from: commons.wikimedia.org File:Charlie-gibbs-full-extent.png - Wikimedia Commons.

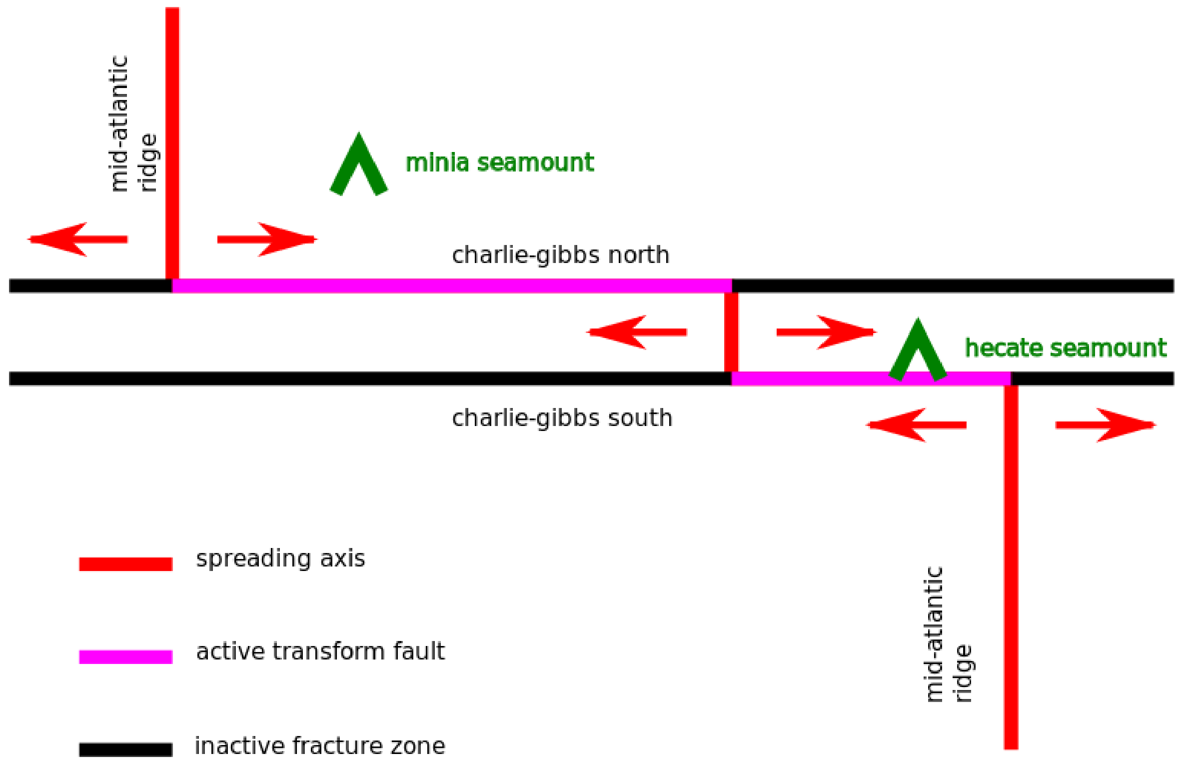


Figure 2. Schematic of the Charlie-Gibbs Fracture Zone and the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (MAR) indicating the left lateral displacement of the MAR, the North and South transform faults and the central spreading axis. The relative location of two seamounts, Hecate and Minia, are illustrated. Image downloaded from: commons.wikimedia.org File: Charliegibbsschema-en.svg- Wikimedia Commons.

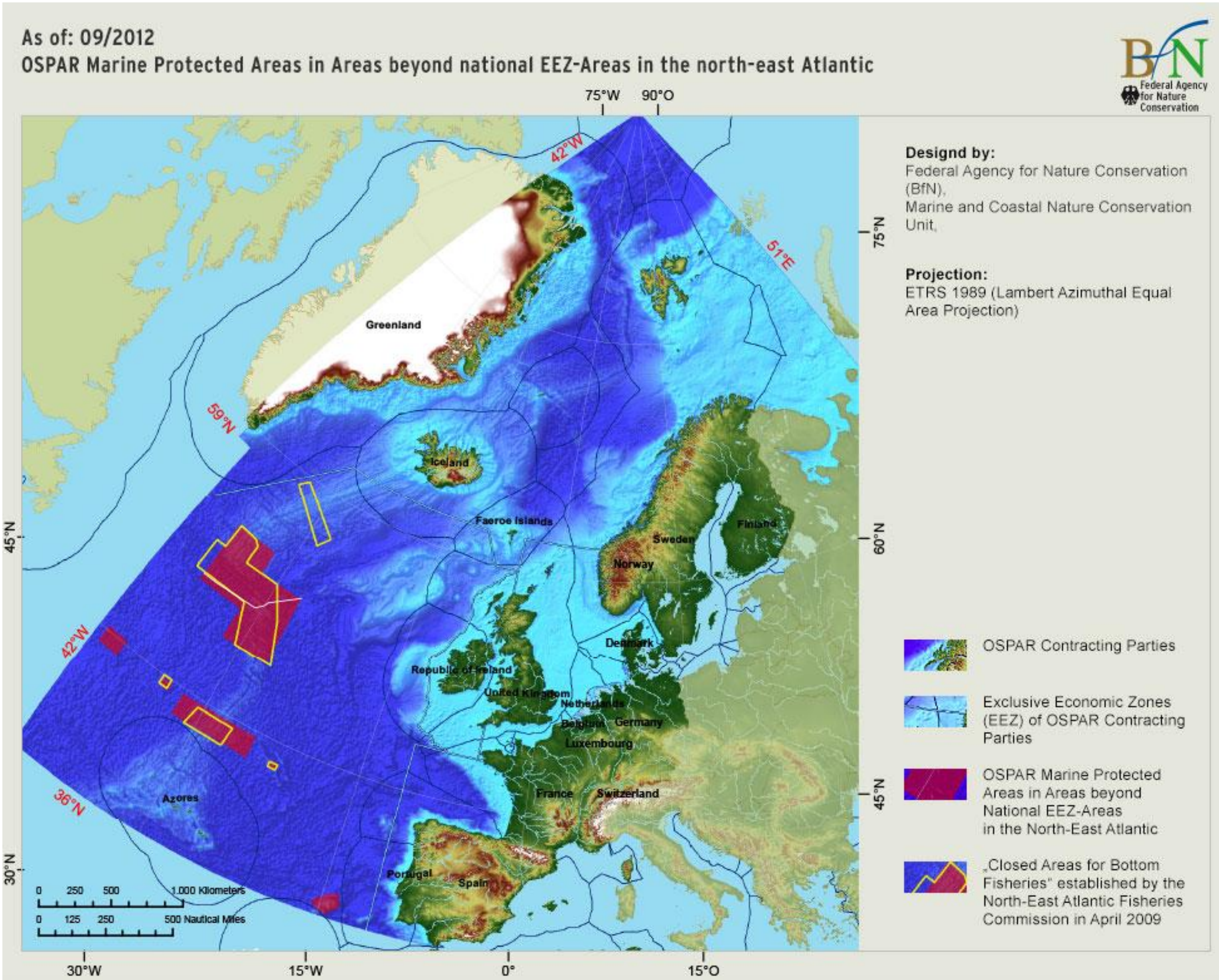


Figure 3. Location of the OSPAR MPAs in the North-East Atlantic, including the large Charlie-Gibbs South and Charlie-Gibbs North MPAs in the central area. The areas closed to bottom fishing by NEAFC are indicated by the yellow boundaries. Downloaded 10 Sep 2013 from: http://charlie-gibbs.org/charlie/node/70

Area no. 16: Southern Reykjanes Ridge[17]

Abstract

Reykjanes Ridge is part of the major topographic feature of the Atlantic Ocean, the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. The Mid-Atlantic Ridge separates the Newfoundland and Labrador Basins from the West-European Basin and the Irminger Sea from the Iceland Basin, influencing hydrography and circulation. The ridge crest is generally cut by a deep rift valley along its length, bordered by high rift mountains, which are bordered by high fractured plateaus. This region is largely composed of volcanic rock, which is the foundation of the area and provides a hard-bottom substrate for the colonization of benthic communities, including vulnerable and habitat-forming species. The area supports several endangered and threatened shark and ray species. The Ridge itself and its complex hydrographic setting contribute to enhanced vertical mixing and turbulence, resulting in areas of increased productivity above the Ridge. The 2,500 m depth contour is used to inform the boundary of the area, capturing most of the ridge crest and known distribution of deep-water corals.

Introduction

Mid-ocean ridge systems occupy a third of the ocean floor and are the sites where new portions of the Earth's crust form (Heezen 1969). The Mid-Atlantic Ridge (MAR), a tectonic continental plate boundary, is the major topographic feature of the Atlantic Ocean, extending over 12,000 km from Iceland to the Bouvet Triple Junction in the South Atlantic (Figure 1). It divides the ocean longitudinally into two halves, each cut by secondary transverse ridges and interrupted by strike-slip transform faults that offset the ridge in opposing directions on either side of the axis of seafloor spreading. It has a profound role in the circulation of the water masses in the North Atlantic (Rossby, 1999; Bower *et al.*, 2002; Heger *et al.*, 2008; Søiland *et al.*, 2008). The complex hydrographic setting and the presence of the Ridge lead to enhanced vertical mixing and turbulence, resulting in areas of increased productivity over the Ridge (Falkowski *et al.*, 1998; Heger *et al.*, 2008).

Reykjanes Ridge is tectonically active, with a relatively low spreading rate of a few centimetres a year (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006). Volcanic activity is thought to be high, shown by the growth of lava domes, the development of extended volcanic chains and regular infilling of cracks with basaltic material (Sbortshikov &Rudenko, 1990; Mironov & Gebruk, 2006). Studies of volcanic rocks from the submerged MAR suggest that it consists largely of tholeiitic basalt with low values of K, Ti, and P. In contrast, the volcanic islands that form the elevated caps on the Ridge are built of alkali basalt with high values of Ti, Fe^{3+}, P, Na, and K (Engel and Engel 1964). Variations in mineral content result from chemical and isotopic heterogeneity in the mantle (White and Schilling 1978). There is one site north of the area that has been shown to have hydrothermal activity: Steinaholl vent field at 63°06'N (Olaffson *et al.*, 1991; German *et al.*, 1994; Mironov & Gebruk, 2006). No other hydrothermal activity has so far been detected along the Reykjanes Ridge, despite intensive sampling (German *et al*, 1994; German & Parsons, 1998). The crests of the MAR consist mostly of hard volcanic rock, whereas the flanks are covered with expanding thicknesses of soft sediments with increasing distance from the crests (Dinter, 2001). The Reykjanes Ridge is characterized by high sedimentation rates, which are related to the high biological productivity in the mixing zone of different water masses (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006).

The general physiography of the MAR was documented some time ago (Heezen el al. 1959). The ridge crest is generally notched by a deep rift valley along its length, bordered by high rift mountains, which in turn are bordered by high fractured plateaus (Heezen *et al.* 1959). These crest zones are generally well defined and present along the full length of the MAR (Malinverno 1990). At approximately 50 -75 km from the axis of the ridge, the crest merges with sediment covered flanks, which extend down to the abyssal plain (van Andel and Bowin 1968). The flanks are composed of a succession of smooth shelves, each from 2 to 100 km from the central axis and subdivided into upper, middle, and lower steps (Heezen el al. 1959) extending in some areas to depths of 4,572 m (Tolstoy and Ewing 1949). The flanks are generally covered with soft sediments.

[17] Area south of Iceland's Exclusive Economic Zone.

Within the OSPAR area, the Northern MAR separates the Newfoundland and Labrador Basins from the West-European Basin and the Irminger from the Iceland Basin. It plays an important role in the circulation of the water masses in the North Atlantic (Rossby 1999, Bower *et al.* 2002, Søiland *et al.* 2008) with currents crossing the MAR over deep gaps in the ridge and influencing upper-ocean circulation patterns (Bower *et al.* 2002). Canyons cut into the flanks may influence upward fluxes of water and abyssal mixing (Speer and Thurnherr 2005).

Over the MAR within the OSPAR area there are three main water masses in the upper ocean; the one found within the area is often termed Modified North Atlantic Water (Søiland *et al*, 2008). The surface current system of the North Atlantic is dominated by the warm North Atlantic Drift, which is a continuation of the Gulf Stream (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006). The northern boundary of this forms the characteristic Sub-Polar Front, which acts to separate the warm and cold-water masses and is usually found between 52 and 53°N (Mironov & Gerbuk, 2006; Søiland *et al.*, 2008). After the North Atlantic Drift crosses the Mid-Atlantic Ridge at approximately 50 to 52°N, it flows north (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006). Some of this current enters the Norwegian Sea east of Iceland, and some turns and flows westward (called the Irminger Current) over the Reykjanes Ridge at between 53°N and 60°N, into the Irminger Basin (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006). This is the major current within the area.

Reykjanes Ridge is characterized by sharp gradients in environmental conditions, which have allowed the area to be colonized by benthic fauna from very remote regions (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006). For example, species have been found whose distributions extend to the Antarctic, North Pacific and the Indo-West Pacific (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006). Within the area of the Icelandic Shelf and the Reykjanes Ridge the Arctic fauna is replaced by a boreal one, the European fauna by American and the autochthonous deep-sea fauna is replaced by an allochthonous one (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006). The composition of deep-sea benthic fauna on the Reykjanes Ridge south of Iceland's EEZ is not very well known in comparison to adjacent areas (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006). As Mironov & Gebruk (2006) state, this is well illustrated by the fact that the fourth cruise of the "Akademik Mstislav Keldysh" (1982) sampled many species that were recorded on the Ridge for the first time. This cruise yielded an extensive collection of deep-sea fauna, and since then other research cruises have focused on the Reykjanes Ridge (Mironov & Gebruk, 2006).

The northern part of the MAR has been subject to recent scientific investigations as part of the Census of Marine Life (MAR-ECO project) (Bergstad *et al*, 2008) and ECOMAR project (Preide *et al.* 2013a). Numerous new species have been discovered, and data has been derived that has led to taxonomic revisions and the discovery of species that were not previously known to exist in this region (Gebruk *et al*, 2008). The published findings of the MAR-ECO and ECOMAR projects represent most of the modern information and data about the Reykjanes Ridge in this description. Information has also been gathered from historical fishing accounts found in ICES reports and older published scientific research.

Location

The northern boundary of the area is Iceland's Exclusive Economic Zone. The southern boundary of this area is 55°188′N, well north the Sub-Polar Front, which separates the warm- and cold-water masses and is usually found between 52°N and 53°N (Mironov & Gerbuk, 2006; Søiland *et al*, 2008). The 2,500 m depth contour was used to define the boundaries of the area, as this captures most of the ridge crest and known distribution of deep-water corals (maximum 2,400 m).

Feature description of the area

The entire Reykjanes Ridge forms a hard-bottomed substrate, rising from the abyssal plain, which acts to provide a wide range of benthic habitats and is colonized by a variety of erect megafauna (e.g., gorgonians, sponges and cold-water corals) (Copley *et al*. 1996). In addition, Reykjanes Ridge acts to separate the warmer waters of the Iceland Basin from the cooler waters of the Irminger Basin, forming a hydrographic boundary in the mesopelagic realm (Fock and John 2006; Gislason *et al*. 2007). There is a strong relationship between larval fish communities and hydrography and topography, which is largely determined by the Reykjanes Ridge (Fock and John 2006). Larvae are retained above the Ridge by a branching current from the North Atlantic Current due to the Coriolis effect (Fock and John 2006). Therefore, this area should be considered important for both its benthic and surrounding water column features. The fauna of the Reykjanes Ridge have not been fully described, and it is premature to speculate on whether any species are endemic. Some new species have been described, which may prove to be endemic to the area with further sampling. However, there are strong indications that the benthic fauna at the Reykjanes ridge has certain distinct components that are distinct from the benthic fauna south of the Charlie Gibbs fracture zone (Alt *et al*., 2019).

The benthic fauna associated with Reykjanes Ridge and the Northern MAR are known from detailed observations at a few locations. Priede *et al.* (2013) used a variety of sampling gears to survey habitat, biomass and biodiversity in a segment of the Northern MAR as part of a multinational and multidisciplinary project (ECOMAR). They found that primary production and export flux over the MAR were not enhanced compared with a nearby reference station over the Porcupine Abyssal Plain and biomass of benthic macrofauna and megafauna were similar to global averages at the same depths. Also, as part of MAR-ECO, Mortensen *et al.* (2008) used an ROV to conduct video surveys along the MAR at eight sites between the Reykjanes Ridge and the Azores, including two sites north of CGFZ. At Reykjanes Ridge, 20 taxa of deep-water corals were observed, including patches of *Solenosmillia variabilis*. Crinoids, sponges, the bivalve *Acesta excavata*, and squat lobsters were associated with cold-water corals. None of those corals were recognized as new species to science and all likely have broader distributions extending along the continental slopes and seamounts at similar latitudes in the North Atlantic. In the northern part of the Ridge (north of 52°N) relatively common sub-Arctic demersal fish species, such as *Sebastes* spp., tusk (*Brosme brosme*) and Greenland halibut (*Reinhardtius hippoglossoides*) were dominant.

The Reykjanes Ridge acts to retain two populations of the planktonic copepod *Calanus finmarchicus,* which is thought to form the basis of many food webs within the North-East Atlantic (Gislason *et al.*, 2007; Gislason *et al.*, 2008). *C. finmarchicus* is considered to be one of the most important components of the zooplankton in the waters around Iceland, where it is usually by far the most abundant in terms of biomass (Speirs *et al.*, 2005; Gislason *et a.l*, 2007). It has a widespread distribution over the North Atlanticm and its highest population densities occur in the Norwegian Sea gyre and the Labrador/Irminger Sea gyre (Speirs *et al*, 2005). As such, this copepod forms a critical part of the diet of the larval stages of many important commercial fish stocks in these areas (Speirs *et al.*, 2005).

The seamounts of the northern MAR were surveyed between 43º and 57ºN, which is just outside the workshop boundaries. The species that were sampled by Kukuev (2004) consisted of approximately 20 elasmobranch species. Hareide & Garnes (2001) reported catching the pale ray (*Bathyraja pallida*) and Richardson's ray (*Bathyraja richardsoni*), *C. coelolepis,* included on the OSPAR List of Threatened and/or Declining Species and Habitats (BDC/MASH 2007) and *S. microcephalus*, an extremely long-lived and slow-growing deep water species of shark that was historically targeted for its liver oil by Norway, Iceland and Greenland, listed as near threatened on the IUCN Red List (Paul & Fowler, 2003; Kyne *et al.*, 2006; Stevens & Correla, 2003). In the 1910s, catches for this species reached 32,000 sharks per year by Greenland alone, and these fisheries are thought to have had a significant impact on this species (Kyne *et al.*, 2006).

The three rare ray species that have been reported for the northern MAR (Hareide & Garnes, 2001) come from two families. *B. richardsoni* and *B. pallida* belong to the family Arhynchobatidae (Softnose Skates) and *R. kukujevi* and belongs to the family Rajidae (Hardnose Skates) (Kyne & Simpfendorfer, 2007). There is a high species diversity within the Arhynchobatidae Family.

However, relatively little is known about their biology mainly due to their scattered distributions, deep occurrences (this family includes some of the deepest occurring chondrichthyans), taxonomic uncertainty and limited material, meaning some species, such as those found in and near to the area, are virtually unknown (Kyne & Simpfendorfer, 2007). Estimates from the limited information about softnose skates suggests they can live up to 29 years and reach maturity at about 10 years (Kyne & Simpfendorfer, 2007), making them highly vulnerable to any human-induced exploitation. There is considerably more information available about the Rajidae family than the Arhynchobatidae family, which is the most speciose of chondrichthyans, and contains the deepest occurring chondrichthyan species. However, the overall knowledge about this family is poor (Kyne & Simpfendorfer, 2007). The family on the whole conforms to the general life history traits of chondrichthyan species and therefore will also be highly vulnerable to exploitation. Both *B. pallida* and *B. richardsoni* are listed on the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species as being of least concern, due to their very deep depth ranges, which remain out of the range of most deepwater fishing activity (Kulka *et al*, 2007; Orlov, 2007). However, both were caught during experimental fishing along the MAR and therefore they can be considered vulnerable to deep-water fishing in the area. Indeed, the whole of their depth range is now reachable with longline gear. *R. kukujevi* is not listed on the IUCN Red List

For the northern section of the MAR region, covering the Reykjanes Ridge, the dedicated North Atlantic Sightings Surveys (NASS) and Trans-NASS Surveys (T-NASS) were internationally coordinated cetacean surveys that have been conducted in 1987, 1989, 1995, 2001, 2007 and 2015. The main purpose of the surveys was and is to get quantitative information on the distribution and abundance of all cetacean species in the survey area, which encompasses much of the northern North Atlantic between Norway and North America. Since 1995, the NASS have been planned and coordinated by the NAMMCO Scientific Committee and have observed a diversity of cetacean species along the Reykjanes Ridge.

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

Given the geophysical nature, location and size of the Reykjanes Ridge, it is unlikely that it will be adversely affected by human activities.

Assessment of area no. 16, Southern Reykjanes Ridge, against CBD EBSA Criteria

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">CBD EBSA Criteria
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</td><td rowspan="2">Description
(Annex I to decision IX/20)</td><td colspan="4">Ranking of criterion relevance
(please mark one column with an X)</td></tr>
<tr><td>No information</td><td>Low</td><td>Medium</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td>Uniqueness or rarity</td><td>Area contains either (i) unique (“the only one of its kind”), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Explanation for ranking
Reykjanes Ridge and its biological communities are biogeographically distinct from other parts of the MAR (Mironov & Gebruk 2006, Gebruk et al. 2010, Dilman 2013, Alt et al. 2019) bounded by a permanent coldwater current (Iceland-Scotland Overflow Water (Shor et al., 1980,). In this sense, Reykjanes Ridge qualifies as a unique geomorphological feature in the North Atlantic, and it is most likely that in future, hydrothermal vent fields will be discovered in this area. There is some evidence (explained above) to suggest the presence of several unique and rare species, like elasmobranchs Bathyraja pallida and B. richardsoni and Greenland shark Solmiosus microcephalus (Hareide & Garnes 2001), although detailed investigations have only been conducted relatively recently, so it is possible that many other rare species exist in this area.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Special importance for life-history stages of species</td><td>Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.</td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Explanation for ranking Cold-water corals, habitat-forming scleractinians and areas of natural coral rubble, and sponge aggregations provide shelter, nursery and feeding grounds for a variety of species (e.g., Mortensen *et al*. 2008; Roberts *et al*. 2009; Maldonado *et al*., 2016). Furthermore, Reykjanes Ridge is important in the life history of the calanoid copepod *Calanus finmarchicus*, which has an important role as a prey species in the wider food web.					
Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				X
Explanation for ranking Several endangered and threatened shark and ray species have been found in the area. Orange roughy (*Hoplostethus atlanticus)* form aggregations at Reykjanes Ridge at depths exceeding 600 m (Magnússon & Magnússon 1995a, Hareide &Garnes 2001). There is also evidence for deep-water coral and sponge communities (Mortensen *et al*. 2008; Cárdenas & Rapp 2015), both of which have been described as threatened. The area supports species of cold-water corals, including black corals, bamboo corals, hard and soft corals. These form localized reef and coral garden habitats that are listed under OSPAR as threatened and declining habitats (Roberts *et al*. 2006, 2009). In addition, deep-sea sponge aggregations are also known to be present and these are also listed under OSPAR (Klitgaard and Tendal, 2004; Howell *et al*., 2016).					
Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				X
Explanation for ranking This Ridge rises from the abyssal plain and provides a wide range of benthic habitats and is colonized by a variety of erect megafauna (e.g., gorgonians, sponges and cold-water corals) (Copley *et al*. 1996). At least 20 species of cold-water corals were reported at Reykjanes Ridge during the MAR-ECO project cruise (Mortensen *et al*. 2008). Further study of benthic communities in the shallow portions of the Reykjanes Ridge (ATLAS, 2019; Anonymous, 2004) has also revealed new occurences of scleractinian (*Lophelia pertusa*, *Madrepora oculata*) and octocoral (*Paragorgia arborea*, *Primnoa resedaeformis* and species in the families Anthothelidae and Nephtheidae) cold-water corals and diverse sponge communities. It can therefore be inferred that cold-water corals occur along the Reykjanes Ridge, providing further support to past studies (e.g., Copley *et al*. 1996). There is also evidence from experimental trawling of the Reykjanes Ridge that sponge communities inhabit the flanks and summits of the Ridge (Magnússon & Magnússon, 1995). Many of the fauna present in this area are deep-sea fauna that have life history characteristics that make them particularly vulnerable to the effects of fishing. Many of the cold-water coral species have slow growth rates, and long generation times (Roark *et al*., 2006) leading to very slow and episodic recoveries following human impact. Seamount fish species have been shown in the past to be slow to recover from the impacts of fishing. There is clear evidence of aggregations of both demosponges and glass sponges on the Reykjanes Ridge, which are identified as Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems (UNGA, 2006) under the FAO's guidelines for the management of deep-sea fisheries (FAO, 2009).					
Biological	Area containing species, populations or			X	

productivity	communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.				

Explanation for ranking

Reykjanes Ridge plays an important role within the open ocean ecosystem. The lack of terrigenous nutrient input to the open ocean means that productivity is generally low, and the deep-sea fauna found there are reliant on the limited local surface water primary production (Fossen *et al*, 2008). The complex hydrographic setting and the presence of Reykjanes Ridge itself leads to enhanced vertical mixing and turbulence, resulting in areas of increased productivity over the Ridge (Falkowski *et al.*, 1998; Fossen *et al.*, 2008; Heger *et al.*, 2008). This increased biological productivity means that Reykjanes Ridge is likely to have a greater abundance and diversity of fauna than the surrounding open ocean and abyssal plains (Sutton *et al*, 2008).

However, the research conducted through the MAR-ECO project found that primary production and export flux over the MAR were not enhanced compared with a nearby reference station over the Porcupine Abyssal Plain, and biomass of benthic macrofauna and megafauna were similar to global averages at the same depths. There is some evidence for pelagic fish concentrating in the benthic boundary layer (to 200 m above the seafloor) over the MAR in association with topographic features.

Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X

Explanation for ranking

There is clear evidence of aggregations of both demosponges and glass sponges on the Reykjanes Ridge. Sponge aggregations create complex habitats supporting high biodiversity (Bett and Rice, 1992); they provide a refuge for fish, are a source of novel chemical compounds (Bell, 2008; Maldonado *et al.*, 2016), and may also play an important role as a sink in the marine silicon cyclem which is thought to influence primary productivity and the carbon cycle (Hendry *et al*., 2019).

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.	X			

Explanation for ranking

The actual extent and severity of the impact that fishing and other human activities have had on MAR ecosystems is largely unquantified. Although Magnússon & Magnússon (1995a) reported that the Reykjanes Ridge is in general a very difficult area for bottom trawling because of its extremely irregular bottom topography, more detailed and accurate mapping of the seafloor may change this.

References

Alt, C. H., Kremenetskaia, A., Gebruk, A. V., Gooday, A. J., & Jones, D. O. (2019). Bathyal benthic megafauna

from the Mid-Atlantic Ridge in the region of the Charlie-Gibbs fracture zone based on remotely operated vehicle observations. Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 145, 1-12.

Anonymous (2004). Protection of vulnerable marine areas in Icelandic waters. Conclusions and proposition of a Committee appointed by the Minister of Fisheries https://www.stjornarradid.is/media/atvinnuvegaraduneytimedia/media/skyrslur/fridunskyrsla_2005.pdf

ATLAS (2019) Deliverable 3.3 Biodiversity, biogeography and GOODS classification system under current climate conditions and future IPCC scenarios.

Bell, J.J., 2008. The functional roles of marine sponges. Estuarine, coastal and shelf science, 79(3), pp.341-353

Bergstad, O.A., Menezes,G. and Å.S. Høines. 2008. Demersal fish on a mid-ocean ridge: Distribution patterns and structuring factors. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 55(1–2): 185-202.

Bett, B.J. and Rice, A.L., 1992. The influence of hexactinellid sponge (Pheronema carpenteri) spicules on the patchy distribution of macrobenthos in the porcupine seabight (bathyal NE Atlantic). Ophelia, 36(3), pp.217-226

Bower, A.S., Le Cann, B., Rossby, T., Zenk, W., Gould, J., Speer, K., Richardson, P.L., Prater, M.D. and H.-M. Zhang. 2002. Directly measured mid-depth circulation in the northeastern North Atlantic Ocean. Nature 419: 603- 607.

Cárdenas, P., & Rapp, H. T. (2015). Demosponges from the Northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge shed more light on the diversity and biogeography of North Atlantic deep-sea sponges. Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom, 95(7), 1475-1516.

Copley JTP, Tyler PA, Sheader M, Murton BJ & German CR (1996). Megafauna from sublittoral to abyssal depths along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge south of Iceland. Oceanologica Acta, 19: 549-559.

Dilman, A. B. (2013). Changes in deep-sea asteroid fauna along the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Cahiers de biologie marine, 54(4), 505-509.

Dinter, W.P. (2001) Biogeography of the OSPAR Maritime Area – A Synopsis and Synthesis of Biogeographical Distribution Patterns described for the North-East Atlantic. Bundesamt für Naturschutz, Bonn, Germany pp 167.

Engel, A.E.J. and C.G. Engel. 1964. Composition of basalts from the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Science* 144 (3624): 1330-1333.

Falkowski, P.G., Barber, R.T. & Smetacek, V. (1998) Biogeochemical controls and feedbacks on ocean primary production. Science 281: 200 – 206.

Fock, H. and John, H-C. (2006) Fish larval patterns across the Reykjanes Ridge. Marine Biology Research 2:191-199.

Fossen, I., Cotton, C.F., Bergstad, O.A. and J.E. Dyb. 2008. Species composition and distribution patterns of fishes captured by longlines on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 55(1–2): 203-217.

Gebruk , A.V., Priede, I.G., Fenchel T. and F. Uiblein. 2013. Benthos of the sub-polar front area on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge: Results of the ECOMAR project. Marine Biology Research 9(5-6): 443-446.

Gebruk, A. V., Budaeva, N. E., & King, N. J. (2010). Bathyal benthic fauna of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge between the Azores and the Reykjanes Ridge. Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom, 90(1), 1-14

Gebruk, A.V. (2008) Holothurians (Holothuroidea, Echinodermata) of the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge collected by the G.O. Sars MAR-ECO expedition with descriptions of four new species. Marine Biology Research 4: 48 – 60.

German, C.R. & Parsons, L.M. (1998) Distributions of hydrothermal activity along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge: interplay of magmatic and tectonic controls. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 160: 327 – 341

German, C.R., Briem, J., Chin, C., Danielsen, M., Holland, S., James, R., Jónsdottir, A., Ludford, E., Moser, C., Ólafsson, J., Palmer, M.R. & Rudnicki, M.D. (1994) Hydrothermal activity on the Reykjanes Ridge: the Steinahóll vent-field at 63o06'N. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 121: 647 – 654.

Gislason, A., Eiane, K. and Reynisson, P. (2007) Vertical distribution and mortality of Calanus finmarchicus during overwintering in oceanic waters southwest of Iceland. Marine Biology 150:1253-1263.

Gislasson, A., Gaard, E., Debes, H. & Faulkenhaug, T. (2008) Abundance, feeding and reproduction of Calanus finmarchicus in the Irminger Sea and on the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge in June. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 72 – 82.

Hareide, N.-R. and G. Garnes. 2001. The distribution and catch rates of deep-water fish along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge from 43 to 61°N. Fisheries Research 51(2–3): 297-310.

Heezen, B.C.,Tharp, M. and M. Ewing. 1959. The Floors of the Oceans: I. The North Atlantic. The Geological Society of America Special Paper 65, 122 pp.

Heezen, BC. 1969. The world rift system: An introduction to the symposium. Tectonophysics 8:269-279.

Heger, A., Ieno, E.N., King, N.J., Morris, K.J., Bagley, P.M. & Priede, I.G. (2008) Deep-sea pelagic bioluminescence over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 126-136.

Hendry, K.R., Cassarino, L., Bates, S.L., Culwick, T., Frost, M., Goodwin, C. and Howell, K.L., 2019. Silicon isotopic systematics of deep-sea sponge grounds in the North Atlantic. Quaternary Science Reviews, 210, pp.1-14

Herndon, A.P. & Burgess, G.H. 2006. Etmopterus princeps. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2006: e.T60242A12332917. http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2006.RLTS.T60242A12332917.en. D ownloaded on 26 September 2019.

Howell, K.L., Piechaud, N., Downie, A.L. and Kenny, A., 2016. The distribution of deep-sea sponge aggregations in the North Atlantic and implications for their effective spatial management. Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 115, pp.309-320

E.I. 2004. Twenty years of ichthyofauna research on seamounts of the North Atlantic Ridge and adjacent areas. A review. Archives of Fisheries and Marine Research 51(1-3): 215-232

Kyne, P.M. and C.A. Simpfendorfer, 2007. A collation and summarization of available data on deepwater chondrichthyans: biodiversity, life history and fisheries. Report prepared by the IUCN SSC Shark Specialist Group for the Marine Conservation Biology Institute, 137 pp.

Klitgaard, A.B. and Tendal, O.S., 2004. Distribution and species composition of mass occurrences of large-sized sponges in the northeast Atlantic. Progress in oceanography, 61(1), pp.57-98

Kulka, D.W., Orlov, A. & Barker, A. 2007. Bathyraja richardsoni. In: IUCN 2007. 2007 IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. <www.iucnredlist.org>. Downloaded on 11 March 2008.

Maldonado, M., Aguilar,R., Bannister,R.J., Bell,D., Conway,K.W., Dayton,P.K., Díaz, C., Gutt,J., Kenchington,E.L.R., Leys,D. and Pomponi,S.A., 2016. Sponge grounds as key marine habitats: a synthetic review of types, structure, functional roles, and conservation concerns. In: Marine Animal Forests. Springer, Berlin._24–1

Magnússon, J. V., & Magnússon, J. (1995a). The distribution, relative abundance, and biology of the deep-sea fishes of the Icelandic slope and Reykjanes Ridge. In Deep-Water Fisheries of the North Atlantic Oceanic Slope (pp. 161-199). Springer, Dordrecht.

Magnússon, J. and Magnússon, J.V. (1995) Oceanic redfish (Sebastes mentella) in the Irminger Sea and adjacent waters. Scientia Marina 59(3-4):241-254.

Malinverno, A. 1990. A quantitative study of axial topography of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Journal of Geophysical Research 95: 2645-2660.

Mironov, A.N. & Gebruk, A.V. (2006) Biogeography of the Reykjanes Ridge, the northern Atlantic. In: Mironov, A.N., Gebruk, A.V., Southward, A.J. (eds.) Biogeography of the North Atlantic Seamounts. KMK Scientific Press, Moscow, 2006. pp 6 - 21

Mortensen, P.B., Buhl-Mortensen, L., Gebruk, A.V. and E. M. Krylova. 2008. Occurrence of deep-water corals on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge based on MAR-ECO data. Deep-Sea Research II 55:142-152.

Olafsson *et al*., A sudden cruise off Iceland, RIDGE Events Newsletter, 2(2), 35-38, 1991.

(plume only) German, C.R. *et al*., Hydrothermal activity on the Reykjanes Ridge: the Steinaholl vent field at 63°06′N. Earth Planet. Sci. Lett. 121 (1994), pp. 647–654.

Orlov, A. 2007. Bathyraja pallida. In: IUCN 2007. 2007 IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. <www.iucnredlist.org>. Downloaded on 11 March 2008.

Priede, I.G., Bergstad, O.A., Miller, P.I., Vecchione, M., Gebruk, A., *et al.* 2013. Does Presence of a Mid-Ocean Ridge Enhance Biomass and Biodiversity? PLoSONE 8(5): e61550. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0061550

Priede, I. G., Billett, D. S., Brierley, A. S., Hoelzel, A. R., Inall, M., & Miller, P. I. (2013a). The ECO-MAR (Ecosystem of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge at the Sub-Polar Front and Charlie Gibbs Fracture Zone) project: description of the benthic sampling programme 2007–2010. Marine Biology Research, 9(5-6), 624-628.

Roark, E. B., Guilderson, T. P., Dunbar, R. B. and Ingram, B. L. (2006). Radiocarbon based ages and growth rates: Hawaiian deep sea corals. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 327, 1-14

Roberts JM, Wheeler AJ, Freiwald A (2006) Reefs of the deep: the biology and geology of cold-water coral ecosystems. Science 312: 543-547

Roberts JM, Wheeler AJ, Freiwald A, Cairns SD (2009) Cold-water Corals: The Biology and Geology of Deep-sea Coral Habitats. Cambridge University Press, 334 pp

Rossby, T. 1999. On gyre interactions. Deep-Sea Research II 46: 139-164.

Sbortshikov, I.M. & Rudenko, M.V. (1990) Relief and tectonic structures of the Reykjanes Ridge axis zone. In: Almukhamedov, A.I., Bogdanov, Yu.A., Kuzmin, M.I. *et al* Reykjanes Ridge rift zone: tectonics, magmaism and conditions of sedimentology, pp 42 – 61. Moscow, Nauka.

Shor, A., P.Lonsdale, C.D.Hollister, D.Spencer (1980). Charlie-Gibbs fracture zone: bottom-water transport and its geological effects. Deep Sea Research Part A. Oceanographic Research Papers

Volume 27, Issue 5, May 1980, Pages 325-338, IN1-IN2, 339-345 https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(80)90030-8

Søiland, H., Budgell, W.P. and Ø Knutsen. 2008. The physical oceanographic conditions along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge north of the Azores in June-July 2004. Deep-Sea Research II 55: 29- 44.

Speer, K. G. and A. M. Thurnherr. 2005. Abyssal Canyons and Mixing by Low-Frequency Flow. In: P. Muller and D. Henderson (Editors), Near-Boundary Processes and Their Parameterization, topics in physical oceanography, 'Aha Huliko' a Winter Workshop, pp. 17-19.

Speirs. D.C., Gurney, W.S.C., Heathm M.R., and Wood, S. (2005) Modelling the basin-scale demography of Calanus finmarchicus in the north-east Atlantic. Fisheries Oceanography 14(5):333-358.

Sutton, T.T., Porteiro, F.M., Heino, M., *et al*. 2008. Vertical structure, biomass and topographic association of deep-pelagic fishes in relation to a mid-ocean ridge system. Deep-Sea Research II 55 (1–2):161–184.

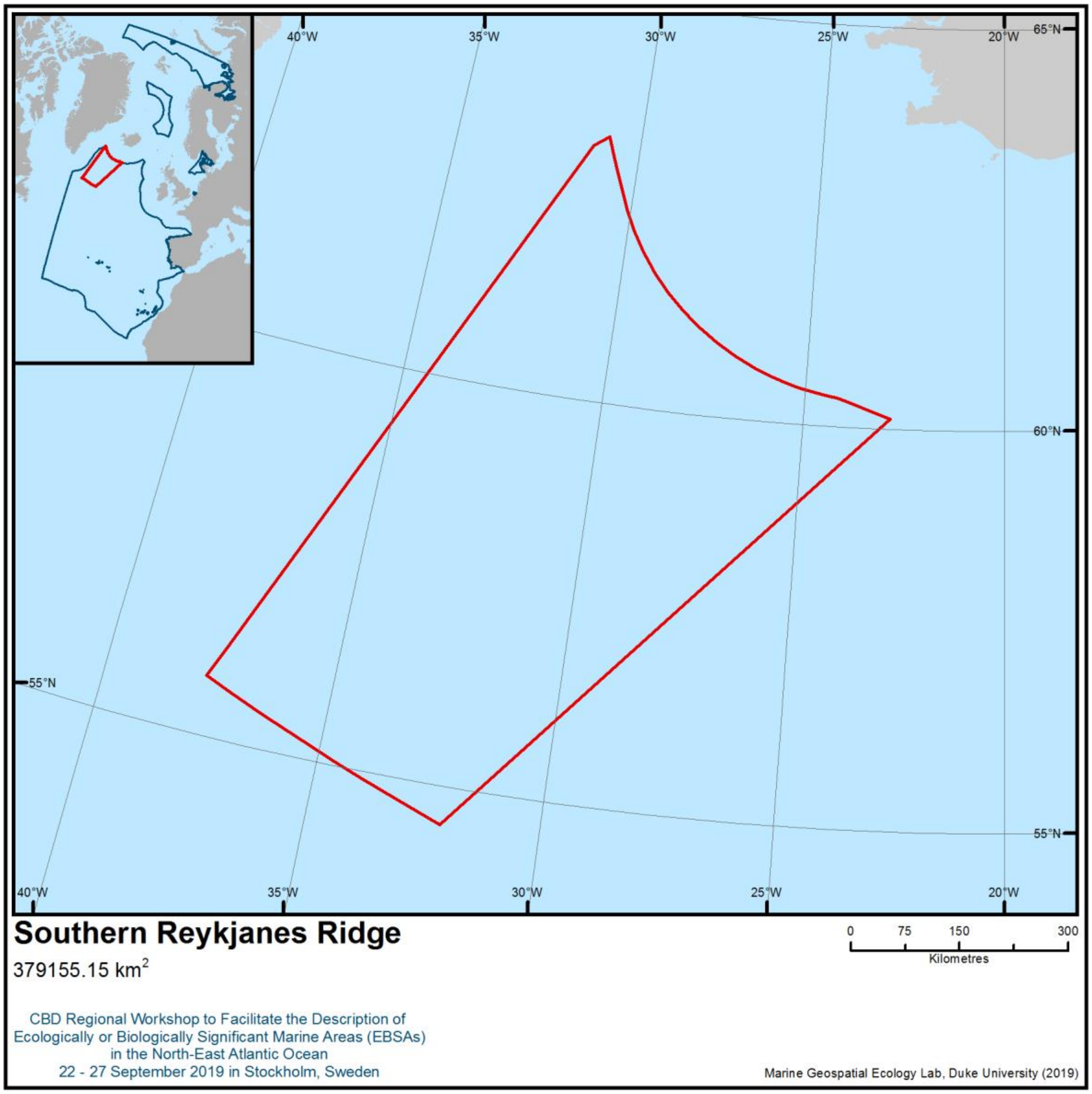
Tolstoy, I. and M. Ewing. 1949. North Atlantic hydrography and the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Bulletin of the Geological Society of America 60(10): 1527-1540.

van Andel, Tj. H. and C. O. Bowin. 1968. Mid-Atlantic Ridge between 22º and 23º north latitude and the tectonics of mid-ocean rises. Journal of Geophysical Research 73: 1279-1298.

Vecchione, M., Young, R.E. and U. Piatkowski. 2010. Cephalopods of the northern Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Marine Biology Research 6: 25–52.

White, W.M. and J.-G. Schilling. 1978. The nature and origin of geochemical variation in Mid-Atlantic Ridge basalts from the Central North Atlantic. *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta* 42 (10): 1501-1516.

Maps and Figures



Location of area no. 16: Southern Reykjanes Ridge

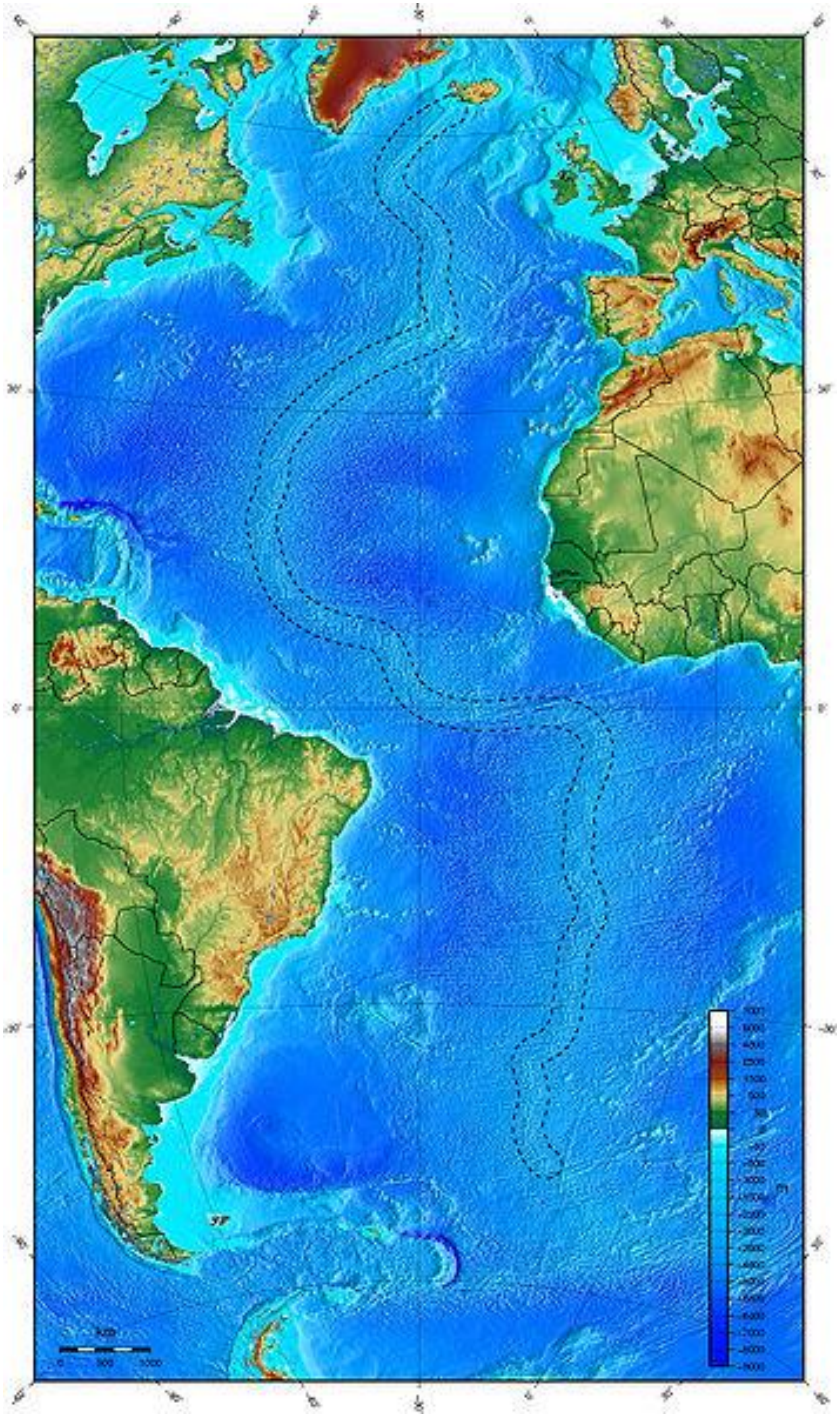


Figure 1 Location of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (dashed lines). Image downloaded from: commons.wikimedia.org File:Mid-atlantic ridge.jpg - Wikimedia Commons.

Area no. 17: Hatton and Rockall Banks and Basin

Abstract

The Hatton and Rockall Banks, as well as their associated slopes and connecting basin, represent offshore pelagic and bathyal habitats from the surface to 3000m deep that collectively constitute a unique and prominent feature of the North-East Atlantic. The area has high habitat heterogeneity and supports a wide range of benthic and pelagic species and associated ecosystems. Its comparatively remote oceanic location several hundred kilometres from the continental shelf afford it a level of protection and isolation from many human activities that are known to degrade the natural marine environment.

Introduction

The Hatton and Rockall Banks are large isolated geomorphological features in the NE Atlantic. Formed from continental crust, they span depths from c. 200m to 3000m. The banks are linked by the Hatton-Rockall Basin at a depth of approximately 1300 m which has particular geomorphological features and habitats. The gently sloping banks and the basin provide a contrasting geological and sedimentary setting to the tectonically active Mid-Atlantic Ridge to the west and the generally steeper slopes of the European continental margin to East. The banks encompass a large depth range with strong environmental gradients (e.g., temperature, pressure, and food availability) that give rise to a high diversity of species and habitats (Billett, 1991; Bett, 2001; Howell *et al.*, 2002; Davies *et al.* 2006; Roberts *et al.* 2008; Howell *et al.*, 2009; Howell *et al.* 2010). Environmental heterogeneity is positively correlated with biological diversity at a variety of scales (Menot *et al.* 2010) as indicated by significantly elevated levels of species change across space in areas such as Hatton Bank (Roberts *et al.* 2008).

Changes in pressure and temperature have significant effects on the biochemistry of species, influencing cell membrane structure and enzyme characteristics (Gage and Tyler, 1991). In general, each species is adapted to a particular range of environmental conditions. Each may occur over a depth range of about 500 m, but the depths where any particular species is abundant, and therefore able to form viable populations, is generally limited to a much more restricted depth range of 100 to 200 m (Billett, 1991; Howell *et al.*, 2002). There is evidence that such depth-related effects promote speciation (Howell *et al.*, 2004). In addition, the progressive decrease in organic matter availability with increasing depth (with some patchiness depending on geomorphology) leads to a reduction of predatory species and an increase in detritus feeders (Billett, 1991). Taken together such environmental changes lead to a continuous sequential change in species composition with depth, and biological community characteristics that are radically different to those known in shallow shelf seas.

The area is influenced by a number of different water masses and circulation systems, including the North Atlantic Current (i.e. Gulf Stream system) which draws warm water from the Gulf of Mexico far into the NE Atlantic., There is considerable interaction between the topography and physical oceanographic processes, in some areas focusing internal wave and tidal energy (Ellett *et al.* 1986) which results in strong currents and greater mixing. This may give rise to highly localized and specialised biological communities such as sponge aggregations and coral gardens. The mixing of Arctic and Atlantic water in the north of the Hatton-Rockall area means that species from both ecosystems are represented causing enhanced species diversity across a wide range of animal groups.

The Rockall Bank supports shallow demersal fisheries targeting haddock, megrim, gurnard and monkfish (Neat & Campbell 2010; Nolan *et al*., 2011). The slopes and the Hatton Bank are target areas for deep-water bottom fisheries for Ling (*Molva molva*), Blue Ling (*Molva dypterygia*), Tusk (*Brosme brosme*), Roundnose Grenadier (*Coryphaenoides rupestris*) and Black Scabbardfish (*Aphanopus carbo*). In the past deepwater sharks were also caught in the area, but this is now prohibited. A wide variety of other non-target fish species are also taken as incidental by-catch (Gordon *et al.,* 2003; Large *et al.,* 2003; ICES 2010).

Some of the deep-water target species have characteristic low productivity and extended generation times. In this regard deep-water fisheries have significant effects not only on target fish species, but also on the benthic fauna (Le Guilloux *et al.*, 2009; Clark *et al.* 2010). Some invertebrate species, such as cold-water corals and sponges, provide important structural habitat heterogeneity. These habitats are highly susceptible to physical damage and may take hundreds, if not thousands, of years to reform (Hall-Spencer *et al*. 2002; Roberts *et al*. 2009; Söffker *et al*., 2011).

Major wide-ranging Northeast Atlantic epipelagic fish stocks, e.g., mackerel, horse mackerel and blue whiting, use and inhabit the Hatton-Rockall area for parts of their life cycle and are targeted by international fisheries. The slopes of the banks and channels between the banks have a diverse bathypelagic and mesopelagic fish community sustained by the zooplankton production in the epipelagic zone. Such pelagic fish communities are similar to, and probably extensions of, those in adjacent oceanic waters along the European continental margin.

Current fisheries control measures on the Hatton and Rockall Banks have focused mainly on the protection of corals (Hall-Spencer *et al.*, 2009) and sponges (ICES 2013).

Location

The area is situated in the North-East Atlantic approximately 400-500km west-northwest of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland and 400-500km south-southeast of Iceland. It comprises the seabed and pelagic zones shallower than 3000m overlying the Rockall and Hatton Banks, together with the Rockall-Hatton Basin between them. The 3000m contour has been selected as delineating the boundary of this feature because: 1) it marks the accepted boundary between the bathyal and abyssal environments, 2) review of oceanographic data suggests the 3000m contour corresponds well with oceanographic influence of the feature and thus its likely influence on pelagic communities and 3) new bird and mammal data suggest species use the pelagic areas just off the bank, which are captured by the boundary of this area.

Feature description of the area

The area covers benthic and pelagic faunal communities extending down to depths of 3000 m in and around the Hatton and Rockall Banks and Hatton-Rockall Basin. Seabed communities captured within the area include cold-water coral formations, sponge aggregations and potential seep communities (Oliver and Drewery, 2014; Neat *et al*., 2018). Geomorphologically complex seabed types include rocky reefs, carbonate mounds, polygonal fault systems and sedimentary slopes, slides and fans. Diverse pelagic communities inhabiting the area include those occupying bathy-, meso- and epipelagic zones, such as zooplankton, free-swimming cnidaria, elasmobranchs, teleost fish, squid, seabirds, cetaceans, and occasionally sea turtles.

1. Benthic and benthopelagic communities

1a. Cold-water corals

Observations in the early 1970s found cold-water coral communities on the Rockall Bank down to a depth of 1,000 m (Wilson, 1979a). Thickets of *Lophelia pertusa* occurred principally at depths between 150-400m[18]. Large coral growth features have recently (2011) been discovered to be still present on the northern Rockall Bank (Howell *et al*., 2009; Huvenne *et al.*, 2011, Roberts *et al.* 2013). Bottom-contact fishing can result in significant adverse impacts to these habitats.

Frederiksen *et al.* (1992) reported a high diversity of corals on the northern Hatton Bank, including *Paragorgia, Paramuricea,* Isididae and Antipatharia as well as the scleractinians *L. pertus*a and *M. oculata*. Since these observations further records of coral gardens (Bullimore *et al*., 2013) and coral frameworks have been noted throughout the Rockall and Hatton area, including the Logachev Mounds and the Western Rockall Bank Mounds (Kenyon *et al.*, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003; Narayanaswamy *et al.*, 2006; Howell *et al.*, 2007; Durán Muñoz *et al.* 2009; Piechaud *et al*., 2015).

Recent surveys identified many areas that contained the cold-water coral *L. pertusa* throughout the Rockall and Hatton Banks (Narayanaswamy *et al.*, 2006; Howell *et al.*, 2007; Roberts *et al.* 2008; Durán Muñoz *et al.* 2009). Several areas on the Hatton Bank contained pinnacles and mounds with extensive

[18] http://www.lophelia.org/lophelia/case_4.htm

biogenic structures including areas of coral rubble around the flanks of the coral mounds. Coral frameworks are known from the Hatton Bank (Durán Muñoz *et al.* 2009), and are predicted to occur over a wider region of both Hatton and Rockall Banks (Howell *et al.,* 2011; Ross and Howell, 2013; Ross *et al*. 2015). Geophysical evidence suggests that these have formed by successive coral growth and sedimentation episodes, as in other regions (Roberts *et al.,* 2006), forming coral carbonate mounds (Roberts *et al.* 2008). Single and clustered coral carbonate mounds have also been discovered on the southeast of Rockall Bank. These structures are comprised mostly of *L. pertusa* and can reach heights of 380 m in water depths of between 600-1000 m (Kenyon *et al.,* 2003; Mienis *et al.,* 2006; Mienis *et al.*, 2007).

Scleractinian cold-water coral frameworks have been reported to support over 1,300 species in the Northeast Atlantic, some of which have yet to be described (Roberts *et al.,* 2006). New species and associations have been reported recently (e.g., Myers & Hall-Spencer 2007; Le Guilloux *et al.,* 2010; Söffker *et al.* 2011). The corals may provide an important habitat for certain fish species (Fosså *et al.,* 2002; Söffker *et al.,* 2011; Henry *et al.,* 2013), including commercial species *Sebastes* sp., *Molva molva*, *Brosme brosme*, *Anarhichas lupus* and *Pollachius virens* (Mortensen *et al.,* 1995; Freiwald, 2002; Hall-Spencer *et al.,* 2002). Pregnant *Sebastes viviparus* may use the reef as a refuge or as a nursery ground to raise their offspring (Fosså *et al.,* 2002) as recently observed on the northern Rockall Bank (Huvenne *et al.,* 2011, Roberts *et al.* 2013). As well as living reefs, dead coral framework and coral rubble provide a structural habitat. Jensen and Frederiksen (1992) collected *Lophelia* and found 256 species; a further 42 species were identified among coral rubble. Recent work has highlighted the significance and local abundance of long-lived non-scleractian coral on and around coral carbonate mounds (De Clippele *et al*. 2019). Cold water corals can be highly vulnerable as a result of their slow growth rates and longevity (Brendan Roark *et al*., 2006; Carreiro-Silva *et al*., 2013).

As well as being highly diverse systems, cold water coral reefs are also highly productive regions. Recent research has shown that the Logachev mound province at Rockall Bank is a hotspot for remineralization of organic matter and specifically for deep water carbon and nitrogen cycling (ATALS deliverable 2.3). Benthic respiration rates in the vicinity of the cold-water corals were ~five times higher than those of sediments at comparable depths, aligning with published studies from cold-water coral habitats from continental shelf settings off Scotland and Norway (Catholot *et al*. 2015, Rovelli *et al*. 2015). The corals are highly effective at trapping laterally and vertically advected particulate organic matter and its subsequent respiration. In addition the mound structures formed by cold-water coral reef growths interact with local oceanography resulting in a topographically-enhanced carbon pump. This pump draws carbon from the surface waters, and focuses organic matter transport onto the reef structure supporting the high mineralization rates and affecting the surrounding ecosystem (Soetaert *et al*., 2016).

There has been only limited research into connectivity between coral and other deep-water ecosystems. Compared to the south-eastern US and Gulf of Mexico, molecular research has shown that northeastern Atlantic populations of *L. pertusa* are moderately differentiated (Morrison *et al.* 2011) and form distinct subpopulations, but also that Rockall Bank corals show some genetic similarity to those occurring on the New England Seamounts indicating some degree of connectivity (Morrison *et al.* 2011). *Lophelia pertusa* exhibits high levels of inbreeding through asexual reproduction at several sites in the NE Atlantic, suggesting a high incidence of self-recruitment in local populations (Le Goff-Vitry and Rogers, 2005). Further molecular studies are required in local areas to gauge the importance of the Rockall and Hatton Banks in the life history of regional coral populations, however larval dispersal models for the region have suggested that both Hatton and Rockall Banks provides an important larval supply to Rosemary Bank and Anton Dohrn seamounts as well as parts of the European continental slope (Ross *et al*., 2017). Such patterns are controlled and modulated by the dominant pattern of interannual atmospheric circulation variability over the northeast Atlantic, the North Atlantic Oscillation. Thus MPA network functioning in this region will vulnerable to atmospheric-driven changes in ocean circulation (Fox *et al*. 2016)

In summary, the cold-water corals fit the following EBSA criteria:

Special importance for life-history stages

- Cold-water corals and areas of natural coral rubble provide shelter, nursery and feeding grounds for a variety of species.

Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species/habitats

- The area is known to support various species of cold-water corals including black corals, bamboo corals, hard and soft corals. These form coral reef, carbonate mound and coral garden habitats that are listed under OSPAR as threatened and declining habitats.
- The distribution of cold-water coral has been severely reduced in the area over the last 30 years
- The reef which lies on the summit of Rockall Bank at 197 m depth may provide one of very few climate refugia for *Lophelia pertusa* reefs as a result of ASH shoaling (Jackson *et al*., 2015).

Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery

- There is a high diversity of corals, including bamboo coral (Isididae), black coral (Antipatharia) as well as the reef forming stony corals (Scleractinia), though some of these may now be reduced in distribution occurring in patches. Many of the species have slow growth rates, and long generation times leading to very slow and episodic recoveries following human impact.
- Cold-water coral habitats are easily impacted and recover very slowly, if at all.
- The cold water coral habitats of this feature are vulnerable to climate change through shoaling of the aragonite saturation horizon (Jackson *et al*., 2015).

Biological productivity

- The Logachev mound province on Rockall Bank is a highly productive system playing an important role in carbon and nitrogen cycling and supporting respiration rates 5 times higher than the surrounding sediment ecosystem.

Biological diversity

- Cold-water corals provide diverse habitats for other invertebrates and fish.

1b. Sediment communities

The Hatton and Rockall Banks support many different habitats each with their own depth-related species assemblages (Narayanaswamy *et al.*, 2006; Howell *et al.*, 2007; Roberts *et al.* 2008; Howell *et al.*, 2009). Local seabed morphology in this region is ultimately controlled by hydrography and oceanography (Due *et al.* 2006; Sayago-Gil *et al.* 2010), which creates heterogeneity in sediment types including mud, exposed bedrock, fine sediments, living coral framework and coral debris that – this habitat heterogeneity has a major influence on species diversity and turnover (Roberts *et al.* 2008). A great variety of large invertebrate fauna (megafauna) occur in this region including giant protozoans (xenophyophores), vase shaped white sponges, actiniarians, antipatharian corals, hydroids, bryozoans, asteroids, ophiuroids, echinoids, holothurians and crustaceans (Narayanaswamy *et al.*, 2006; Howell *et al.*, 2007; Roberts *et al.* 2008). Large mega-infauna such as echiuran worms are evident from observations of their feeding traces. Little is known, however, of the smaller fauna living within the sediment. The Hatton-Rockall Basin is known to host a particular geomorphology known as a polygonal fault system (Jacobs, 2006; Berndt *et al* 2012). The faults in the Hatton-Rockall Basin have surface expression, i.e. a network of interlinked channels across the level seafloor. These fault structures were first visualised in 2005 (Jacobs, 2006), with image and video survey conducted in 2006 (Jacobs and Howell, 2007). The flanks of the gullies appear to support extensive, dense aggregations of mixed species sponge communities, including *Pheronema carpenteri* aggregations (Howell *et al*., 2016). Sponge aggregations create complex habitats supporting high biodiversity (Bett and Rice, 1992), providing a refuge for fish, are a source of novel chemical compounds (Bell, 2008; Maldonado *et al*., 2016), and may also play an important role as a sink in the marine silicon cycle which is thought to influence primary productivity and the carbon cycle (Maldonado *et al*., 2005; Hendry *et al*., 2019). They are identified as Vulnerable Marine Ecosystems (UNGA, 2006) under the FAO's guidelines for the management of deep-sea fisheries (FAO, 2009). These sponge aggregations are predicted to occur across large sections of the basin (Howell *et al*., 2016). Recent modelling suggests these populations may be reproductively isolated from known neighbouring populations (Ross *et al*., 2019)

Another key concern in such a geological setting is the occurrence of cold-seep communities. Large carbonate blocks were encountered that were likely formed as a result of seafloor fluid escape. In 2012 the first evidence of an active cold-seep ecosystem in the area was suggested by the collection of chemosynthetic bivalves and polychaete worms (ICES 2013; Oliver and Drewery, 2014) and observations of reduced sediments and bacterial communities (Neat *et al*., 2018) on the eastern margin of Hatton-Rockall Basin at a depth of 1200 m. The species are new to science and suggest there is a lot still to learn of the seafloor and ecology of the Hatton and Rockall Banks.

The megafauna on the Hatton and Rockall Banks are largely species known from the wider NE Atlantic continental margin (Gage *et al.* 1983; Gage *et al.*, 1985; Mauchline *et al.*, 1986; Harvey *et al.*, 1988; Rice *et al.*, 1991). These studies focused on sedimented areas around the UK and Ireland and provide a lot of information on the life history characteristics of the species including information on growth and reproduction. Apart from some species that produce small eggs (indicative of planktotrophic development) in a seasonal cycle, most species conform to the life history characteristics typical of the deep sea of larger egg size, lower fecundity and greater generation times (Gage and Tyler, 1991). This is an adaptation to the low food input to the deep sea, which leads to the rapid decrease in biomass with increasing depth (Lampitt *et al.*, 1986; Wei *et al.*, 2010). Fauna adapt to lower food availability in the deep sea by a number of trade-offs, one of which is a reduction in reproductive effort and longer generation times. The majority of species, therefore, are highly susceptible to repeated physical disturbance.

In summary, the sediment communities fit the following EBSA criteria:

Uniqueness or rarity

- The area has considerable environmental heterogeneity, and is unique as a large offshore feature extending from above sea-level to 3000m. As species turnover with depth, it is rare as an offshore area that can be inhabited by shallow water species
- The area of polygonal faults may be a unique seabed feature and the presence of newly described chemosynthetic bivalves and polychaete worms suggests the area may have unique communities.

Special importance for life-history stages

- Sponge aggregations provide shelter, nursery and feeding grounds for a variety of species.

Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species/habitats

- Deep-sea sponge aggregations are present in the Hatton-Rockall Basin and these are defined as OSPAR threatened and declining species and habitats.

Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery

- Many of the species have reproductive cycles with long generation times leading to very slow and episodic recoveries following human impact. Most deep-sea species are particularly susceptible to degradation and depletion by human activity.
- Recent modelling suggests the deep-sea sponge aggregations in the Hatton-Rockall Basin may be isolated from neighbouring populations and thus highly vulnerable.

Biological diversity

- Benthic sedimentary communities occupy all depths in and around the Hatton and Rockall Banks and Basin. Seabed communities include sponge aggregations. Seabed geomorphology is diverse with examples polygonal fault systems and potential cold seep habitat, and steep and gentle sedimentary slopes. This high habitat heterogeneity supports a high number of species and diverse communities.

1c. Demersal fish

The deep-water fish of the NE Atlantic continental margin are generally well-known following comprehensive and extensive surveys of the region (e.g., Gordon & Duncan, 1985; Merrett *et al.*, 1991; Mauchline *et al.* 1986 and Rice *et al.* 1991). Species of commercial importance are reviewed by Gordon *et al.* (2003) and Large *et al.* (2003) and for fish associated with cold-water corals by Söffker *et al.* (2011). Fish species diversity increases to depths of approx. 1500 m on the continental slopes and declines thereafter (Campbell *et al* 2011). The shallow water fish assemblage on Rockall can be described as an impoverished sub-set of that found in adjacent continental shelf areas, but one that has a significantly different community composition (Neat & Campbell 2010). Recent surveys have found that the western slope of the Rockall Bank has a slightly different fish assemblage than the adjacent European slope with several species of a more southern affinity present (F. Neat unpublished data). Blue ling is known to spawn in a few locations on Rockall bank and at Hatton bank (Large *et al* 2008).

The extensive sampling in the Porcupine Seabight in the 1970s and 1980s took place before the start of deep-water commercial fishing. More recent sampling of the same area in the 1990s and 2000s can be used to compare fish communities before and after bottom trawling (Bailey *et al.* 2009). These data show that over 70 fish species have been impacted by the fishing activity, of which only 4-5 are target commercial species. The area impacted is up to 2.5 times larger than the area fished because the home range of many the fish extends into considerably deeper waters. In addition some deep sea demersal fish have very slow recovery times as a result of their slow reproductive rate compared to pelagic fish (Koslow *et al*., 2000). In the past decade, however, there is evidence that this initial steep decline in abundance has been halted, at least in one of the major groups of fishes, the grenadiers (Neat & Burns 2010). At the northern limits of the area where Arctic water masses mix with Atlantic water cold-water species such as Greenland Halibut and Roughhead Grenadier are present adding to the diversity of species in the area.

In summary the demersal fish fit the following EBSA criteria:

Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery

- Many of the deep demersal fish have very slow recovery times as a result of their slow reproductive rate compared to pelagic fish.

2. Pelagic communities and populations (plankton, nekton, birds, and mammals)

2a. Pelagic fish

Mackerel, horse mackerel, blue whiting and other wide-ranging pelagic fish such as epipelagic sharks (e.g., blue shark), tuna, and other large predatory fish species inhabit the area during various parts of their life-cycle (e.g., Nolan *et al*., 2011; Vandeperre *et al*., 2016), for example during larval or growth stages, for predatory feeding or as migration corridors. For blue whiting the slope area is used and well documented as an important spawning area. Mackerel and horse mackerel eggs and larvae originating from spawning areas further south drift extensively through the area.

2b. Seabirds

Analyses of satellite tracking data hosted at www.seabirdtracking.org (Table 1) found the Hatton-Rockall area to be used by multiple seabird species through the year. For example the area is used by Manx Shearwaters (*Puffinus puffinus*) from Iceland and UK colonies during the breeding season (Apr-Sept). From September until November tracked individual Cory's Shearwater (*Calonectris diomedea*) from three colonies, Sooty Shearwater (*Puffinus griseus*), Fea's Petrel (*Pterodroma* feae) and Zino's Petrel (*Pterodroma madeira*) used the area. Studies of tracked Atlantic Puffin (*Fratercula arctica*) from Skomer and Isle of May colonies also found the site to be important during the overwintering phase (Aug-Apr) (Harris *et al.* 2010, Guilford *et al.* 2011).

In addition to tracking data, ship-based survey data confirm many more seabird species occurring and foraging within the area including Great Shearwater, Black-legged Kittiwake, Northern Fulmar, Northern

Gannet as well as various Storm Petrel and Skua species (e.g., Cronin and Mackey, 2002; Mackey *et al*., 2004; Nolan *et al*., 2011). As indicated by telemetry tracking data, previous ship-based research also highlights the Hatton Bank and Hatton-Rockall Basin to be of potential importance to far-ranging migratory species (e.g., Sooty Shearwater, Tern species), and together with the Rockall Bank to be of importance to those species that winter offshore such as the Atlantic Puffin and to non-breeding and juvenile birds during the breeding season such as Manx Shearwater (Mackey *et al*., 2004). Species such as the Brünnich's Guillemot, Little Auk and Sabine's Gull were also found in the area in small numbers in May and June, considerably further south than their known breeding grounds (Mackey *et al*., 2004).

2c. Cetaceans

The Hatton-Rockall area including its shallower banks and their perimeter slopes represent a region of considerable importance for an array of baleen whales (*Mysticeti*), toothed whales and dolphins (*Odontoceti*). Its position in the high seas area of the Northeast Atlantic, and centrally within the region of Gulf Stream influence as the North Atlantic Current flows north towards sub-polar regions, confer it with a distinctive set of oceanographic, ecological and interactive conditions (e.g., Visser *et al*., 2011). This may help to explain the wide diversity of cetacean species that have been encountered in this specific region, encompassing endangered whale species, deep diving toothed whales, warm-water as well as sub-polar/polar species, apex predator species, several smaller dolphin species and also the harbour porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) that is more commonly known as a shallow continental shelf species.

Among the six baleen whale species known to occur in the area (e.g., Charif & Clark, 2009; Kavanagh *et al*., 2017; Ó Cadhla *et al*., 2004; Reid *et al*., 2003; Wall *et al*., 2013) the migratory Sei Whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*) and Blue Whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*) are listed as Endangered by the IUCN while other large migratory whales such as Humpback Whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*), Fin Whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*) also occur in the region. The critically endangered Northern Right Whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*), whose numbers in the Atlantic have been reduced by historical whaling and other human impacts to only a few hundred individuals, has also been observed in this region, representing a rare but significant occurrence.

In addition to the presence of numerous baleen whale species, more than 12 toothed cetacean species have been recorded within the area, comprising deep-diving and ecologically vulnerable beaked whales (Hammond *et al*., 2009; Kavanagh *et al*., 2017; Ó Cadhla *et al*., 2004; Rogan *et al*., 2017; Reid *et al*., 2003), Sperm Whales (*Physeter microcephalus*) and Long-finned Pilot Whales (*Globicephala melas*) (Kavanagh *et al*., 2017; Ó Cadhla *et al*., 2004; Rogan *et al*., 2017; Reid *et al*., 2003; Wall *et al*., 2013) plus higher predatory Killer Whale (*Orcinus orca*) and False Killer Whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*) (Ó Cadhla *et al*., 2004; Reid *et al*., 2003). The latter species is generally considered to be a subtropical or warm temperate species, as is the Striped Dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba*), which has also been recorded in this area (Kavanagh *et al*., 2017; Ó Cadhla *et al*., 2004). With regard to the deep diving species it is the margins of the area, where the slope and waters exceeding 1000m depth occur, that appear to be most significant. Of further interest is that the Hatton-Rockall area is also home to cetaceans more commonly thought of as primarily coastal and/or continental shelf dwelling such as Minke Whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*), Atlantic White-sided Dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus acutus*) and Common Bottlenose Dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*).

In summary, with respect to pelagic communities/populations, this site fits the following EBSA criteria:

Uniqueness or rarity

- The area is considered rare in that it is an extensive, comparatively shallow offshore bank and basin system situated directly in the pathway of the broader Gulf Stream and North Atlantic Current, and within the known migratory routes of numerous vertebrate species.

Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species/habitats

- A number of endangered and significantly depleted whale species occur in this area.

Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery

- The baleen whale species recorded within the area have reproductive cycles with long generation times leading to very slow recoveries following significant human impact over many decades (e.g., historical whaling, natural resource exploitation).

Biological productivity

- The occurrence of numerous long-distance migratory seabird species in this region is indicative of its potential primary and/or secondary productivity and its comparative importance outside of areas subject to more intensive maritime resource use and management.

Biological diversity

- Many pelagic communities/populations occupy the waters in and around the Hatton and Rockall Banks and Hatton-Rockall Basin, representing a highly biodiverse pelagic assemblage.
- Vertebrate species found in the site represent a diverse collection of functional ecological niches from surface-feeding and shallow-diving seabirds and baleen whales, to fast-swimming predatory fish and toothed cetaceans, to slower-moving and highly specialised deep-diving whales.

Feature condition and future outlook of the area

The Hatton-Rockall plateau straddles national and international waters and as such it is subject to many different regulations arising from multiple regulatory bodies and both national and international policy (Johnson *et al*., 2019).

Demersal fish have been targets of extensive fisheries for decades, expanding primarily in the latter half of the 1980s. Although satisfactory stock assessments were seldom achieved, the probable declines in abundance and increase in vulnerability of many of the target species have been reflected in advice from ICES for many years (ICES 1996 onwards, Large *et al.*, 2003). A range of management actions by NEAFC and relevant coastal states have been implemented to reduce fishing effort and facilitate recovery of target species and some associated by-catch species. A similar range of measures applies to species such as haddock inhabiting the shallowest areas.

Epipelagic species such as mackerel and blue whiting, and large pelagic sharks and tuna-like species occurring in the area are managed by relevant coastal states, NEAFC and ICCAT. Cetaceans are managed by the IWC. The management is based on recurrent stock assessments by ICES and other advisory bodies.

Records of the physical impact of deep-water trawling west of Scotland extend back to the late 1980s (Roberts *et al.*, 2000; Gage *et al.*, 2005) and studies using VMS data show that fishing activity potentially affects much of the Hatton-Rockall area (Hall-Spencer *et al.* 2009; Benn *et al.* 2010). Damage may occur to structural species such as corals and sponges, which may take hundreds to thousands of years to recover (Hall-Spencer *et al.*, 2002; Davies *et al.* 2007; Roberts *et al.*, 2009; Hogg *et al.* 2010).

A recent survey (2011) has documented extensive destruction of coral framework on the northern Rockall Bank (Huvenne *et al.* 2011) in waters adjacent to the area currently being described. This expedition also encountered evidence of trawling impact on the megafauna of open sedimented areas, with photographic surveys in the area of the 'Haddock Box' (Rockall Bank) showing frequent occurrence of physically damaged holothurians - thought to be net escapees or discarded by-catch. *Pheronema carpenteri* sponge aggregations and cold seep communities are vulnerable to trawling impacts; seep communities are typically highly localised and are of a relatively small scale such that they could be eliminated by a single trawl. Cold seeps are OSPAR priority habitats for which there are considerable concerns regarding the effects of bottom trawling (van Dover *et al.* 2011a, b).

Some of the benthic communities of the Hatton and Rockall Banks have already been significantly affected by deep-water fishing (ICES WGDEC, 2007). Lost / discarded fishing gear makes up a significant percentage of observed seafloor litter on Hatton Bank, and a smaller percentage on Rockall Bank (Pham *et al*., 2015). The effects on deep-water fish may extend to waters deeper than those utilised by trawl fisheries (Bailey *et al.,* 2009). Broad-scale multibeam surveys have revealed a diverse range of geomophological features and sediment types on Hatton Bank (Jacobs and Howell, 2007; Stewart and Davies, 2007; MacLachlan *et al.,* 2008; Sayago-Gil *et al.,* 2010). These physical environment maps, coupled with targeted biological surveys have resulted in the production of biological habitat maps for the region (Howell *et al.,* 2011) which highlight the range and diversity of non-coral seabed features present in the area.

It is considered important for the future that the underlying mechanisms and oceanic processes which support such an array of benthic and pelagic organisms within the Hatton-Rockall region, as part of the Northeast Atlantic, are studied further. Such future work could usefully explore and deliver an improved understanding of oceanographic and hydrological patterns in space and time, and their effect on benthic and pelagic community composition, structure, productivity, and ecosystem/trophic functioning within the region.

Assessment of area no. 17, Hatton and Rockall Banks and Basin against CBD EBSA Criteria

CBD EBSA Criteria (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Description** (Annex I to decision IX/20)	**Ranking of criterion relevance** (please mark one column with an X)			
		No information	**Low**	**Medium**	**High**
Uniqueness or rarity	Area contains either (i) unique (“the only one of its kind”), rare (occurs only in few locations) or endemic species, populations or communities, and/or (ii) unique, rare or distinct, habitats or ecosystems; and/or (iii) unique or unusual geomorphological or oceanographic features.				X
Explanation for ranking • The area has considerable environmental heterogeneity, and is unique as a large offshore feature extending from above sea-level to 3000m. As species turnover with depth, it is rare as an offshore area that can be inhabited by shallow water species (Billett, 1991; Bett, 2001; Howell *et al*., 2002; Howell *et al*., 2004; Davies *et al*. 2006; Roberts *et al*. 2008; Howell *et al*., 2009; Howell *et al*. 2010) • An area of polygonal faults may be a unique seabed feature and the recent discovery of cold-seep species that are new to science suggests the area is very likely to be unique (Jacobs, 2006; Jacobs and Howell, 2007; Berndt *et al* 2012; ICES 2013; Oliver and Drewery, 2014; Neat *et al*., 2018) • The pelagic environment is considered rare in that it is an extensive, comparatively shallow offshore bank and basin system situated directly in the pathway of the broader Gulf Stream and North Atlantic Current, and within the known migratory routes of numerous vertebrate species (Ellett *et al.* 1986; Reid *et al*., 2003; Ó Cadhla *et al*., 2004; Charif & Clark, 2009; Hammond *et al*., 2009; Nolan *et al*., 2011; Visser *et al*., 2011; Wall *et al*., 2013; Vandeperre *et al*., 2016; Kavanagh *et al*., 2017)					
Special importance for life-history stages of species	Areas that are required for a population to survive and thrive.			X	
Explanation for ranking • Cold-water corals, areas of natural coral rubble, and sponge aggregations provide shelter, nursery and feeding grounds for a variety of species (Mortensen *et al*., 1995; Fosså *et al*., 2002; Freiwald, 2002; Hall-Spencer *et al*., 2002; Bell, 2008; Huvenne *et al*., 2011; Söffker *et al*. 2011; Henry *et al* 2013; Roberts *et al*. 2013; Maldonado *et al*., 2016) • Parts of the Hatton-Rockall area are important as spawning areas for blue whiting, and the area is used					

as a corridor for a range of migrating species including turtles (Reid *et al*., 2003; Ó Cadhla *et al*., 2004; Charif & Clark, 2009; Hammond *et al*., 2009; Nolan *et al*., 2011; Visser *et al*., 2011; Wall *et al*., 2013; Vandeperre *et al*., 2016; Kavanagh *et al*., 2017)					
Importance for threatened, endangered or declining species and/or habitats	Area containing habitat for the survival and recovery of endangered, threatened, declining species or area with significant assemblages of such species.				X
Explanation for ranking • The area is known to support various species of cold-water corals including black corals, bamboo corals, hard and soft corals. These form coral reef, carbonate mound and coral garden habitats that are listed under OSPAR as threatened and declining habitats. The distribution of cold-water coral has been severely reduced in the area over the last 30 years (Wilson, 1979a; Frederiksen *et al*. 1992; Kenyon *et al*., 2003; Roberts *et al*., 2003; Mienis *et al*., 2006; Narayanaswamy *et al*., 2006; Howell *et al*., 2007; Mienis *et al*., 2007; Roberts *et al*. 2008; Durán Muñoz *et al*. 2009; Howell *et al*., 2009; Howell *et al*., 2011; Huvenne *et al*., 2011, Bullimore *et al*., 2013; Roberts *et al*. 2013; Ross and Howell, 2013; Piechaud *et al*., 2015; Ross *et al*. 2015). • In addition, deep-sea sponges aggregations are also known to be present and these are also listed under OSPAR (Howell *et al*., 2016; Ross *et al*., 2019) • A number of endangered and significantly depleted whale species have been shown to occur in this area (Reid *et al*., 2003; Ó Cadhla *et al*., 2004; Charif & Clark, 2009; Hammond *et al*., 2009; Nolan *et al*., 2011; Visser *et al*., 2011; Wall *et al*., 2013; Vandeperre *et al*., 2016; Kavanagh *et al*., 2017) • The reef which lies on the summit of Rockall Bank at 197 m depth may provide one of very few climate refugia for Lophelia pertusa reefs as a result of ASH shoaling (Jackson *et al*., 2015).					
Vulnerability, fragility, sensitivity, or slow recovery	Areas that contain a relatively high proportion of sensitive habitats, biotopes or species that are functionally fragile (highly susceptible to degradation or depletion by human activity or by natural events) or with slow recovery.				X
Explanation for ranking • There is a high diversity of corals, including bamboo coral (Isididae), black coral (Antipatharia) as well as the reef forming stony corals (Scleractinia), though some of these may now be reduced in distribution occurring in patches (Wilson, 1979a; Frederiksen *et al*. 1992; Kenyon *et al*., 2003; Roberts *et al*., 2003; Mienis *et al*., 2006; Narayanaswamy *et al*., 2006; Howell *et al*., 2007; Mienis *et al*., 2007; Roberts *et al*., 2008; Durán Muñoz *et al*., 2009; Howell *et al*., 2009; Howell *et al*., 2011; Huvenne *et al*., 2011, Bullimore *et al*., 2013; Roberts *et al*. 2013; Ross and Howell, 2013; Piechaud *et al*., 2015; Ross *et al*. 2015). Many of the species have slow growth rates, and long generation times (Brendan Roark *et al*., 2006; Carreiro-Silva *et al*., 2013) leading to very slow and episodic recoveries following human impact. • Recent modelling suggests the deep-sea sponge aggregations in the Hatton-Rockall Basin may be isolated from neighbouring populations and thus highly vulnerable. (Ross *et al*., 2019) • Some of the demersal fish have very slow recovery times as a result of their slow reproductive rate compared to pelagic fish. Stocks have already been diminished in some areas (Koslow *et al*., 2000; Bailey *et al*. 2009). • The baleen whale species recorded within the area have reproductive cycles with long generation times leading to very slow recoveries following significant human impact over many decades (e.g.,					

historical whaling, natural resource exploitation). The cold-water coral habitats of this feature are vulnerable to climate change through shoaling of the aragonite saturation horizon (Jackson *et al*., 2015).

Biological productivity	Area containing species, populations or communities with comparatively higher natural biological productivity.			X	

Explanation for ranking

- The Logachev mound province on Rockall Bank is a highly productive system playing an important role in carbon and nitrogen cycling and supporting respiration rates 5 times higher than the surrounding sediment ecosystem (Soetaert *et al*., 2016; Atlas data unpublished).
- The occurrence of numerous long-distance migratory seabird species in this high seas region is indicative of its potential primary and/or secondary productivity and its comparative importance in lying in a remote area beyond those subject to more intensive maritime resource use and management. (Cronin and Mackey, 2002; Mackey *et al*., 2004; Harris *et al*. 2010, Guilford *et al*. 2011; Nolan *et al*., 2011; and www.seabirdtracking.org)

Biological diversity	Area contains comparatively higher diversity of ecosystems, habitats, communities, or species, or has higher genetic diversity.				X

Explanation for ranking

- Benthic and pelagic communities occupy all depths in and around the Hatton and Rockall Banks and Basin. Seabed communities include cold-water corals, rocky reefs, carbonate mounds, polygonal fault systems, sponge aggregations, steep and gentle sedimented slopes (Wilson, 1979a; Frederiksen *et al*. 1992; Kenyon *et al*., 2003; Roberts *et al*., 2003; Mienis *et al*., 2006; Narayanaswamy *et al*., 2006; Howell *et al*., 2007; Mienis *et al*., 2007; Roberts *et al*. 2008; Durán Muñoz *et al*. 2009; Howell *et al*., 2009; Howell *et al*., 2011; Huvenne *et al*., 2011, Bullimore *et al*., 2013; Roberts *et al*. 2013; Ross and Howell, 2013; Piechaud *et al*., 2015; Ross *et al*. 2015; Howell *et al*., 2016).
- Cold-water corals provide diverse habitats for other invertebrates and fish (Mortensen *et al*., 1995; Fosså *et al*., 2002; Freiwald, 2002; Hall-Spencer *et al*., 2002; Bell, 2008; Huvenne *et al*., 2011; Söffker *et al*. 2011; Henry *et al* 2013; Roberts *et al*. 2013; Maldonado *et al*., 2016).
- Many pelagic communities/populations occupy the waters in and around the Hatton and Rockall Banks and Hatton-Rockall Basin, representing a highly biodiverse pelagic assemblage.
- (Gordon & Duncan, 1985; Mauchline *et al*. 1986; Merrett *et al*., 1991; Rice *et al*. 1991; Cronin and Mackey, 2002; Reid *et al*., 2003; Mackey *et al*., 2004; Ó Cadhla *et al*., 2004; Charif & Clark, 2009; Hammond *et al*., 2009; Harris *et al*. 2010; Guilford *et al*. 2011; Nolan *et al*., 2011; Visser *et al*., 2011; Wall *et al*., 2013; Vandeperre *et al*., 2016; Kavanagh *et al*., 2017; and www.seabirdtracking.org)
- Vertebrate species found in the site represent a diverse collection of functional ecological niches from surface-feeding and shallow-diving seabirds and baleen whales, to fast-swimming predatory fish and toothed cetaceans, to slower-moving and highly specialised deep-diving whales (Cronin and Mackey, 2002; Reid *et al*., 2003; Mackey *et al*., 2004; Ó Cadhla *et al*., 2004; Charif & Clark, 2009; Hammond *et al*., 2009; Harris *et al*. 2010; Guilford *et al*. 2011; Nolan *et al*., 2011; Visser *et al*., 2011; Wall *et al*., 2013; Vandeperre *et al*., 2016; Kavanagh *et al*., 2017; and www.seabirdtracking.org).

Naturalness	Area with a comparatively higher degree of naturalness as a result of the lack of or low level of human-induced disturbance or degradation.			X	

Explanation for ranking

- Parts of Hatton and Rockall Banks and Basin are subject to fishing pressure including demersal trawling, pelagic trawling and long-lining (ICES WGDEEP). This fishing only occurs in NEAFC recognized fishing areas and NEAFC has taken action to "freeze the footprint" of fishing in the area. There is evidence of seafloor litter predominantly derived from the fishing industry (Pham *et al*., 2015).

References

Bailey, D.M., Collins, M.A., Gordon, J.D.M., Zuur, A.F. & Priede, I.G. (2009) Long-term changes in deep-water fish populations in the northeast Atlantic: a deeper reaching effect of fisheries? *Proc. Roy. Soc. Lond. B.* 276, 1965-1969

Bell, J.J., (2008) The functional roles of marine sponges. *Estuar. Coast. Mar. Sci*., 79(3), pp.341-353.

Benn, A.R., Weaver, P.P.E, Billett, D.S.M., van den Hove, S., Murdock, A.P., Doneghan, G.B. & Le Bas, T. (2010). Human Activities on the Deep Seafloor in the North East Atlantic: An Assessment of Spatial Extent. *PLoS One* 5(9): e12730. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0012730.

Berndt, C, Jacobs, C. L., Evans, A. J., Gay, A., Elliot, G., Long, D. and Hitchen, K. (2012) Kilometre-scale polygonal seabed depressions in the Hatton Basin, NE Atlantic Ocean: Constraints on the origin of polygonal faulting Marine Geology, 332/334 . pp. 126-133. DOI 10.1016/j.margeo.2012.09.013.

Bett, B.J. (2001) UK Atlantic Margin Environmental Survey: introduction and overview of bathyal benthic ecology. *Cont. Shelf Res.* 21, 917-956.

Bett, B. J., and Rice, A. L. (1992). The influence of hexactinellid sponge (*Pheronema carpenteri*) spicules on the patchy distribution of macrobenthos in the porcupine seabight (bathyal NE Atlantic). *Ophelia* 36, 217–226.

Billett, D.S.M. (1991) Deep-sea holothurians. *Oceanogr. mar. Biol. Ann. Rev.* 29, 259-317.

Campbell, N. *et al.* 2010. Taxonomic indicators of deep water demersal fish community diversity on the Northeast Atlantic continental slope. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 68, 365-378.

Carreiro-Silva, M., Andrews, A.H., Braga-Henriques, A., De Matos, V., Porteiro, F.M. and Santos, R.S., (2013). Variability in growth rates of long-lived black coral Leiopathes sp. from the Azores. *Mar Ecol Prog Ser*, 473, pp.189-199.

Cathalot C, van Oevelen D, Cox TJ, Kutti T, Lavaleye M, Duineveld G, Meysman FJR (2015) Cold-water coral reefs and adjacent sponge grounds: hotspots of benthic respiration and organic carbon cycling in the deep sea. Front. Mar. Sci. 2, https://doi.org/10.3389/fmars.2015.00037

Clark M.R., Rowden A.A., Schlacher T., Williams A., Consalvey M., Stocks K.I., Rogers A.D., O'Hara T.D., White M., Shank T.M. & Hall-Spencer J.M. (2010) The ecology of seamounts: structure, function and human impacts. *Annu. Rev. Mar. Sci.* 2, 253-278.

Costello, M.J., McCrea, M., Freiwald, A., Lundälv, T., Jonsson, L., Bett, B.J., Van Weering, T.C.E., De Haas, H., Roberts, J.M. & Allen, D. (2005) Role of cold-water *Lophelia pertusa* reefs as fish habitat in the NE Atlantic. In: Freiwald, A., Roberts, J.M. (Eds.), Cold-water Corals and Ecosystems. Springer-Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg, pp. 771-805.

Charif, R.A. & Clark, C.W. (2009). Acoustic monitoring of large whales in deep waters north and west of the British Isles: 1996-2005. Technical Report 08-07 for the UK DECC. Cornell University Bioacoustics Research Program, Laboratory of Ornithology, Cornell University, New York. 40pp

Cronin, M., Mackey, M. (2002) *Cetaceans and Seabirds of the Hatton-Rockall Region,* Cruise Report of the Geological Survey of Ireland May 2002.

Davies, A.J., Narayanaswamy, B.E., Hughes, D.J. & Roberts, J.M. (2006) An introduction of the benthic ecology of the Rockall-Hatton Area (SEA 7). Scottish Association for Marine Science, Oban, p. 94. http://www.offshoresea.org.uk/

Davies, A.J., Wisshak, M., Orr, J.C. & Roberts, J.M. (2008) Predicting suitable habitat for the cold-water coral *Lophelia pertusa* (Scleractinia). *Deep-Sea Res. I* 55, 1048-1062.

Davies. A., Roberts. J.M. & Hall-Spencer, J.M. (2007) Preserving deep-sea natural heritage: emerging issues in offshore conservation and management. *Biol. Cons.* 138, 299-312.

De Clippele LH, Huvenne VAI, Molodtsova TN and Roberts JM (2019) The diversity and ecological role of non-scleractinian corals (Antipatharia and Alcyonacea) on scleractinian cold-water coral mounds. Front. Mar. Sci. 6:184. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2019.00184

Due, L., van Aken. H.M., Boldreel. L.O. & Kuijpers, A. (2006) Seismic and oceanographic evidence of present-day bottom-water dynamics in the Lousy Bank–Hatton Bank area, NE Atlantic. Deep-Sea Research I53:1729-1741

Durán Muñoz, P., Sayago-Gil, M., Cristobo, J., Parra, S., Serrano, A., Díaz del Rio, V., Patrocinio, T., Sacau, M., Murillo, F.J., Palomino, D. & Fernández-Salas, L.M. (2009) Seabed mapping for selecting cold-water coral protection areas on Hatton Bank, Northeast Atlantic. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 66, 2013-2025

Ellett, D.J., Edwards, A. & Bowers, R. (1986) The hydrography of the Rockall Channel – an overview. Conference Proceedings Symposium on the Oceanography of the Rockall Channel, Edinburgh (UK), 27-29 Mar 1985.

Fosså, J.H., Mortensen, P.B. & Furevik, D.M. (2002) The deep-water coral *Lophelia pertusa* in Norwegian waters: distribution and fishery impacts. *Hydrobiologia* 471, 1-12.

Frederiksen, R., Jensen, A. & Westerberg, H. (1992) The distribution of the scleractinian coral *Lophelia pertusa* around the Faeroe Islands and the relation to internal tidal mixing. *Sarsia* 77**,** 157-171.

Freiwald, A. (2002) Reef-forming cold-water corals. In: Wefer, G., Billett, D., Hebbeln, D., Jorgensen, B.B., Schluter, M., Van Weering, T. (Eds.), *Ocean Margin Systems*. Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg, Berlin, pp. 365-385.

Gage, J.D. & Tyler, P.A. (1991) *Deep-Sea Biology. A Natural History of Organisms at the Deep-Sea Floor.* Cambridge University Press. 504pp.

Gage, J.D., Billett, D.S.M., Jensen, M. & Tyler, P.A. (1985) Echinoderms of the Rockall Trough and adjacent areas. 2. Echinoidea and Holothurioidea. *Bull. Br. Mus. Nat. Hist. (Zool.),* 48, 173-213.

Gage, J.D., Pearson, M., Clark, A.M., Paterson, G.L.J. & Tyler, P.A. (1983) Echinoderms of the Rockall Trough and adjacent areas. 1. Crinoidea, Asteroidea and Ophiuroidea. *Bull. Br. Mus. nat. Hist. (Zool.)* 45, 263-308.

Gage, J.D., Roberts, J.M., Hartley, J.P. & Humphery, J.D. (2005) Potential impacts of deepsea trawling on the benthic ecosystem along the Northern European Continental Margin: A review. In: Barnes, P.W., Thomas, J.P. (Eds.), *Benthic Habitats and the Effects of Fishing*. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland, pp. 503-517.

Gordon, J. D. M., O. A. Bergstad, I. Figueiredo, and G. Menezes. 2003. Deep-water Fisheries of the Northeast Atlantic: I. Description and Current Trends. *J. Northw. Atl. Fish. Sci.* 31: 137-150.

Gordon, J.D.M. & Duncan, J.A.R. (1985) The ecology of the deep-sea benthic and benthopelagic fish on the slopes of the Rockall Trough, northeastern Atlantic. *Prog. Oceanogr.* 15, 37-69.

Guilford, T., Freeman, R., Boyle, D., Dean, B., Kirk, H., Phillips, R.A., Perrins, C. (2011) A dispersive migration in the Atlantic Puffin and its Implications for Migratory Navigation, *Plos One,* 6(7), e21336.

Hall-Spencer J.M., Allain V. & Fossa J.H. (2002) Trawling damage to Northeast Atlantic ancient coral reefs. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Lond. B*. 269, 507-511.

Hall-Spencer, J.M., Tasker, M., Söffker, M., Christiansen, S., Rogers, S., Campbell, M. & Hoydal, K. (2009) The design of Marine Protected Areas on High Seas and territorial waters of Rockall. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 397, 305-308.

Hammond, P.S., Macleod, K., Burt, L. Cañadas, A., Lens, S. Mikkelsen, B., Rogan, E., Santos, B., Uriarte, A., Van Canneyt, O. & Vázquez, J.A. (2009). Cetacean Offshore Distribution and Abundance in the European Atlantic (CODA). Final Report. University of St Andrews, Scotland.

Harris, M.P., Daunt, F., Newell, M., Phillips, R.A., Wanless, S. (2010) Wintering areas of Atlantic Puffins *Fratercula arctica* from a North Sea colony as revealed by geolocation technology, *Mar Biol,* 157, 827-836

Harvey, R., Gage, J.D., Billett, D.S.M., Clark, A.M. and Paterson, G.L.J. (1988) Echinoderms of the Rockall Trough and adjacent areas. 3. Additional records. *Bull. Br. Mus. (Nat. Hist.) (Zool.),* 54 (4), 153-198.

Hendry, K.R., Cassarino, L., Bates, S.L., Culwick, T., Frost, M., Goodwin, C. and Howell, K.L., (2019). Silicon isotopic systematics of deep-sea sponge grounds in the North Atlantic. *Quat Sci Rev*, 210, pp.1-14.

Henry, L-A. & Roberts, J.M. (2007) Biodiversity and ecological composition of macrobenthos on cold-water coral mounds and adjacent off-mound habitat in the bathyal Porcupine Seabight, NE Atlantic. *Deep-Sea Res I* 54, 654-672

Hogg, M.M., Tendal, O.S., Conway, K.W., Pomponi, S.A., van Soest, R.W.M., Gutt, J., Krautter, M. & Roberts, J.M. (2010) Deep-sea Sponge Grounds: Reservoirs of Biodiversity. UNEP-WCMC Biodiversity Series No. 32. UNEP-WCMC, Cambridge, UK

Howell, K., Billett, D.S.M. & Tyler, P.A. (2002). Depth-related distribution and abundance of seastars (Echinodermata:Asteroidea) in the Porcupine Seabight and Porcupine Abyssal Plain, N.E. Atlantic. *Deep-Sea Res. I* 49, 1901-1920.

Howell, K.L. (2010) A benthic classification system to aid in the implementation of marine protected area networks in the deep / high seas of the NE Atlantic. *Biol. Cons.* 143**,** 1041–1056.

Howell, K.L., Davies J.S., Jacobs, C., and Narayanaswamy B.E. (2007). Broadscale Survey of the Habitats of Rockall Bank, and mapping of Annex I 'Reef' Habitat. Joint Nature Conservation Committee Report. No. 422, 165p.

Howell, K.L., Davies J.S. & Narayanaswamy, B.E.(2010). Identifying deep-sea megafaunal epibenthic assemblages for use in habitat mapping and marine protected area network design. *J. Mar. Biol. Ass. UK* 90**,** 33-68 .

Howell, K.L., Davies, J.S., Hughes, D.J. & Narayanaswamy, B.E. (2007) Strategic Environmental Assessment / Special Area for Conservation Photographic Analysis Report. Department of Trade and Industry, Strategic Environmental Assessment Report, UK, p. 163. Unpublished report.

Howell, K.L., Holt, R., Pulido Endrino, I. & Stewart, H. (2011) When the species is also a habitat: comparing the predictively modelled distributions of *Lophelia pertusa* and the reef habitat it forms. *Biol. Cons.*

Howell, K.L., Mowles S. & Foggo, A. (2010) Mounting evidence: near-slope seamounts are faunally indistinct from an adjacent bank. *Mar. Ecol.* 31, 52-62.

Howell, K.L., Rogers, A., Tyler, P.A. & Billett, D.S.M. (2004). Reproductive isolation among morphotypes of the cosmopolitan species *Zoroaster fulgens* (Asteroidea:Echinodermata). *Mar. Biol.* 144, 977-984.

Howell K.L., Piechaud N., Downie A.L. & Kenny A. (2016) The distribution of deep-sea sponge aggregations in the North Atlantic and implications for their effective spatial management' Deep-Sea Res Pt I, 115, 309-320.

Husebø, A., Nottestad, L., Fosså, J.H., Furevik, D.M. & Jorgensen, S.B. (2002) Distribution and abundance of fish in deep-sea coral habitats. *Hydrobiologia* 471**,** 91-99.

Huvenne, V.A.I. *et al.* (2011) RRS James Cook Cruise 60, 09 May-12 Jun 2011. Benthic habitats and the impact of human activities in Rockall Trough, on Rockall Bank and in Hatton Basin. (National Oceanography Centre Cruise Report, No. 04) Southampton, UK: National Oceanography Centre, Southampton, 133pp.

ICES (2007) Report of the Working Group on Deep-Water Ecology (WGDEC), 26–28 February 2007, ICES Cm 2007/aCE:01 Ref lRC. International Council for the Exploration of the Sea, Copenhagen, Denmark, 57pp.

ICES 2010. Report of the Working group on the Biology and Assessemnt of Deepwater Fisheries Resources. www.ices.dk

Jackson, E.L., Davies, A.J., Howell, K.L., Kershaw, P.J. and Hall-Spencer, J.M., (2014). Future-proofing marine protected area networks for cold water coral reefs. *ICES J Mar Sci*, 71(9), pp.2621-2629.

Jacobs, C.L. (2006) An Appraisal of the Surface Geology and Sedimentary Processes within SEA7, the UK
Continental Shelf. National Oceanography Centre Southampton Research and Consultancy Report, No. 18, 62pp.

Jacobs, C.L., Howell, K.L. (2007) Habitat investigations within the SEA4 and SEA7 area of the UK continental shelf. MV Franklin Cruise 0206, 03-23 Aug 2006. Research and Consultancy Report No. 24. National Oceanography Centre, Southampton. UK. 95pp.

Jensen, A. & Frederiksen, R. (1992) The fauna associated with the bank-forming deep-water coral *Lophelia pertusa* (Scleractinaria) on the Faroe Shelf. *Sarsia* 77, 53-69.

Johnson, D.E., Barrio Froján, C., Neat, F., Van Oevelen, D., Stirling, D., Gubbins, M.J. and Roberts, M., (2019). Rockall and Hatton: resolving a super wicked marine governance problem in the high seas of the northeast Atlantic Ocean. *Front Mar Sci*, 6, p.69.

Kavanagh, A.S., Hunt, W., Richardson, N. & Jessopp, M. (2017). Cetaceans in Irish offshore waters: Final report of the SFI-KOSMOS Project 2015-2017. MaREI Centre for Marine and Renewable Energy, University College Cork. 66pp.

Kenyon, N.H., Akhmetzhanov, A.M., Wheeler, A.J., van Weering, T.C.E., de Haas, H. & Ivanov, M.K. (2003) Giant carbonate mud mounds in the southern Rockall Trough. Marine *Geology* 195, 5-30.

Lampitt, R.S., Billett, D.S.M. & Rice, A.L. (1986) The biomass of the invertebrate megabenthos from 500 to 4100m in the North East Atlantic. *Mar. Biol.* 93, 69-81.

Large, P. A., C. Hammer, O. A. Bergstad, J. D. M. Gordon, and P. Lorance. 2003. Deep-water Fisheries of the Northeast Atlantic: II. Assessment and Management Approaches. *J. Northw. Atl. Fish. Sci.* 31: 151-163.

Le Goff-Vitry & M.C. & Rogers, A.D. (2005) Molecular ecology of *Lophelia pertusa* in the NE Atlantic. In: Freiwald, A., Roberts, J.M. (Eds.). *Cold-water Corals and Ecosystems.* Springer-Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg, pp. 653-662.

Le Guilloux, E., Hall-Spencer, J.M., Söffker, M.K. & Olu-Le Roy, K. (2010) Association between the squat lobster *Gastroptychus formosus* (Filhol, 1884) and cold-water corals in the North Atlantic. *J. Mar Biol. Ass. UK* 90, 1363-1369.

MacLachlan SE, Elliot GM, Parson LM (2008) Investigations of the bottom current sculpted margin of Hatton bank, NE Atlantic. Mar. Geol. 253:170–184

Mackey, M., Ó Cadhla, O., Kelly, T.C., Aguilar de Soto, N. & Connolly, N. (2004). Cetaceans and Seabirds of Ireland's Atlantic Margin. Volume I – Seabird distribution, density & abundance. Report on research conducted under the 1997 Irish Petroleum Infrastructure Programme (PIP): Rockall Studies Group (RSG) projects 98/6, 99/38 and 00/13.

Maldonado, M., Carmona, M. C., Velásquez, Z., Puig, A., Cruzado, A., López, A., *et al*. (2005). Siliceous sponges as a silicon sink: an overlooked aspect of benthopelagic coupling in the marine silicon cycle. *Limnol. Oceanogr*. 50, 799–809.

Maldonado, M., Aguilar,R., Bannister,R.J., Bell,D., Conway,K.W., Dayton,P.K., Díaz, C., Gutt,J., Kenchington,E.L.R., Leys,D. and Pomponi,S.A., (2016). Sponge grounds as key marine habitats: a synthetic review of types, structure, functional roles, and conservation concerns. In: Marine Animal Forests. Springer, Berlin._24–1.

Mauchline, J., Ellett, D.J., Gage, J.D., Gordon, J.D.M. & Jones, E.J.W. (1986) A bibliography of the Rockall Trough. Conference Proceedings Symposium on the Oceanography of the Rockall Channel, Edinburgh (UK), 27-29 Mar 1985.

Menot, L., Sibuet, M., Carney, R.S., Levin, L.A., Rowe, G.T., Billett, D.S.M., Poore, G., Kitazato, H., Vanreusel, A., Galéron, J., Lavrado, H.P., Sellanes, J., Ingole, B. & Krylova, E. (2010) New Perceptions of Continental Margin Biodiversity. In: McIntyre, A., (Ed). Chapter 5. *Life in the World's Oceans: Diversity, Distribution and Abundance.* Wiley-Blackwell. 79-101.

Merrett, N.R., Gordon, J.D.M., Stehmann, M. & Haedrich, R.L. (1991) Deep demersal fish assemblage structure in the Porcupine Seabight (eastern North Atlantic): slope sampling by three different trawls compared. *J. Mar. Biol, Ass. UK* 71, 329-358.

Mienis, F., de Stigter, H.C., de Haas, H. & van Weering, T.C.E. (2009) Near-bed particle deposition and resuspension in a cold-water coral mound area at the Southwest Rockall Trough margin, NE Atlantic. *Deep-Sea Res. I* 56, 1026-1038.

Morrison, C., Ross, S., Nizinski, M., Brooke, S., Järnegren, J., Waller, R., Johnson, R. & King, T. (2011) Genetic discontinuity among regional populations of *Lophelia pertusa* in the North Atlantic Ocean. *Cons. Genetics* 12, 713-729

Mortensen, P.B., Hovland, M., Brattegard, T. & Farestveit, R. (1995) Deep-water bioherms of the scleractinian coral *Lophelia pertusa* (L) at 64 degrees N on the Norwegian Shelf – Structure and associated megafauna. *Sarsia* 80, 145-158.

Myers, A.A. & Hall-Spencer, J.M. (2004) A new species of amphipod crustacean, *Pleusymtes comitari* sp. nov., associated with *Acanthogorgia* sp. gorgonians on deep-water coral reefs off Ireland. *J. Mar. Biol. Ass. UK* 84, 1029-1032.

Narayanaswamy, B.E., Howell, K.L., Hughes, D.J., Davies, J.S., Roberts, J.M. & Black, K.D. (2006) Strategic Environmental Assessment Area 7 Photographic Analysis Report. 13. Department of Trade and Industry, Strategic Environmental Assessment Report, UK, p. 179. Unpublished report.

Neat, F.C. & Burns, F. 2010. Stable abundance, but changing size structure in grenadier fishes (Macrouridae) over a decade (1998-2008) in which deepwater fisheries became regulated. Deep Sea Res. I. 57, 434-440.

Neat, F. & Campbell, N. 2010. Demersal fish diversity of the isolated Rockall plateau compared with the adjacent west coast shelf of Scotland. Biol. J. Linn. Soc. Lond. 104, 138-147.

Neat, F., Jamieson, A., Stewart, H., Narayanaswamy, B., Collie, N., Stewart, M., *et al*. (2018). Visual evidence of reduced seafloor conditions and indications of a cold-seep ecosystem from the Hatton–Rockall basin (NE Atlantic). J. Marine Biol. Assoc. 1–7.

Nolan, C., Connolly, P., Kelly, E., Dransfeld, L., Slattery, N., Paramor, O.A.L., & Frid, C.L.J. (2011): MEFEPO North Western Waters Atlas 2nd Edition. Marine Institute. ISBN 978-1-902895-49-9.

Ó Cadhla, O., Mackey, M., Aguilar de Soto, N., Rogan, E. & Connolly, N. (2004). Cetaceans and Seabirds of Ireland’s Atlantic Margin. Volume II – Cetacean distribution & abundance. Report on research conducted under the 1997 Irish Petroleum Infrastructure Programme (PIP): Rockall Studies Group (RSG) projects 98/6, 99/38 and 00/13.

Oliver, P. G., and Drewery, J. (2014). New species of chemosymbiotic clams (Bivalvia: Vesicomyidae and Thyasiridae) from a putative ‘seep’ in the Hatton–Rockall Basin, north-east Atlantic. J. Marine Biol. Assoc. UK. 94, 389–403.

Penny, A.J., Parker, S.J. & Brown, J.H. (2009) Protection measures implemented by New Zealand for vulnerable marine ecosystems in the South Pacific Ocean. *Mar Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 397, 341-354.

Pham, C.K., Ramirez-Llodra, E., Alt, C.H., Amaro, T., Bergmann, M., Canals, M., Davies, J., Duineveld, G., Galgani, F., Howell, K.L. and Huvenne, V.A. (2014) Marine litter distribution and density in European seas, from the shelves to deep basins. *PloS one*, 9(4), p.e95839.

Pollock, C & Barton, C. 2006. Offshore seabirds in the SEA 7 area. A report to the UK Department of Trade and Industry.

Reid, J.B., Evans, P.G.H. & Northridge, S.P. (2003). Atlas of Cetacean Distribution in North-west European Waters. Joint Nature Conservation Committee, Peterborough. 76pp.

Rice, A.L., Billett, D.S.M., Thurston, M.H. and Lampitt, R.S. (1991). The Institute of Oceanographic Sciences Biology Programme in the Porcupine Seabight: background and general introduction. *J. Mar. Biol. Ass. U.K.*, 71, 281-310.

Piechaud, N., Downie, A., Stewart, H.A. & Howell, K.L. (2015) The impact of modelling method selection on predicted extent and distribution of deep-sea benthic assemblages. *Earth Env Sci T R So* 105, (4) 251-261

Roark, E.B., Guilderson, T.P., Dunbar, R.B. and Ingram, B.L., (2006). Radiocarbon-based ages and growth rates of Hawaiian deep-sea corals. *Mar Ecol Prog Ser*, 327, pp.1-14.

Roberts, J.M., Harvey, S.M., Lamont, P.A., Gage, J.D. & Humphery, J.D. (2000) Seabed photography, environmental assessment and evidence for deep-water trawling on the continental margin west of the Hebrides. *Hydrobiologia* 441: 173-183

Roberts, J.M. and shipboard party (2013) Changing Oceans Expedition 2012. RRS *James Cook* cruise 073 Cruise Report. Heriot-Watt University. 224 pp.

Roberts, J.M., Henry, L-A., Long, D. & Hartley, J.P. (2008) Cold-water coral reef frameworks, megafaunal communities and evidence for coral carbonate mounds on the Hatton Bank, north east Atlantic. *Facies* 54: 297-316

Roberts, J.M., Long, D., Wilson, J.B., Mortensen, P.B. & Gage, J.D. (2003) The cold-water coral *Lophelia pertusa* (Scleractinia) and enigmatic seabed mounds along the north-east Atlantic margin: are they related? *Mar. Poll. Bull.* 46, 7-20.

Roberts, J.M., Wheeler, A., Freiwald, A. & Cairns, S.D. (2009) *Cold-water corals: The biology and geology of deep-sea coral habitats.* Cambridge University Press. 334pp.

Roberts, J.M., Wheeler, A.J. & Freiwald, A. (2006) Reefs of the deep: The biology and geology of cold-water coral ecosystems. *Science* 213, 543-547.

Rogan, E., Cañadas, A., Macleod, K., Santos, B., Mikkelsen, B., Uriarte, A., Van Canneyt, O., Vazquez, A.J. & Hammond, P.S. (2017). Distribution, abundance and habitat use of deep diving cetaceans in the North East Atlantic. Deep Sea Research II 141: 8-19. doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2017.03.015

Rogers, A.D. & Gianni, M. (2010) The implementation of the UNGA Resolutions 61/105 and 64/72 in the management of deep-sea fisheries on the High Seas. Report of the Deep-Sea Conservation Coalition. International Programme on the State of the Ocean, London, UK. 97pp.

Ross, R.E. & Howell, K.L. (2013) Use of predictive habitat modelling to assess the distribution and extent of the current protection of 'listed' deep-sea habitats. *Diversity Distrib*. 19, (4) 433-445

Ross, L.K., Ross, R.E., Stewart, H.A. & Howell, K.L. (2015) The Influence of Data Resolution on Predicted Distribution and Estimates of Extent of Current Protection of Three Listed Deep-Sea Habitats. *PLOS ONE* 10, (10)

Ross, R.E., Nimmo-Smith, W.A.M. and Howell, K.L., (2017) Towards 'ecological coherence': Assessing larval dispersal within a network of existing marine protected areas. Deep-Sea Res Pt I, 126, pp.128-138.

Ross, R.E., Wort, E.J. and Howell, K.L. (2019) Combining distribution and dispersal models to identify a particularly Vulnerable Marine Ecosystem. *Front Mar Sci*, 6, p.574.

Rovelli L, Attard K, Bryant LD, Flögel S, Stahl HJ, Roberts JM, Linke P, Glud RN (2015) Benthic O_2 uptake of two cold-water coral communities estimated with the non-invasive eddy-correlation technique. *Mar Ecol Prog Ser* 525: 97-104

Sayago-Gil M, Long D, Hitchen K, Díaz-del-Río V, Fernández-Salas LM, Durán-Muñoz P (2010) Evidence for current-controlled morphology along the western slope of Hatton Bank (Rockall Plateau, NE Atlantic Ocean). *Geo-Mar. Lett.* 30, 99-111

Söffker, M., Sloman, K.A. & Hall-Spencer, J.M. (2011) In situ observations of fish associated with coral reefs off Ireland. Deep-Sea Res. I 58, 818-825

Stewart, H A, and Davies, J S. 2007. Habitat investigations within the SEA7 and SEA4 areas of the UK continental shelf (Hatton Bank, Rosemary Bank, Wyville Thomson Ridge and Faroe–Shetland Channel). *British Geological Survey Commercial Report*, CR/07/051.

Tittensor, D.P., Baco-Taylor, A.R., Brewin, P., Clark, M.R., Consalvey, M., Hall-Spencer, J.M., Rowden, A.A., Schlacher, T., Stocks, K. & Rogers, A.D. (2009) Predicting global habitat suitability for stony corals on seamounts. *J. Biogeog.* 36, 1111-1128

Vandeperre, F., Aires-da-Silva, A., Lennert-Cody, C., Serrão Santos, R. & Afonso, P. (2016). Essential pelagic habitat of juvenile blue shark (Prionace glauca) inferred from telemetry data. Limnol. Oceanogr. 61(5): 1605-1625

Van Dover, C., Smith CR, Ardron J, Dunn D, Gjerde K, Levin L, Smith S and the Dinard Workshop Contributors (2011a). Uncharted waters: Placing deep-sea chemosynthetic ecosystems in reserve. *Marine Policy* 36, 378-381.

Van Dover, C., Smith CR, Ardron J, Dunn D, Gjerde K, Levin L, Smith S and the Dinard Workshop Contributors (2011b). Environmental management of deep-sea chemosynthetic ecosystems: justification of and considerations for a spatially-based approach. International Seabed Authority Technical Study 9. 29pp.

Vanreusel, A., Fonseca, G., Danovaro, R., *et al*. (2010) The contribution of deep-sea macrohabitat heterogeneity to global nematode diversity. *Mar. Ecol.* 31, 66-77.

Visser, F., Hartman, K.L., Pierce, G.J., Valavanis, V.D. & Huisman, J. (2011). Timing of migratory baleen whales at the Azores in relation to the north Atlantic spring bloom. Marine Ecology Progress Series 440: 267–279.

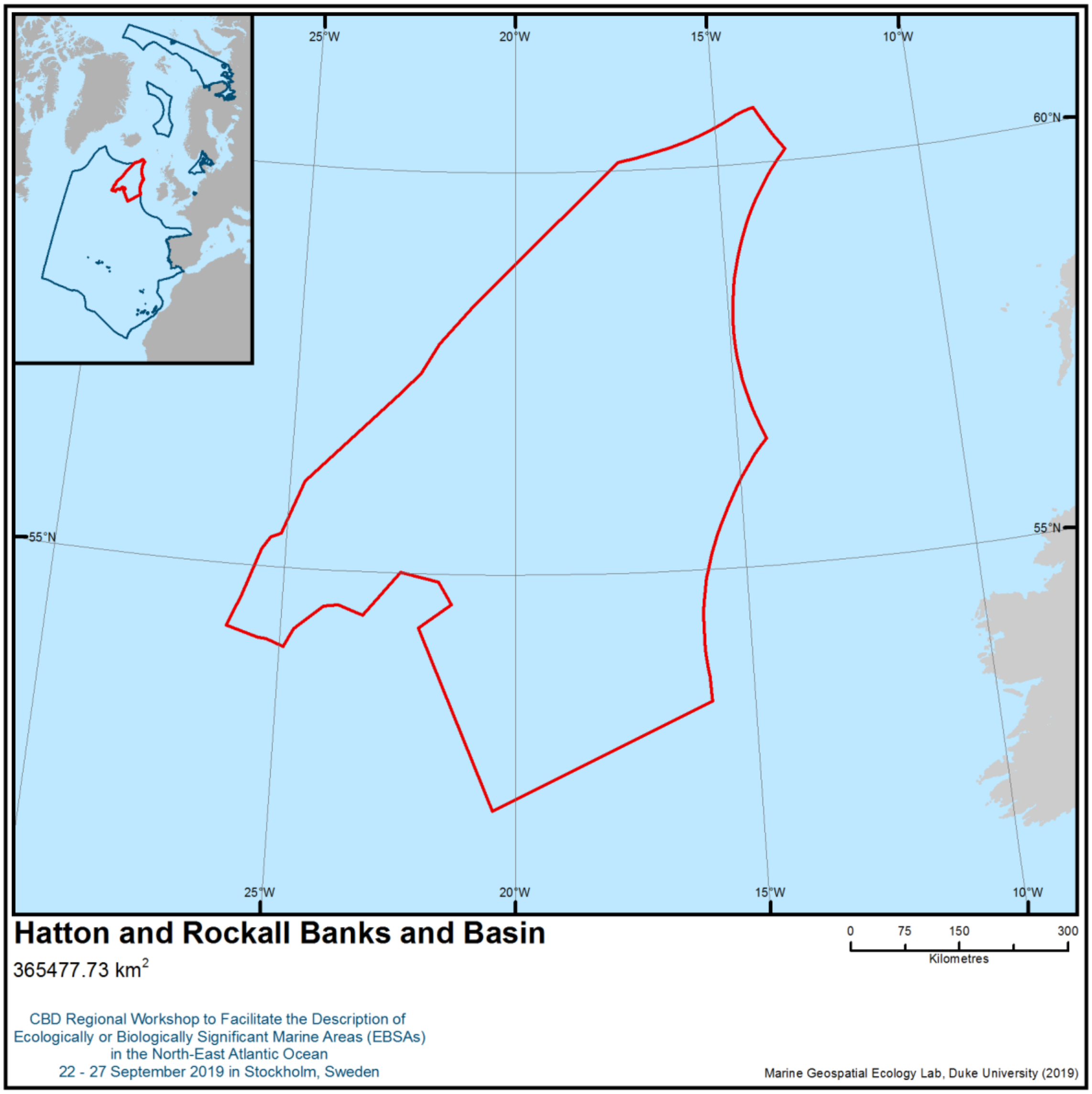
Wall, D., Murray, C., O'Brien, J., Kavanagh, L., Wilson, C., Ryan, C., Glanville, B., Williams, D., Enlander, I., O'Connor, I., McGrath, D., Whooley, P. & Berrow, S. (2013). Atlas of the distribution and relative abundance of marine mammals in Irish offshore waters 2005 - 2011. Irish Whale and Dolphin Group, Kilrush, Co. Clare. 63pp

Wei, C-L. *et al.* (2010). Global Patterns and Predictions of Seafloor Biomass Using Random Forests. *PLoS One* 5 (12) http://dx.plos.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0015323.

Wilson, J.B., (1979a) The distribution of the coral *Lophelia pertusa* (L.) [*L. prolifera* (Pallas)] in the North-East Atlantic. *J. Mar. Biol. Ass. UK* 59, 149-164.

Wilson, J.B., (1979b) 'Patch' development of the deep-water coral *Lophelia pertusa* (L.) on Rockall Bank. *J. Mar. Biol. Ass. UK* 59, 165-177.

Maps and Figures



Location of area no. 17: Hatton and Rockall Banks and Basin

Annex VIII

SUMMARY OF THE WORKSHOP DISCUSSION ON IDENTIFICATION OF GAPS AND NEEDS FOR FURTHER ELABORATION IN DESCRIBING ECOLOGICALLY OR BIOLOGICALLY SIGNIFICANT MARINE AREAS, INCLUDING THE NEED FOR SCIENTIFIC INFORMATION, DEVELOPMENT OF SCIENTIFIC CAPACITY AS WELL AS SCIENTIFIC COLLABORATION

General gaps

1. The North-East Atlantic is a relatively well-studied area compared to many of the world's oceans. However, the relative data richness of this area should be qualified by temporal and spatial data limitations creating data biases. For example, most at-sea surveys favour summer conditions.

2. In preparation for this workshop, an extensive data-collection process was undertaken, and a data report was developed. Biological, physical oceanographic and physiographic data were collected as well as data from global archives on biogeographic information. The ICES data centre collaborated with the workshop's technical support team prior to the workshop to share and incorporate data holdings and links for the workshop. Access was also available to specialised OSPAR, EMODnet, and OBIS datasets. Many European collections do not extend as far west as the workshop study area and required supplementing from global data sets. Throughout this data collection process, several general data gaps were identified.

3. Fisheries data was provided by ICES as needed during the workshop, including access to stock assessments, but individual catch statistics were not explored.

4. The most prominent data gaps involve the lack of consistent, region-wide surveys of data on marine species throughout all depth ranges. This especially applies to deep-sea and particularly the abyssal plain (see below), which is under-represented, with available biological data being more restricted to surface or shallow water regions in and around coastal areas.

5. Typically, as elsewhere, there is higher confidence in the coverage of physical oceanography data, while many deep-sea offshore habitats are under-studied and poorly inventoried. Some discrete geographical gaps were noted within the North-East Atlantic region, such as an absence of data for many individual seamounts, which limited the workshop's ability to fully describe all seamount complexes and other physiographic systems, such as canyons extending far offshore. Future collaboration and integration of data within projects such as the EU iAtlantic Project have the potential to strengthen future efforts.

6. There is a need to better understand the relationship between natural and human-induced change and its impact on marine biodiversity. Many threatened and/or declining species and habitats in the region exhibit traits with little adaptive potential to threats associated with climate change (Johnson et al. 2018).

7. There is a need to better consider and engage traditional knowledge in the description of areas meeting the EBSA criteria through the full and effective participation of indigenous peoples and local communities.

Specific gaps

8. Traditional knowledge: In consistence with article 8(j) of the Convention on Biological Diversity and Aichi Biodiversity Target 18, together with various COP decisions, there is a need to ensure the full, effective and meaningful participation of indigenous and local communities and the integration of traditional knowledge in the EBSA process. This was further emphasized by the CBD COP in the Voluntary Practical Options for Further Enhancing Scientific Methodologies and Approaches, including Collaborative Arrangements, on the Description of Areas Meeting the EBSA criteria (annex II of decision XIII/12), which noted:

> "Given the unique challenges associated with the use of traditional knowledge, more work should be done to identify effective ways of including that information in the description of EBSAs. Training activities could be organized prior to workshops at the relevant scale, targeting both representatives and experts from indigenous peoples and local communities as

> well as from scientific institutions. This would build on the training manual on incorporating traditional knowledge into the description of EBSAs, as contained in document UNEP/CBD/SBSTTA/20/INF/21, as well as the relevant work by the Intergovernmental Science-Policy Platform on Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services”

Indigenous peoples and local communities in the North-East Atlantic have a significant amount of endemic, traditional knowledge relevant to the description of EBSAs in this region. However, this knowledge could not be used in this workshop because the some geographical areas in which this knowledge is focused was not included in the workshop scope, on the decision of Parties in the region. So, for example, traditional knowledge from the Saami and Inuit areas could not be applied to the description of EBSAs in this region in a meaningful way. Examples of knowledge that could have been valuable for this workshop include knowledge of fishing grounds, spawning areas, streams, fauna, bird habitats and seabed conditions and also knowledge of customary use of areas, areas of social and economic importance, cultural heritage sites, subsistence use areas and sacred sites. Social, cultural and spiritual information are also of considerable importance to the conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity, as well as to the survival of indigenous peoples in the area. Social and cultural considerations would not only add immediate value to the CBD EBSA process, but is vital to the success and long-term sustainability of the process, and the conservation and sustainable use of marine biodiversity in general.

Furthermore, in consistence with article 8(j) of the Convention on Biological Diversity and Aichi Biodiversity Target 18, together with various COP decisions, national processes applying the EBSA criteria or other similar criteria for identifying marine areas of particular importance should identify indigenous knowledge holders and/or indigenous peoples and local communities, include them in the national processes and also make the knowledge holders and/or indigenous peoples and local communities able to participate fully and effectively and with their prior and informed consent or free, prior and informed consent or approval and involvement, as appropriate, and consistent with national legislation and circumstances, and in accordance with international obligations in processes wherever they are affected.

9. The ‘Banana Hole’: Due to lack of new specific biological or ecological information, no EBSA was proposed by the workshop for the ‘Banana Hole’ area. However, this area is known to support significant biomass production on all trophic levels, best visualized by large schools of feeding pelagic fish (Spring-spawning herring, mackerel, whiting). Complex hydrography (especially frontal processes) and different light levels influence phytoplankton production as noted below by the 2011 Joint OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD Scientific Workshop on the identification of EBSAs in the North-East Atlantic, Annex 16, which stated that

> “The large-scale atmospheric pressure fields in the North Atlantic are closely linked to the general oceanic circulation patterns, and their variation is reflected in changing patterns of zooplankton biomass production (Skjoldal and Sætre, 2004). During periods of a high NAO index (NAOI) the zooplankton biomass, in particular that of *Calanus finmarchicus*, is high, during periods of a low NAOI the biomass is low (Skjoldal and Sætre, 2004). The transition from one to the other NAO state is suspected to trigger particularly successful recruitment for the most important pelagic fishes: herring respond positively to the switch from low to high NAOI, blue whiting to a switch from high to low NAOI (Skjoldal and Sætre, 2004).
>
> Recent studies reveal that sea surface warming in the Northeast Atlantic is accompanied by significant latitudinal shifts in the size distribution of phytoplankton (Richardson and Shoeman, 2004), and in the species distribution of zooplankton (Beaugrand et al., 2002) and fish (Brander et al., 2003). In addition, due to different control mechanisms (light, temperature, food) for the various ecosystem components, a variable trophic match (or

mismatch) may contribute to these distribution shifts, in the end affecting also the commercially important species, primarily fish, and dependent predators such as marine mammals and sea birds (Edwards and Richardson, 2004)."

10. Migratory species: Dunn et al. (2019, p.2) highlight challenges faced by migratory species, stating that "migratory connectivity, the geographical linking of individuals and populations throughout their migratory cycles, influences how spatial and temporal dynamics of stressors affect migratory animals and scale up to influence population abundance, distribution and species persistence. Population declines of many migratory marine species have led to calls for connectivity knowledge, especially insights from animal tracking studies, to be more systematically and synthetically incorporated into decision-making. Inclusion of migratory connectivity in the design of conservation and management measures is critical to ensure they are appropriate for the level of risk associated with various degrees of connectivity". For the North-East Atlantic, in common with many other marine regions benthic and pelagic interconnectivity, as well as interconnections between the High Seas and surrounding shelf ecology, is incompletely understood. Gaps were recognized by the workshop for the following taxa:

i. Turtles

For Leatherback turtles, scientific research within the North-East Atlantic region has been comparatively limited so far. Based on the regional scale of this EBSA assessment process and the much larger North Atlantic extent of the gyre, plus gaps in the current knowledge base around sea turtle migration, foraging ecology and habitat use, it was concluded that a proposal reflecting the significance of turtle migration would not be brought forward at this stage.

ii. Marine mammals

For marine mammals in the North East Atlantic, although there exist a number of initial tracking studies, particularly of large cetaceans such as fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) and sei whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) from the Azores (Silva et al. 2013, Pireto et al., 2014), and other tracking studies of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) between the Arctic and Caribbean (Kennedy et al., 2013, UiT, 2018), there are still many gaps regarding the spatial and temporal use of habitats by these and other cetacean species across the region. The presence and known transient movement of some animals, such as humpback whales from photo-identification studies, is well documented but whether they are restricted to particular areas or range more widely is not fully understood (Stevick et al., 2006, Ryan et al., 2015, Lavan , 2017, O'Neil et al., 2019). More specifically, it is known that many cetaceans migrate from wintering grounds in the southern areas of the region to highly productive foraging areas in the Labrador Sea, Greenlandic/Icelandic waters, Norway and Svalbard. Interpretation of preliminary analyses available for sei whales and fin whales is based on the best available but limited sample of telemetry data drawn from the, strongly indicated the potential presence of a route between the Charlie Gibbs Fracture Zone and the Labrador Sea for this species (Olsen et al., 2009), as well as migratory stepping stones and foraging stops along their pathway between the Azores and Greenlandic/Icelandic waters (Silva et al. 2013). Though limited, the best available data suggests the area is a critical corridor in part of a complex migration process of large baleen whales that can involve longitudinal movements between the two sides of the ocean basin in addition to expected latitudinal movements (Pireto et al. 2014). Tagging programmes that provide relatively long records of movements of large whales are often expensive and logistically demanding, so sample sizes are often limited, and results may have biases that may or may not be quantifiable. Recent efforts by specialists are developing standards for how such data can be used to infer use of areas in their area of specialization, in particular the recent combination of satellite tracking and stable isotope analysis, which has further indicated the link between wintering and feeding grounds of North Atlantic baleen whales (Silva et al., 2017).

There are further gaps identified in the coverage of systematic line-transect surveys of marine mammals in large parts of the region, particularly for those areas away from national jurisdictions. Large sightings survey campaigns for marine mammals (cetaceans and pinnipeds) are underway in the northern parts of the regions (i.e. T-NASS, SCANS, CODA) but the temporal scale of these efforts still reflect a gap in knowledge on the trends in marine mammal abundance and density over time (CODA, 2009, Hammond et al., 2017, NAMMCO, 2018). Additional research from both dedicated survey efforts and opportunistic fisheries observation have further indicated the importance for the diversity and seasonal habotat use of the Azores for North Atlantic marine mammals (Silva et al., 2014, Tobeña et al., 2016). Further research is being developed in the form of habitat and surface density modelling of marine mammal line-transect as well as opportunistic data from non-marine mammal focused research cruises, to provide predicted estimates of an oceanic scale. Such research includes those undertaken by the MERP project in European Waters (ICES, 2018). The IUCN MMPATF is undertaking a number of studies to improve the identification of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs) throughout the world's seas and oceans, in particular through the development and application of such habitat and density surface models (IUCN MMPATF, 2018). This includes the use of Historic Whaling Data available via the International Whaling Commission (IWC) and the Census of Marine Life (CoML) to indicate areas of interest (AoI) for the future identification of IMMAs (Smith et al., 2012). More recently the IUCN MMPATF has been developing approaches for predictive modelling of marine mammals beyond areas of high effort concentration, using hybrid presence–absence and presence-only modelling techniques (Fiedler et al., 2018).

iii Seabirds

Seabird migration patterns and non-breeding distribution have been some of the most important knowledge gaps, needed to be filled for effective management of seabird populations. Now, with a combined effort of researchers all around the North-East Atlantic participating in SEATRACK (http://www.seapop.no/en/seatrack/) and in the Seabird Tracking database held by BirdLife International, light-logging technology has enabled mapping (since 2014) of important seabird moulting and wintering areas as well as migration routes on a much larger scale and in greater detail than ever before. To document the variation in habitat use across ocean regions, priority has been given to species with a breeding range spanning the whole study area. These are ongoing programmes and will be important information for future work with EBSAs in the region. During the workshop, a lack of sea bird data for the Swedish part of Kattegat and Skagerrak was noted. However, national efforts are currently undertaken to survey seabirds in the Kattegat.

11 Benthic communities: We are unable to assess large areas of the abyssal environment of the North East Atlantic due to a complete lack of data. Although traditionally regarded as a flat featureless environment the abyss has a highly complex landscape with millions of hills and mountains. Recent studies suggest abyssal hills of just 10s of meters in height may enhance megafaunal biomass and there may be considerable unquantified heterogeneity in these systems (Durden et al., 2015; Morris et al., 2016). About one third of the benthic species present in deep water appear to be endemic and the degree of endemism increases with depth (Vinogradova, 1997). Rarity is common in the abyssal environment,so estimating the diversity of this region is challenging. The abyssal environment may be significantly affected by climate change as a result of changes to surface primary production which is then expressed as changes in the composition, abundance and timing of food supply to the deep sea (Wigham et al., 2003; Ruhl et al., 2008). This could make abyssal systems highly vulnerable.

In addition, it is difficult to assess many bathyal areas in ANBJ due to a complete lack of data. Studies from bathyal regions within North East Atlantic nations EEZs suggest that these regions may support significant three-dimensional structural habitats including sea pen fields, sponge aggregations, *Acanella* (Bamboo coral) fields, cup coral fields, and other coral aggregations (*Radicipes* fields) (Howell, 2010). These habitats may play important roles in other animal life histories, for example Baillon et al., (2012) found that larvae of red fish (*Sebastes*) closely associate with five species of sea pen. A greater understanding of the distribution of these habitats is needed. Given the vast area of un-explored deep sea, habitat suitability modelling and species distribution modelling could provide an important means to fill the data gaps (Howell et al., 2016). However, it is important that model limitations are understood, and on-going research is investigating this. Good models rely on good input data, and efforts to map the seafloor over the next decade (Seabed 2030) will certainly provide improved input data. In addition, good models must also be based on a firm understanding of the relationship between species distribution and environmental drivers. Research aimed at understanding these relationships is needed and highlighted in decision XIII/1, the CBD COP 'voluntary specific workplan on biodiversity in cold-water areas within the jurisdictional scope of the Convention'.

12. Vulnerability of deep-sea organisms: It is challenging to assess inherent vulnerability of deep-sea organisms as a result of serious gaps in our fundamental ecological knowledge for most species. This includes physical and chemical drivers of distribution, abundance, biomass, growth rates, fecundity, longevity, reproductive cycles, larval behaviour and connectivity to name some key aspects. These data form the input to all biological ecosystem models. Our ability to forecast how marine biodiversity will respond to environmental change and other anthropogenic pressures, depends on good fundamental ecological, biological and physiological knowledge. At present, we have a limited understanding of the linkages between habitats and species, including ontogenetic or seasonal movement between habitats, larval dispersal pathways and genetic connectivity, and patterns of succession (DOSI 2018)

13. Resolving uncertainties for coldwater areas: In decision XIII/1, the CBD COP adopted the 'voluntary specific workplan on biodiversity in cold-water areas within the jurisdictional scope of the Convention'. This workplan advanced five objectives:

- To avoid, minimize and mitigate the impacts of global and local stressors, and especially the combined and cumulative effects of multiple stressors;
- To maintain and enhance the resilience of ecosystems in cold-water areas in order to contribute to the achievement of Aichi Biodiversity Targets 10, 11 and 15, and thereby enable the continued provisioning of goods and services;
- To identify and protect refugia sites, and areas capable of acting as refugia sites, and adopt, as appropriate, other area-based conservation measures, in order to enhance the adaptive capacity of cold-water ecosystems;
- To enhance understanding of ecosystems in cold-water areas, including by improving the ability to predict the occurrence of species and habitats and to understand their vulnerability to different types of stressors as well as the combined and cumulative effects of various stressors;
- To enhance international and regional cooperation in support of national implementation, building on existing international and regional initiatives and creating synergies with various relevant areas of work within the Convention.

Within this workplan, the pressures and threats to biodiversity in cold-water areas were considered alongside a series of focal areas that would assist resolving on-going uncertainties and gaps in knowledge:

- Greater understanding of the interactions among species within trophic webs is needed. Whether an impact of climate change on one organism will impact the survival of other organisms is poorly understood at present. Mesocosm experiments, where communities are subjected to projected future conditions, can help to address this.
- Impacts of ocean acidification on different life stages of cold-water organisms need to be studied. Early life stages of a number of organisms may be at particular risk from ocean acidification, with impacts including decreased larval size, reduced morphological complexity and decreased calcification. Further work needs to be done on different life stages of many cold-water organisms.
- Existing variability in organism response to ocean acidification needs to be investigated further to assess the potential for evolutionary adaptation. Multi-generational studies with calcifying and

non-calcifying algal cultures show that adaptation to high CO_2 is possible for some species. Such studies are more difficult to conduct for long-lived organisms or for organisms from the deep sea. Even with adaptation, community composition and ecosystem function are still likely to change.

- Research on ocean acidification increasingly needs to involve other stressors, such as changes in temperature as well as deoxygenation, as will occur under field conditions in the future. Acidification may interact with many other changes in the marine environment on both local and global scales. These "multiple stressors" include changes in temperature, nutrients and oxygen. *In situ* experiments on whole communities (using natural CO_2 vents or CO_2 enrichment mesocosms) provide a good opportunity to investigate the impacts of multiple stressors on communities in order to increase understanding of future impacts.

The workshop recognized the value of this workplan to address gaps and uncertainties for the North-East Atlantic region.

14. Capacity building and integration: the workshop acknowledged the need to combine information from different processes in order to raise capacity and inform planning within the context of the UN Decade of Ocean Science for Sustainable Development.

REFERENCES

Baillon, S., Hamel, J.F., Wareham, V.E. and Mercier, A., 2012. Deep cold- water corals as nurseries for fish larvae. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, *10*(7), pp.351-356.

Deep Ocean Stewardship Initiative's Decade of Ocean Science working group (2018) Deep-Sea Research in the Decade of Ocean Science. Mapping the role of the deep ocean in human society. https://www.dosi-project.org/topics/decade-of-deep-ocean-science/. Accessed 26/09/19

Dunn, D.C., Harrison, A-L., et al. (2019) The importance of migratory connectivity for global ocean policy. Proc. R. Soc. B. 286: 20191472.

Durden, J.M., Bett, B.J., Jones, D.O., Huvenne, V.A. and Ruhl, H.A., 2015. Abyssal hills–hidden source of increased habitat heterogeneity, benthic megafaunal biomass and diversity in the deep sea. *Progress in Oceanography*, *137*, pp.209-218.

Howell, K.L., 2010. A benthic classification system to aid in the implementation of marine protected area networks in the deep/high seas of the NE Atlantic. Biological Conservation, 143(5), pp.1041-1056.

Howell, K.L., Piechaud, N., Downie, A.L. and Kenny, A., 2016. The distribution of deep-sea sponge aggregations in the North Atlantic and implications for their effective spatial management. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*, *115*, pp.309-320.

IUCN MMPATF (2018) Guidance on the use of selection criteria for the identification of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs). IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force. Version: March 2018. 82pp.

Johnson, D., Ferreira, M.A. and Kenchington, E. (2018) Climate change is likely to severely limit the effectiveness of deep-sea ABMTs in the North Atlantic. Marine Policy 87 (2018) 111-122.

Kennedy, A., Zerbini, A., Vasquez, O., Gandilhon, N., Clapham, P. & Oliver, A. (2013). Local and migratory movements of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) satellitetracked in the North Atlantic Ocean. Canadian Journal of Zoology. published online. https://doi.org/10.1139/cjz-2013-0161

Morris, K.J., Bett, B.J., Durden, J.M., Benoist, N.M., Huvenne, V.A., Jones, D.O., Robert, K., Ichino, M.C., Wolff, G.A. and Ruhl, H.A., 2016. Landscape-scale spatial heterogeneity in phytodetrital cover and megafauna biomass in the abyss links to modest topographic variation. *Scientific reports*, *6*, p.34080.

Ruhl, H.A., Ellena, J.A. and Smith, K.L., 2008. Connections between climate, food limitation, and carbon cycling in abyssal sediment communities. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, *105*(44), pp.17006-17011.

Silva, M.A., Prieto, R. Cascão, I., Seabra, M.I., Machete, M., Baumgartner, M.F. & Santos, R.S. (2014) Spatial and temporal distribution of cetaceans in the mid-Atlantic waters around the Azores, Marine Biology Research, 10:2, 123-137, https://doi.org/10.1080/17451000.2013.793814

Tobeña, M., Prieto, R., Machete, M. & Silva, M.A. (2016) Modeling the Potential Distribution and Richness of Cetaceans in the Azores from Fisheries Observer Program Data. Front. Mar. Sci. 3:202. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmars.2016.00202

Wigham, B.D., Hudson, I.R., Billett, D.S. and Wolff, G.A., 2003. Is long-term change in the abyssal Northeast Atlantic driven by qualitative changes in export flux? Evidence from selective feeding in deep-sea holothurians. *Progress in oceanography*, *59*(4), pp.409-441.

Appendix to Annex VIII

ARCTIC SEA ICE HABITAT AS MEETING THE EBSA CRITERIA

Background

With a view to describing marine areas meeting the scientific criteria for ecologically or biologically significant marine areas (EBSAs), the area beyond national jurisdiction of the North-East Atlantic section of the Arctic had previously been considered by the "Joint OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD Scientific Workshop on the Identification of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas (EBSAs) in the North-East Atlantic" (8-9 September 2011; Hyères, France),[19] the "CBD Arctic Regional Workshop to Facilitate the Description of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas" (3-7 March 2014; Helsinki, Finland),[20] and the "CBD Regional Workshop to Facilitate the Description of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas in the North-East Atlantic" (23-27 September 2019; Stockholm).

During the 2011 Joint OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD Workshop the entire area beyond national jurisdiction of the North-East Atlantic section of the Arctic was identified to meet several of the EBSA criteria as "*The Arctic ice habitat – multi-year ice, seasonal ice and marginal ice zone*" (see Figure 1). This conclusion was subsequently confirmed by an ICES expert workshop to review the results of the above-mentioned workshop (ICES 2013a).

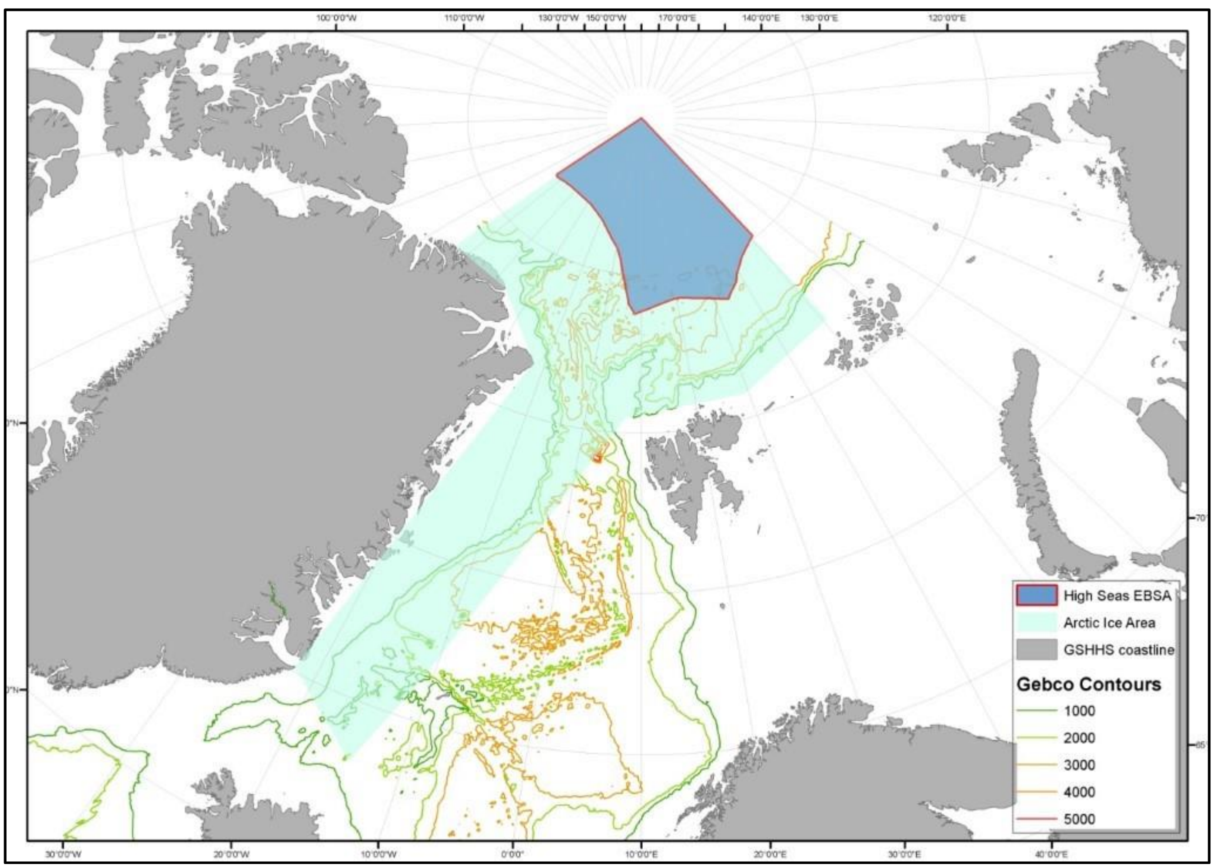


Figure 1. Location of the Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Area (EBSA) in the High Seas of the Arctic. Source: ICES 2013b

[19] UNEP/CBD/SBSTTA/16/INF/5. Report of the Joint OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD Scientific Workshop on the identification of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas (EBSAs) in the North-East Atlantic (8-9 September 2011, Hyères, France)

[20] UNEP/CBD/EBSA/WS/2014/1/5. Report of the CBD Arctic Regional Workshop to Facilitate the Description of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas (3-7 March 2014, Helsinki)

The CBD regional EBSA workshop for the Arctic also considered sea ice habitats across the Arctic, including the Arctic portion of the North-East Atlantic. The Arctic workshop noted that these features, taken together (i.e., multi-year ice, seasonal ice and marginal ice zone) had been described by the 2011 OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD workshop as meeting the EBSA criteria. However, the CBD regional EBSA workshop for the Arctic decided to consider these ice habitats separately, rather than as a whole. The CBD regional EBSA workshop described the "*Multi-year ice of the Central Arctic Ocean*" (which covers a large portion of the ABNJ of the North-East Atlantic portion of the Arctic) (Figure 2) and the "*The Marginal Ice Zone and the Seasonal Ice Cover over the Deep Arctic Ocean*" as EBSAs (Figure 3).

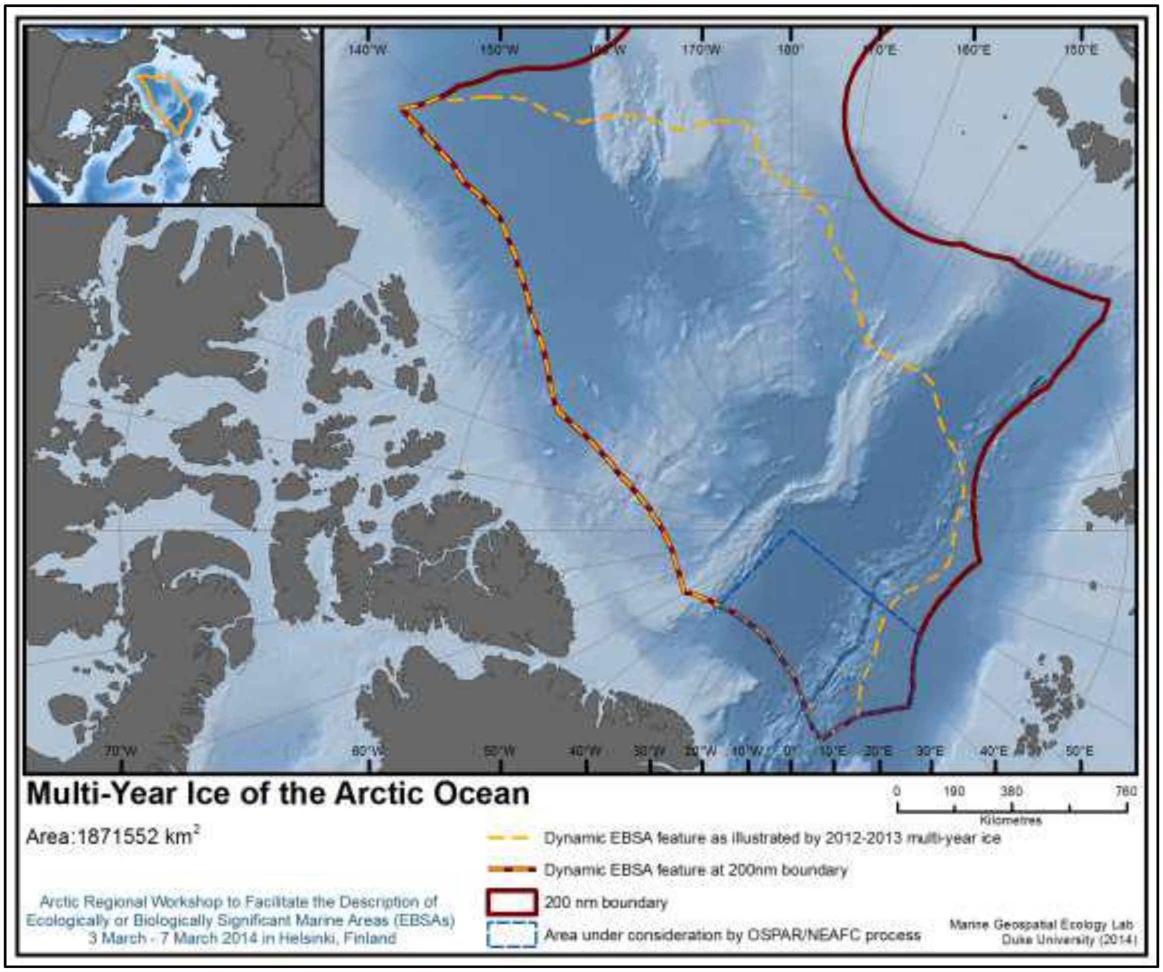


Figure 2. Area meeting EBSA criteria. Map of combined September 2012 and March 2013 multi-year ice areas within the central Arctic area beyond national jurisdiction. Source: UNEP/CBD/EBSA/WS/2014/1/5

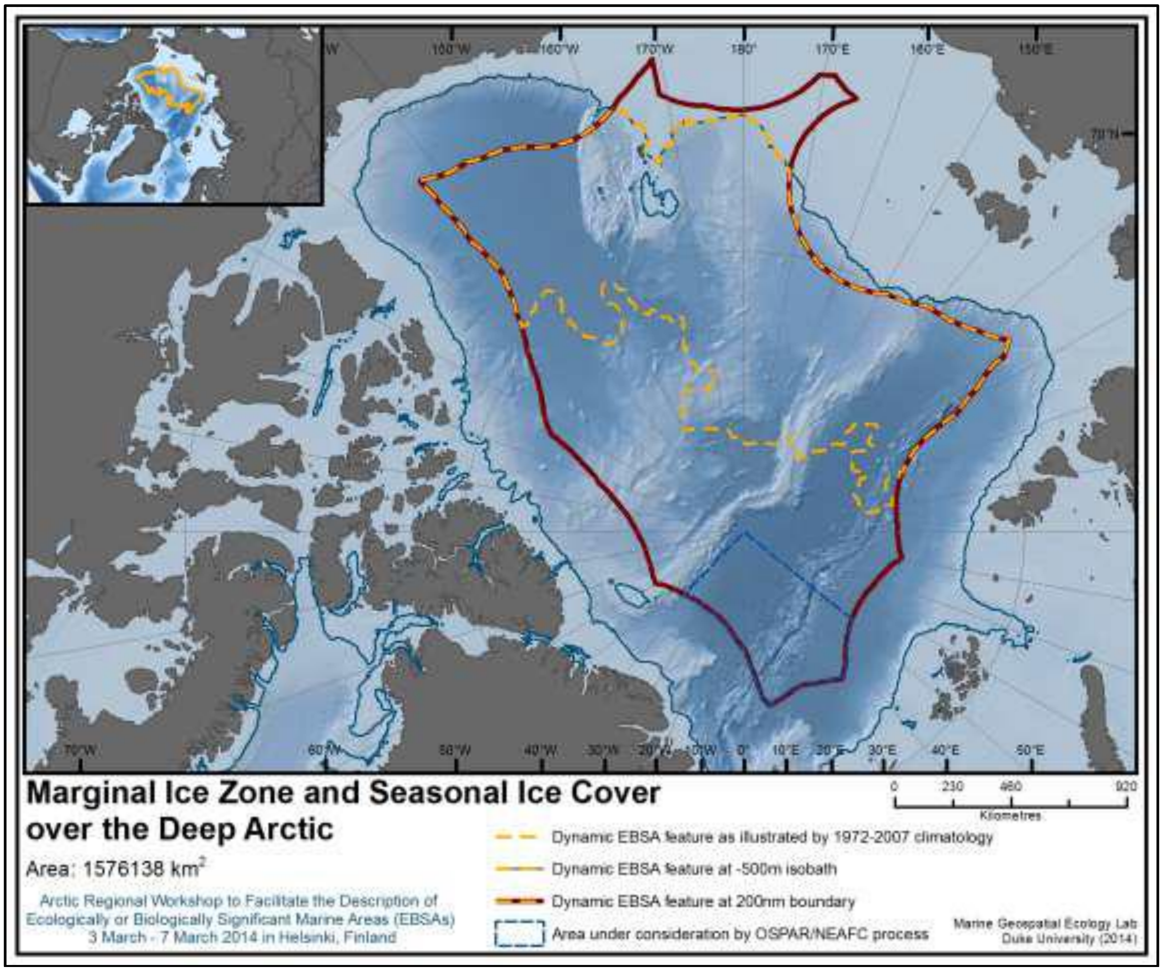


Figure 3. Area meeting EBSA criteria. Map of the maximum observed range (1972-2007) covered by the marginal ice zone and the seasonal ice-cover within the central Arctic in waters deeper than 500 m, beyond national jurisdiction. Source: UNEP/CBD/EBSA/WS/2014/1/5

Considerations during the CBD North-East Atlantic EBSA Workshop

The marine waters of the Arctic are characterized by a dynamic variation of areas covered by multi-year ice and marginal ice zones with one-year (seasonal) ice and open water, depending upon the season of the year. In addition to seasonal changes, however, the extent, thickness and distribution of Arctic sea ice are heavily influenced by the effects of climate change.

The multi-year ice in the Arctic Ocean (the ice that survives summertime melt) is globally unique and has dramatically decreased (in both extent and average thickness) in recent decades (Perovich et al. 2018). As of today, multi-year ice is predominantly found in those parts of the area beyond national jurisdiction in the Arctic that adjoin the Canadian Arctic Archipelago. The multi-year ice that remains is also much younger than previously as the oldest multi-year ice classes have declined more than other classes (Perovich et al. 2018).

In line with considerations of the CBD Arctic workshop, participants concurred with the conclusion that the multi-year ice and associated marine habitats of the Central Arctic Ocean beyond national jurisdiction provide a range of globally and regionally important habitats, which resulted in the description of the *Multi-year ice of the Central Arctic Ocean* as an EBSA and its subsequent inclusion in the CBD EBSA repository, following consideration by the CBD COP in 2014 (UNEP/CBD/COP/DEC/XII/22). Projections of changing ice conditions due to climate change indicate that the Central Arctic Ocean beyond national jurisdiction that adjoins waters near the Canadian Arctic Archipelago are likely to retain multi-year ice longer than all other regions of the Arctic, thus providing refugia for globally unique ice-dependent species, including vulnerable species. See UNEP/CBD/EBSA/WS/2014/1/5 for a comprehensive description of the area.

Large areas of the basins in the Central Arctic Ocean are now characterized by annual ice and are thus ice edge and seasonal ice zones with a period of open water in summer. This region of ice edge/seasonal ice and seasonal open water over the deep Arctic is highly dynamic both spatially and temporally. The marginal ice zone, which results from seasonal ice cover over the deep Arctic Ocean (deeper than 500 m), is a significant and unique feature in areas beyond national jurisdiction and it has also been included in the CBD EBSA repository in 2014 (UNEP/CBD/COP/DEC/XII/22). The area is important for several endemic Arctic species. Some of the ice-related species are listed as vulnerable by IUCN, and/or listed as under threat and/or decline by OSPAR. The marginal ice zone and leads are important feeding areas for ice-associated species. Sea ice is important breeding, moulting and resting (haul-out) habitat for certain marine mammals. See UNEP/CBD/EBSA/WS/2014/1/5 for a comprehensive description of the area.

Both EBSAs were described as geographically and temporally dynamic features that are expected to change in area, shape and geographic location from year to year. Furthermore, in view of the increasing rate of change in Arctic sea ice habitats due to climate change, it is becoming increasingly difficult to spatially delineate and distinguish the extent of various types of ice habits (i.e., multi-year ice, seasonal ice and marginal ice zone).

The CBD Arctic EBSA workshop in 2014 also noted that, given the dynamic nature of the geographic area covered by the description of the two EBSAs, these may, depending on changes in coverage of multi-year ice/marginal ice cover, partially overlap with an area meeting the CBD EBSA criteria that was described by the Joint OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD workshop for the North-East Atlantic in 2011.

Challenges

As already recognized in 2014, the spatial extent of both areas described to meet the EBSA criteria is not only affected by seasonal changes but also subject to the effects of climate change. Perovich et al. (2018) states that:

- The past four years (2015-18) have the four lowest maximums in the satellite record. The sea ice cover reached a minimum annual extent of 4.59 million km^2 September 2018.
- In 1985, the oldest ice comprised 16% of the ice pack, whereas in March of 2018 old ice only constituted 0.9% of the ice pack. Therefore, the oldest ice extent declined from 2.54 million km2 in March 1985 to 0.13 million km2 in March 2018, representing a 95% reduction.
- First-year ice now dominates the ice cover, comprising ~77% of the March 2018 ice pack compared to about 55% in the 1980s. Given that older ice tends to be thicker, the sea ice cover has transformed from a strong, thick pack in the 1980s to a more fragile, younger. thinner, and more mobile pack in recent years.

Thus, delimitation of areas based on types of sea ice will experience equivalent changes, both with respect to size and location of an area. Furthermore Frey et al. (2018) and literature therein states that:

- Recent declines in Arctic sea ice extent have contributed substantially to shifts in primary productivity throughout the Arctic Ocean. However, the response of primary production to sea ice loss has been both seasonally and spatially variable.

Thus, changes in sea ice alter the amount, timing and location of primary production, both within the ice and in the water column, with potential cascading effects throughout the ecosystem.

Conclusion

Mapping dynamic areas such as sea ice that are not only subject to seasonal but also ongoing long-term changes is challenging, as this case illustrates. The amount of multi-year ice relative to annual ice is rapidly decreasing. Areas previously covered by multi-year ice are increasingly being characterized by a marginal ice zone with seasonal ice.

As illustrated by the differing approaches taken by the 2011 OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD workshop (which considered the ice habitats as a whole) and the 2014 CBD regional EBSA workshop for the Arctic (which considered the ice habitats distinctly), there can be different ways to consider and describe features meeting the EBSA criteria. These differing approaches to considering features may affect not only the narrative description, but also the geographic delineation of such features, as the area described at the 2011 OSPAR/NEAFC/CBD covers the entire ABNJ portion of the North-East Atlantic, while the area described during the 2014 CBD regional EBSA workshop for the Arctic does not cover the entire ABNJ area of the North-East Atlantic portion of the Arctic. Furthermore, the geographic coordinates of the Arctic sea ice EBSAs described by the 2014 CBD regional EBSA workshop for the Arctic were noted to be dynamic and based on approximate boundaries.

Finally, and as noted in the previous section, the rate of change of Arctic ice is increasing due to climate change, making it increasingly difficult to justify spatially delineating and distinguishing the extent of various types of ice habits (i.e., multi-year ice, seasonal ice and marginal ice zone) (see Figure 4). The application of the EBSA criteria to dynamic features such as this is necessarily limited by not only the information available at the time, but also by the need to assess the state of dynamic conditions at the time of the assessment.

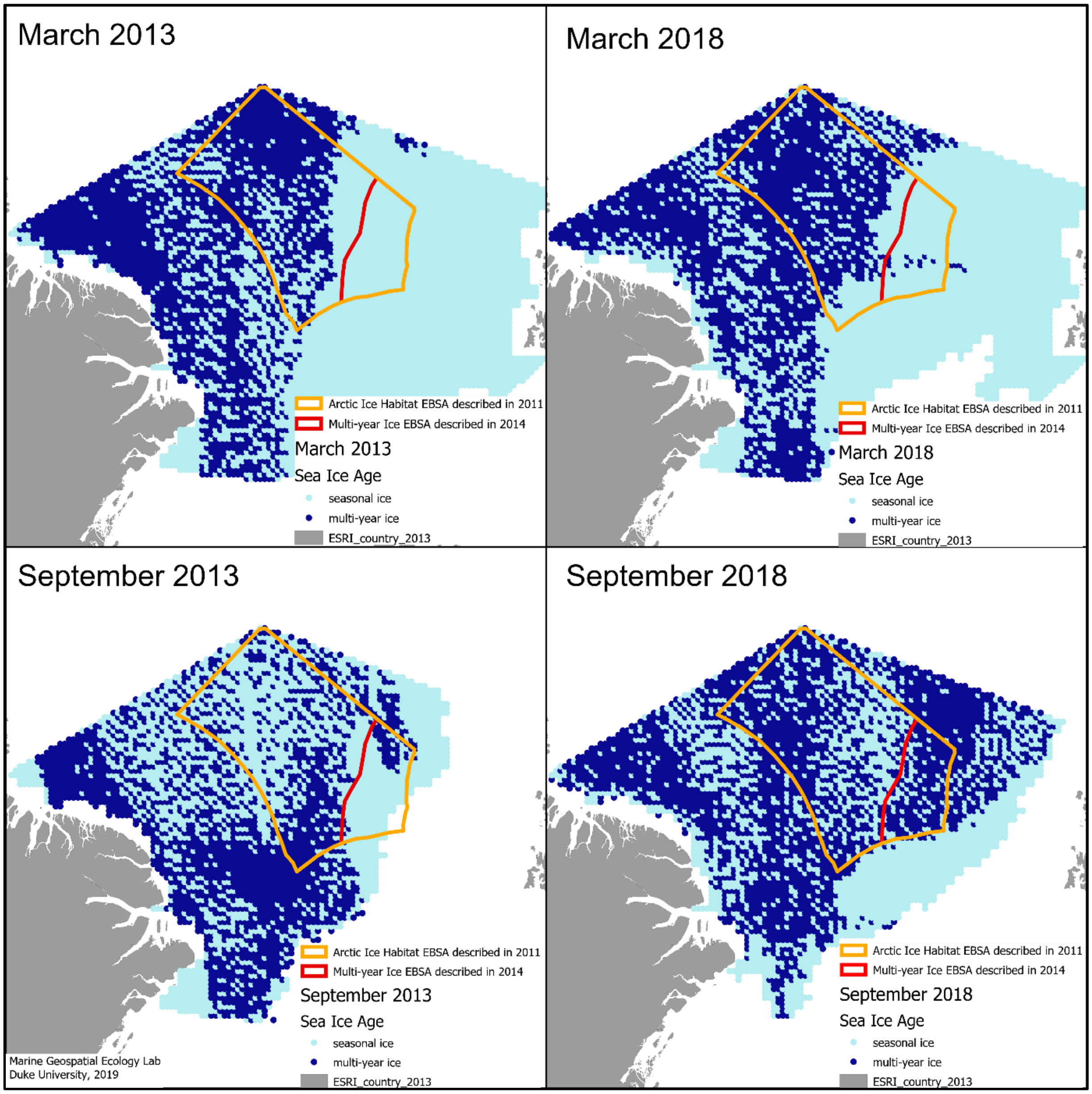


Figure 4. Comparison of multi-year ice in March 2013/September 2013 with March 2018/September 2018. The map indicates 1st year (seasonal) ice in light blue and multi-year ice in dark blue. The area beyond national jurisdiction is shown in orange outline. Ice data citation: Tschudi, M., W. N. Meier, J. S. Stewart, C. Fowler, and J. Maslanik. 2019. *EASE-Grid Sea Ice Age*, *Version 4*. [Northern Hemisphere subset]. Boulder, Colorado USA. NASA National Snow and Ice Data Center Distributed Active Archive Center. doi: https://doi.org/10.5067/UTAV7490FEPB. [Accessed 26 September 2019]. Maps prepared by Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab – Duke University, 2019.

Respecting the outcome of the 2014 Arctic EBSA workshop, this workshop did not describe EBSAs in the Arctic or update any previously-described EBSAs in the Arctic. However, the view of the workshop is that this case highlights the need for revisions and updates of previously-described EBSAs, especially for dynamic features such as the boundaries of the Marginal Ice Zone and the Seasonal Ice-Cover Over the Deep Arctic Ocean EBSA and the Multi-year Ice of the Central Arctic Ocean EBSA described in 2014.

REFERENCES

Frey K.E., Comiso J.C., Cooper L.W., Grebmeier J.M., Stock L.V. (2018) Arctic Ocean Primary Productivity: The Response of Marine Algae to Climate Warming and Sea Ice Decline. Arctic Report Card 2018, NOAA. https://www.arctic.noaa.gov/Report-Card/Report-Card2018

ICES, 2013a. Report of the Workshop to Review and Advise on EBSA Proposed Areas (WKEBSA), 27 - 21 May 2013, ICES HQ, Copenhagen, Denmark. ICES CM 2013/ACOM:70. 127 pp. ICES, 2013b. Report of the ICES Advisory Committee In: ICES Advice, Book 1, OSPAR/NEAFC special request on review and reformulation of four EBSA Proformas.

Perovich D., Meier W., Tschudi M., Farrell S., Hendricks S., Gerland S., Haas C., Krumpen T, Polashenski C., Ricker R., Webster M. (2018) Arctic Report Card: Update for 2018. NOAA https://www.arctic.noaa.gov/Report-Card/Report-Card-2018

____